

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA

CENTRAL  
ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

ACCESSION NO.

24157

CALL No.

9/5/26

~~6-13~~

vol. 2











24157

5 किताब

(21)

680



C 478

Vol-2

22/05/57

17/05/57

Handwritten notes and signatures at the bottom of the page, including a signature that appears to be 'S. S. S.' and some illegible text.



Acc. no.  
24157

680

# TRAVELS

INTO

## MUSCOVY,

## PERSIA,

And PART of the

## EAST-INDIES.

Vol. 2

CONTAINING,

An Accurate DESCRIPTION of whatever is most  
remarkable in those COUNTRIES.

AND EMBELISHED

With above 320 Copper Plates, representing the finest Prospects, and  
most considerable Cities in those Parts; the different Habits of the  
People; the singular and extraordinary Birds, Fishes, and Plants  
which are there to be found: As likewise the Antiquities of those  
Countries, and particularly the noble Ruins of the famous Palace  
of PERSEPOLIS, called *Chelminar* by the *Persians*. The whole  
being delineated on the Spot, from the respective Objects.

To which is added,

An Account of the Journey of Mr. *ISBRANTS*, Ambassador from *Muscovy*,  
through *Russia* and *Tartary*, to *China*; together with Remarks on the Travels of  
*Sir John Chardin*, and Mr. *Kempfer*, and a Letter written to the AUTHOR  
on that Subject.

24157

In Two VOLUMES.

By M. CORNELIUS LE BRUNN

Translated from the Original FRENCH.

VOL. II.

C478 Vol. 2

LONDON:

Printed for A. BETTESWORTH and C. HITCH, S. BART, C. DAVIS, J. CLARKE,  
& HARDING D. BROWN, A. MILLAR, J. STUCKERSON, and T. OSBORNE.

MDCCXXXVII

1737

C478

57 fol

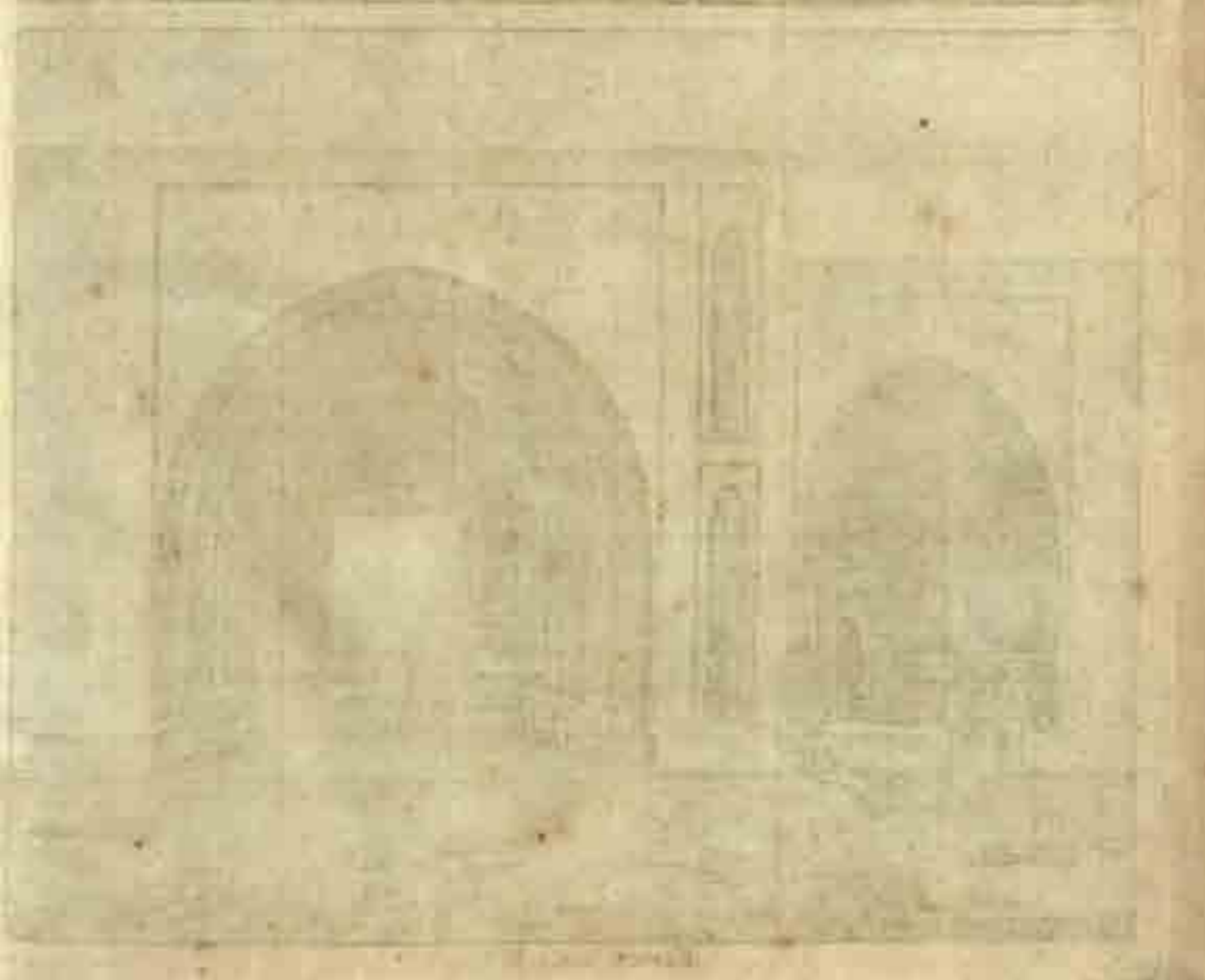
A. 1329

CENTRAL AND HISTORICAL  
LIBRARY NEW DELHI

Acc. No. 21157

Date 16.7.56

Call No. 915/1cd









THE  
TRAVELS  
OF  
CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

Through MUSCOVY and PERSIA, to the EAST-INDIES, the coast of MALABAR, the island of CEYLON, BATAVIA, BANTAM, and other places.

CHAP. L.

*The Author's departure from Ispahan. An account of the Persian couriers, and the bearers of Caljan. A fine Caravan-serai. A description of Jedagaes. Excellent bread. Dangerous roads. The manner in which the Arabians live.*

1704.

THE preparations for our journey being completed, we waited till twenty beasts of carriage, that were loaded with commodities which belonged to the India company, had set out before us, and we departed from Ispahan the 26th of October, 1704, about two in the afternoon. The English merchants, together with father Antonio Desjere, and all

Vol. II.

our friends, accompanied us out of the city on horseback, and were followed by all their domestics and couriers. We took a short repast in the King's gardens, at the distance of a league from the city, and continued there till four of the clock. We then proceeded on our journey, after we had taken leave of our friends, and arrived, about seven, at the Caravan-serai of Spahan, three leagues from Ispahan; where we found those who

1704.

B



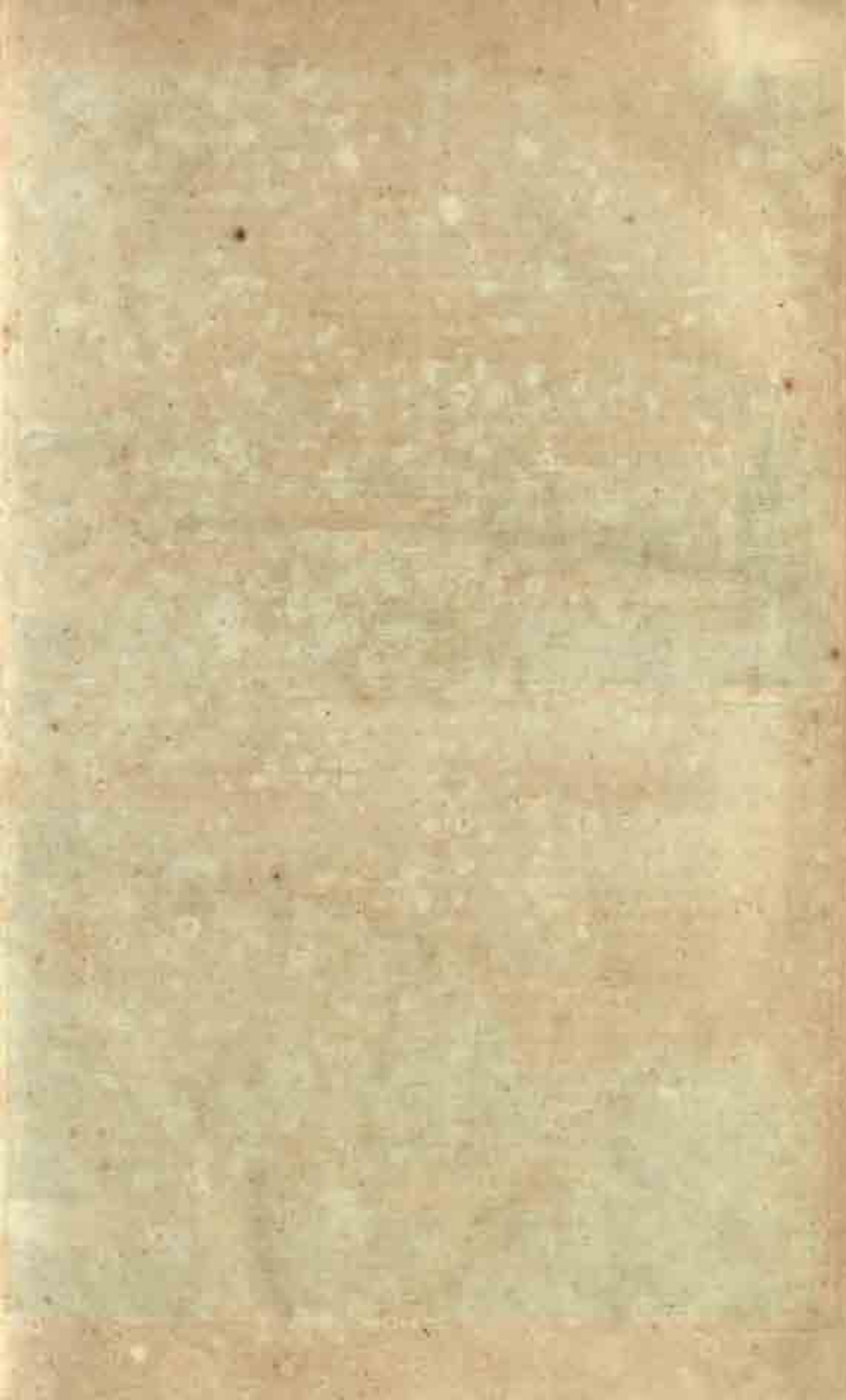
1704. who had set out before us, and we all passed the night in that place. We had several couriers, whose dress is very different from those who live in *Ispahan*. The reader will find a representation of them in plate 110. The plumes which they wear on their turbans, and the ornaments that accompany them, are of various colours. Their vests are usually of scarlet, and little bells are fastened to their girdles, with tufts of black silk. The sound of these bells is heard at a considerable distance, when the couriers are in motion. Those who hire them, are obliged to furnish them with this habit, which becomes their own at the end of the journey, over and above the wages they receive. It is usual to hire as many of these couriers as are judged necessary, with a beater of *Caljan*, or a bottle of tobacco, who is mounted on a mule, that likewise carries two portmantles, or leathern cases, filled with coffee, rose-water, tobacco, and such like accommodations. We have represented one of these persons, with his equipage, in plate 111. The *Persians* are always attended by some of these servants, in their travels, and are imitated by all *Europeans* of any rank. The little machine, which hangs on one side of the mule, is filled with fire.

Five Caravanserais.

We proceeded on our journey at one in the morning, and arrived, in the space of two hours and an half, at the Caravansehai of *Mierza Elekja*, and, within another hour, at a place, where part of the customs exacted for mercantile goods, is paid. We arrived, about the twenty eighth, at the village of *Majaer*, where a fine Caravansehai is built of stone, and was founded by King *Suleman*, the father of the Prince who now reigns. A range of fine stables runs all round the inside of the court; and the outside of this building has more the air of a palace, than of a publick house for travellers. There are two kinds of wings on the sides of the fore-gate, and a large entrance, that appears beautiful, and opens into exceeding fine walks of

1704. trees to the right and left, and of which that in the middle is the largest. It likewise fronts the edifice, and extends very far towards the mountains. No situation can be more amiable than that of this Caravansehai, which we have delineated in plate 112. The principal customs are paid there. The village, on one side of it, is large, and surrounded with trees; and the officers of the customs sent from thence refreshments of melons, and grapes, to Mr. *Bakker*, my companion in this journey.

We left this place on the twenty eighth, about three in the morning, and passed by a water-mill, on a little river, which we crossed twice, on two small bridges of stone, and arrived, about ten that morning, at a large town, called *Komminja*, which is filled with gardens, and little towers that serve for pigeon-houses. On one side of this town, we observed the tomb of a saint named *Zia-ressa*. The Tomb of a Saint. It is enclosed with a wall, whose inward space is ornamented with several trees, and two fountains filled with fish, which the *Persian* superstition will not permit any one to touch. We saw carps in the smallest, and large fish in the other. This tomb has a lofty situation on the slope of a mountain. We passed the night in the Caravansehai built of earth, in the town, and pursued our journey on the twenty ninth, about five in the morning. We were informed, that some other travellers had been robbed, as they left the town, of two beasts loaded with goods; and as the inhabitants of that place have the reputation of being great thieves, we had reason to suspect they had given this instance of their abilities in that profession; we, therefore, judged it expedient to be upon our guard, especially as we were well provided with fire arms. Robberies of this nature are very frequent in that quarter; but if one has any friend to make proper complaints at court, the lord of the town is obliged to be responsible for what is lost; but if a person has not such an in-







JERUSALEM.





1704. interest as I have mentioned, he must not expect any restitution. This regulation obliges the officers of the place to be very attentive to the conduct of the inhabitants, and yet robberies are frequently repeated.

The road, without the town, contracts itself into a narrow pass, between two ranges of mountains, and which is rendered very dangerous by the torrents that are continually rolling from the summit; but it opens, at the distance of half a league, into a plain, which is encompassed by these mountains. Several villages, full of gardens, present themselves to the view on the right, but the mountains are all barren and rocky, and the land upon them lies wild and uncultivated. We came, about eleven, to the Caravanserai of *Mogoo-begie*, without having met any game in our way. We there found several pigeons, woodcocks, mallards, and larks, along the edges of a little canal. We left this place, at one in the morning, and arrived, about five, at the village of *Amanahac*, which is said to separate *Persia* from *Parthia*.

*Jesdgan* We arrived, about eleven in the forenoon, at the Caravanserai of *Jesdgan*, which is a village seated among the mountains, and part of it on rocks. The houses rise one above another, and form a very fine prospect by that disposition. Below the village is a large valley, watered by a small river abounding with fish, and which must be crossed over a stone bridge, in order to arrive at the Caravanserai, which is likewise built of stone. The prospect, a little below this building, is diversified with large plantations of trees, and a variety of gardens, which extend three or four leagues. This village appears from the Caravanserai in the manner represented in plate 113. It rises very high on each side, with a steep declivity. On one side of the great road, we saw a building that resembled a fortress, the foundations of which are of stone, and the superstructure of earth and clay. You enter it by a little bridge; and the adjoining

houses rise, some four, others five, six, or seven feet one above another, and with such small apertures for the admission of light, that one would rather take them for pigeon-holes than windows. The buildings in the highest range enjoy a sufficiency of light and air, which the second row receives only on one side; but the lowest are so extremely dark, that the inhabitants are obliged to burn candles night and day, even in the stables and folds, where they lodge their cattle. This place is, however, said to have been once a city, founded several ages ago, which may be very probable, since there is not such another form of buildings in all *Persia*. I had the curiosity to enter the place; but did not continue there long, for fear of engaging myself too far among a people with whose aspect I was not greatly pleased, and, indeed, there was nothing remarkable to excite my attention. These poor people are real objects of compassion; and one cannot easily conceive what inducements they can possibly have to continue in so disagreeable a place, in one of the finest countries of the world; unless it be mere habitude, which may be considered as a kind of second nature. I was informed, that there was a well in this place, cut twenty fathoms deep, and ten feet in diameter, through the rock, and which serves as a basin, into which there is a passage on one side, through a small fortress; and an ascent out of it, on the other, by a flight of stairs; but those who visit it are always obliged to have candles in their hands.

We were presented, at the Caravanserai where we lodged, with little hot loaves of white bread, made in the manner of our country, for the *Europeans* who travel in these parts, and altogether as good as the small loaves of *Amsterdam*. This part of the country produces the best corn in all *Persia*, which the governor of *Zje-raai* preserves for the King and court. This proceeding occasioned the *Persian* proverb, *Chirap Zje-raai, noon Jesdgan, sen de Jes*; that



1704. that is, *Zjir-raas* for wine, *Jesdagae* for bread, and *Jes* for women; all which are in perfection in those places. Ovens are very numerous through the whole kingdom; and they are made in the form of wells, in each of which the paste is rolled into thin cakes, which are baked in a moment; and when they are taken out, others are immediately placed in the room. Large bread is likewise baked in these ovens, as among us; and they make Biscuits at *Ispahan*, which are altogether as good as those in *France*.

I took the draught of the south side of this place, from the great road, where I had a full prospect of the mountain; with the houses built upon it one above another, as may be seen in plate 114. with a view of some gardens and other scattered places, that are comprehended under the same name, and give a large extent to this village.

We renewed our journey, at two in the morning, through a very incommodious narrow way, which gradually enlarged as we advanced forwards. And we found, at the distance of some leagues from thence, a small house, which usually serves as a retreat to the robbers who infest that road and the adjacent parts, and who never fail to attack those travellers who are not in a condition to defend themselves, and are frequently murdered as well as robbed.

We arrived, about ten in the morning of the thirty first of this month, at *Didergoe*, a village eight leagues from *Jesdagae*, where we were surprised with a great tempest, which involved us in so thick a cloud of dust, as made us almost incapable of opening our eyes; and the cold was very violent at the same time. The clouds, towards noon, discharged a greater quantity of rain than had fallen in the space of all that summer. But these inconveniences did not prevent us from proceeding on our journey, and our company was increased on the way, by several travellers, who joined us for their greater security. Two of our cou-

riers were here taken ill, and we were obliged to leave one of them behind us, till he could be capable either of returning to *Ispahan*, or following us: The other, whom I had hired, finding his indisposition a little abated, was determined to continue with us.

The weather grew fine again, on the first day of *November*, and we advanced through a village that was chiefly inhabited by robbers; and had hardly left it before we met an ass that belonged to the conductor of our caravan. Upon which, we immediately dispatched two of our men to the village, where they had the good fortune to find the beast, in the hands of an honest man, who desired them to search the packs of goods, in order to see whether any thing had been taken away; and when they had satisfied themselves as to this particular, they rejoined us in a short time.

We then advanced into a plain, and arrived at a stone bridge with five arches, which we did not care to pass over, because it seemed in a ruinous condition on one side; for which reason we rather chose to ford the river, which was but shallow. It likewise abounded with fish, but we were incapable of receiving any benefit from them, because the day was far advanced, and we had a long way to travel.

We met a small body of *Arabs*, *Arabs* who had lately decamped, and were in quest of a new settlement. Their wives and daughters had rings, with a mixture of pearl, and common stones, at the tip of their noses, and which hung down, in the form of a cross, to their mouths; their hair was set off with other ornaments, and a piece of linnen wound over their heads, but their faces were uncovered. Their upper vest descended no lower than their hips; their under one fell down to the middle of their legs; their shifts came something lower, and showed over their drawers and stockings. The generality of these women rob with as much intrepidity as the men, and are almost



1704. as strong. These people are scattered through the whole Kingdom, their complexion is tawny, and the men are habited like the common people of the country.

We arrived, in the space of two hours, at the village of *Kouskiesar*, which is a good *Caravanferai* built of stone, where we stopped a while, the weather being very bad; but this did not prevent us from continuing our journey at five in the morning, through lovely plains, and afterwards through ways that opened between rocks and mountains, and were very incommodious. We then passed by a ruinous *Caravanferai*, in a tract that was filled with robbers, and where travellers ought to be always upon their guard. From thence we advanced into a plain that was covered with water and reeds, and likewise with several sorts of birds; among whom there was one of an extraordinary size, and which I took for a bird of prey. We also saw several *Arabs* under tents; and when we had sufficiently traversed the mountains, we came, at twelve, to the town of *Anopai*, seated in a fertile plain, where the Lands are all arable, and well watered, and a *Caravanferai* of stone is likewise built there.

We continued here till midnight, and arrived, the third of this month, at the town of *Ooesjoun*, where there is another *Caravanferai* of stone, on the edge of a running stream. This situation is equally agreeable and commodious, and it lies in the neighbourhood of several other villages. The land affords pasture for a prodigious number of sheep and goats. The grass is entirely parched by the Sun, and yet proves very nourishing to the cattle. This is a surprising circumstance, considering the drought that reigns in *Persia*, and the sterility of the mountains, which are covered with rocks; and there are likewise but few trees to shade the land.

A Tomb.

On one side of this *Caravanferai* we saw a tomb, cover'd with a small rising dome, and surrounded with a wall. The inhabitants pretend that it is the sepulchre of a brother of King *Sefi*, who endeavour'd to make

VOL. II.

himself master of this part of the Kingdom, but broke his leg on this mountain, which occasioned his death. The revenues arising from the village are still appropriated to this monument, in conjunction with those to whose care it is consigned.

As this tract abounds with fish, we caused some nets to be cast, and drew out four great fish, the two largest of which much resembled carps; the others had broad scales and yellow bellies; and they are excellent food, tho' their skin be very thick. This part of the country is likewise stocked with partridges, woodcocks, and cranes, which spring to a great height in the air.

1704. *Great plenty of Fish and Game.*

We proceeded on our journey after sun-set, and by break of day struck into a road between the mountains that are very lofty and rocky; and the ways are so narrow, that they are hardly passable by horses, and other beasts of burden. They are likewise so steep and slippery in several places, that the poor animals are frequently overthrown with all their load; and they are altogether as fatiguing to travellers, who are not able to sit their horses, and are continually obliged to alight and remount. This place called to my remembrance those defiles, which *Quintus Curtius* says *Alexander* passed in this tract. On the very top of this mountain we found a delightful spring, covered over with stone. It was ten when we had crossed to the other side of the mountain, where we found a ruinous *Caravanferai*.

We arrived, about two in the afternoon, at a small canal of running water; after passing several rocks which occasion'd very bad ways. I there stopped with some others, and we dined in the shade of a growth of trees, while the rest of the company pursued their journey. This plantation, which extends as far as the rocks, is composed of wild Almond-trees, and Sackas. We afterwards travelled, by the side of this canal, through arable lands, and arrived about three, at the *Caravanferai* of *Majien*, where we discontinued our journey.

C

CHAP.



## CHAP. II.

*Wild Almond, and other Trees. Mountains, on which Fortresses were antiently erected. The River of Bendemir. The Author's Arrival at Persepolis.*

**I**DREW, in this place, a branch of a wild Almond-tree, and another of a Sackas. The former was long and pliant, as appears in plate 115. *A.* and had only one almond on it, the season for that fruit being over. *L.* The branch of the Sackas bears a small reddish fruit, that much resembles the seeds of a pomegranate; a large cluster of berries grow on one stalk, which is represented with its foliage, at the letter *B.* This fruit assumes a green complexion, when it begins to ripen. The skin must be peeled off, and the shell broken, to come at the kernel, which, like wild almonds, has an excellent relish when pickled.

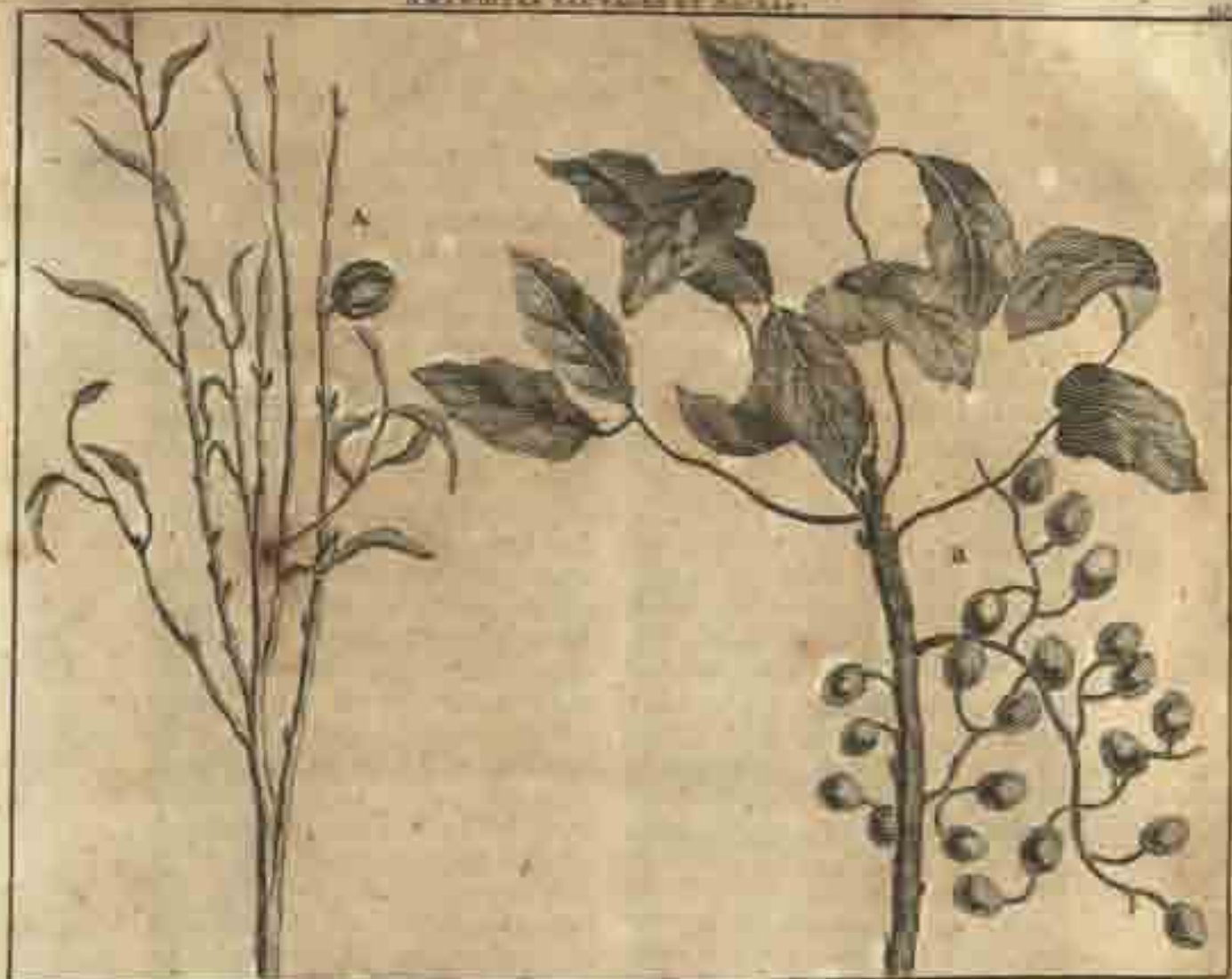
*Perfia* produces another tree called *Afrag*, which bears a profusion of flowers and leaves, that are thick set, but easily separable from one another, and they resemble the kernels of white melons, when viewed at a distance. This tree is not productive of any fruit; but its thick, spreading and leafy branches, diffuse a deep and pleasing shade. The representation of one of these plants, may be seen in plate 116. This country likewise produces another tree, which is called *Nær-weend*, and bears a fruit with a smooth skin, some growths of which are as large as ones fist, others smaller. This fruit is white, and resembles a bladder; it is likewise impregnated with a water, which converts itself into a gum, that proves salutary in the cure of a cough. This fruit is exhibited to view at the letter *C.*

The town of *Mojien*, where we then were, is very large, and full of fruit gardens and vines; and there are several of the latter that grow wild upon the mountains. The adjacent country is very agreeable, and well watered by a canal which flows through the town.

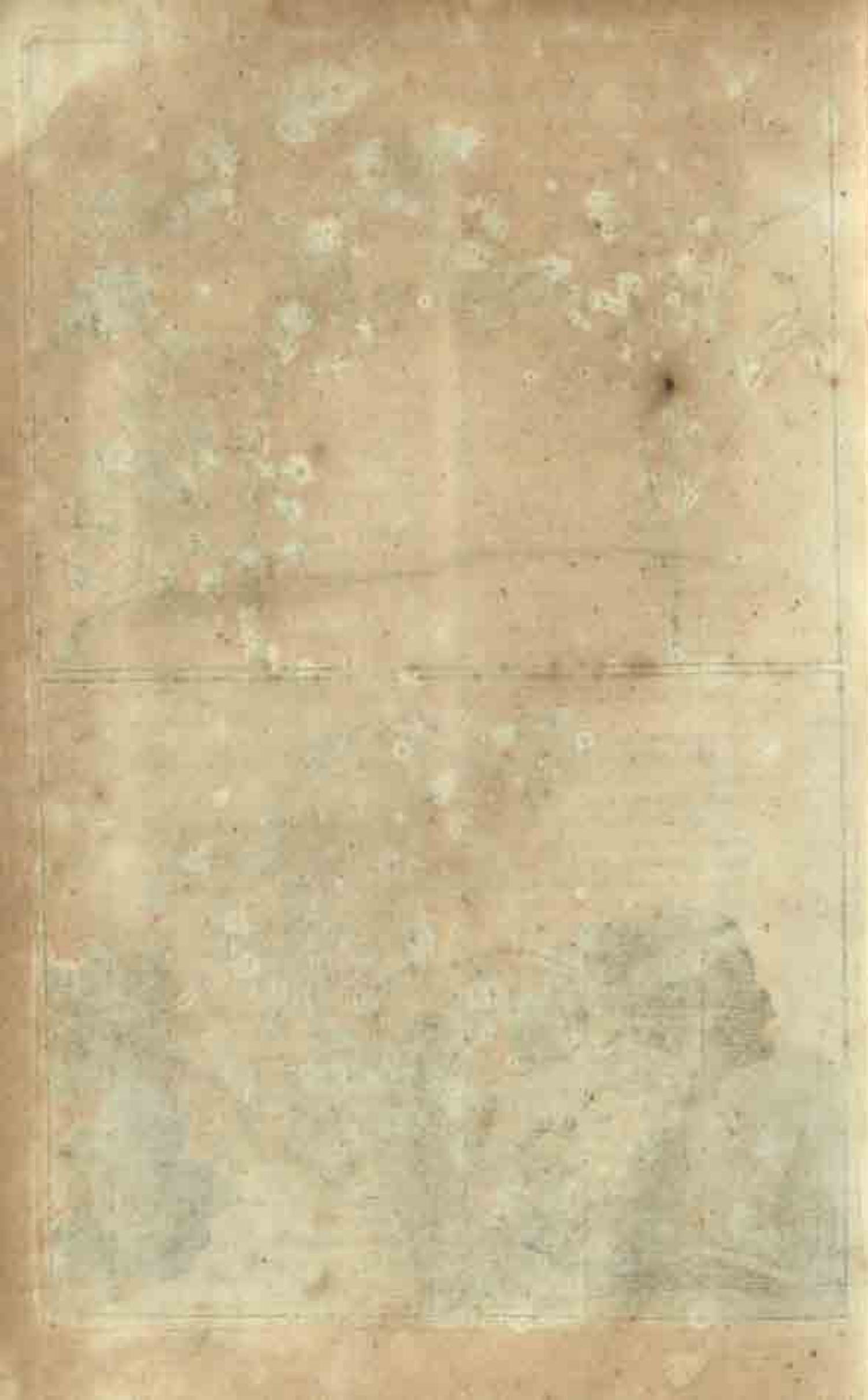
We left it at five in the evening, and proceeded, to the distance of a league, through a road much infested by robbers, who frequently carry off beasts of carriage, with all their load, in the night, and drive them into the woods, where travellers never think it advisable to pursue them.

On the fifteenth of the month, we enter'd a plain, and saw, at about two leagues distance on our right, a large and very lofty rock, on which a considerable fortress had been erected in ancient times; and some of its ruins are said to be still remaining. It is likewise pretended, that the summit of this rock opens into a spacious plain, which is cover'd with flocks of cattle in the proper season of the year.

We proceeded on our journey, always keeping to the right, and arrived at the river *Bendemir*, which crosses the country; and we pass'd it, about eleven, at a small distance from two other mountains very near each other, and which had formerly been crowned with fortresses; tho' none of their ruins are now visible. We observed an opening on the upper part of each of these mountains, and which is continued through the rock that rises upon them, and serves as a passage to the top, which ends in a round mass of stone, that, at a distance, resembles a castle. Some persons pretend, that the remains of an ancient gate are visible on the top of one of these mountains; but this is an uncertainty. It is likewise said, that this place formerly afforded a retreat to rebels; and that after they had been dislodged from that situation, all the remaining ruins were carried away, to prevent their being employed by others to the same disloyal purpose for the future. Travellers







1704. vellers therefore, think these mountains not worth ascending, as well because there are no curiosities any longer to be seen, as on the account of the danger to which they are exposed in such a solitary Situation.

Road to  
Persepolis

We found, in this place, two roads which led to *Persepolis*, one to the left, on the side of these two mountains; and the other to the right, at a small distance from the former, where a stone bridge of four arches is built over the river *Bendimir*, which the antients called by the name of *Corus*, *Corius*, or *Cyrus*, and to which they joined another, under the name of *Araxis*, which is mentioned in the life of *Alexander* the great; and they likewise called it *Cyropolis*, or *Cyreschatas*. This road is usually chosen, leaving the river on the left, as those do, who go to *Zje-raet*. Near the bridge I observed part of a column, which had formerly been join'd to it, like several others that are frequently to be seen at the end of bridges. This river, which has likewise the appel-

lations of *Aras*, *Kur*, and *Araxes*, 1704. crosses the country, and after it has received into its channel the waters of several lesser streams, is said to discharge itself into the rivers of *Medum* and *Medus*; for which reason it ought not to be confounded with the *Cyrus*, and *Araxes*, which we have formerly mentioned, and which empty themselves into the *Caspian* Sea.

The steep banks of this river, abound with the most agreeable little trees in the world. When we had pass'd over the bridge, and advanced half a league beyond it, we left the *Caravanferai* of *Aebgerm* on our right, and arriv'd about noon, and after a journey of five leagues, at the village of *Frograbact*, where there was no *Caravanferai*: And we were surpris'd with a great tempest, which continued till night; after which the air clear'd up, and we had a second view of the mountains. I was desirous to take a draught of them, and they are represented in the plate which is here inserted. I mean the

LES MONTAGNES LES TROIS FRERES.





1704. two mountains which are nearest the bridge; for I could not see the third, tho' it rises higher than these. The inhabitants call them the *Three Brothers*, from their resemblance to each other; those who advance in the usual road, stop at the *Caravanserai* of *Aubgerm*, from whence they proceed to *Affaf*, *Poligorg*, or *Sergoon*; but we kept on by the plain and mountains, and came, about nine in the morning, to a very lofty stone bridge with five arches, three of which are very large, and the other two but small; and the river I have lately mentioned, runs with much rapidity under them; it is likewise very broad and deep there, and its banks are steep and extremely high. This river is resorted to by various species of ducks, and it must be crossed before one can arrive at *Persopolis*, which lies at no greater distance from it than two leagues. We came, about eleven, to a village called *Zargoen*, which is pleasantly situated among mountains, and is full of gardens, which abound with melons, grapes, and all sorts of fruits, some of which were presented to us by our *Muleteer*, who stopped there, and entertained us in a very agreeable manner, after he had ordered the inhabitants not to sell provisions to any of our train. The generality of *Muleteers*, who convey mercantile goods from *Gomron* to *Ispahan*, have a dwelling in this place, and they take pleasure in regaling the *Europeans*, who belong to their *Caravan*.

Arable lands, and large flocks of sheep and goats, are seen in this plain, which exceeds two leagues in breadth, and extends in length beyond the reach of the eye. It is likewise full of villages, but the rains frequently deluge it in the winter.

The King's Officers robbed. A few days before our arrival in this place, some of the King's officers, who come to collect his Majesty's revenues, and had received sums to the amount of 33000 livres, were robbed and rifled at the bridge I lately mentioned. Robberies are very frequent in these parts, and are committed by the rebels, who live un-

der tents on this plain, and march 1704. with fifty, sixty, and even a hundred in company; and yet such is the weakness of the government, that they are permitted to rob with impunity, and no precautions are taken to suppress these injurious proceedings.

The rain surprised us this day, and continued for the whole night, accompanied with hail, lightning, and thunder, till eleven in the morning, when the sky began to clear up. We were willing to improve this opportunity, but it began to rain anew, before we came to the end of the village, and with so much violence, that we were obliged to have recourse to shelter. We renewed our journey the eighth day of the month, at the first break of dawn, and favoured with a very serene sky; but we found all the country on this side of the bridge floated with water, which obliged us to proceed very leisurely, otherwise our couriers would have been incapable of following us, the ways were so extremely slippery. We however arriv'd about eleven, at the town of *Mier-chas-koen*, which lies at a little distance from the ruins of *Persopolis*; and we alighted at the house of the chief magistrate of place, to whom Mr. *Bakker* had the goodness to recommend me on the part of Mr. *Kastelkin*, for whose arrival I was to wait in this Town. This magistrate favoured me with a most obliging reception, and desired me to accept of one of his servants, to conduct me to the *Caravanserai* of the place, and procure me a commodious Lodging. I no sooner came thither, but I was seized with impatience to behold those famous ruins which were then very near, and I went thither with one of the Inhabitants, whom I had taken into my service as a guide; but I could not take the liberty to make any stay there, because my friend was obliged to return to *Zu-ergoen*, where he had left effects in merchandize, and all his domesticks, except one valet, and two couriers, who attended him, and the way to pro-



1704. proceed, the following night, to *Zje-raet*. I had left my baggage with him, and had only taken out a few necessaries, having requested him to leave all my other parcels at *Zje-raet*, where I was to arrive, in order to proceed to *Gomron*, and from thence to *Batavia*, with Mr. *Kasselein*, by the first Opportunity that should offer. I continued alone after the departure of my friend, with whom I had maintained a very good intelligence at *Ispahan*, as well as through the whole course of our journey; and I was now entirely devoted to the satisfaction of my curiosity, and the desire I had so long conceived, of beholding the celebrated ruins of *Persepolis*.

But before I enter upon their description, I believe it will not be un-

necessary to mention the principal bridges that are to be crossed in the way thither. The first, of which I have already taken notice, is called *Pol Jesajsen*, from a neighbouring village. The second, which was the last we had then crossed, is called *Pol Chanje*, from the *Chan* who erected it. The name of the third, which lies between the two former, is *Pol Nuof*, or the new bridge. The fourth, which is some leagues distant to the south from the last, is called *Pol Bendemir*, from the river of that name, whose source, as I was assured, was in the mountains, and its outlet, to the south, in the sea of *Derja nemeck*, or the brackish sea, which is twelve leagues from *Persepolis*, and four or five from *Zje-raet*.

## CHAP. LII.

*The ruins of the antient Persepolis described. The situation of Naxi-Rustan.*

*The ruins of Persepolis.*

ON the 9th of this month, I began to visit those stately remains, which are called *the Ruins of Persepolis*, and are the most famous antiquity in all the *East*, in order to give the public the most exact and circumstantial account of them, that my abilities will permit. They are delightfully situated in a lovely plain, which extends two leagues in breadth, from the south west to the north east, computing from the bridge of *Pol Chanje*, on the river of *Bendemir*, beyond which it stretches out three leagues more, to the foot of the mountains; and it comprehends near forty leagues in length, from the north-west to the south-east. It is usually called *Mardajo*, and the inhabitants pretend, that it contains 880 villages, and above 1500, in the circumference that extends around these ruins to the distance of twelve leagues, including those villages which are seated

Vol. II.

among the mountains; some of which are filled with beautiful gardens, shaded with large growths of trees. The greatest part of this plain is floated with water, in the winter season, which is a very advantageous circumstance to the rice which grows there at that time. Most of the soil of this amiable plain is converted into arable land, watered with a variety of streams that render it exceeding fertile. It likewise abounds with all sorts of birds, particularly cranes, storks, ducks, and herons of several species; partridges, snipes, quails, pigeons, hawks, and especially crows, which swarm through all *Persia*. The plain likewise affords a prodigious quantity of little birds that descend from the mountains which surround it.

The antient palace of the kings *The antient of Persia*, usually called *the House of the kings of the Darus*, and, by the inhabitants, *Chel-peria*.



1704. *Chel-menar*, or *Chil-minar*, which signifies the forty Pillars, is situated to the west, at the foot of the mountain of *Kulirag-met*, or *Compassion*, antiently called the *Royal Mountain*, and which is entirely composed of free-stone. This superb edifice has all its walls still standing, on three of its sides, with the mountain to the east. The extent of the front comprehends six hundred paces, from north to south; and three hundred and ninety, from west to east, as far as the rock, and without any stair-case on that side, till you come to the mountain, where the ascent is formed between some scattered rocks, where the wall is lowest, and rises to the height of no more than eighteen feet, and seven inches; and the altitude is less in several other places. This curtain contains four hundred and ten paces in length to the north, and is twenty one feet high in some parts; it is likewise carried on thirty paces more to the mountain, where there is still to be seen part of a wall, with an entrance in the middle, through which you may ascend to the top, through several broken rocks. Before these remains of the wall on the western side, several others rise to the north, as high as the wall itself, and then extend eighty paces to the east, like a platform before the wall, at the place where you ascend. There seems to have been formerly a stair-case in this part of the structure, and some buildings beyond the curtain, the rocks appearing finely smoothed and polished in several places. The top of this edifice presents to the view a platform of four hundred paces, which extends from the middle of the front wall, to the mountain; and along three sides of this wall a pavement of two stones joined together, to the breadth of eight feet, is carried on. Some of these stones are from eight to ten feet in length, and six in breadth; but the others are smaller. The principal stair-case is not placed in the middle of the front, but near the northern end, which is but one hun-

dred and sixty five paces beyond it; 1704. whereas the distance between the stair-case and the southern extremity of the wall, is six hundred paces. This stair-case is double, or consists of two flights of steps, which wind off from each other, to the distance of forty two feet at the bottom. It is twenty five feet and seven inches in depth, to the wall from whence the steps project, and the length of these equals the depth of the stair-case within five inches, which are inserted in the wall, on the right and left where the stairs are equal. They are only four inches high, and fourteen in depth; and I never saw any that were so commodious, except those of the Viceroy's palace in *Naples*, which, however, are something higher in my opinion. There are fifty five of these steps on the northern side, and fifty three to the south; but these last are not so entire as the others. I am likewise persuaded, that there are several under ground, and which have been covered over by a length of time, as well as part of the wall, which rises to the height of forty four feet and eleven inches, in the front; and I shall observe this method of computation for the future. When you arrive at this part of the stair-case, you find a perron, fifty one feet and four inches in breadth, proportionable to the width of the stairs; and the stones of this perron are extremely large. The two flights of this stair-case are separated by the front wall, which rises to the top; in consequence of which they are carried off from each other at the middle of the wall, and returned back at the centre, at an equal distance from the two extreme parts on the top, which creates a very charming and singular effect, and corresponds with the magnificence of the rest of the building. The upper part of this stair-case has forty eight steps in each flight, some of which are impaired by time, notwithstanding they were cut out of the rock. At the top of the stair-case, another perron presents itself



1704. itself to the view, between the two flights; this is seventy five feet in breadth, and has likewise a pavement of large stones, some of which are from thirteen to fourteen feet in length, and from seven to eight in breadth, like those of the facade; others are square; some long and narrow; and there is another sort smaller than these. They are still entire, and joined together in a very masterly manner, to the extent of thirty two feet of the facade. The rest of the perron is composed of cemented earth; and the wall which rises between the flights of the stair-case is thirty six feet in height.

This description corresponds, in a great measure, with the exterior plan of this edifice, of which some authors have treated in a very superficial manner, and without a sufficient inspection into particulars. Some have confined themselves, to an explication of the remotest antiquities, without regarding the present state of these superb ruins, and content themselves with offering a set of uncertain, and difficult particulars, instead of representing them as they ought, in a natural manner. This defect in their accounts proceeds from their not having observed those ruins with all the circum-spection and exactness that are requisite. Others have attempted to please, by introducing pompous relations; to which they have added, a set of fables, or voluntary errors: one of which is, that the storks never remove to any distance from this plain; which is so far from being true, that it is very certain, they continue there only for a certain season, as they do in other places; and disappear, when they have completed their nests, and reared their young on several columns of these ruins.

*The inside  
of the stair-  
case.*

It will now be necessary to open the scene, and present the interior part of these celebrated antiquities to view. The spectator first sees, in a right line, and at the distance of forty two feet from the facade, or front wall of the stair-case, which has been already described; two

grand portals, and as many columns. The first is paved with two tables of stone, which fill up two thirds of the space; but time has destroyed the third. The second is sunk into the earth, five feet lower than the other. These portals are twenty two feet and four inches in depth, and thirteen feet four inches in breadth. In the inside, and on each pilaster, is seen a large figure in low relief, and almost as long as the pilaster; with a distance of twenty two feet from the fore to the hinder legs, and a height of fourteen feet and a half. The heads of these animals are entirely destroyed, and their breasts and fore-feet project from the pilaster. Their bodies are likewise greatly damaged. Those of the first portal are turned towards the stair-case, and those of the second, each of which has a wing on the body, face the mountain. On the upper part of these pilasters, within the portal, are a set of characters, which it is impossible to distinguish, by reason of their smallness and elevation. The height of the first portal is thirty nine feet, and that of the second, twenty eight. The base of the pilasters is five feet and two inches high, with a projection within, and those on which the figures rest, are a foot and two inches. These animals are not cut out of one stone, but out of three, joined together, and which project without the portal. The wall is five feet and two inches thick. The first portal has likewise eight stones in its elevation, and the second, seven.

1704.

With respect to the animals I have mentioned, it would be difficult to determine what they represent, unless it may be said, that they have some similitude to a sphinx, with the body of a horse, and the paws thick and short, like those of a lion. But all this is rendered the more uncertain, because the heads are broken into shatters. Some persons have pretended, that they represented human heads, and, it must be owned, there is some appearance

*Figures of  
of ani-  
mals.*



1704.

ance, on the hinder part of the neck of one of those monsters, which may seem to justify that conjecture. It is a kind of a contour, or crowned bonnet, which greatly resembles those towers which the antients placed upon elephants, in order to shoot their arrows in a shelter from the enemy. But whatever it be, those figures seem to have been extremely curious, and we meet with some that resemble them, on antient medals. One might even say, that they are covered with arms, adorned with a good number of round studs.

The two columns that appear between the two portals, are the least damaged of all, especially with respect to their capitals, and the other ornaments of their upper parts; but the bases are almost entirely covered over with earth. They are twenty six feet from the first portal, and fifty six from the second; are fourteen feet in circumference, and rise to the height of fifty four. There were formerly two others, between these and the last portal, and the cavities in which they stood are still to be seen in the earth; several pieces of them likewise appear overthrown, and half buried in the ground. At the distance likewise of fifty two feet south from the same portal, is seen a large watering basin, cut out of a single stone, twenty feet long, and seventeen feet five inches in breadth, and raised three feet and a half above the surface of the earth. From this basin to the northern wall, is an extent of ground comprehending a hundred and fifty paces in length, and where nothing is to be seen but fragments of large stones, and part of the shaft of a column, which is not fluted like the rest. It is twenty feet in circumference, and twelve feet four inches long; beyond this tract of ground, and as far as the mountain, the earth is covered with several heaps of stones.

Proceeding southward from the portals I have described, and opposite to the last, on the right, and at the distance of a hundred and seven-

ty two feet, is seen another stair-case, with two flights of steps like the former, the one to the east, and the other to the west. The facade, or wall, which belongs to it, is six feet and seven inches high; but the middle part is almost entirely in ruins. It extends, however, eighty three feet to the east, and the lower stones make it evident, that it was adorned with figures in low relief. The upper part of the flight is embellished with foliage, and the representation of a lion rending a bull, much larger than the life, and likewise in low relief. This stair-case is half buried under the earth. There are also little figures on the two sides of the middle wall, which extends to the end of the stair-case. The western flight has twenty eight steps, and the other, where the ground rises higher, has only eighteen. These are seventeen feet in length, and three inches high; their breadth is fourteen inches and an half. Several of these steps are damaged towards the top, and two or three of them are entirely destroyed, tho' they are cut out of the rock. The perron of this stair-case ends in another facade, on which are three ranges of small figures, one above another, and of which those in the upper row are only visible from the waist downwards; the other part of the body being greatly defaced; and the middle range, which is preserved the best of the three, is, however, much damaged: But as to the lower rank, the heads of the figures are only visible, all the rest being buried under the earth. These figures are two feet and nine inches high, and the wall, which rises to the elevation of five feet and three inches, has an extent of ninety eight feet, from the first step to the end of the left angle, which is contiguous to another stair-case, of which thirteen steps are still remaining, and whose dimensions correspond with those I described last. There is likewise to be seen, on the remains of the inner wall along the side of the stair-case, another range of figures, of which

1704.

only



1704. and only half of the bodies are now visible; and at the end of this stair-case, appears another wall which extends ninety feet beyond the perron. The angle of it declines a little to the south, and is there discontinued, because the rising ground in that part is as high as the wall itself. This extremity is carried off in a right line, a little beyond the last columns, which are extended towards the mountains.

In returning to the western flight of the stair-case, one finds a wall of forty five feet in length, beyond the lower part of the stair-case, and then an interval of sixty seven feet, extending to the western facade. This side corresponds with the preceding, and has three ranges of figures in the same taste, with a lion tearing a bull, or an ass, that has a horn projecting from the forehead; and between these animals and rows of figures, is a square filled with characters, the uppermost of which are defaced; the rest will be found in the draught I made of this stair-case. But the characters are entirely defaced on the other side. The figures are also less damaged in this part of the structure, where the ground is lower, and this place has an extent of twenty five paces. The wall, which is carried on from the perron to the west, extends to the facade, and has not any figures beyond the stair-case.

On the top of this stair-case, and between the two flights of steps, is an entrance into an open place, paved with large tables of stone, whose breadth is equal to the distance from the stair-case to the first columns, and which comprehends a space of twenty two feet and two inches. These columns are disposed into two ranges, each of which contains six pillars, but none entire; eight bases, or pedestals, and the ruins of some others. They are continued along the wall of the stair-case, with as many intervals of distance between each other, as there are steps in this. There are likewise six rows of other pillars, at the distance of seventy feet

Vol. II.

and eight inches from the last, and each row consists of six pillars. These thirty six columns, are also twenty two feet and two inches distant from each other, like the preceding; and only seven of them are now entire; but all the bases of the others are still in their places, tho' most of them are damaged. Among those that are still subsisting, there is one in the first and second ranges, two in the third; and one in each of the others. Between these columns and the first, which have been already described, several large stones of a subterranean edifice are still to be seen. At the distance of seventy feet and eight inches from these rows of columns, on the west, and towards the facade of the stair-case, were twelve other columns in two ranges, each of which contained six, but there are only five now remaining; three in the first, which is fifty five feet from the facade; and two in the second, at the same distance from each other as the preceding. The bases of the other seven are no longer visible, and those which still subsist, are partly in ruins. The ground, in this place, is covered with several fragments of columns, and the ornaments that crowned them; between which are pieces of sculpture representing camels on their knees. A compartment is still to be seen, on the top of one of the columns, exhibiting the representation of one of these animals in this posture; and the figure is altogether as entire, as our delineation of it in the plate. South of these columns is to be seen an edifice which rises higher than any other part of these ruins; but before I enter upon its description, it will be proper to observe, that on the east quarter, to the left, and towards the mountains, were formerly two other ranges of pillars, with six in each, and of which only four or five pedestals now appear a little above the surface of the earth; and the place where the others were fixed, has been formed by time into a small hill. Several pieces of columns and fragments of stone are likewise visible

E

on



1704. on this spot; and there is reason to conjecture that these columns fronted those which extend along the facade.

As we advance towards the east, we are presented with a view of several ruins, which consist of portals, passages, and windows. The insides of the portals are ornamented with figures, and these ruins extend ninety paces from east to west, and 125 from north to south: They are likewise sixty paces from the columns and the mountains. The earth, in the middle of these ruins, is covered with broken columns, and other stones, which shall be taken notice of in the sequel of this description, as well as two sepulchres which are hollowed in the rock. One of these is adorned with figures, and it fronts those ruins. The columns I last mentioned are seventy six in number, and nineteen of them have still their entablature. Their shafts are formed by a conjunction of four pieces, without comprehending either the base, or the capital. But we will now proceed to the lofty building, which rises on a hill to the south.

*The highest part of these ruins.*

The distance of this structure from the columns is 118 feet; and the front wall, which is five feet and seven inches high, on that side, is composed of a single range of stones, some of which are eight feet in width; and the wall itself extends 113 feet from east to west. Opposite to the middle of this edifice are seen some foundations of stone, which constitute a part of it; though it is impossible to comprehend their original use, since not the least appearance of any stair-case is now discoverable. Several stones are likewise found on the same level with the columns, and they extend as far as this place. There is likewise a canal which formerly served as an aqueduct; with a heap of large stones, that once formed some edifice. Beyond the wall are several other pieces ranged at the distance of three

1704. feet and two inches from the inside of it; they are likewise five feet high, and some are broken to the left. This wall has neither figures, nor any other ornaments. At the distance of fifty three feet from the facade of this structure, the entrance into which is hardly distinguishable, because the ruins of it are partly covered with earth, a stair-case appears on the right hand, six of the steps of which are still entire, but the uppermost are all entirely destroyed. These steps are six feet and one inch in length, four in height, and a foot and a half in breadth. Several figures are seen to the right and left, on the little wings of this stair-case, and likewise on the adjoining stones; and over the perron on the top of these steps lies a stone five feet in length, and seven in breadth. There was likewise another flight on the contrary side, which corresponded with this, and where two ranges of steps are raised opposite to each other. The first of these flights is to the north, and the second to the south, and on the perron which lies between them, were two pillars of a portal, which have apparently been shaken down by an earthquake. All the rest of the building, which was chiefly composed of large and small portals, is entirely destroyed. They were built of large stones, of which some are opened like windows, and the portals themselves were filled with figures in low relief. The tract of ground on which these ruins stand, contains 147 feet in length, and is almost square. There was likewise a stair-case with two flights of steps to the south, whose dimensions and form corresponded with those of the other, and of which the four last steps are still visible on each side. Between the two flights, one of which is to the east, and the other to the west, a facade is yet to be seen, and it extends fifty five feet in length, without including the sides of the stair-case, where the wall is lowest, and only rises two feet and seven inches above



1704. above the level of the pavement. The ground to the east is more lofty than the side walls, and its inward area is almost square, since it extends fifty five feet on one side, and fifty three and a half on the other, with a large hill of sand in the middle. The largest of these portals are five feet wide, and five feet and two inches deep. The wall is three feet in thickness, and its height to the cornice is about twenty three feet. It is impossible to conceive how the side-stones were originally joined in that part with the smallest, nor how this part of the fabric was ascended, because there is not the least trace of a stair-case to be seen; nor can it be determined whether there was any arch above. It is, therefore, difficult to imagine for what use this structure was intended. It may possibly have been some royal apartment.

Two portals appear on the north side, with three niches, or windows walled up; and to the south, a portal and four open windows, each of which are five feet and nine inches wide, eleven in height, including the cornice; and their depth is equal to that of the grand portals. There are two other portals to the west, which are not covered, together with two openings; and a third to the east, with three niches, or windows walled up. Six of these openings are without any cornice; and there is only the half of one to the east. Under the portals, which are erected to the north, are the figures of a man and two women visible down to the knees, the legs being covered with earth; and under one of those which are to the west, is the figure of a man hunting a bull, who has one horn in his forehead; which is grasped by the man's left hand, while his right plunges a large dagger into the belly of the bull. On the other side the figure of another man clasps the horn with his right hand, and stabs the beast with his left. The second portal discovers the figure of a man carved in the same manner, with a deer that greatly resembles a lion, having a

horn in its forehead, and Wings on the body. The same representations are to be seen under the portal to the north, with this exception, that instead of the deer, there is a great lion, whom a man holds by the mane. These two figures are covered with earth to the middle of their legs. The two sides of the portal to the south are carved with the figure of a man with an ornament on his head, like a crown; he is accompanied by two women, one of whom holds a parasol over his head; the other has a certain ornament in her hand. And above this portal, on the inside, three different niches are filled with characters. On the pilasters of the first portal, which have started out of their place, and appear on the side of the stair-case, that has been mentioned before, are the figures of two men, each of whom is grasping a lance; one with both his hands, and the other with his left, but only one of these figures is entire. Behind this edifice is another structure, which resembles it in some measure, but exceeds it in length by thirty eight feet. It has likewise a niche or closed window, and another that is open; with two stones raised on the right and left, and of which that to the east is broken; the other, on the west, is twenty eight feet high, and seems to be all of a piece. It is three feet and seven inches in breadth, and five feet four inches thick. The upper part of this stone is hollowed into three niches, or separate compartments, filled with characters; below which is a fourth that seems to have been cut after the others. Several characters of the same nature appear in the other niches or windows, already mentioned, as well as all around them; and likewise on the raised stone, and some of the portals, whose pilasters are of one piece, as are also the cornices. The niches, or closed windows, are also cut out of one stone, and to the south of these are two flights of a stair-case; one to the east, and the other to the west; and of which five of the uppermost



1704.

permost steps are still remaining, like those in the preceding stair-case: The wings, as well as the walls which separate them, exhibit the representation of little figures and foliage, which are partly covered with earth. At the distance of a hundred feet from this place, to the south, the last ruins of these famous structures appear; and the greatest part of these likewise consist of portals and inclosures. Between these ruins and those which have been described last, is a demolished stair-case, with two flights of steps, to the north and south, but there are only seven of the uppermost now remaining. It is likewise ornamented with figures and spreading leaves. To the east of this stair-case are subterranean passages, into which no one presumes to enter, though they are said to contain great treasures; because there is a general persuasion, that the lights which persons may happen to carry into these places, will be extinguished of themselves, after they have advanced a few paces. This opinion, however, did not intimidate me from making the experiment, in the company of a *Persian* of resolution.

Subterranean passages.

We descended between the rocks, and entered upon two ways, but we struck into that which runs to the east. The height of this we found to be six feet, and the width two feet and four inches, at the entrance; but this was contracted into the space of one foot, and about eight inches, as we advanced forward: And when we had proceeded to the length of twenty paces, we found the roof so low, that we were obliged to creep forwards on our bellies, ten paces farther, after which we found the passage as high as it was at our first entrance: But when we had advanced a few paces more, we were stopped by the occurrence of the rock, and I found that there was only a narrow track, which extended to a great length, and had all the appearance of being originally contrived for an aqueduct;

but the straitness of it rendered it impossible to be passed. We then returned to the place from whence we descended, and I entered the passage on the west, and found a way which struck to the north; but it was too low to be passed even on the breast; and had it been higher, the humidity of the earth would have made it impracticable for me to have proceeded farther. We were therefore obliged to return, but without having our lights extinguished, or finding the treasure which the people of the country pretend is concealed in these subterranean passages; which in all probability were never intended for any other use than the conveyance of water, as well on account of their inconsiderable height, as because there are no cells to be seen, nor any traces of little altars, or other objects of that nature, which could induce one to believe they were ever consecrated to devotion, like several subterranean passages in *Italy*, and a variety of other places.

The other edifice, already mentioned, extends a hundred and sixty feet, from north to south, and a hundred and ninety one from east to west. Ten portals belonging to it, are still to be seen, together with seven windows, and forty enclosures, that have formerly been covered with buildings, whose foundations are visible to this day; as are likewise several round bases in the middle, and on which have been erected thirty six columns, in six ranges. These stones are three feet and five inches in their diameter, and all the ground is covered with large fragments, under which were aqueducts in former times. The entrance into this building, is likewise distinguished by two raised stones, like that which has been already described, and several characters that are still visible are impressed upon them.

There was formerly another structure, westward from the front of this, but it is now entirely destroyed;

1704.

A structure to the south.



1704 ed; and nothing is to be seen but a square place fronting the portals lately mentioned. The wall of this place is still near two foot in height above the pavement, and one sees along this wall the upper part of some figures, with which it was embellished; each of which is represented with a lance, and they were almost as large as the life. The ground enclosed by this wall contains nothing more than a number of round stones, which were formerly bases to columns, whose dimensions corresponded with those of the preceding. These stones are placed at the distance of eleven feet from one another, and I think there are thirty six of them still remaining. There is likewise a large hill of sand, before this last edifice, which extends along the portals, with several fragments of stone. On the east side of these last ruins, are the remains of a beautiful stair-case, which resembles that of the front wall, and is sixty feet in length. The lower part of it has twelve steps still remaining, and there are fifteen above the perron. The breadth of each of them is six feet and two inches, and the wings of this stair-case are beautified with little figures. The wall which separates the two flights of steps, and is still eight feet in height, is likewise adorned with figures almost as big as the life; but the stones on which they are carved, are greatly damaged. The front contains the representation of a lion encountering a bull, together with some broken stones, on which several characters are impressed. There are also lions of the same workmanship on the wings of the stair-case, but they are smaller than the other; and are likewise accompanied with characters and figures, almost as large as the life. The same is also to be seen on the other side of the walls, together with the figures of women, which are all defaced in a great measure. The principal stair-case of this building, was situated to the west, not of the front wall, but of the most lofty part of

1704 the pile, and fronting the great edifice: It likewise differs from the others, by being placed directly before the wall, with the additional circumstance of its shooting out into a great breadth below, and gradually contracting itself in the ascent. There are two flights of steps, as in the others, one to the west, and the other to the east, and the latter still ascends by twenty seven steps. The western flight has twenty three steps, but time has destroyed eight of them, notwithstanding they were cut out of the rock. When one has arrived at the perron of the first flight, a second division of the stair-case on the side of the wall, from west to east, presents itself to the view, and contains thirty steps, the greatest part of which are still entire, and are four feet and three inches in breadth, and one foot three inches in depth. The eastern flight corresponds with the other, but is destroyed in a very great measure, and nothing now remains of it, but a part of the wall, with two or three steps. These two flights are separated by an extent of 117 feet, including the wall of the perron, along which the buildings are carried to the distance of eight feet. Columns were formerly disposed between this lofty edifice, and the portals already mentioned: But there are only four to be seen at present, with two fragments of bases, which still rise a little above the surface of the ground. Four portals are likewise to be seen among these last ruins, and on each of their pilasters within, the figure of a man is represented, with two women holding a parasol over his head, in the same disposition, as the others which have been already described. There were figures of the same nature, on the pilasters to the west, and they held something in their hand, like those on the east. There was likewise the representation of two men armed with lances, under the two other sculptures, in the same manner as those under the preceding, together with three women holding something that



1704. is now broken in their hands, but these last figures are extremely damaged. There are also two other figures on each side, in the two niches to the south, one of which grasps the horn of a goat with one hand, while the other rests on the neck of that animal. The second figure had likewise something in its hand, but time has entirely destroyed it.

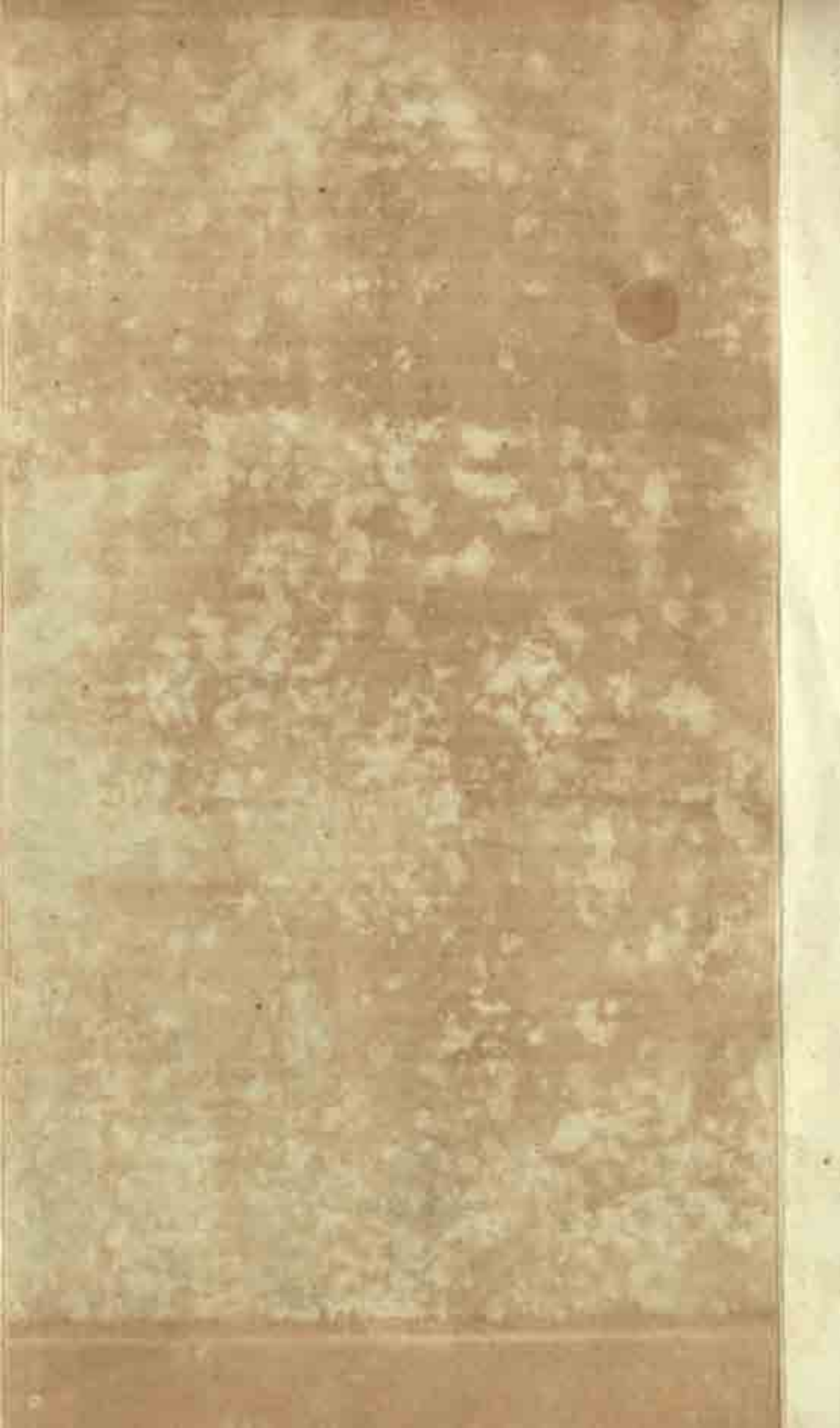
Between those ruins, and the last structures, which are toward the mountain, we observed some pilasters which were ornamented with figures resembling the others: But with this difference, that one of the women holds a crooked machine over the head of the man, who had also something in his hand, but it is now broken. Other machines like this are to be seen in the hands of several other figures, that seem to be disposed on the side of some great personages; and they may possibly be the tails of some Sea-horses, which are used even now by persons of quality in this country, to chase away the flies. They sometimes cost a hundred six-dollars a piece, and are inserted into golden handles, which are frequently garnished with jewels. The King, and the great lords likewise carry them fastened to the head of their horses, from whence they fall down over their breasts.

Near these two edifices are two very lofty stones, but the greatest part of the other structures are under the earth. Two portals, with their pilasters, are, however, to be seen at a little distance to the north; and one of these last supports the figures of a man and two women, one of which holds a parasol over his head. Above these women, we observed a figure with wings, which are expanded to the sides of the portal. The lower part of the bust of this little figure seems to terminate on the two sides with a spread of foliage, and a kind of freeze. Over the second figure, a man is seated in a chair, with a staff in his hand; and another stands behind

him, with his right hand upon the chair, and holding in his left something that is not to be distinguished. The little figure which appears above, holds a kind of circle in its left hand, and points to something with its right. Under this portal are three ranges of figures, all of which have their hands lifted up; and over the third pilaster, which still remains, two women hold a parasol above the head of a man. The earth is also covered with fragments of columns, and other antiquities, between which three bases are visible. These portals are nine feet in depth, with a breadth of the same dimension, and they are sunk into the earth to the depth of some feet.

We proceeded from hence to the last ruins of the structures that are on the side of the mountain, and whose circumference has been marked out. They are represented on the south side, where are two portals, under each of which a man is seated in a chair, with a staff in his right hand, and in his left a kind of vase. Behind him is another figure, which holds over his head a machine, like the tail of a sea-horse, and has a linen cloth in his right hand. Below there are three rows of other figures with lifted hands; four in the first, and five in each of the other two rows. They are three feet and four inches high, but the seated figure is much larger than the life. Above this are several ornamental ranges of foliage, the lowest of which is intermixed with small lions, and the highest with Oxen. Over those ornaments is a little winged figure, which holds in its left hand some thing which resembles a small glass, and makes a signal with its right. The rest of the figures resemble those others that have been already described.

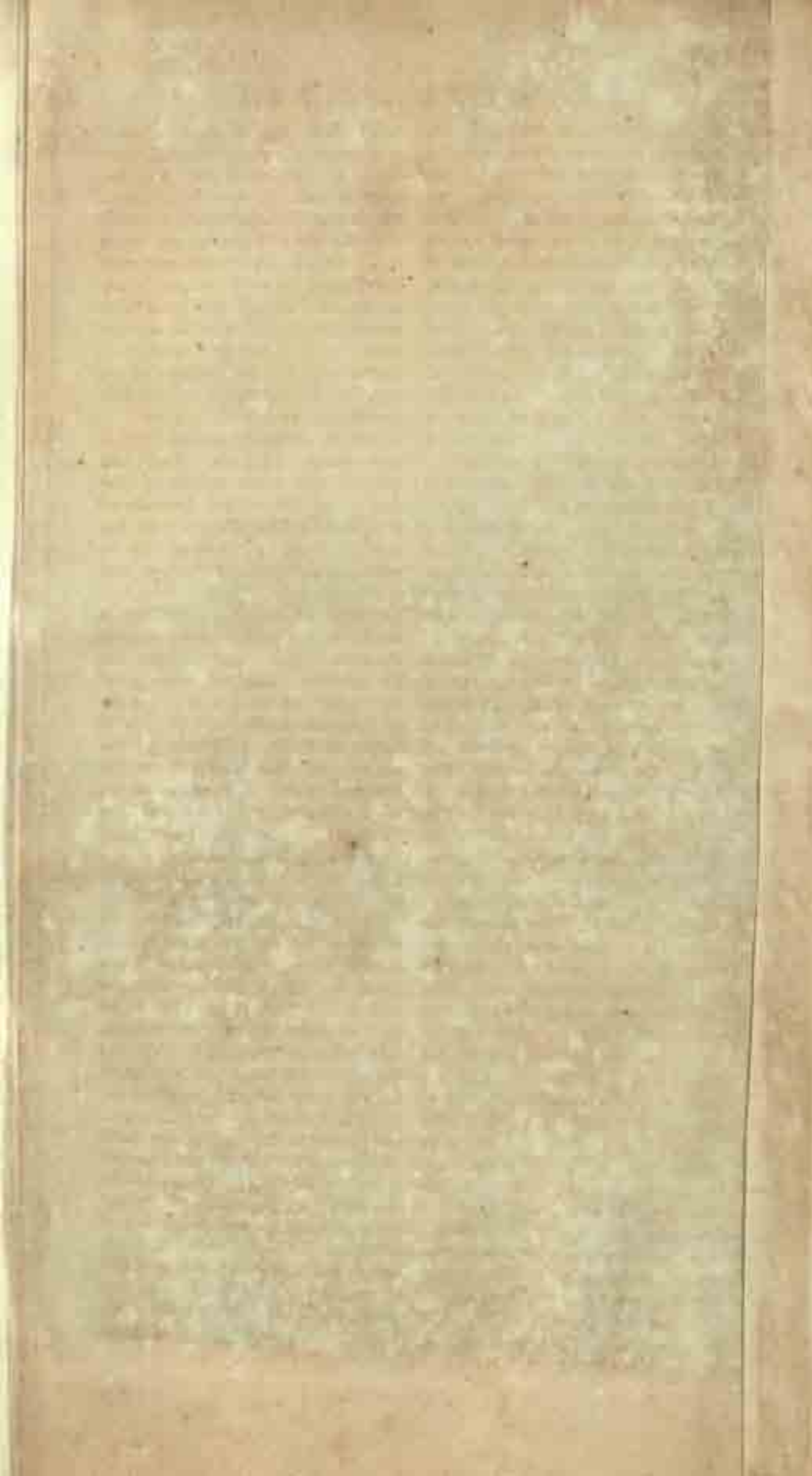
These portals are twelve feet and five inches in breadth, and ten feet four inches deep. Their pilasters are composed of seven stones, and are about six feet in thickness. The highest are from twenty eight to thirty feet. On the two which are













1704. wards the north, a man is seated, with a person behind him, like the preceding figures; and behind this are two other men holding in their hands something which is broken. there are likewise two other figures, before him that is seated, one of which places his hands on his hips with an air of salutation, and the other holds a small vessel. Above these figures is a stone filled with ornaments, but it is not so high as the others that have been already described. Below the person who is represented sitting, are five ranges of figures, three feet in height; these are a band of soldiers armed in different manners.

In one of these portals to the east, we observed the figure of a man encountering a lion; and in another compartment, a man fighting with a bull. We likewise beheld, under the two portals to the west, several figures of lions, one of which is represented with wings. Those to the east and west, are much lower than those to the north and south, and the figures are sunk up to the knees in the earth. The other portals are likewise sunk in the manner represented in one of the plates of these ruins. Each of them had nine niches or windows on every side, but they are all destroyed, in a great measure. It is evident, however, that none of them were open, except those that front the north, three of which, that were disposed in the middle, are still entire, and open so as to shew a prospect through them. The pilasters, as well as the architrave, are composed almost of one stone, but their cornices are broken. These portals are eleven feet and five inches deep, and four feet ten inches wide. Several pieces of columns, bases, and ornaments, lie scattered between these structures, and their number may amount to about thirty or forty. All the last that have been mentioned, amount to 119, which being added to the seventy six that were first specified, complete the number of 195.

The first large stones of the rock, 1704. that appear on the side of these structures to the north, are the pilasters of two grand portals, one of which resembled the two that were erected at the stair-case of the front wall; the other is adorned with two vast figures of men armed with lances, and likewise holds a machine which corresponds with those that have been formerly mentioned. There were also two others, disposed in the same manner, a little farther to the west, and fronting the former, as appears by the little which now remains of them. There are likewise two other portals to the north, like those of the stair-case of the facade; and though they are now in ruins, the animals with which they were ornamented, are still distinguishable. There is also a vast fragment of stone resembling a horse's head, but it is now sunk into the earth. This figure induces me to conclude, that the other pilasters were embellished with heads of the same nature; and several figures of beasts, fragments of columns, and other broken stones, are scattered about in great numbers, on the side of these ruins, but nothing is to be distinguished among those that lie to the north.

After this general description of these famous ruins, it will be proper to offer a particular account of them, as they are represented in four general plates, and four different points of sight; and where the principal fragments, and even the separate pieces, are exhibited to view. The first plate is marked N° 117. and represents the facade to the west, the particular members of which are distinguished by letters. A. marks out the grand stair-case in the front of the edifice. B. the two grand portals with two columns. C. the only remaining column of twelve. D. the seven which are left out of thirty six. E. the five columns, which are all that are now standing of the twelve, that were disposed along the wall of the facade. F. the four  
which



1704. which remain of the twelve that were placed towards the mountains. The other ruins could not be represented in this plate, the hill from whence the design was taken, not being high enough for that purpose. G. represents one of the tombs on the mountain. H. the highest structure on a hill. I. the last ruins to the south. K. the other tomb on the mountain. L. the portal to the north, placed without the structures.

The second view.

The second view was taken at the foot of the mountain to the south, and is represented in plate 118. which exhibits a direct prospect of the ruins to the east, with the highest edifice at the western entrance; at the wall of which were the two grand ascents of stairs, already described. That to the left is distinguished by the letter A; but the ruins of the other are not visible on this side any more than the column, which rises to the left, without the edifice. The two mountains on which the fortresses were erected, are marked by B; and the town of *Mier-chai-keen*, with the gardens before it, by C. Two villages are represented a little beyond it, in a distant prospect.

The third view.

The third view, exhibited in plate 119, was designed from the east, and under the first tomb on the mountain, before which are two hills of sand. From this situation the prospect opens upon all the ruins separated from one another; and I chose this point of sight, and the eminence which commands it, for the satisfaction of those who shall have the curiosity to consult this work. That particular portion of them, which is situated towards the mountains, as I have already intimated, is visible at the east entrance into the ruins, and is distinguished by the letter A. The columns behind are marked out by B; and on the right of these, the two portals which are near the stair-case of the facade, are represented at the letter C. Several fragments of stone on the same side, together

with other columns on the left, and which stand on an eminence beyond the two portals, already described, are exhibited at D. After which those of the lofty edifice to the south, before which is a stair-case to the east, appear at the letter E. The other portals are expressed at F. And the last part, to the south, by G. The column, which stands alone, in the fields, is likewise represented; and beyond this, the villages and mountains, together with the town of *Mier-chai-keen*, are to be seen at H.

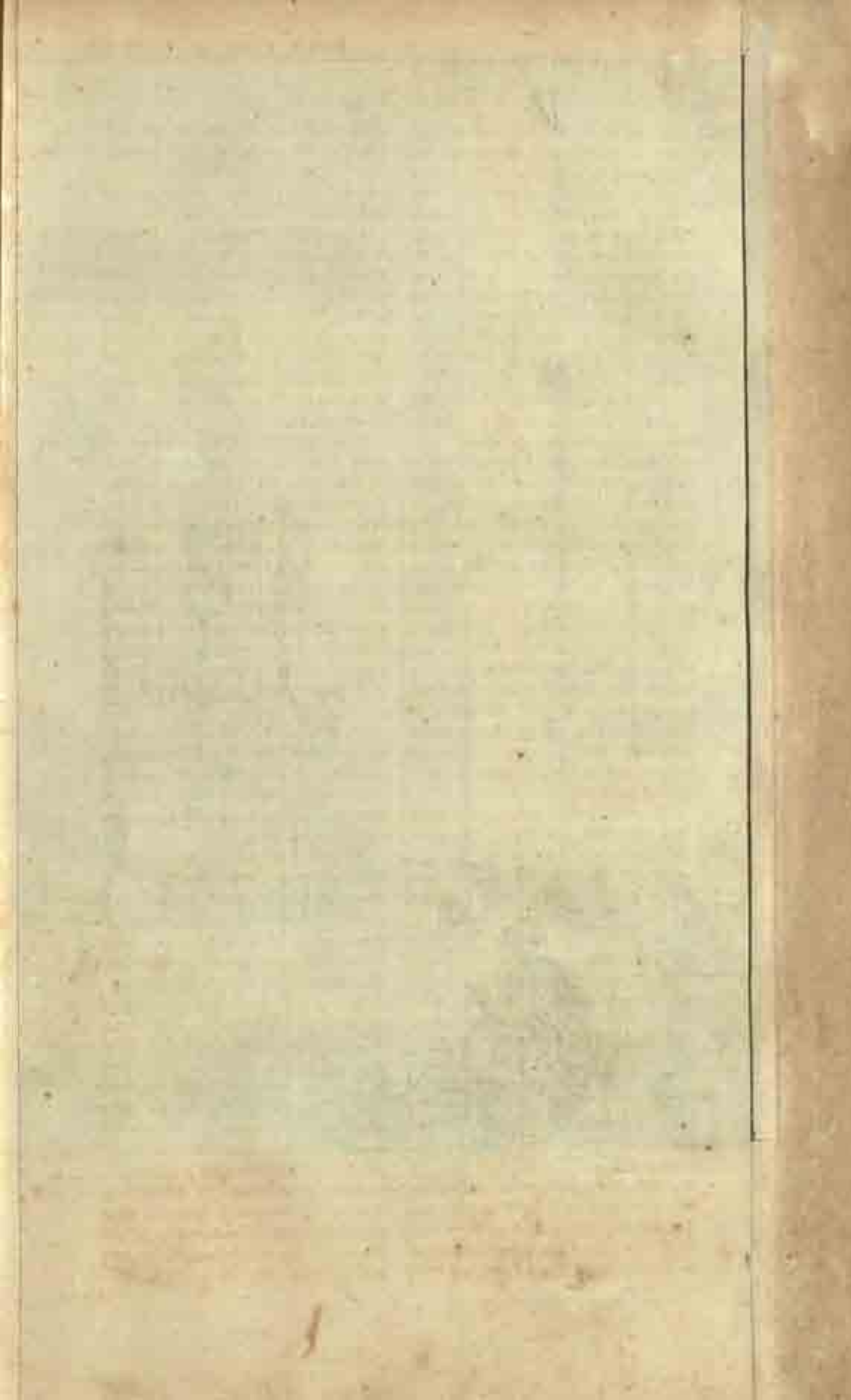
The fourth view, represented in plate 120, was designed on the northern quarter, above the edifice, and at an angle of the highest wall, which has the greatest projection, in form of a stair-case, as well on this side as on the other. This situation presents to the view part of the stair-case of the facade, before which are the two grand portals, and the two columns. The wall, and likewise the stair-case, adorned with figures up the ascent to the place where the columns stand, are marked by the letter A. Beyond these, several other ruins, with those on the side of the mountain, and likewise the two tombs, are represented at B and C; and on the other side, the column appears alone in the fields.

We will now proceed to a description of each particular piece, and begin with the two portals, and the two columns, which are represented in plate 121. The design of these was drawn on a quarter to the south, by which means, part of the stair-case of the facade, and the end of the wall to the north, are rendered visible. One of the Sphinxes of the first portal, adorned with broken ornaments, is delineated in the plate 122. And in plate 123, is to be seen a winged animal, under the second portal. The stair-case of the facade, designed from a northern situation, is exhibited in plate 124. We have likewise added in plate 125, the steps of the wall, which ascend to the columns: This view was drawn to the west, on the front wall

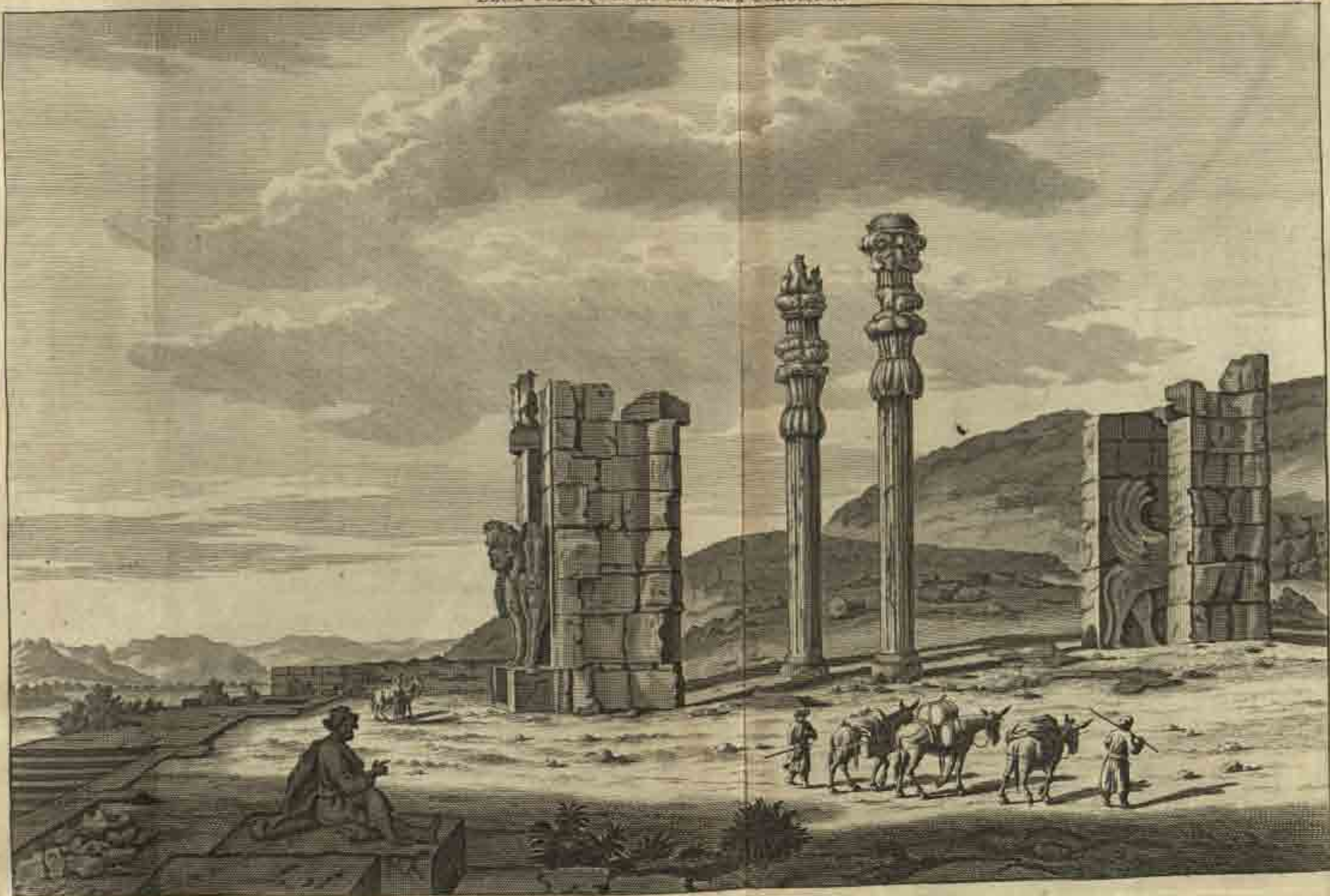
1704.

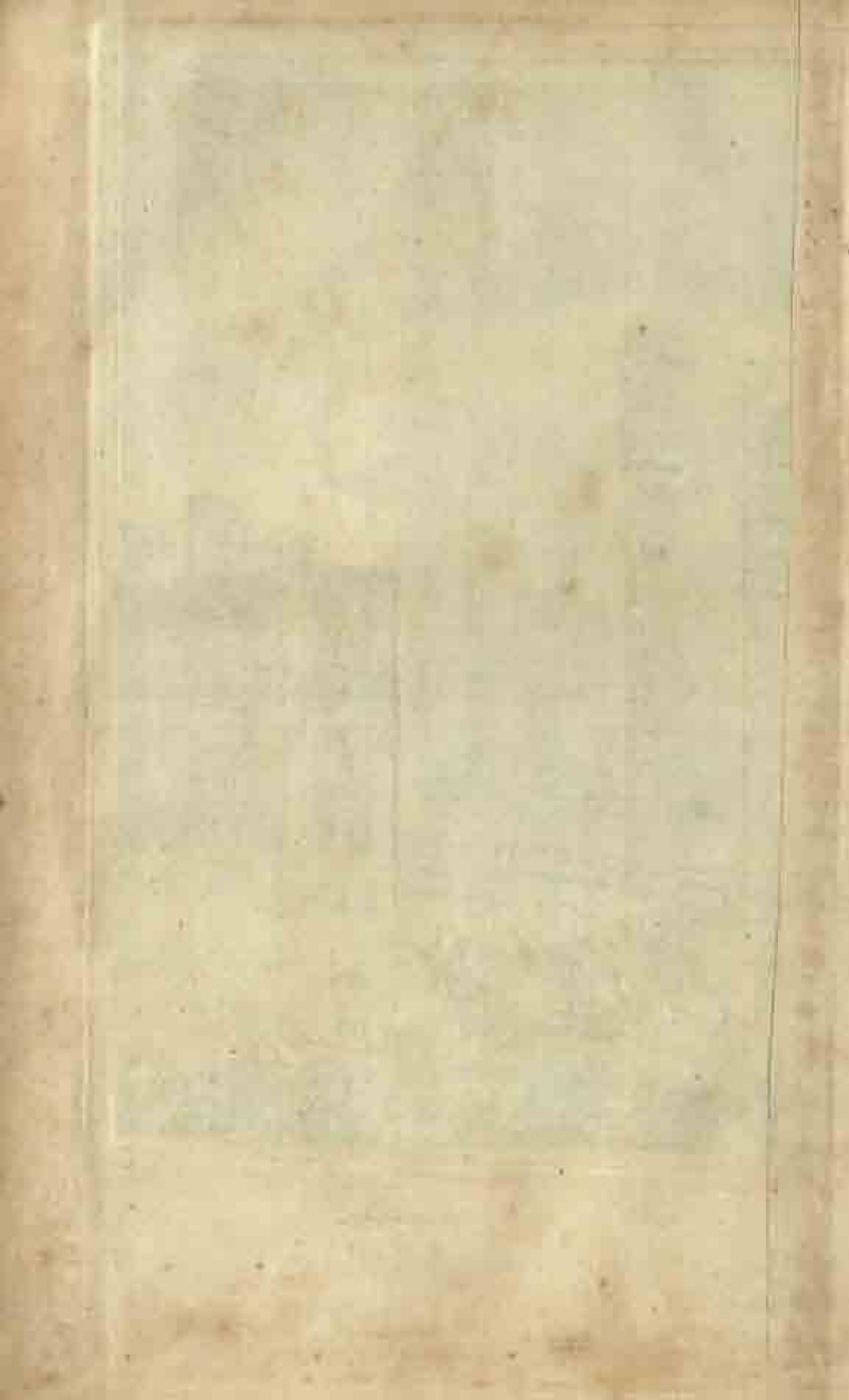
The fourth view.

A particular description of the second portal.



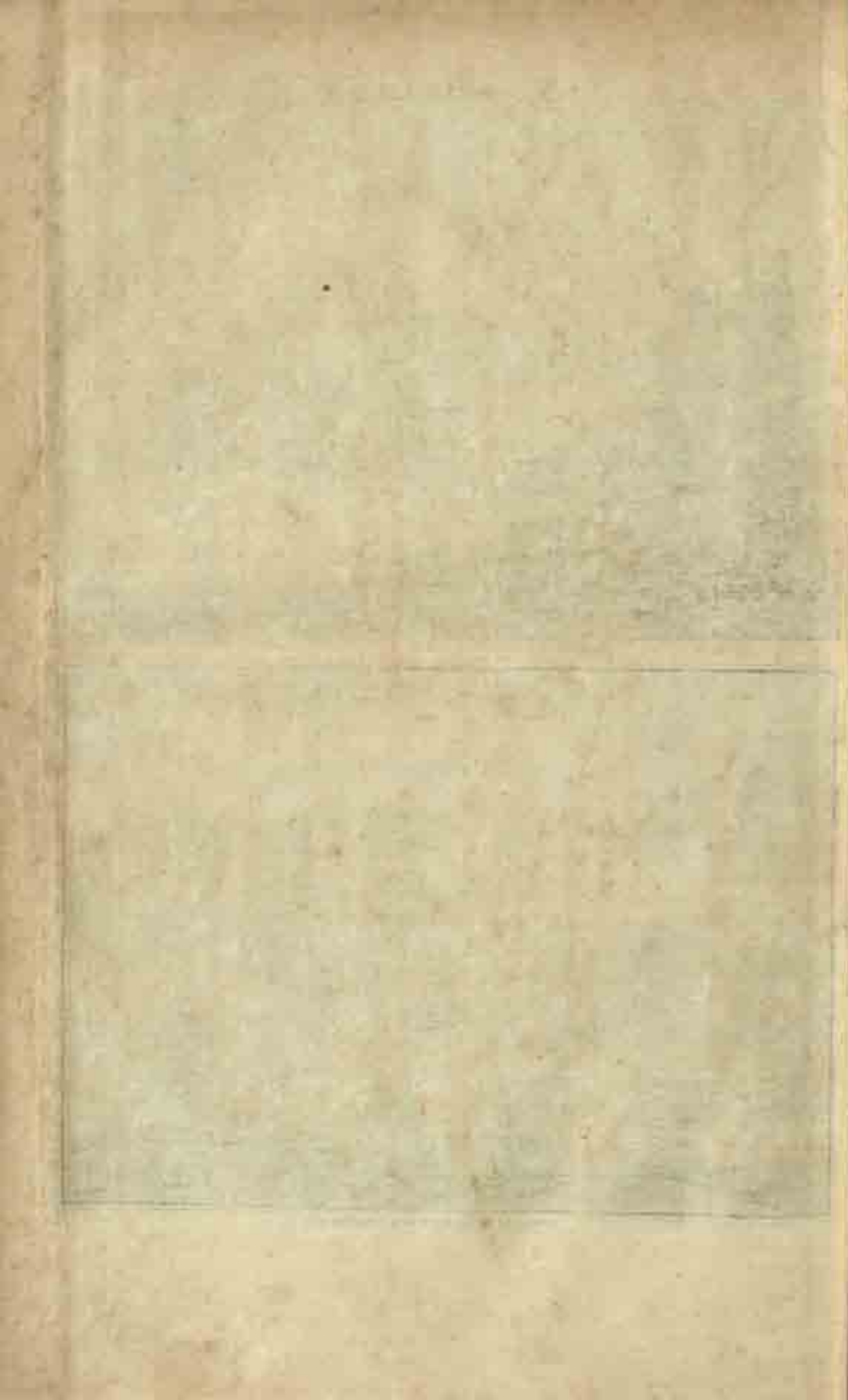




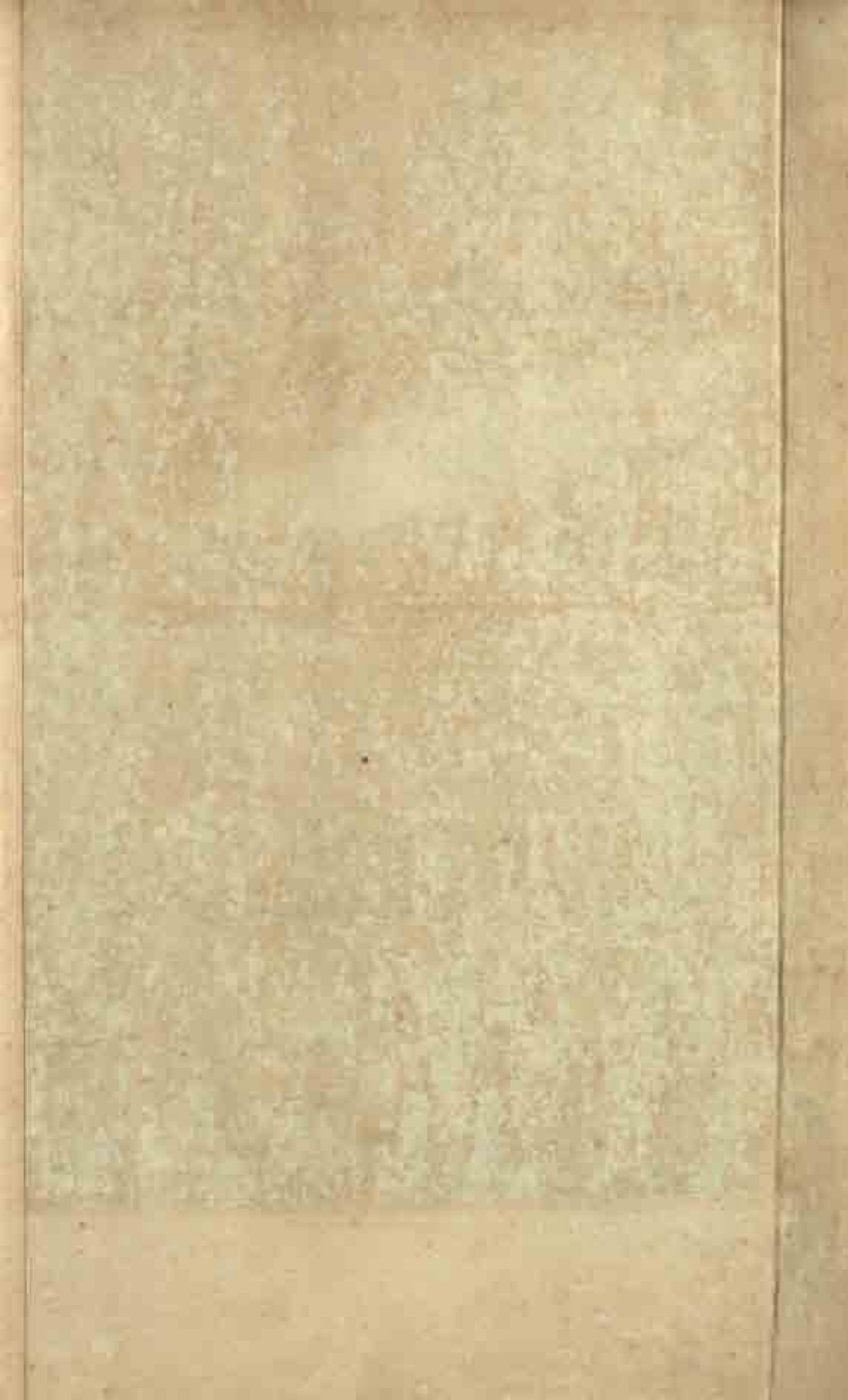




























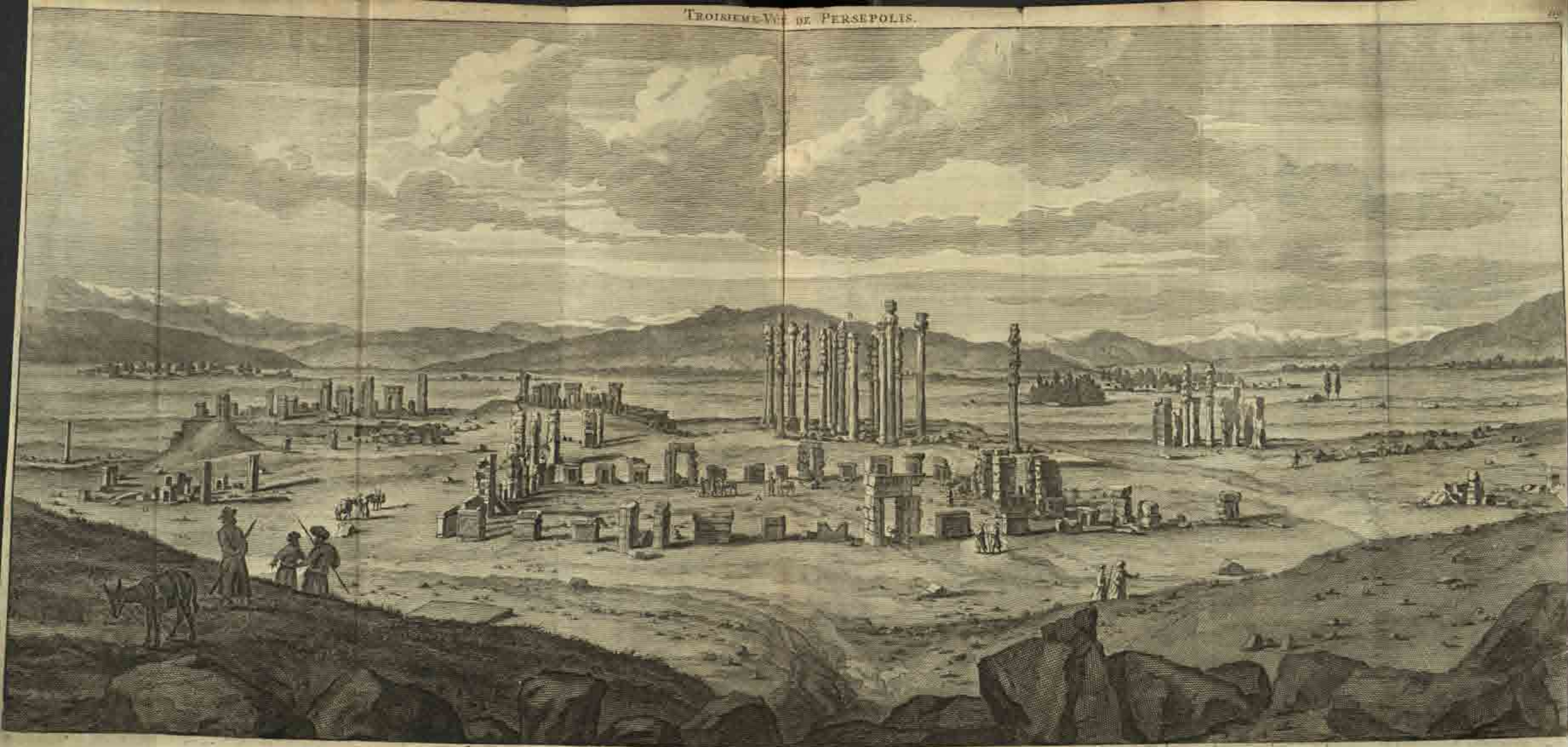
















1704. wall of the edifice, from whence part of the stair-case of the facade is seen, together with the two portals, and the two columns; and likewise some other columns, with the mountain, all which are represented in this plate. In the 126th are exhibited the figures which appear on the wings of this stair-case to the west, with several characters: and the 127th plate represents the figures that are still remaining on the east side of the same stair-case.

The first six figures which appear at the entrance of the stair-case to the east, are smaller than the rest, and have large vestments, with great plaited sleeves; and a round bonnet rising in plaits, and larger in the upper than the lower part. They are likewise represented with hair and long beards. Each of them holds a lance in the right hand, and a quiver of arrows is fastened to the back with a strap carried over the shoulder. The figure which precedes all the others, holds the next by the left hand, and grasps a fork with its right. It seems to represent an ecclesiastic at the head of a procession of others: it is likewise arrayed with a large robe, with a girdle hanging down very low.

The three figures by which these are succeeded, have shorter robes and sleeves, with upper, and under vests, and pointed bonnets formed into five plaits. These last are properly the *Tiarras*, which are also called *Reflexa*, because they are sloped into a curve behind, as the *Tiara Phrygia* are those which are bent before. One of these appears on the head of *Ulysses* on ancient medals. Two of these figures hold a little bucket in each hand, and the third has two hoops. This last is followed by two horses, drawing a chariot, and by two other figures that place their left arms, one on the back, and the other on the neck of the horses. They are all represented with hair and beards; some are likewise bare-headed, others have a bandage, or a kind of diadem, folded round their

Vol. II.

heads. Between each compartment of six or seven figures, a kind of vase appears, and the two first figures always hold each other by the hand. An horse, led by the bridle, is represented in the second division, and two figures bear something that resembles a vestment. There are five of these figures in the third compartment with little buckets, and two others with large bowls. Those in the fourth are not habited so well as the others, since they have only a short and very strait vest, together with a cincture and long drawers, which are likewise strait and plaited. Three of these figures have also little buckets in their hands, and are followed by a camel, that has two bunches rising on his back, with a halter, and a little bell hung about his neck, after the manner of the eastern caravans, that the sound may be heard at a distance, especially when they pass through narrow defiles or bad ways, where some of the company ought to stop, to give the others an opportunity of passing on. These bells likewise give notice in the night to the inhabitants, of the caravans arrival at those places where the company are to lodge: it is likewise a signal to those who have lost their way, and enables them to rejoin their companions.

The last compartment is distinguished by a figure bearing a pole before him on his shoulders, with a pot suspended at each extremity; and in each of these pots are seen little water vessels in an upright position. The habit of this figure is likewise but indifferent. A mule or an ass is represented next, with two men armed with poles; and these are followed by another figure bearing two mallets. Several other characters appear next, and last of all a great lion encountering a bull or some other animal, from whose forehead a horn is extended. The stair-case, around which several broken figures appear, presents itself to view in this place. We counted forty eight figures of men and beasts in

G

this



1704. this range, and as many in that above. The first six are meanly habited, and each of them has some vestment in its hand. Those that follow, carry the same, and are arrayed in a better manner, but most of them are greatly impaired by time. These are succeeded by an ox led with a halter. The only difference between this and the third compartment is, that in the latter two rams are led, and each of them has a large crooked horn deflected towards the earth. After these appears a figure armed with a buckler, and another, leading a horse by the bridle, followed by a third with two hoops. The other three are habited like the preceding figures, and they march before a led ox, that is followed by a man armed with a lance and shield, behind whom appears two other figures, each of which has three lances, and their sleeves are longer than their vests. The last figures that follow, have very short vests, with drawers that are long and strait, and which fall down to their feet. They are likewise armed with long bucklers hanging at the girdles of their waists. Two of them have hoops in their hands, and another a fork; and they are followed by a horse led by the bridle. These figures are represented in two divisions which follow the letter A.

The eastern range contains the first twenty eight figures, including the stair-case, each of which grasps a lance with both hands. Their vests are long and wide, and they are represented with hair and beards, and seem to be bare-headed, unless we may rather suppose them to wear a plaited bandage, or a kind of diadem. These are succeeded by a set of other figures, armed with long bucklers, which are pointed and bent at one end; together with a short and broad dagger, hung at the girdle of their waists; and their vests have an inequality in their length. They resemble the last figures in the attire of their heads; they have likewise some ornament in one hand, and

the other is placed upon their beard. 1704. This range consists of sixty figures, the last of which are entirely defaced. These three divisions follow the letters A. and B.

All these figures, ranged in the disposition we have described, seem to represent some triumph, or a procession of people bearing presents to the king, which was very customary under the ancient Monarchs of *Persia*, and is practised to this day. Presents of this nature are offered to the king on the twentieth of *March*, which is the festival of the new solar year; and I have been a spectator of this solemnity, as has been formerly intimated.

When we left these columns, we proceeded to the first portal, which stands to the south, the inward prospect of which I drew on a spot of ground to the east. The last window on the right, is in the western part of this pile, as may be seen in plate 128. with the portals lateral to each other; the back view of which is here represented, together with the ruined stair-case already mentioned, and which is disposed between this, and the highest edifice.

The inward prospect of the northern portal is exhibited in plate 129. and that of the western, in plate 130. The three compartments of characters, which appear on the lofty pilaster to the south, are delineated in plate 131. and the three compartments of characters on the portal itself, in plate 132.

The seven divisions of characters, which once appeared on the folds of the large outward robe of the principal figure, have been broken off in part; but I have replaced them in the best manner I was able, and they are represented in plate 133.

Those that were disposed round the windows, are exhibited in plate 134. The first is the upper range; the second filled the right side of the window; and the third, that of the left, in the manner they are carved in







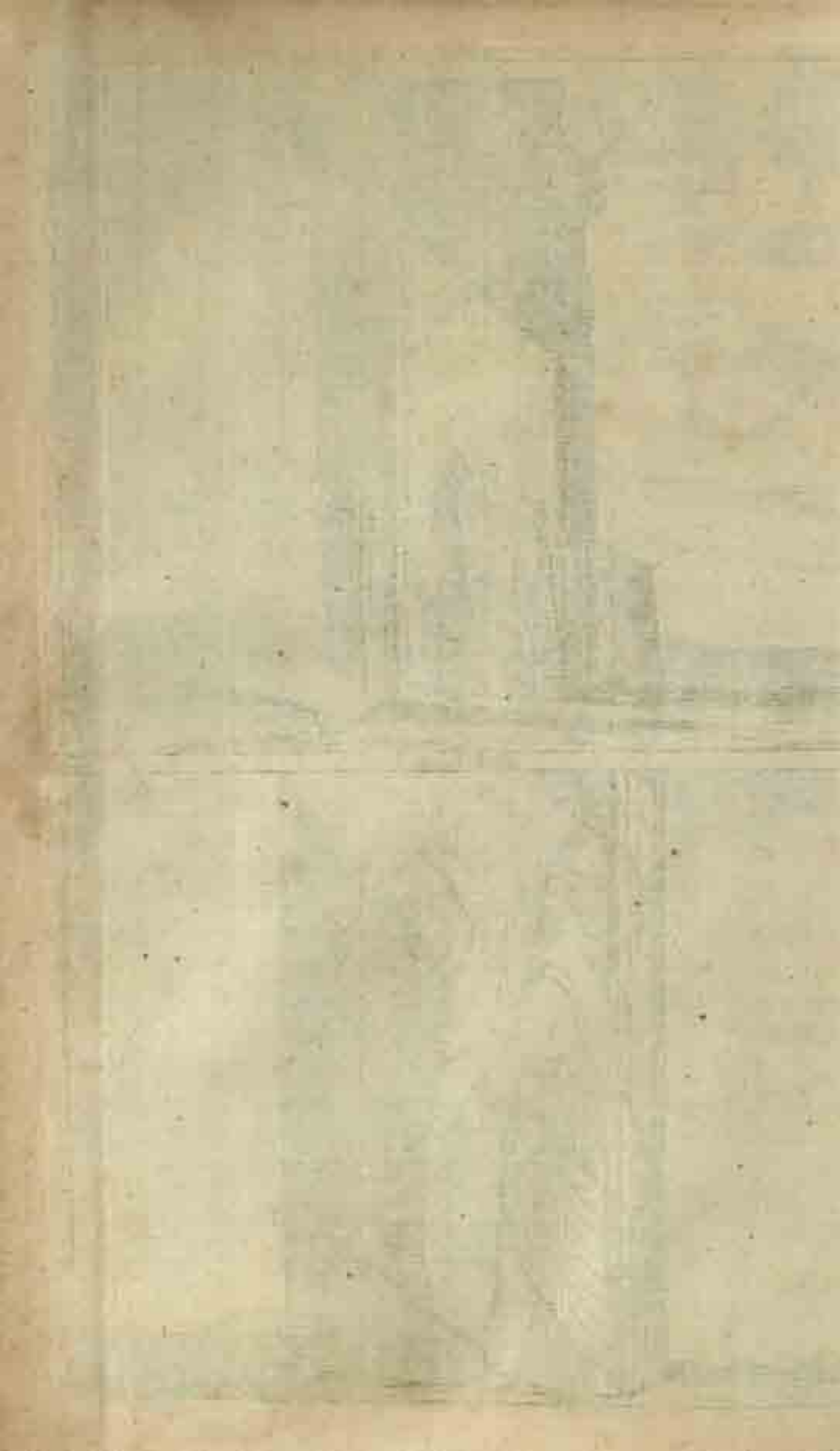






PORTIQUE











2000

110

一 二 三 四 五 六 七 八 九 十 十一 十二 十三 十四 十五 十六 十七 十八 十九 二十 二十一 二十二 二十三 二十四 二十五 二十六 二十七 二十八 二十九 三十 三十一 三十二 三十三 三十四 三十五 三十六 三十七 三十八 三十九 四十 四十一 四十二 四十三 四十四 四十五 四十六 四十七 四十八 四十九 五十 五十一 五十二 五十三 五十四 五十五 五十六 五十七 五十八 五十九 六十 六十一 六十二 六十三 六十四 六十五 六十六 六十七 六十八 六十九 七十 七十一 七十二 七十三 七十四 七十五 七十六 七十七 七十八 七十九 八十 八十一 八十二 八十三 八十四 八十五 八十六 八十七 八十八 八十九 九十 九十一 九十二 九十三 九十四 九十五 九十六 九十七 九十八 九十九 一百

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

*[The following section contains several lines of handwritten text in Devanagari script, which appears to be bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]*

而與所出州而及一而KY<作第又二而而與合本合<而<<一合<合<而而而KY而KY而一而而而

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840.

卷之四十五

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840.

[illegible]

1. Il n'appartient qu'au Duc de donner de la force.

وَاللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ  
 شيركان در اسلام  
 ليهما يندى  
 لي بو fant pas trop se  
 fier à ses propres L'umbray.

ماکرانہ کی تاریخ  
الشیخ محمد حسن

3. *Quod tunc qui ad vultu*  
*deum amari dicitur quod a pa-*  
*tri est in deum*

4. Tout passera mais Dieu subsistera éternellement  
C'est moi Monsieur All. qui ai écrit ceci



5. *All' secondo Profeta di  
Nome Mahometan.*



1700

...

...

...

...

1704.

PORTIQUES AU DEHORS.

1704.



all the other windows. The sculpture of them appears as perfect, as if they were but newly carved, as is evinced by those fragments of them, which I brought away with me; and this circumstance may be ascribed to the hardness of the stone on which they were impressed.

I found, within the opening of one of these windows, several other characters less antient than the others, and which have been carved since them. They are *Arabic* letters, and are exhibited on the left side of plate 135, and on the right of plate 136, together with their explication.

As to the other characters of great antiquity, they are no longer known, and I made several ineffectual attempts to obtain a discovery of their meaning, without being able to find any person, who could decypher a single letter. This disappointment, however, did not prevent me from

being at the pains to copy them exactly, in hopes of meeting with some priest among the *Gachras*, who could afford me some light with relation to them, and the event shall be related at large in the sequel of this work.

My ardent desire to examine these superb ruins with the greatest care, and to render them more known to the curious than they had been till then, caused me to send for a stonemason of *Zie-ras*, or *Chiras*, whose assistance I had occasion for in the execution of my design; the hardness of the rocks having blunted all the chisels I had brought from *Ispahan*, so that they were no longer useful to me. This person however succeeded no better than my self, and all his instruments were soon reduced to the same condition as mine, though they were much larger and stronger. Notwithstanding which, my earnest desire to convey some of these

The discovery of the antient characters.



1704 these precious antiquities into my native country, would not permit me to rest till I had cut off a fragment of a window, that was filled with characters, the representation of which will be found in plate 137. I likewise brought away a little broken figure copied in plate 137. as large as the original; two pieces of hands, in plate 139. part of the body of another small figure, in plate 140. and a little piece of one of one of the smallest figures in a portal, exhibited in plate 141. I was very desirous to bring away some others, but found it impossible, because they flew off in shivers with the strokes of our tools.

The principal piece which I endeavoured to procure, was a figure cut on a stone detached from the rock that formed the grand staircase. As this stone was thick, I flattered myself that I should be able to separate the whole figure from it, by dint of time and patience; but it shivered into three pieces, in spite of all my precautions. I, however, rejoined them in the best manner I was able, and Monsieur Kasselein undertook to deliver it, as he passed by *Zie-rari*, into the hands of Monsieur Hoorn, governor-general of our *India* company; and that he would request him, at the same time, to transmit it to *Holland*, the first opportunity, to Monsieur *Wistien*, burgo-master of *Amsterdam*, to whom I intended to present it, as some acknowledgment of the obligations he had conferred upon me. This figure is represented in plate 142.

The 143d plate exhibits to view a pilaster of the lofty edifice to the north, and on which is seen the figure of a man of rank, with two women, one of whom holds a parasol over his head; the other drives away the flies with the tail of a sea horse; for I took all those figures for women, which held these tails and parasols that were much used in ancient times.

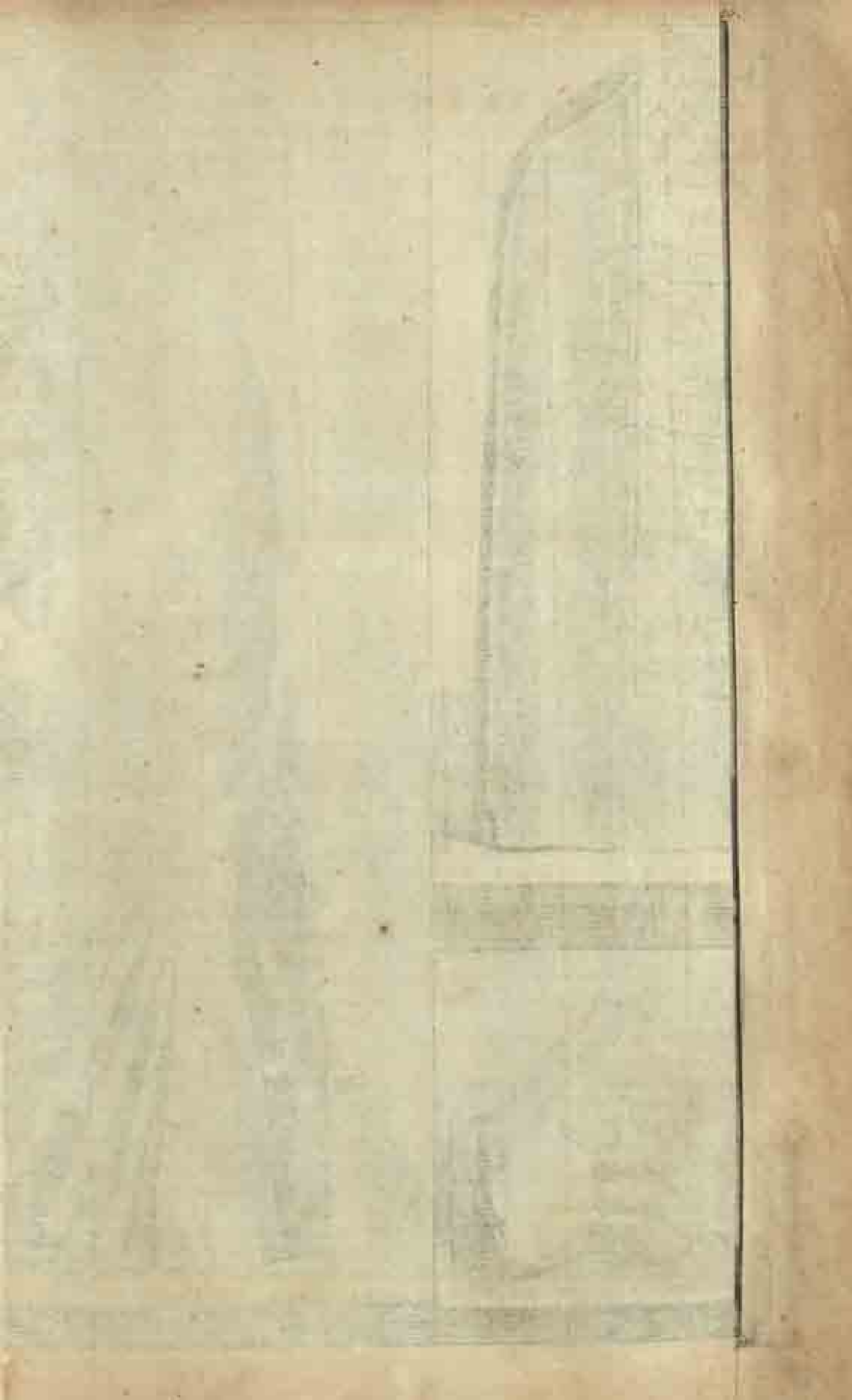
On another piece of the high edifice to the west, and fronting a

kind of window, may be seen three 1704. figures of men, greatly decayed. The foremost has a bonnet, which passes under his chin, like those which were worn by the ancient Magi, when they celebrated divine service. This fragment of the edifice is represented in plate 144.

The 145th plate represents another pilaster of the same edifice, on which may be seen two men armed with lances or pikes, to the east; and on the side of them is a fluted machine, which extends to the chin. There was another reversed on the side of the same edifice, which presents the appearance of a man combating a lion, and grasping a sword in his left hand, agreeably to the representation in plate 146.

In one of the niches, or windows, of this edifice to the south, are to be seen two figures of men, with a goat, that has a large bending horn, by which one of the figures holds him with his left hand, and lays the other on his neck. The first of these figures has likewise a bonnet, which is brought under his chin; and in his left hand, he holds something that was perhaps employed in oblations. These figures are exhibited in plate 147; and the 148th plate represents the pilaster of a portal, on one side of the edifice last mentioned, on which appears three figures half buried; one of which holds the tail of a sea horse above the head of a man of distinction, whose bonnet, hair, and beard, resemble those that appear on the bust of *Asfaxes*, on medals.

All the rest of the edifice, which is to the south, had a flat cornice without any ornament, and which was continued through the whole length of the wall. There are still to be seen four openings that resemble windows, and are partly buried in the earth. The whole wall, except the uppermost stones, is cut out of the natural rock; the steps of the stair-case, which are likewise shaped out of the rock, are seven feet and seven inches long, and two inches and a half high. This stair-case becomes









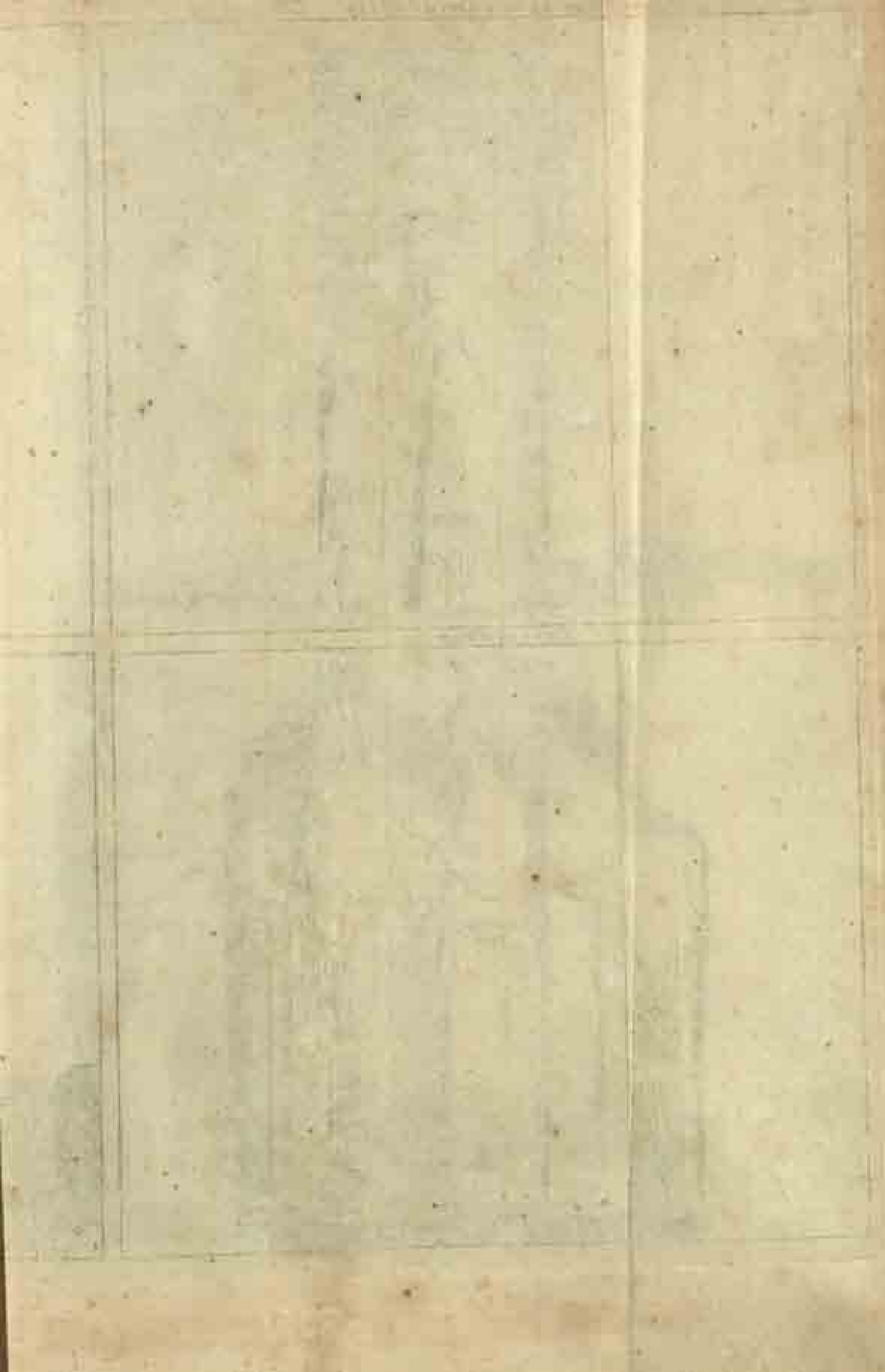














FIGURES D'HOMMES

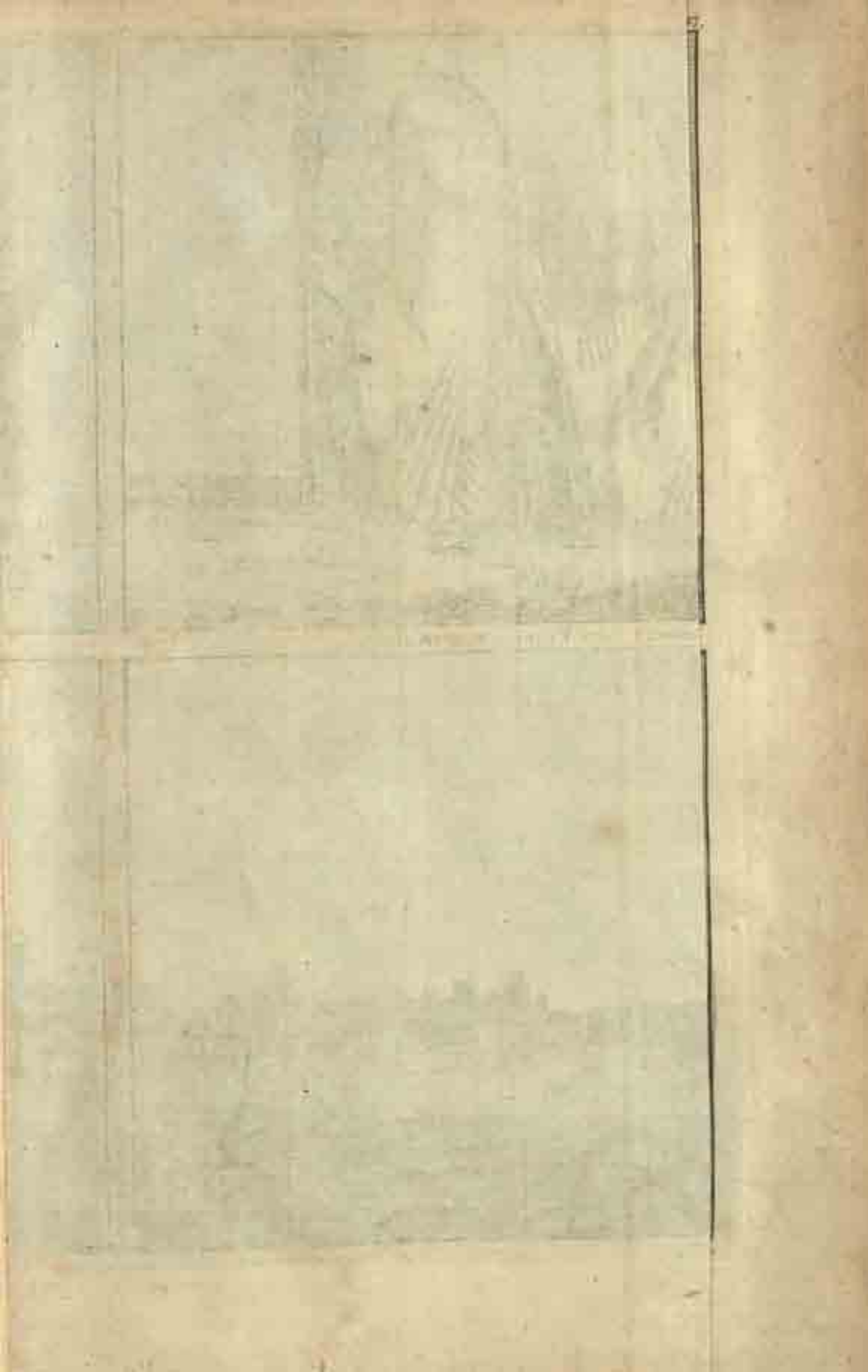


PIECE D'UN PILASTRE

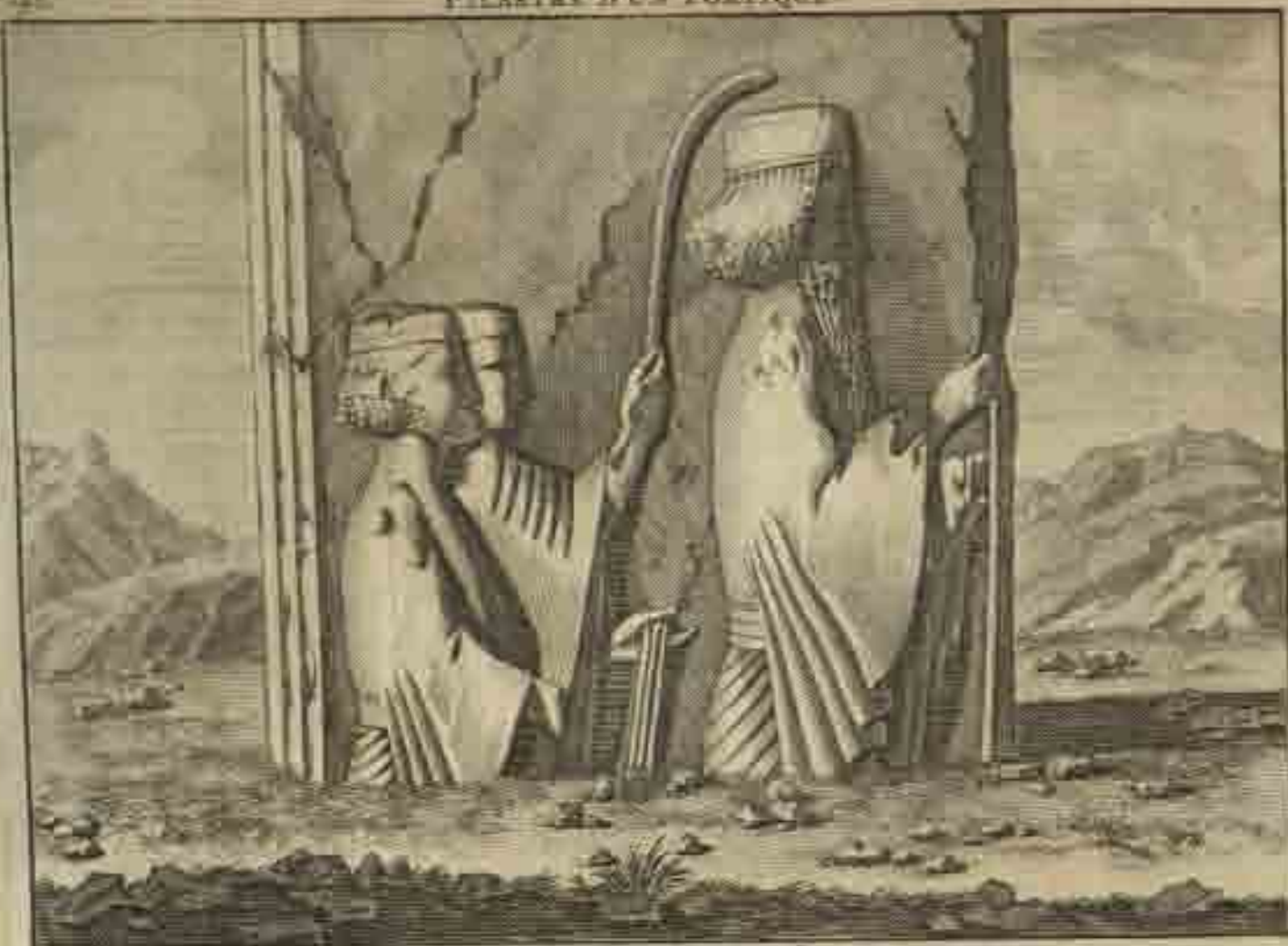








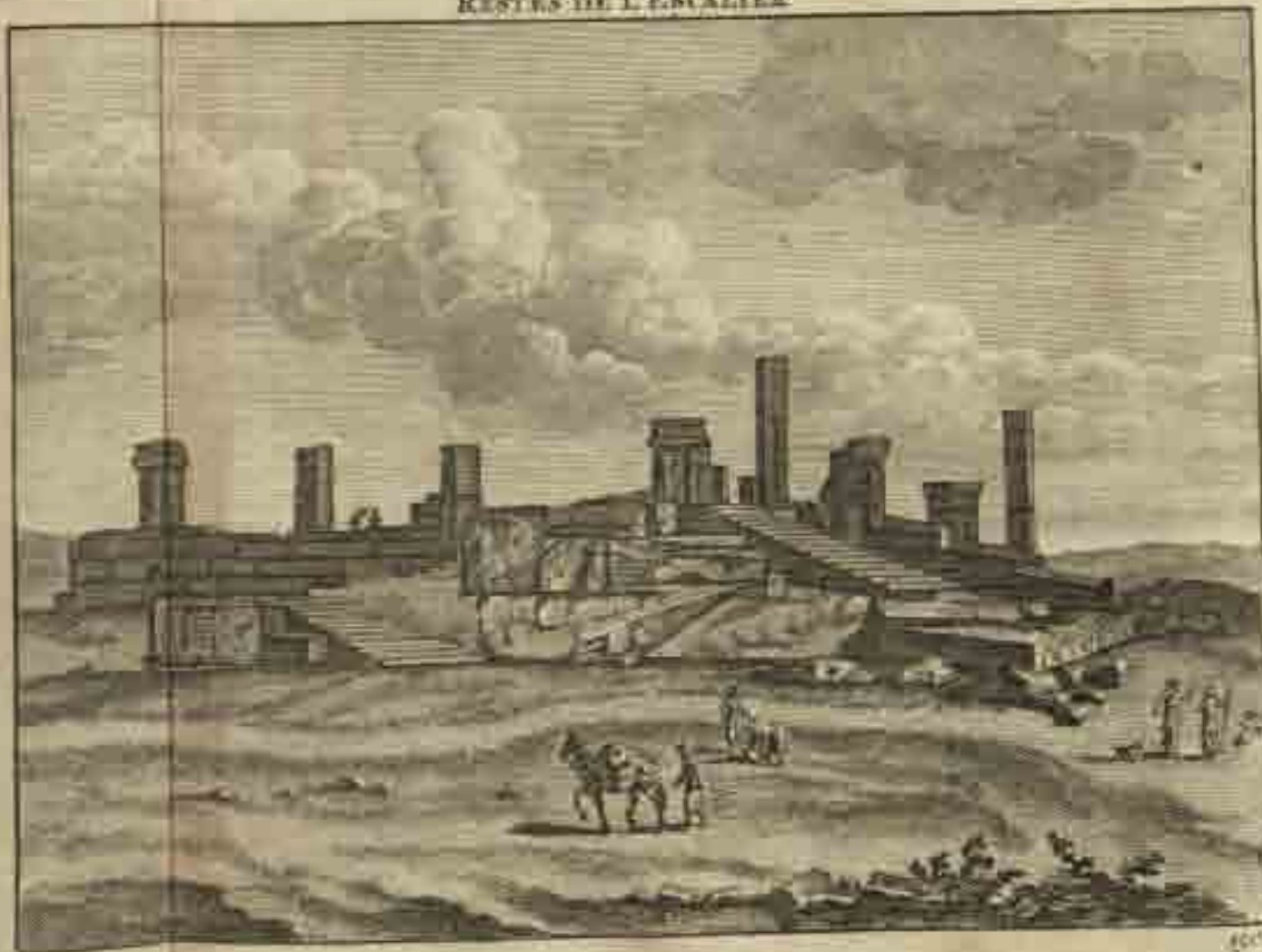


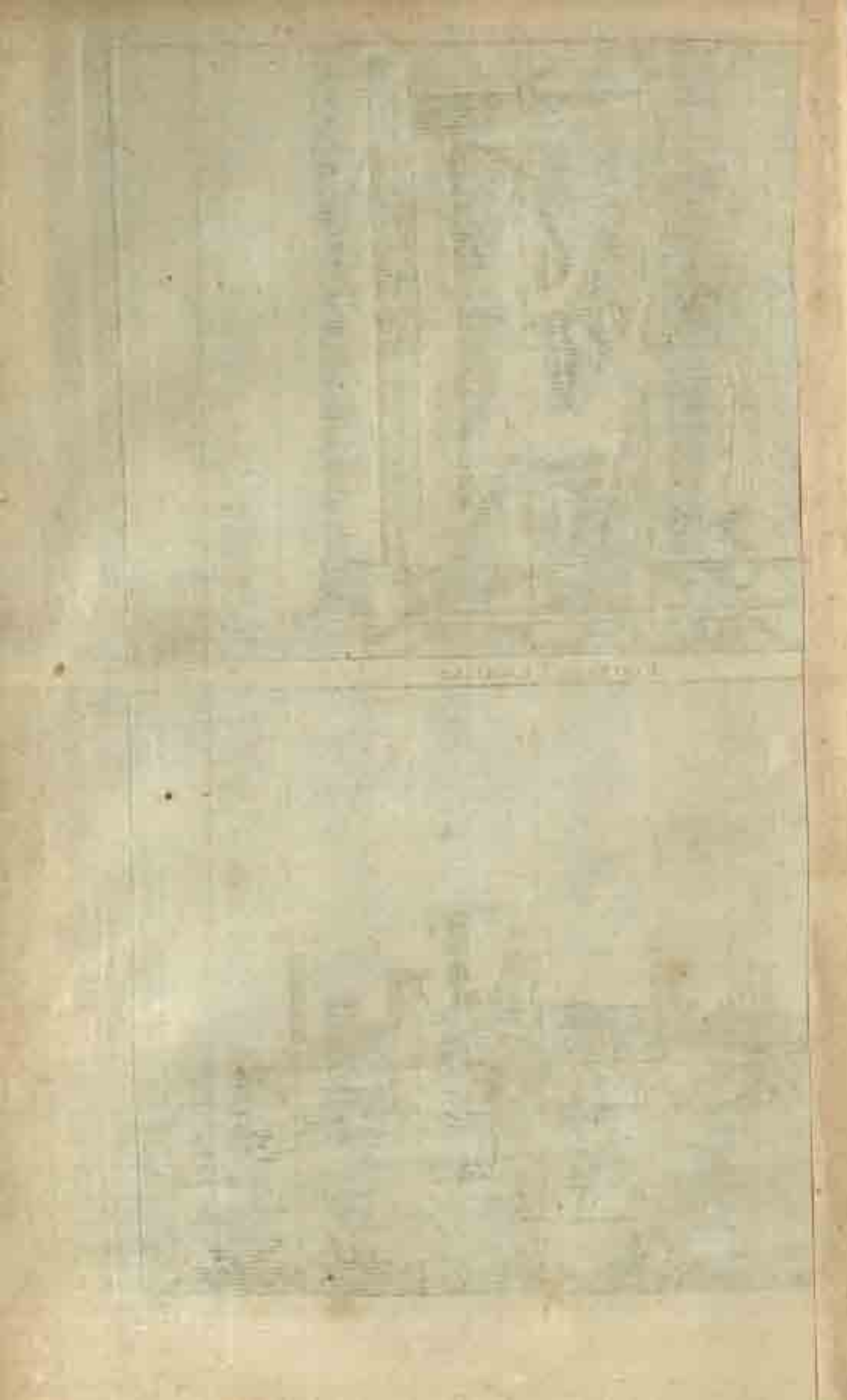


PROSPECT DE L'ÉDIFICE PAR DERRIÈRE.

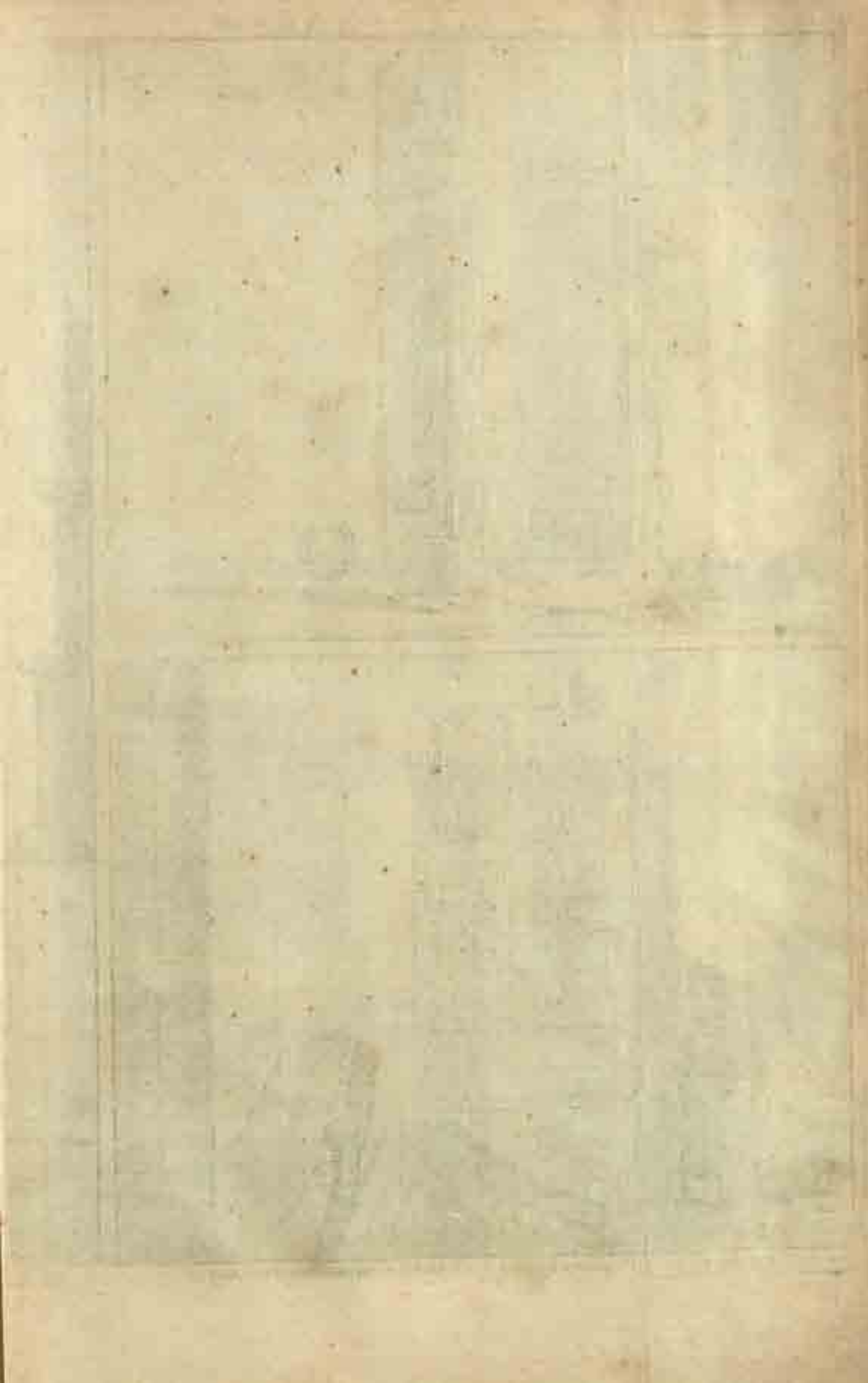


RESTES DE L'ESCALIER







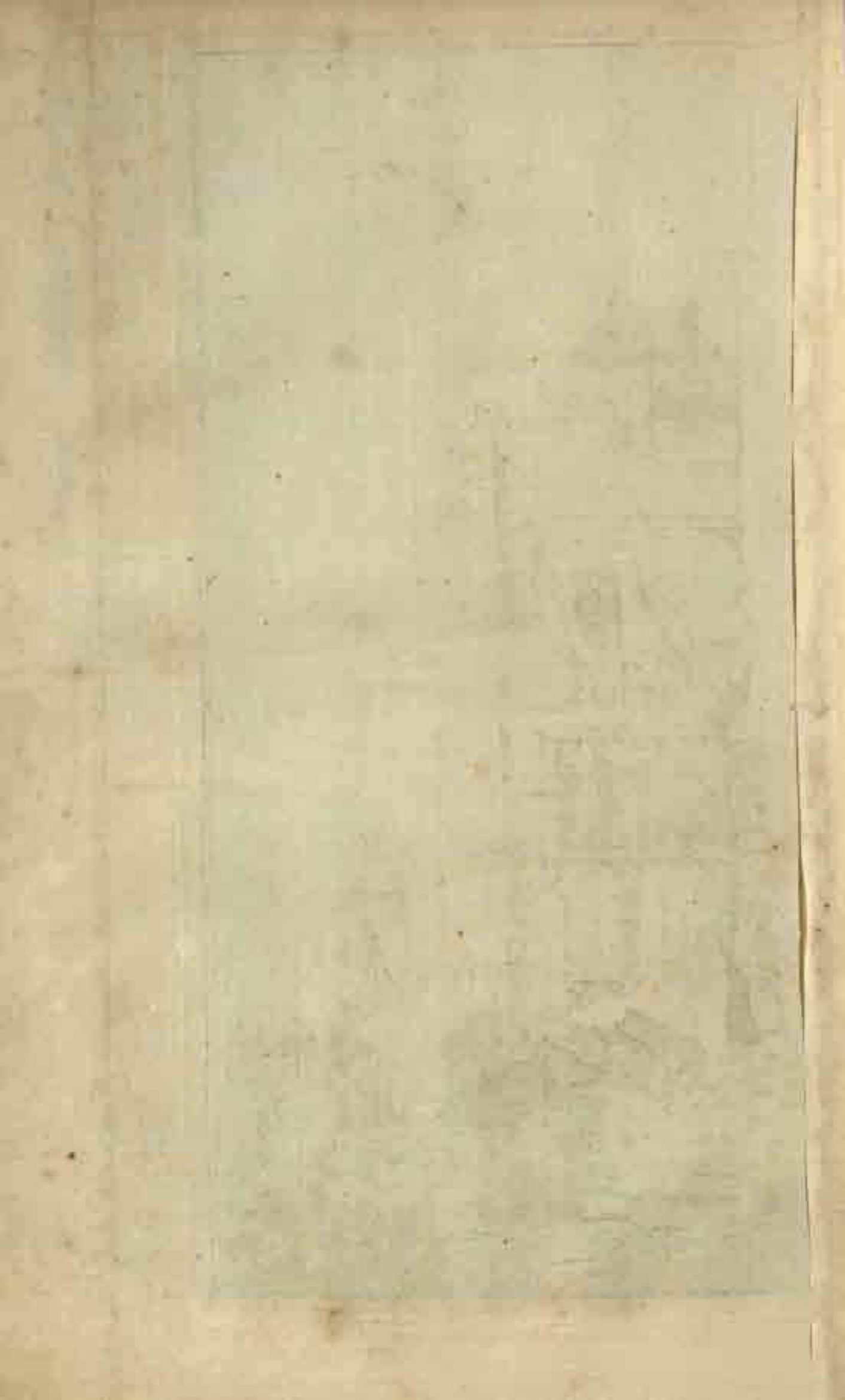




62. PILASTRE D'UN PORTEUR AVEC UN GRAND NOMBRE DE FIGURES

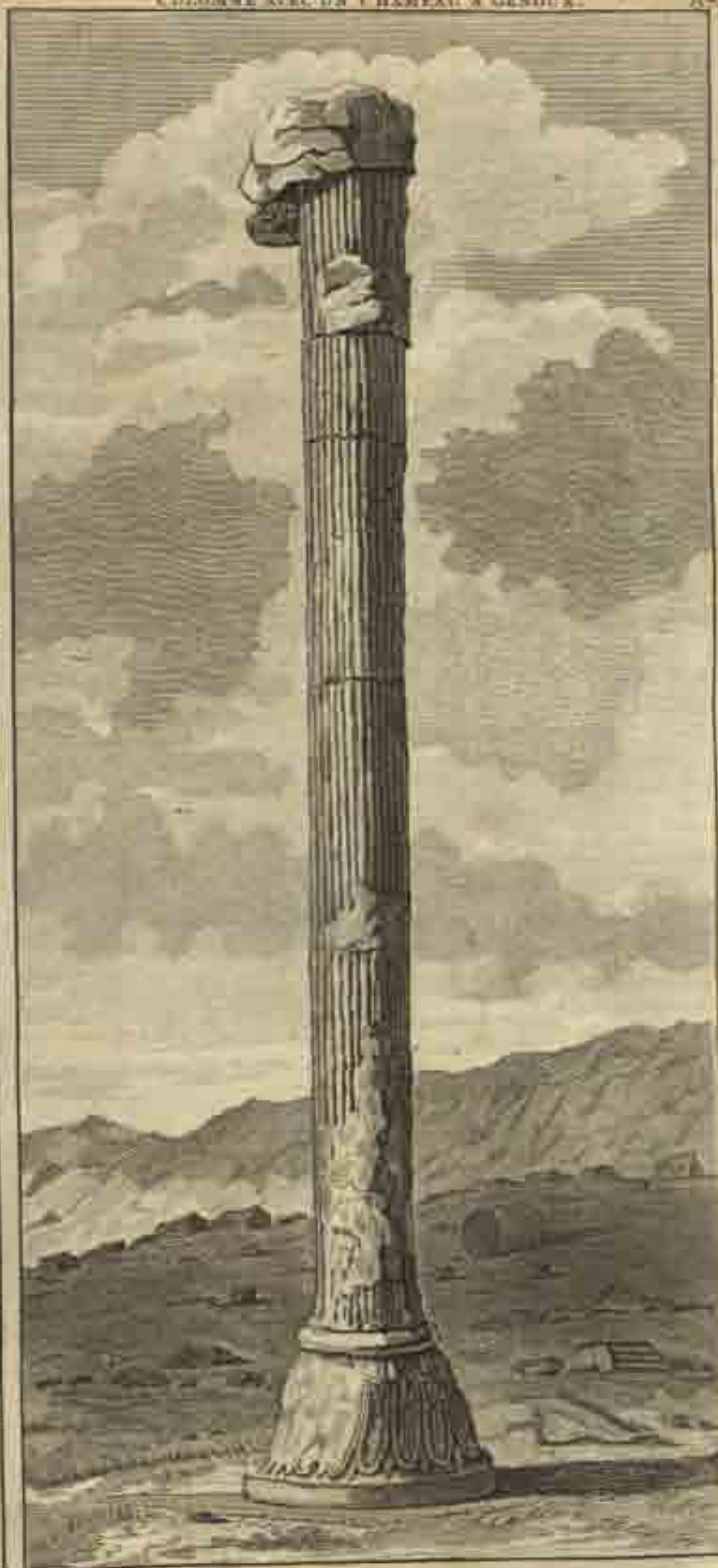
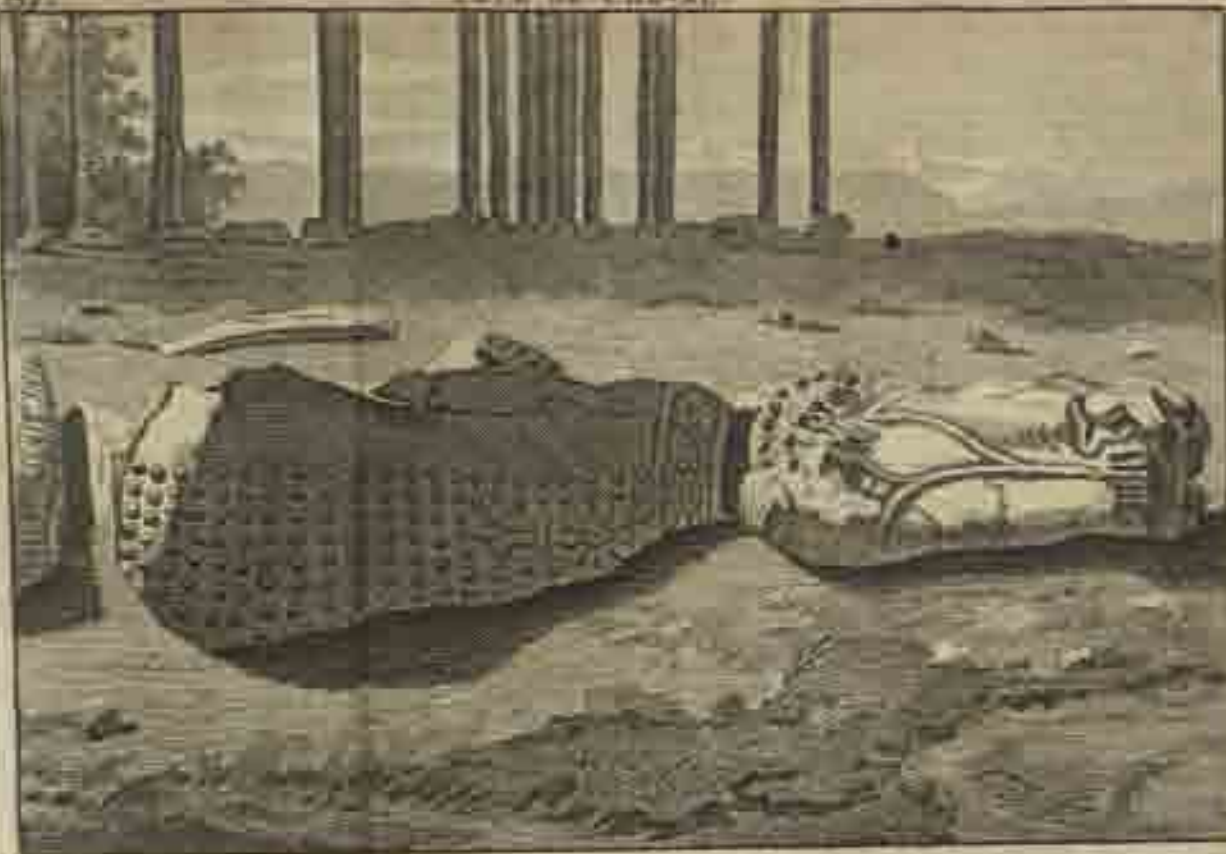












Plusieurs ornemens & figures de Persépolis.

卷之四

四

四

四

四



1704. comes visible at the opening to the left; and the other flight of its steps was at the end to the right. The representation of it appears in plate 149.

There is likewise another stair-case to the east of this edifice, as I have already observed, and which was formerly filled with figures, represented in plate 150, of which there are still very fine remains. The walls of it are likewise ornamented with figures.

The 151st plate represents the pedestals of two pilasters in the portal of the high edifice, towards the mountains, and a great number of figures still appear to the north, on one of the pilasters of the same edifice, in plate 152. The seated figure on this pilaster is evidently that of a prince, receiving presents, and the other figures are probably his guards, and retinue: the two vases that have some resemblance to ninepins, and are seen at the feet of the prince, may possibly be intended for perfumes, and odoriferous herbs. The tail of a sea horse is likewise held above his head.

The 153d plate represents another portal of singular beauty, adorned with a variety of figures, and on the top is the little mysterious figure already mentioned, which is still entire.

In the portal to the north, is seen the head of a horse lying on the ground, and designed in two different manners, with a profusion of ornaments. I frequented these ruins above three weeks, before I discovered it; and indeed, it must be carefully searched for. The two different designs of this head are in plates 154 and 155.

I have added, for the greater accuracy, to all these ruins, several pieces which I found on the earth, on the side of some figures, in one of the last portals; namely, the tail of a sea horse; a parasol; the two vases like ninepins; a fine chair; a variety of things which are in the hands of the figures, and two sorts

of round ornaments. The whole 1704. is represented in plate 156.

It is now time to give some account of the architecture of these famous ruins, with respect to which *The architecture of these ruins* it may be proper to observe in general, that all the columns are fluted in the same manner; and that the shafts of some consist of three, and others of four pieces, exclusive of the capital, which is composed of five different pieces, and of an order which varies from the five known orders, as well as from all others which I have ever seen.

Some writers pretend that there are winged horses of an uncommon magnitude on the two columns that are near the two portals, on the side of the stair-case, in the facade of the edifice; and one author in particular affirms, that he had seen them, tho' without mentioning in what year; but he takes no notice, at the same time, of the camels that are placed on the others: This however is a fact which I can take upon me to aver, and that they are still to be seen on their knees, on one of the nine columns, without capitals, and which are placed in a lateral position to each other. This camel is, indeed, greatly damaged, but, however, one part of the body is still visible, with the two fore feet, and several ornaments that resemble those of the animals in the first portals. One cannot be deceived in this particular, if one examines the pieces which are fallen from the tops of these columns. The capital of that which is represented in plate 157, seems to have been shaken by an earthquake, and to have started out of its place; but it still preserves its equilibrium, tho' it hangs on the side.

We have likewise been careful to mark, on two or three of the ten columns that have preserved their capitals, a fragment of shapeless stone, which certainly represented some animal, though the particular species is not to be now distinguished.



1704.

The error of  
a certain  
writer.

The writer already mentioned, declares, that he found sixteen columns, which being added to the two of the stair-case in the facade, make eighteen in the whole. This is what I am unable to comprehend, because I found no more than nineteen; but this is not the only mistake that has been committed by him in his account. I must, however, acknowledge this in his praise, that he is the most exact of all whom I have read on this subject.

As to any other particulars, I did not observe any difference in these columns, unless that some of them have capitals, and others not. With respect to their elevation, they are all from seventy to seventy two feet in height, and seventeen feet seven inches in circumference, except those two that are near the first portals, which have been already described. The bases are round, and twenty four feet five inches in circumference, and four feet three inches high: the lower moulding is one foot and five inches thick. They have three sorts of ornaments; but the cornice of the portals and windows are exactly the same, as appears by the plate.

The cause  
of this de-  
struction.

The miserable state to which these fine ruins are now reduced, is chiefly imputed to the governors of *Zje-raet*, and other places adjacent to *Persepolis*, who, to avoid the expences to which they were exposed by the great lords who came to visit these superb antiquities, have demolished whatever was then remaining entire, to prevent their having any curiosity to come there for the future.

The royal  
tombs.

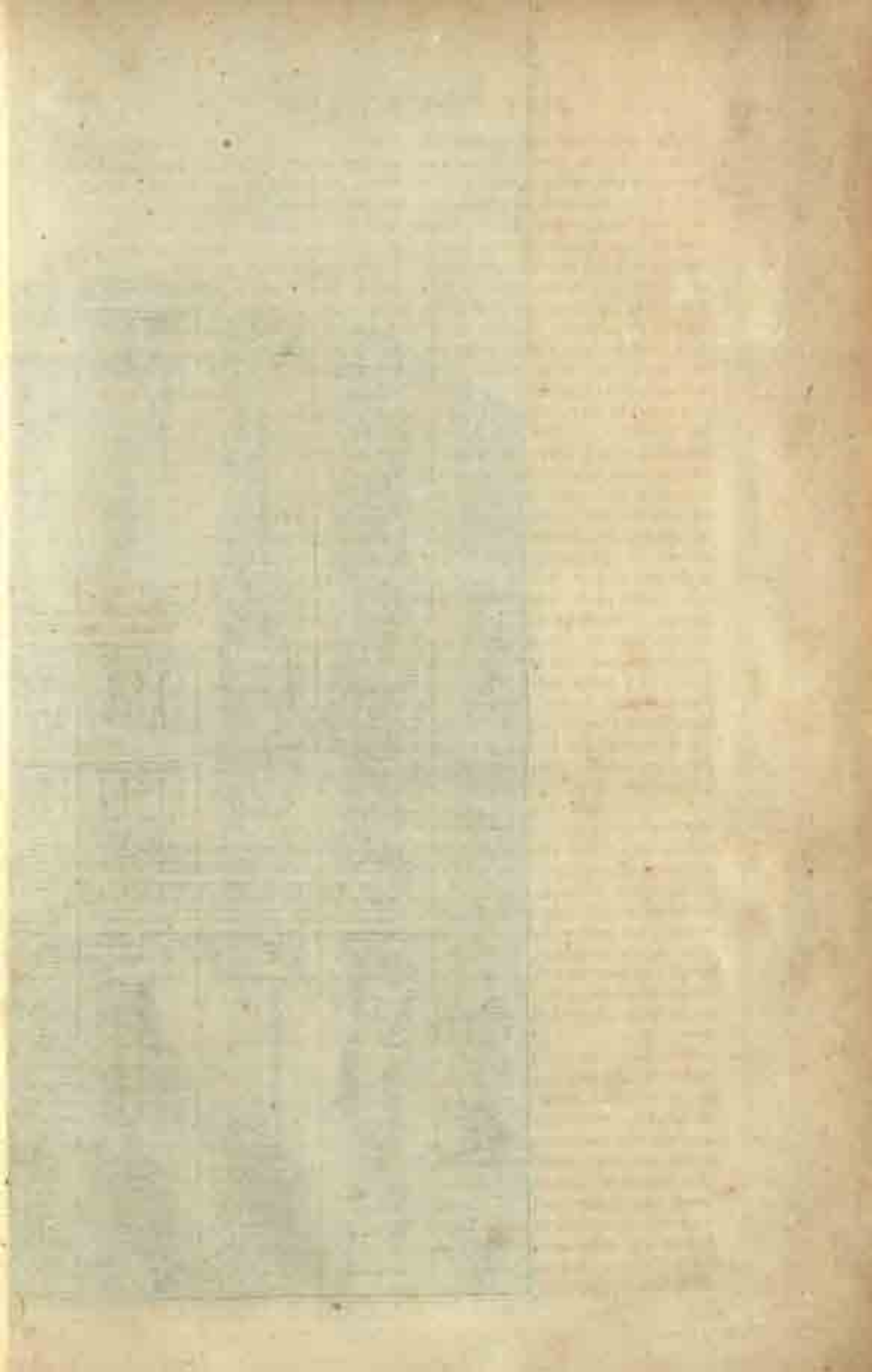
We shall now offer some observations on the two antient tombs of the kings, that have been already mentioned, and which are to be seen on the mountain; one to the north, and the other to the south. The facade of the first, which is hewn out of the rock, is a noble fragment of antiquity, covered with figures and other ornaments. The form of both is the same, and they are about seventy feet wide at the bottom.

That part of the tomb on which the figures are carved, is forty feet wide; the height is almost equal to the width below, and the rock extends on each side to the distance of sixty paces. The wall of the facade comprehends half this extent, and is six feet and a half in height. The rock, by which one ascends to this tomb, on the corner of the left side to the north, is broken. There are three or four little trees near this facade; and four columns below the edifice, and above these are several heads of oxen represented as far as the breast, with other ornaments. The gate, whose architrave is likewise filled with ornaments, is placed in the middle, but small, and almost closed up; the aperture being but a foot wide, because there is water within. The wall is carried out into a projection of five feet on each side, on which are seen two figures to the right and left, one above the other, and partly broken like the wall: they are five feet and seven inches high. Above the columns, is a cornice, which projects out to the extent of two feet and nine inches, and is about four feet high. It rests upon four great beams, which appear above the columns, between the head of the oxen. Above this cornice are eighteen small lions; nine on each side, and advancing toward the middle, where is a little ornament like a vase, and below a modillion. Above the lions are likewise two ranges of figures, almost as large as the life, fourteen in each range, armed, and lifting up their hands; and on the side is an ornament in form of a column, with the head of some animal, who has only one horn. Above this is another cornice ornamented with leaves. On the left, where the wall projects out, are three kinds of niches, one above another, and each of them contains two figures, armed with lances, and three others, on the side, armed in the same manner. There are likewise two on the right side, in the aperture of a window, with their

1704.

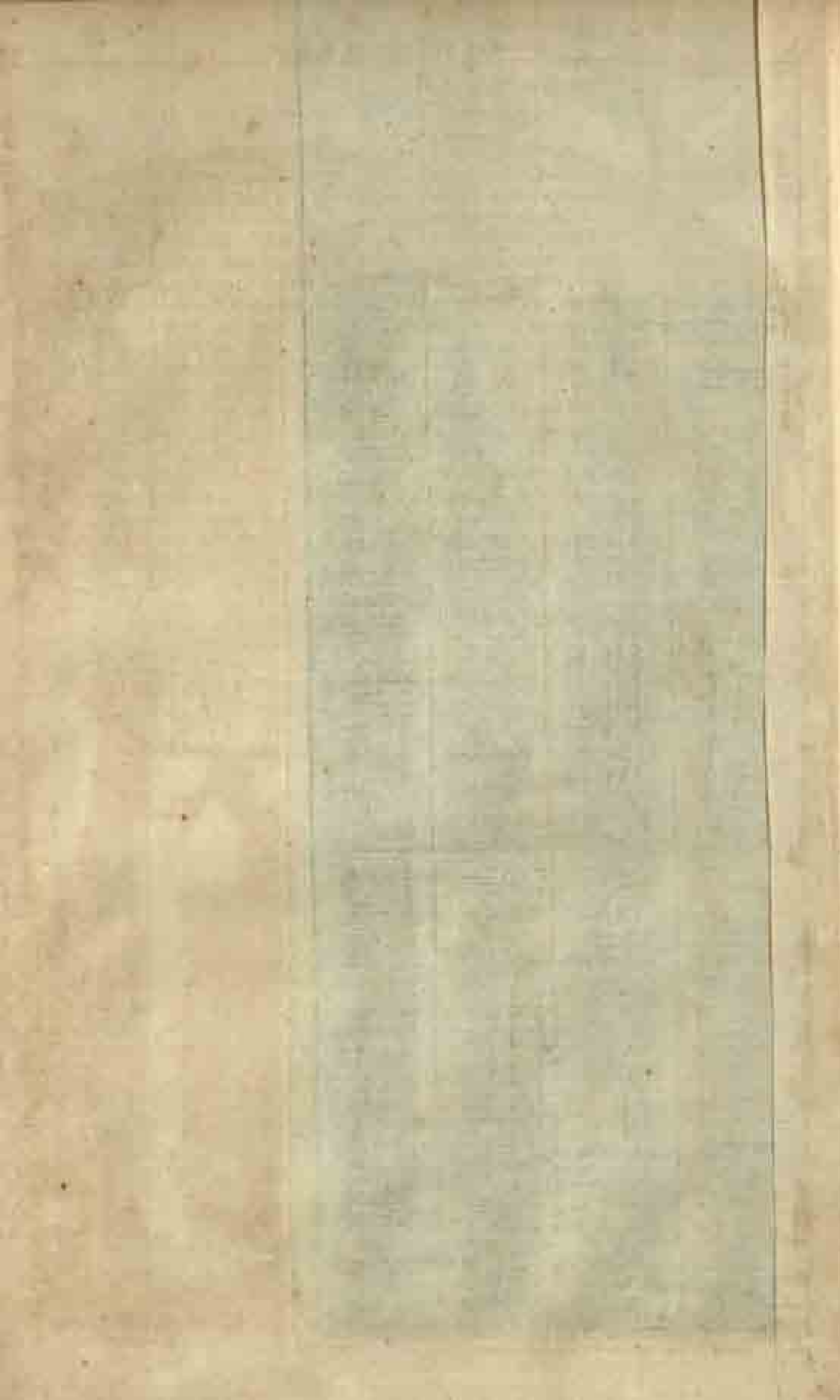
left

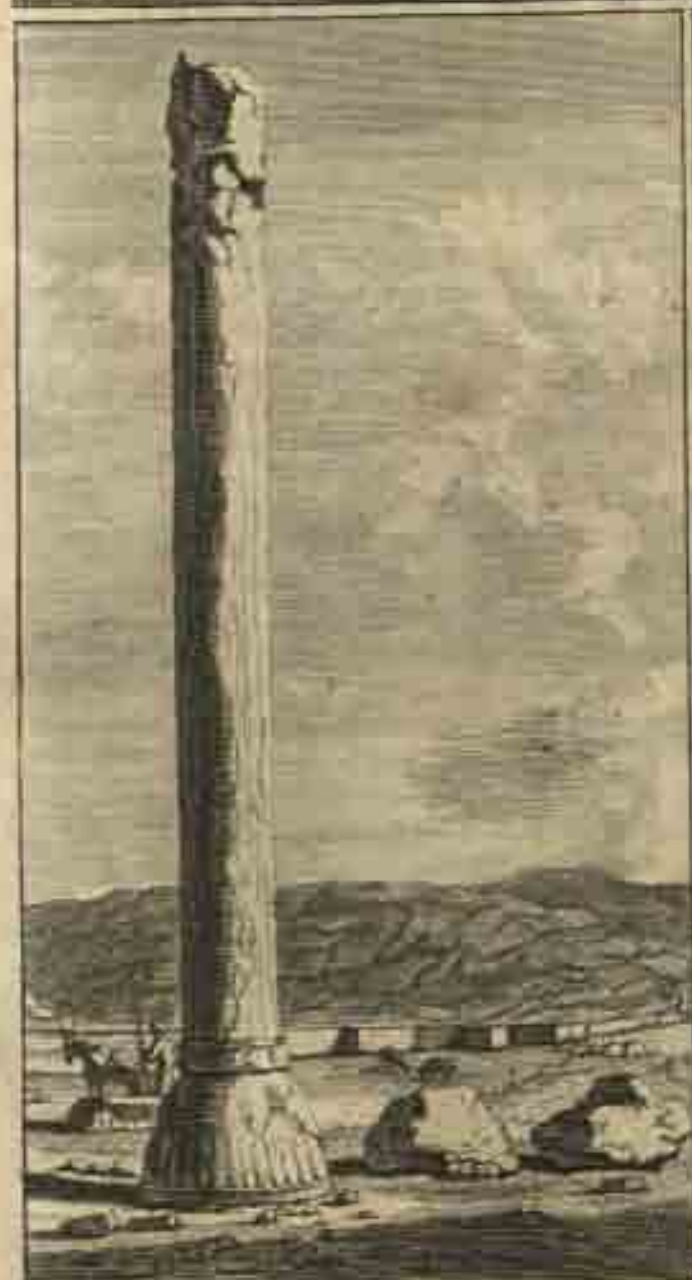




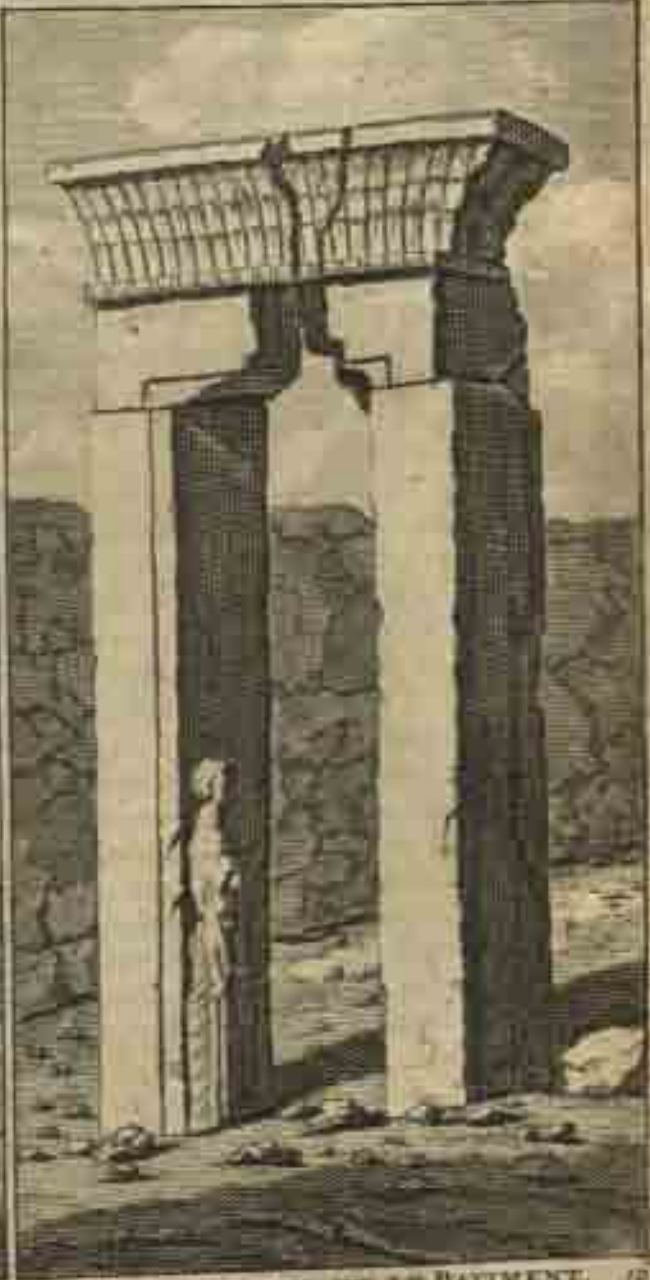








166. COLONNE DEVANT LE BATIMENT.



PORTIQUE DEVANT LE BATIMENT. 167.





1704. left hands placed upon their beards, and the right on their body; and on the side of these are three others, in the same disposition as those on the other side. At some distance below, and between these figures and the ornament that resembles a column, is another figure very much impaired on each side. Above this tomb, and on three steps, is likewise a large figure, which has the air of a king, pointing at something with his right hand, and holding a kind of bow in his left. On the right side of this figure, is an altar, on which an offering is made, and from whence the flames are represented as ascending. The moon appears above this altar, and it is said, that there was once a sun, on the left, and behind this figure, but nothing of that nature is now to be seen. In the middle, and above all this work, appears the little mystic figure, which has been so frequently mentioned, and it differs a little from the others.

The uncertainty, with respect to the tomb of Darius.

It cannot be affirmed, that the body of *Darius* was deposited in one of these tombs, since authors have not taken any notice of that particular; and even *Quintus Curtius*, who wrote the life of *Alexander the Great*, in a very copious manner, only declares, that this prince sent the body of *Darius*, who was assassinated by *Bessus*, to queen *Syngamitis*, the mother of that monarch, to be buried in the tomb of his ancestors.

Between these tombs, is seen a square pit, fifteen feet wide, and about twenty five deep. This was undoubtedly hollowed in the rock, but there is only a single tree now to be seen near it.

With respect to the tomb on the southern side, and which is in a very ruinous condition, I had the curiosity to enter it, by creeping on my breast, the water being evacuated at that time. I found that the passage into it was two feet high, and the vault within, forty six feet in breadth, and twenty in depth. This cave is divided into three vaults, which

begin at half the depth of the main cavity, and are carried up seven feet high. On the left side of the entrance, a breach appears in the rock or facade, and gives admission to a little light. There are several stones in these vaults, and especially in that to the left. They are said to contain two tombs covered with stones, in a demi round, and in all probability they have been wilfully broken, every person whatever being permitted to enter there, at several times, but at present there are no more than I have mentioned, and they seem to be 159 in number.

The rock, or wall of this facade, advances thirty feet on one side, and forty on the other, and has no entrance like the other. On each side of this facade, and in three separate compartments, are the figures of two men armed with lances, and it is said that six others are fallen down in the first of these monuments; tho' others declare there are but three, which was confirmed to me by the person whom I caused to enter therein, by creeping on his belly. On the south side of this building, and at the distance of 215 paces from the corner of the facade, is the column already mentioned, part of which is now broken, in the manner it appears on its base in plate 160. and round it are eight other bases, one of which is to the north, and seven paces from this; a second is to the east, at an equal distance; and three to the north east, ten paces from the first; the corner to the west containing eighteen paces. The two to the south possess a space of ground twenty two paces in extent, and are eight paces from each other. Around these bases are several large and globular stones, with three great fragments of the rock, which have evidently supported some edifice. The column lately mentioned is twelve feet and seven inches in diameter, and its base rises three feet and six inches above the surface of the causey. On the side of the two bases to the south,



1704. are two fragments of figures representing camels, which were placed, with other ornaments, on the columns.

At the distance of 650 paces from this edifice, to the north, is another portal, which is not one of the largest, and the pilasters on the two sides support the statue of a woman as large as the life. This is represented in plate 161.

As the tombs I have been describing are only exhibited in small in the plate, I thought it proper to trace out their fine ornaments on the sides, with the beautiful head above them, in plate 162, together with one of those on the southern side of the portal, in plate 163; as likewise the two heads of oxen on one of the columns under the cornice of the tomb, in plate 164; and lastly, a fragment of one of the columns, on which the forefeet of a kneeling camel are still distinguishable, in plate 165.

When I had travelled so far in search of these fine antiquities, I employed the remainder of the time I had to continue at *Chil-menacer*, in reviewing what I had already seen, and numbering all the figures of men and beasts, which are yet to be distinguished, in order to give as perfect an idea as possible, of the grandeur and magnificence of these superb ruins.

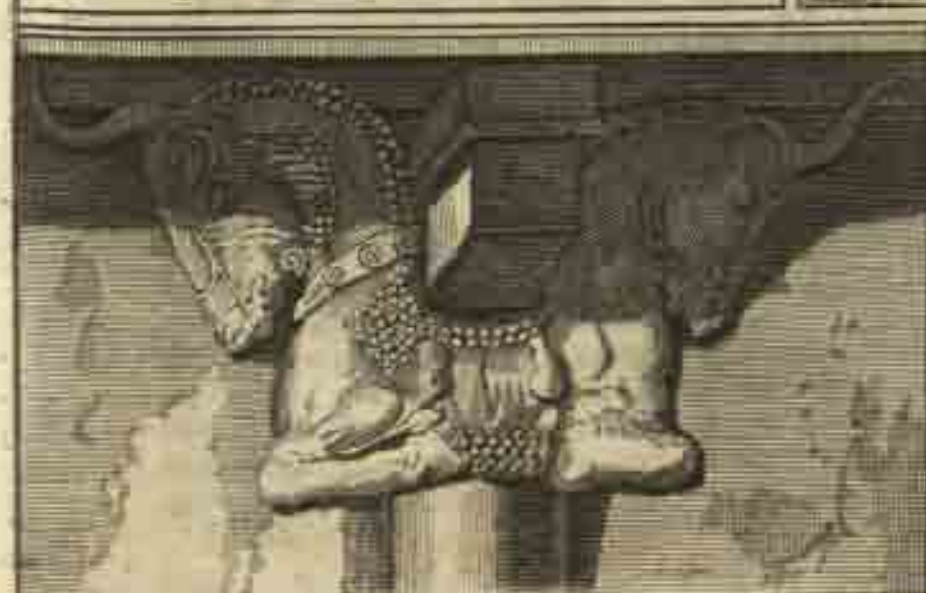
The second  
survey of  
these anti-  
quities.

I began this second survey at the two first portals which are near the stair-case in the facade, where are the figures of four large beasts, with the ascent of steps which conduct one to the columns. The figures, which are there to be seen, amount to 520, beside which there are forty two below, and round the first portal; they are also as large as the life; but those of the men over whose heads a parasol is held, and likewise those which are represented as encountering lions, with the others that are armed with lances, are two feet taller. Eighteen figures armed with lances, are seen on the wall of the back facade, and they all as large as the life. There are likewise twen-

ty five figures on the ruined stair-case, which, with the others, make eighty five in number. There are also twenty figures of women in the raised edifice, as big as the life, with thirty three more, that are something less, and five pilasters, on which the men, who are supported by them, are ten feet and seven inches high. There are two other portals, the figures of which are armed with lances, and are seven feet five inches in height. On the side of these portals, on the wall of the facade, and before a vacant space of ground, are eighteen demi figures, armed with lances like the preceding. They are opposite to each other, and with the rest amount to eighty two. Four figures of women are likewise to be seen on the wall of the facade of the stair-case belonging to the same edifice, to the east, a little larger than the life; but they are only visible as far as the neck, and there are eight others that resemble these, on each of the side walls. One may easily distinguish, on the wings of that stair-case, thirty six figures two feet high, and three lions, at the entrance, encountering with bulls. There are sixty three of these figures in the whole. On each of the three pilasters of the eastern portals, is a figure with a parasol; and in another portal, which is not far from the other, are six large figures on each side; and below these, are three ranges of little figures, a foot and six inches in height; nine in the upper range, as many in the lowest, and ten in the middle, which make fifty six, and seventy one in the whole. On the top of each of these two last portals, which are toward the mountain, are six large figures, below which are five ranges of small ones, each range containing ten, and one hundred and twelve in the whole. On the top of each of the four pilasters of the two portals to the south, are three large figures, which make twelve in all; and below these, are three rows of small figures, the uppermost contain four,

1704.









1704. four, and the other two have five  
 a-piece, which amount, in the  
 whole, to sixty eight. The two  
 portals to the east, and the two o-  
 thers, which are opposite to the  
 west, have sixteen figures encoun-  
 tring with lions. In the two nor-  
 thern portals, which are at a little  
 distance, are several figures armed  
 with lances; the head of each of  
 these figures is two feet and seven  
 inches high, and the hand which  
 holds the lance, is ten inches in  
 breadth. This piece was still entire,  
 because it could not be approached  
 by any who might be desirous of  
 breaking it; the entrance being  
 closed up with a large stone, so that  
 those figures are only to be seen from  
 one side. Had it not been for this  
 impediment, I should have attempt-  
 ed to procure one of the hands. The  
 rest of the body, as far as the  
 stomach, is buried in the earth.  
 I found three hundred distinguish-  
 able figures of this nature, in the e-  
 dicule to the east, and the nearest  
 of any to the mountain. Among  
 the ruins to the south are twenty  
 six large figures of men and beasts,  
 on the pilasters of the portals. In  
 each of the tombs on the mountain  
 are fifty human figures, exclusive of  
 the animals, and they amount to  
 a hundred in the whole. So that  
 when we add all the figures toge-  
 ther, comprehending those which  
 are still visible on the ruined stair-  
 cases, and other places, I believe they  
 will amount to near 1300 figures of  
 men and beasts.

The *Perfians* call the remains of  
 these ancient ruins, *Chil-minaer*, or  
*Chel-minaer*, which signifies the *for-  
 ty columns*, as has been already ob-  
 served; and they undoubtedly re-  
 ceived this appellation, at a time  
 when no more than that number  
 were remaining. The word *Chil*  
 signifies *forty*, and *menaer*, a *circumference*; and it is very usual for  
 the *Perfians* to bestow that name on  
 any building which has about the same  
 number of pillars; as was intimated  
 in my description of the palace of  
*Ispahan*, which is called by the same  
 Vol. II.

name, tho' the number of columns 1704.  
 in that structure do not exactly cor-  
 respond with its appellation.

Other travellers, who have writ-  
 ten before me, have confirmed this  
 truth, but add, that the columns  
 which were still remaining to the  
 number of forty, were entirely de-  
 cayed; but these gentlemen must  
 certainly have surveyed these stately  
 ruins with an unpardonable inatten-  
 tion, since I have found, as well by  
 the bases which are still visible, as  
 also by the cavities into which the  
 columns were inserted, that their  
 number was formerly 205.

I shall now make some remarks  
 on the drapery of the figures, which  
 entirely differs from all that I have  
 ever seen before, and has no simili-  
 tude to that of the *Greeks* and *Ro-  
 mans*, not even to that of the antient  
*Perfians*. The rules of art are not  
 observed in the figures, since no  
 muscles are visible in the naked parts  
 and the figures in general have a  
 motionless air. Nothing has been  
 observed but the contours; and  
 this neglect causes them to appear  
 stiff and inelegant. The draperies  
 have likewise the same defects, and  
 the whole is a tasteless lameness, as  
 is evident by the plates I have made  
 without any addition or diminu-  
 tion.

The proportions, however, have  
 been finely kept, both in the great  
 and small figures, which is a de-  
 monstration that those who made  
 them, were not destitute of capaci-  
 ty, but were possibly obliged to be  
 too expeditious, to be capable of  
 employing all the necessary atten-  
 tions, and to finish them with  
 the utmost perfection. But it must  
 be confessed, that most of the or-  
 naments are exceeding beautiful, as  
 well as the chairs in which the fi-  
 gures are seated, notwithstanding  
 they are much impaired. It is there-  
 fore reasonable to believe, that there  
 were formerly some very fine frag-  
 ments, which have since been de-  
 stroyed by time; and I am persuad-  
 ed that some figures have been  
 found there completely rounded;  
 I and



1704

and that there were several things much more remarkable, and in greater perfection, in a place where such stately remains are still to be seen. They are now supposed to be the ruins of one structure, because no distinction appears among them. Several persons likewise imagine the stones of the rock which composed it, to be a white marble, and those of the stair-case black. For my part, I am persuaded, on the contrary, that the whole has been hewn from the rock, which is the natural product of the mountain, so that there was no necessity to go to a greater distance for those materials. It is even visible, that great part of this edifice has been cut out of the rock itself in the mountain, to which the structure joins; and any one will be sufficiently convinced of this truth, by examining ever so little the two tombs on that mountain; together with most of the stair-cases, the principal foundation of the walls, and the other rocky fragments that are to be found up and down, especially in the northern part of this edifice. What has contributed to the propagation of this error, is, that the generality of these stones are polished like a mirror, and particularly those within the portal, and those which compose the windows and pavements, that are still to be seen. Another reason which causes them to be taken for marble, is their appearing with different colours, such as yellow, white, grey, red, a deep blew, and even black in some places: But I impute this variety to time, and the rather, because it is to be seen in the rock of the mountain.

The greatest part, however, of this edifice, is a clear blue; and that a better judgment may be formed of the colours, I have been at the pains to copy them from the structure itself, in distemper.

The city of Persopolis entirely destroyed.

With respect to the city of *Persopolis*, there are not any traces of it now remaining, only the rocks that appear on each side, incline one to believe that there were buildings formerly, beyond the enclosure of the

edifice which has been described. The *Persians* say, and it likewise appears by their writings, that this city was once of great extent, situated in a plain; and that the ruins which are still to be seen, are those of the palace of the ancient kings of *Persia*. According to the best of my judgment, it seemed to have extended along the mountain, and from thence a great way into the plain; but after all, these are only conjectures, since there are no traces of it now to be seen, except the column which stands to the south, and without the inclosure of the ruins of the palace, and likewise the portal to the north.

1704

I had generally the good fortune to be favoured with very fine weather, during my continuance there. Rains and snow would indeed fall sometimes, and at other times it proved frosty; so that I was then obliged to confine my self to my house till the weather became more favourable. I, however, visited the ruins as frequently as possible, and made a kind of kitchen there; but if I had enjoyed the company of a friend as curious as my self, together with a good dog, I should have passed the night in a grot of the mountain, to save my self the labour of returning thither every day. This is generally practised by the *Arabians* who live in tents, and are followed by their cattle, with which they cultivate the earth, even under the walls of these ruins. They came frequently to visit me, while I was employed among these celebrated antiquities. The inhabitants of the circumjacent villages did the same, as well as their *Kalantoer*, or Bailiff. Several poor people likewise, induced by the curiosity to behold so noble a spectacle, came daily thither with their families, and camels, who ascended and came down the grand stair case, as easily as their conductors. I took notice that these people examined these famous ruins with more curiosity than Mr. *Tavernier*, who assures us that twelve columns were standing forty eight years ago; and adds, that these ruins, which are







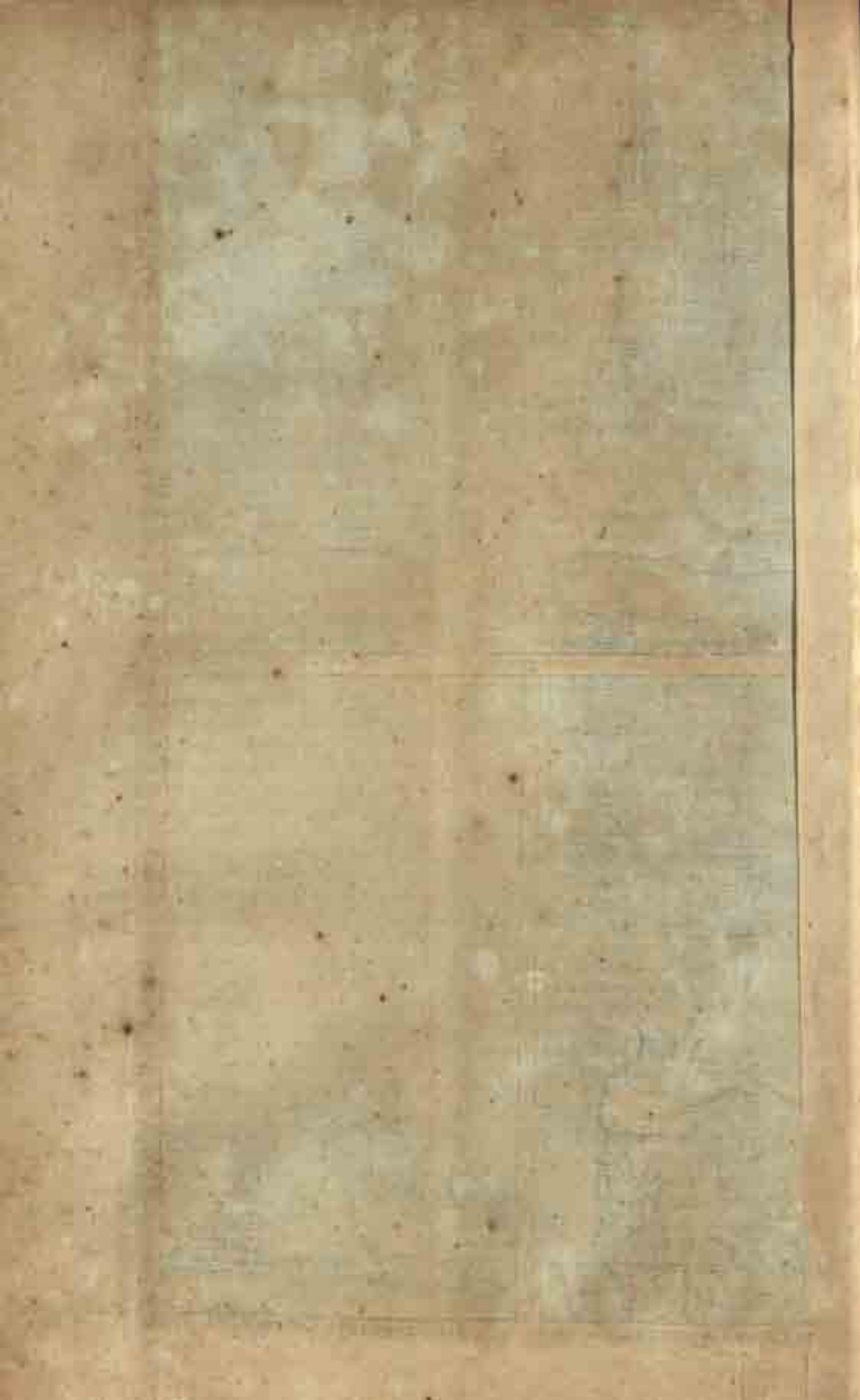
46 FIGURES ENTRE LES DEUX TOMBEAUX.

FIGURES A DEMI ENTERRES. 167.

DEUX CAVALIERS A CHEVAL. 168.

DEUX PETITS EDIFICES. 169.







1704. so much talked of in the world, are not worth a traveller's going half a league out of his way to see them. They were likewise more curious than a *Dutchman*, who drew them by the order of the *India* company for King *Abbas* the second, and complained that he had lost so much time in that employment. As to the first particular, I can hardly believe that Mr. *Tavernier* was ever there. There are nineteen columns now standing; and as to the other, a judgment may be formed of the merit of the ruins by the designs which I have exhibited.

The town of *Mirr-chai-korn*, which is the nearest of any to these antiquities, is of a considerable extent, and accommodated with several *Bazars*; it likewise abounds with all sorts of provisions and fruits, especially melons, grapes, oranges, citrons, pomegranates, &c.

Birds in  
the mountain.

Beside the birds I have already mentioned, I likewise found four or five sorts of little birds that continually harbour among these ruins, and on the mountain, and entertain the ear with the most agreeable melody in the world. The notes of the largest species have a near correspondence with those of the nightingale. Some of them are almost entirely black; others are of the size of the swallow, and have their bodies spotted; a third class is smaller and variously coloured; some are yellow, others grey, and several entirely white, and shaped like a chafinch. I should certainly have fired at some, in order to have drawn them afterwards, if I had not been prevented by impatience desire to take a careful survey of those other objects, which I was desirous of knowing as much as possible. I sometimes saw foxes, but they never come within musket shot.

Two leagues from these ruins is a place called *Naxi Rustan*; but a large circuit must be taken in order to arrive there; because a river crosses the country, and is not to be passed, but over a certain bridge, which is at a considerable distance.

1704. The plain is likewise cut into a variety of small channels, which are so many impediments to travellers in their way thither.

I found, in this place, four tombs of persons of eminence among the ancient *Persians*, and they much resemble those of *Persepolis*; only they are cut abundantly higher in the rock, and therefore are not to be approached, without the aid of cords. This place receives its denomination from *Rustan*, whose figure is there to be seen, and was carved to perpetuate his memory. He is said to have been a potent prince, of an immense stature, being forty cubits high, and he lived, according to the same report, 1113 years.

The tombs, which extend upward on a steep rock, have their bases eighteen feet above the surface of the causeway, and rise four times as high, as near as one can judge by surveying them; and the rock is twice as high as the tombs, which are sixty feet wide in the middle. Under each tomb is a separate table filled with large figures in low relief, on two of which tables some traces of men fighting on horseback are still to be seen. Between these tombs are three other tables covered with figures; and among these, appears the figure of a man on horseback, preceded by two others, and followed by a third, which is almost entirely defaced. There are likewise some figures in the space between the two last works, and three under the third, two of which tender their hands to each other. One of these is a woman, and both of them are halfburied in the earth. There is also a square edifice fronting the first tomb, each of whose sides has a width of 27 feet. It rises higher than the tomb, and has an opening over against it, to the north, to which I climbed with great difficulty, and found nothing but a little square apartment, with four windows in two of its sides, and several long apertures. I seated myself on the southern side of this building, where I drew the design of



1704. design of the whole work, as it is exhibited in plate 166; and one of the tombs in particular, as it appears in plate 167.

These tombs possess an extent of 280 paces, and the little square edifice is sixty paces distant from the first of them. The figure of a man on horseback, between the two tombs, and in the middle of the fourth niche, has his hair shaped according to our mode, with a crown upon his head, and a pointed bonnet rising above it. He is habited after the *Roman* manner, and has a large sword at his side, with the hilt in his left hand. His legs hang down very low, and he presents his right hand to another on foot before him. The third figure has one knee buried in the earth, and opens the hands like a suppliant, and its dress is likewise in the *Roman* mode. There was formerly another figure behind the horse, but it is almost entirely destroyed by time. They are represented in plate 168.

The figures that were half buried, appear on the side of the third tomb, and two of them have their hands placed on a kind of circle. That in the middle represents *Ruslan*, in a *Roman* dress; he has likewise a bonnet, and an ornament like a crown, together with flowing hair, a large beard, and his left hand clapt upon the hilt of his sword. Before him is the figure of a woman, and perhaps one of his mistresses; her hair is represented floating over her shoulders; she likewise wears a crown, and above it another ornament which is not distinguishable. She is habited almost like a *Pallas*, and supports part of her drapery with her left hand. The third figure represents a military man, with a tiara on his head, ornamented at the top, and his left hand grasps the hilt of his sword. What he once held in his right hand, is now broken; all that I could distinguish, with relation to these figures, is exhibited in plate 169.

The niche, or table which follows, represents two other broken

figures on horseback, that seem to be engaged in a combat with lances. 1704. one of them has a bonnet like that of *Ruslan*, and something was originally behind it. The fifth niche has nothing entire, but there is an imperfect appearance of figures fighting on horseback, as well as in the last, which is reduced to the same condition, and was, as I suppose, like the preceding niche. All these figures are carved in the rock, and the appearance they make, is odd enough.

On the western side of this mountain, and at the distance of two hundred paces from the tombs, are two tables with figures, that are likewise carved on the rock. That to the left represents two men on horseback, one of whom strongly grasps a circle, of which the other has quit- ted his hold. It is pretended by some, that the first is *Alexander*, and the other *Darius*, who resigns to him the empire by this action. Others say these figures represent two potent princes, or generals, who, after they had been engaged in a long war with each other, without obtaining any advantage, came to an agreement, that he who could wrest this circle out of the hand of his competitor, should triumph over him, and be acknowledged the victor: But there is no stress to be laid on these stories, nor in what is related of *Ruslan*, who, they pretend, was forty cubits high, and yet he is represented with the common stature of a man, and the horse is not larger than the usual size of those animals.

With respect to the two horsemen, who hold the circle, one has a round bonnet, out of which a set of plumes seem to flow; and he is habited in the antique manner, with a kind of general's staff in his left-hand. On the crupper of his horse is something that resembles a chain, at the end of which hangs a machine that is not to be distinguished. The other has something of the same nature, with a round bonnet, which rises higher than that of the preceding



1704. ceding figure, and behind him is another figure holding something above his head, which might possibly have been the tail of a sea horse. The whole is represented in plate 170. On the right of these figures, and in the middle of another niche, is the figure of a man, who seems resolved to come out of it, and grasps his sword with both hands. The other figures, which are on the side of this, three to the right, and two on the left, are visible no farther than the breast, and they appear behind a wall; but there is another on this side of the wall, with his hands crossed upon his breast.

There are likewise two little square structures at the corner of the same mountain, and at the distance of 250 paces from that which has been already described. They have the air of little temples, and are near one another, being but six feet high, and five in width, on every side. There is also an ascent of three steps to the south, as may be seen in plate 171.

The inhabitants of the village having informed me, that there were several other tombs among the monuments of *Naxi Rustan*, I resolved to visit them with a man strong enough to raise me up with a cord, that I might view every thing my self; but when I arrived at the place where the cord was to be employed, I became sensible that the enterprize would be dangerous, could not prevail upon my self to undertake it, by the assistance of only one man, with whom I was entirely unacquainted. I therefore caused another, whom I accidentally met, and who spoke *Dutch*, to ascend in my place. The villager, who had frequently been there before, climbed up first, and then raised the other by the aid of the cord, which he wound about his body: this person, at the same time, exerted himself with his feet and hands on the side of the rock, by which means he soon attained to the place where the villager had fixed himself, and advanced to the first

tomb to the west, which was more 1704. accessible than the rest. I remained below to give him the necessary instructions, which I communicated to him with a loud voice. He then measured the height of the first platform of the steep rock, and found that its altitude was equal to eighteen feet: after which he proceeded inward to the distance of six feet, and as far as the bottom of the second platform of the same perpendicular rock, which likewise rose to the height of eighteen feet, and had a depth of seven, with a facade of fifty three feet in extent. The entrance into that in the middle was three feet and a half in height, and the rock within, was two feet and three inches thick, and as much without. He there found, opposite to the entrance, a tomb disposed lengthwise, and on the sides of it were two others, one on the right, and the other on the left. Two of these tombs were eleven feet in length, and the third ten, with a breadth of six feet, and a height of five; and its distance from the others is no more than a foot and a half. The vault which contains these tombs, is entirely formed out of the rock, and they are joined to it at the end, but distant from it a foot at the other extremity. These tombs are hewn out of the same rock to which they are joined below, as is likewise their upper part; so that it is impossible to judge whether they have ever been opened. They are a foot thick, and no ornaments are to be seen upon them. The vault of this grot is ten feet high, twelve in depth, and forty in width. I have been assured that there have been nine tombs in the second monument; six in the third, and nine in the fourth; but I am not certain whether they are there now, being only able to answer for the first. At some distance to the east, near a village, half a league from this place, and in a plain surrounded with mountains, is a column, near which, it is said, that there is a portal still to be seen, like those



1703. of *Persepolis*; and the country people affirm, that there was formerly a large structure in that place.

The uncertainty  
respecting  
these ruins.

It would be difficult to come to any decision, with regard to the ruins of *Persepolis*, since there are not the least remains of any standing edifice, nor any building above the cornices of the portals, doors, or windows, by which any reasonable conjecture can be formed. It must, however, be granted, that they have a much greater resemblance to the members of a palace, than to those of a temple, of which there is not the least appearance. On the contrary, every thing corresponds with the grandeur and magnificence of a great king's palace, to which the images and figures which cover these ruins impart a surprising air of majesty. It is certain, that there have been very stately portals and grand galleries to afford a communication with all the detached parts of that structure: and most of the columns, whose remains are still so beautiful, were evidently intended to support those galleries, while others might, perhaps, be merely for ornament, like those of *Susan*, or *Susa*, which is mentioned in the book of *Esther*. The lodgings of the men and women were separated from each other, according to all appearance; and there even seems to be still some remains of the royal apartments. In a word, the magnificence of these ruins can never be sufficiently admired, and this structure must undoubtedly have cost immense treasures. The same may be said of the ruins which are scattered thro' all *Greece*, of which so many noble antiquities are still preserved; and of those of old *Rome*, whose remains still display such inexpressible grandeur. These last, however, have not been so entirely demolished as those of the stately palace of the king's of *Persia*, which was the glory of all the East, and owed its destruction to the debaucheries and frenzy of *Alexander the Great*, who, after he had preserved it from the ra-

vages of war, reduced it to ashes, at the solicitations of *Thais*, a *Greecian* courtesan. He, indeed, repented of his rash action, but it proved too late. *Quintus Curtius* observes, that all the joinery work of this palace was made of cedar; but I should rather imagine it to be fenna, which is a wood that abounds in *Persia*, where no cedars are to be found. This last is a tree with which I am well acquainted, and have described it in the first volume of my travels, where I offer some account of mount *Libanus*. I may, however, be mistaken, and a length of time may have created a great change, with respect both to those trees, and the ruins I have been describing.

These latter are situated in the thirtieth degree, and fortieth minute of northern latitude, in the southern part of *Asia*, in the province of *Fars*, or *Farsistan*, to the south of *Ispahan*, and north east from *Zierrai*, or *Chiras*, according to the computation I have made both by sea and land; and I have observed the same exactness through the whole course of my relation, where I have marked the true distances of places, by which means I have rectified the inaccuracies of several writers, and the generality of maps.

The *Persians* pretend, that the city of *Persepolis*, was formerly called *Zierrai*, and afterward *Fars*, from the province of that name, if this did not rather derive its name from the city. It is likewise called *Elymais*, in the first book of the *Maccabees*, where it is said that *Antiochus* advanced to this city with a powerful army, after the death of *Alexander*, to seize the treasures that were there deposited, but that he could not accomplish his purpose. The second book declares, that this prince was shamefully repelled by the inhabitants, which evidently proves that *Persepolis* is the very city which the *Hebrews* call *Elymais*. The ancient annals of *Persia* declare, that it was founded by a king named *Sjemshid*, who

1704.

The situation  
of the  
palace.

Different  
names of  
*Persepolis*.



1704. who reigned in that country, with the title of emperor, about 4000 years ago. They perhaps mean *Corus*, or *Cyrus*, the first founder of that empire, and the most illustrious of all its kings; who is mentioned in such an honourable manner by the prophet *Daniel*, and who delivered the *Jews* from the *Babylonish* captivity, after which he caused the temple of God to be rebuilt, as we find it recorded at the beginning of the book of *Esdras*. They even pretend, that *Sjemsehid* lived a thousand years, and comprehend in that period all the successors of that prince, who flourished to the time of *Alexander*, who is known among them by the name of *Schandar*, or *Schandar Su-alcarnaim*. This last name intimates that the king of *Macedonia* wore two sorts of horns,

1724. which were the emblems of his fortitude and power. There are some learned men among them, who distinguish him, as I have been since informed, by the name of *Schandar-Feyraget*, which signifies *Alexander the Son of Philip*, as he really was, and who take the wreathes of his horse's mane for horns. Others apply to them a mystic sense, and maintain, that they adumbrate the two parts of the then known world, which were the east and west; and it must be acknowledged that it was customary for the orientals to give this name of *Horns*, to the verges or borders of any thing. We accordingly see *Alexander* represented in this manner, on some particular medals, where the tresses of his horse's mane resemble horns.

## C H A P. LIII.

*Particular remarks, with respect to Persepolis, and the antient authors, who have written upon that subject.*

The sentiments of Persian authors, with relation to the founder of Persepolis.

MODERN writers, as well as *Persians* as *Arabians*, pretend that one of their kings, or heroes, called *Giemsehid*, or *Zjemsehid*, founded this capital of the kingdom of *Persia*, and gave it the name of *Esfecbar*, which signifies *beaten out of the rock*. They likewise add, that this city was of such a vast extent, that it comprehended the city of *Chiras* in its circuit: that *Queen Homai*, the daughter of *Baberman*, built the palace of this city, called *Gibil*, or *Chilminar*; and that the tombs on the mountain owe their origin to prince *Kitschtasb*, the son of the fifth king of the race of the *Capanides*, named *Laborasp*. See *Herbelet*. (a)

But as these relations are blended with so many fabulous accounts, as render them altogether incredible, and as they neither correspond with each other in any material particular, nor with the antient *Greek* historians, or the sacred records, we cannot repose any confidence on their authority.

These particulars being premised, I shall venture to affirm, with all due deference to the judgment of the learned, that the remaining ruins of *Chilminar*, their situation, the traces of the structure, the figures and their habits, together with the ornaments, and whatever else is now discoverable among them, correspond with the manners of the

(a) Biblioth. Orient. in the word *Esfecbar*, pag. 327.



1704. ancient *Perſiam*, and the description, which is still extant, of the ancient palace of *Perſepolis*.

The observations of Diodorus Siculus.

*Diodorus Siculus*, who is said to have been contemporary with *Julius Cæſar*, is the only ancient historian who has transmitted to us a sketch of the famous palace of *Perſepolis*, destroyed by *Alexander the Great*; and this he copied from the *Egyptian* and *Greek* antiquities, which are now lost in the ocean of time. This author, after he had declared that *Alexander* exposed all this capital

\* Metaphorically the History of Persia.  
† Xerxes the Great.

\* of the *Perſian* kingdom, except the royal palace †, to the plunder of his *Macedonians*, describes this palace, as an extraordinary structure, in the following words: *This superb edifice, says he, or the palace royal, is surrounded with a triple wall; the first, which is exceedingly magnificent, rises sixteen cubits high, and is flanked with towers, and a parapet. The second resembles the first, with respect to the fabrication, but has twice its height. The third is square, and hewn out of the rock; it is likewise sixty cubits high. Its curtains are fenced with palisades of copper, and gates of the same metal, twenty cubits high; the former of these were intended to create terror, the latter were designed for the security of the palace; to the east of which is a tract of land, containing two acres; and beyond that, the royal mountain, where the tombs of the *Perſian* kings are erected.*

We can hardly be surprized, if the ruins of this ancient Pile, which was reduced to ashes by *Alexander the Great*, two thousand years ago, do not exactly correspond to the description given of this palace by *Diodorus*, if we only consider the great changes which have happened in *Perſia* since that time. After the death of that prince, for instance, it fell to the share of one of his captains, who rendered it hereditary in his family. It was afterwards conquered by the *Parthians*; but the

*Perſians*, in process of time, regained it by the bravery of *Artaxerxes*, in the time of *Alexander Severus*, and governed it for a long space of time; till at last the successors of *Mohammed* made themselves masters of it by force of arms. I say, when all these particulars are duly attended to, it can never be thought surprizing, that authors should have different sentiments with respect to the subject before us; and especially since it may be presumed, that the devastations of wars, tempests, and earthquakes, have entirely destroyed a considerable part of this stately edifice, or buried it, at least, in the bosom of the earth. On the contrary, there is reason to be astonished, that there are now to be found several things, according to the description of *Don Garcias de Silva de Figueroa*, in his embassy to *Perſia*, \* which correspond with *Diodorus Siculus*, and several other ancient writers; and as my plates agree with those descriptions, I think we may conclude that the ruins of *Chilminar* are those of the famous palace of *Perſepolis*, which was destroyed by *Alexander the Great*.

*Diodorus Siculus* declares, in the Place before cited, that there was a piece of ground, containing two acres, between the palace and the mountain, where the tombs of the kings are to be seen. I have made the same observation, as well as the *Spanish* Ambassador already mentioned, who concurs with my account in his description of *Chilminar*, the distance only excepted, in which he differs a little from the *Greek* historian. For though the *Latin* version of that Author, to which I had recourse, assigns no more than an extent of 400 feet to four plethra, or half acres of land, it is not to be inferred from thence, that he means the usual feet of the *Greeks* and *Romans*. On the contrary, tho' a certain unknown author, cited by *Saumasius* †, asserts, that the

Other Remarks of Diod. Siculus.

\* Vido lib. xii. p. m. Edit. Hen. Steph. 599. fol. & Wech. p. 541. fol.

† Page 144. fol.

‡ In Hæc. Plin.



1704. *Greek word αἶψα* signified, among the *Romans*, an extent of land, comprising a hundred square feet, it is still certain, that the royal foot, which the *Greeks* call *Pletbaerius*, was sixteen inches long; and this is confirmed by the same (a) *Sauma- sius*. The learned *Lipsius* judges likewise, that the αἶψα almost corresponded with *jugerum agri Romani*, or half an acre of land, according to the *Roman* measure. And in order to be convinced of this, we need only examine this treatise of the military art of the (b) *Romans*. All these particulars being duly considered, I am of opinion, that my usual steps sufficiently agree with the relations of these ancient writers, and this contributes to prove, that the ruins of *Chilminar* are those of the ancient palace of *Persepolis*. The illustrious *Isaac Vossius* thinks to the same effect in his remarks on *Pontonius* (c) *Mela*.

*Ptolemy* (d) of *Alexandria*, an ancient Geographer, likewise places *Persepolis* in the height of 33 degrees and 20 minutes of south latitude. *Strabo*, *Stephanus*, *Ammianus Marcellinus*, and some others, likewise mention *Persepolis*, but without specifying its situation. (e) *Sauma- sius* is of opinion, that *Ptolemy*, and his transcriber *Ammianus*, have taken notice of this city, as of a place which still subsisted, tho' he is persuaded, that no traces of it were remaining in their time; and that *Alexander* reduced that city to ashes, as well as the palace. *Quintus Curtius* seems also to have embraced the same (f) sentiment. Whether the *Greeks*, therefore, and *Romans*, had travelled but little into *Persia*, after the death of *Alexander*, or that the writings of those among them, who gave any account of *Persepolis*, have been destroyed, like several other works, it appears, however, by the first book of the (g) *Maccabees*, and likewise by the

testimony of (h) *Josephus*, that the city of *Persepolis*, which was called *Elinais* by the ancient *Persians*, subsisted, at least in part, in the time of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, whether it was, that *Alexander* had not entirely destroyed it, as I am inclined to think, or that part of it was rebuilt since that time (i). Nor can I see any reason why we should not pay as much regard to the apocryphal books of the sacred Scripture, and the history of *Josephus*, as we do to the pagan authors; and the rather, as we are sensible, that the *Jews* were dispersed through all parts, after the *Babylonish* captivity, and that several of them, after the time of *Alexander*, went to settle in *Persia*, where I am persuaded their descendants have continued to this day.

But if these particulars should not be thought decisive in this point, yet it evidently appears, by the arms, habits, and ornaments of the figures, as well as by the hieroglyphics that are still to be found at *Chilminar*, that it was an ancient palace of the *Persian* kings, and must certainly be that of *Persepolis*. This I shall endeavour to prove, by the testimony of authors who have written on this subject.

The military habits of the figures on the stair-case, are partly agreeable to the mode of the *Persians*, and partly to that of the *Medes*. Those of the ancient *Persians* were of leather, with a girdle of the same substance, according to (k) *Herodotus*; but they changed this fashion after the reign of *Cyrus*; and it is certain that those of the figures on the stair-case are the same that were worn in *Persia*, when *Xerxes* invaded *Greece*. They used bonnets made in the form of *Tiaras*; their robes were covered with thin plates of iron, like the scales of a fish, and their drawers were fastened below, round the leg. They likewise carried of bucklers, called *Gerra*, and made of interwoven cords; and the *Romans* after-

(a) Ad Sol. p. 582. 601 & p. 604. seq.  
(b) Ad melan de fin orbis. lib. 3. c. 8. p. m. 179.  
(c) Vid. exercit. ad solus. p. m. 1226 & 1228. A.  
(d) Chap. vi. ver. 1. seq. & chap. ix. ver. 2.  
(e) Lib. 10. &c. (f) Lib. 1. c. 71.

(h) 1. 1. Dial. 2. sub form.  
(i) Vide lib. 6. c. 4. sub form. p. m. 174.  
(j) Lib. 5. c. 27.  
(k) Vide Buchart. Geog. Sac.



1704. ward called the *Spanish* bucklers by the same name. Beside these, they also carried arrows, which hung down on their bodies; and short pikes, together with a large quiver, and javelins made of canes or reeds, with a pincard on the right arm; and they used these arms in imitation of the *Medes*. The *Cissians*, or *Kisbians*, a people in *Persia*, wore at that time, mitres instead of *Tiaras*, according to (a) *Herodotus*. The long robes without plaits, were undoubtedly *Persian*, *Stola Persica*, and they are mentioned by *Cælius* (b) *Rhodiginus*: but *Cyrus* introduced the plaited robes, after he had conquered *Asia*, and he caused these habits to be distributed to the *Persians* at his first offering, after he taken *Babylon*, agreeable to the mode of *Media*; and the *Persians* had no such habits till that time, according to *Xenophon*. (c)

An ancient  
proof taken  
from the  
stair-case

The stair-case, where the figures appear, is a manifest proof that the ruins of *Chilminar* are those of the palace of *Persepolis*, because the habits and arms of the figures, which are entirely different from those which are now used by the modern *Persians*, make it evident, that this stair-case subsisted at the time of the kings of the first race, and even in that of *Xerxes the Great*. Don *Garcia de Silva de Figueroa*, ambassador of *Spain* to king *Abbas*, mentions this stair-case, as a piece of sculpture which represented a triumph, and yet it has no similitude to those which are now exhibited in *Persia*. For *Xenophon* expressly (d) declares, after he had described the offering made by *Cyrus* at *Babylon*, that all the kings of *Persia* who succeeded that prince, imitated his manner of habiting himself, when he appeared in public, and that no beasts were ever introduced, when oblations were not made. It is well known that the *Persians* sacrificed horses to the

sun, and oxen to the moon. The horses represented the rapidity of the sun's course; and the oxen were emblems of husbandry, over which the moon was said to preside. See (e) *Xenophon*, (f) *Heliandrus*, and (g) *Lewis Echurrer*.

But as the figures of camels, asses, and goats, are to be seen upon this stair-case, as well as those of horses and oxen, I will venture to affirm, with all due submission to the learned, that the whole sculpture of this stair-case represents a festival at the birth of a king, with the offerings presented to him, and which is still practised on that occasion; when sheep, deer, and all manner of roasted provisions are brought to the king's tables as an offering. See (h) *Atbenæus*.

These processions are preceded by some persons who wear a *Tiara*, or a kind of crown upon their heads, which was customary in the time of *Cyrus*, in whose reign the principal lords of his court, who were called *Æguals*, were obliged to assist at offerings and festivals, with crowns on their heads, because it was the general opinion, that the gods were delighted to behold the magnificence of those who made oblations to them, and that they received them more favourably on that account. See *Xenophon*. (i)

The vases which are carried by these figures, were undoubtedly filled with odoriferous herbs, and particularly with myrrh, which were presents that the kings of *Persia* received with pleasure, even from their subjects, as *Atbenæus* (k) declares.

The *Spanish* ambassador, who has been so often mentioned, is persuaded, that the animal attacked by the lion, on the stair-case, represents an ox, or a bull; but I rather think it intended for a horse or an ass. This particular piece of sculpture, is no more than a hieroglyphic,

(a) Lib. 3. c. 61. & seq.

(b) Left. antiq. Lib. 18. c. 49.

(c) L. 9. c. 26.

(d) Lib. C.

(e) *Ætiop.* Lib. X.

(f) L. 4. p. 143. & L. 12. p. 324. seq. edit. Commelin. 1597.

(g) L. 12. p. 324.

(h) *Cyrop.* Lib. 5. c. 12.

(i) Edit. Paris. 1619.

(k) *Cyrop.* L. 5. c. 12. &c.



1704. representing virtue victorious over force; and every one knows, that the ancient *Persians* and *Egyptians*, concealed their greatest mysteries under equivocal figures, as *Heliodorus* observes (a).

As all these animals, therefore, are represented with horns, which are not natural to them, some mystery must certainly be intended by that sculpture; and this supposition seems the more reasonable, because it is well known that horns were antiently the emblem of strength, and even of majesty itself; and that they have been consigned to the sun and moon, as well as to *Alexander the Great*; who is called *Dhulkarnam*, or the *horned*, by the *Oriental* people, because he made himself king of the two horns of the sun, namely the east and west (b).

Justice represented by a balance.

As to the scales, it is well known that justice was held in great veneration by the antient *Persians*, as *Xenophon* has observed (c); for which reason balances were carried before the king and the grandees, to represent that justice to their view. This custom likewise prevailed among the antient *Greeks*, and afterward among the *Romans*.

The figures in the two first portals very much resemble a horie, both before and behind, only the head seems to be like that of an ape; and indeed the tail has no great similitude to that of a horse, but this may be imputed to the ornaments which are fastned to it, and were much used among the antient *Persians*. They had the name of sphinx, because they resembled apes, and as the antients likewise gave this denomination to a certain bird, the *Greeks*, and undoubtedly the *Persians*, represented them with wings. Some naturalists pretend that they are also emblematical of the power of fixed and volatile salts.

Why sphinxes were represented with wings.

Parasols used by the antient Persians.

The parasol was antiently in use among the *Persians*, and *Xenophon* (d)

seems to fix the invention of it to the time of *Artaxerxes*, the brother of *Cyrus the Younger*, and not to that of *Cyrus the Great*, in whose reign the *Persians* imitated the habits, ornaments, and manners of the *Medes*, without having recourse to any precautions against the heat of the sun, or the violence of winds and seasons. But this was changed in the reign of *Artaxerxes*, who addicted himself to wine and debaucheries, with his whole court, and sunk into such an effeminate softness, that the shade of trees, and refreshing coolness of caverns and grotts, were no longer thought a sufficient shelter from the heat of the sun, parasols therefore became necessary, and domestics to carry them.

The two figures armed with lances, represent the *Tunicæ manicatæ*, or long plaited robes of the *Medes*, which were worn by the *bastati*, or lance-men, as well *Medes* as *Persians*, in the reigns of *Cyrus*, and several of his successors. What these figures have on their heads, is a kind of bonnet or mitre, mentioned by *Herodotus* (e) in his description of the habits and arms of the forces of king *Xerxes*, and likewise of the *Greeks*. *Rbediginus* (f), in conjunction with this author, will sufficiently clear up this point.

The three figures that are partly broken, and one of which has a plaited robe, and a tiara, together with his chin wrapped up with linnen, represents a *Persian* priest. *Hyde* gives a particular account of them in his history of the religion of the antient *Persians* (g).

The figure which is represented as bearing some particular offerings, exhibits a *Persian* soldier, of the class already mentioned; and I take the other figure, which encounters a lion, and is habited like a *Mede*, to be an hieroglyphic; because the *Egyptians*, from whom the *Persians* borrowed several customs, represent

(a) Lib. 10. (b) Vid. Abul-Pharasi Dynast. vi. p. m. 96.  
(c) L. 8. c. 54. coll. l. 1. c. 4. & 12. (d) Lib. 8. c. 52. & 55.  
(e) L. vii. c. 61. & 62. (f) Lect. ant. L. xviii. c. 21.  
(g) C. 32. p. 369. Fig. 2.



1704.

strength and fortitude, by the figure of a lion. The reader may consult *Clement Alexandrinus* (a) with relation to this particular. It may likewise be intended for a real combat, the *Medes* and *Persians* having been very fond of encountering animals, as *Xenophon* observes in his intimation of *Cyrus* (b). Those who are versed in antiquity may judge of these figures as they think proper.

The figures of the pilaster, which is half buried in the earth, are also arrayed after the manner of the *Medes*, as was intimated in my observations on the figure that bears a parasol. There is likewise a *Persian* priest habited in the same mode, against the window, and he is represented as conducting his offering, which is a goat with a bending horn. The figure is very extraordinary, in the style of the antients, who represent their oblations by strange figures, when any mysterious consecration was to be celebrated. *Heliodorus* (c) treats of this subject at large, as well as *Pignori*, in his description of the temple of *Isis*.

The pilaster which is covered with figures, represents a royal audience, where the king appears seated on his throne, with a foot-stool, after the manner of the antient *Persians*. The book of *Esther* (d) makes mention of this solemn appearance of the king on his throne; and so does *Xenophon* (e). The first figure, which stands behind the king, is habited in the *Median* mode; the second in the *Persian*; and the third like the first. The lances compacted together represent the strength and concord of the kingdom; and the woman, habited in the *Persian* manner, is the figure of a suppliant. The other figures, armed with lances and bucklers, are guards clothed like *Medes*, and they are ranged on each side, in the hollow of the pilaster.

The pilaster which is most ornamented, exhibits the figure of ano-

ther king, or some person of great distinction, who is likewise habited like a *Mede*, with a kind of crown on his head, which was an ornament usually worn by those who were the king's favourites: See *Xenophon* (f).

The figures below the Work seem intended as ornaments and supporters, and they are habited after the *Persian* manner. The Pilaster, whose pedestal is still to be seen, represents something of the same nature.

The tomb, which is hewn out of the rock near *Persepolis*, exhibits the figure of a king before an altar, flaming with the sacred fire, which was held in such great veneration among the *Persians*, that they carried it into the army in times of war, upon a silver altar, as *Quintus Curtius* observes. (g) The care of this fire was committed to the *Magi*, and it was never suffered to be extinguished, but at the death of the king. See *Diodorus Siculus* (h).

The figure, that is supposed to be a king before the altar, is arrayed with a long robe, after the manner of the *Medes*, with a crown upon his head, and a deflected serpent in his hand. I am persuaded that he is making some oblation, and this is the more probable, because it is well known, that *Cambyzes* and *Cyrus* were *Magi*, as well as kings, and consequently were obliged to present offerings in that quality. For which reason, when *Cyrus* accompanied his uncle *Cyaxares*, king of the *Medes*, in his expedition against the *Assyrians*, *Cambyzes* presented an offering for his son and his army; and when *Cyrus* returned into *Persia*, after the conquest of the *Babylonian* kingdom, *Cambyzes* assembled the grandees of his empire, and issued a decree, by which he enjoined *Cyrus* to make an offering in person, and in favour of his people, when he should ascend the throne of *Persia*, after his death; and this ceremonial was to be performed by a prince of the blood, in

The tomb  
near Per-  
sepolis.

(a) 4 Hierogl.

(b) Lib. i.

(c) Aethiop. lib. x.

(d) Chap. v. ver. 1.

(e) Lib. vii. cap. 21. seq.

(f) Lib. viii. cap. 22, 27, 28, 29, &amp; 30.

(g) Lib. iii. cap. 7.

(h) Lib. xvii.



1704. the absence of the king. *Xenophon* takes notice of these particulars in his institution of *Cyrus* (a).

As to the serpent dejected into a half round, the ancients intended to represent by this hieroglyphic, a king whose dominion was not very extensive; but when they would express a great monarch, they delineated a serpent form'd into a circle, and holding his tail with his teeth, as may be found in *Orus Apollo* (b). From whence I judge, that this serpent, if it be one, which the king has in his hand, adumbrates the king of *Persia*, but if it should even be a bow, my conjecture would not be less reasonable, because the *Persians* affected to carry a bow and arrows, to distinguish themselves from other nations; and this remark is confirmed by the figures on the stair-case, which are represented with quivers on their shoulders.

The little figure that appears in the air, and which *Mr. Hyde* takes for a king, in the act of flying, or for a soul that soars to the heavens, has the same habit and ornaments for the head, as that of the king, below it. *Strabo* declares (c), that the *Persians* did not burn the offerings they presented to the sun, but divided them among themselves, through a persuasion that the Gods were satisfied with the souls of those animals that were offered to them. For my part, I think this figure may properly signify an oracle, because it is seated on a tripod, as was customary at *Delphos*.

The figures on each side of the tomb, are also habited like *Medes*, and those that appear between the ornaments, with lifted hands, are dressed after the *Persian* manner.

The heads of animals, with a horn, are only ornaments expressive

of the regal power, as I have already intimated. 1704.

The sun, that appears above the altar, represents the ancient divinity of the *Persians*, as *Strabo* and *Quintus Curtius* have observed. The sun an ancient divinity of the Persians.

In a word, one of the principal reasons by which we are inclined to believe, that *Chilminar* was the ancient palace of *Persepolis*, is because we find that the tombs which are to the east, on the mountain, were anciently called the royal monuments.

As to that of *Naxi Rustan*, I am well persuaded that it was built by *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes*, because the exterior part of this tomb exactly corresponds with the description given of it by *Ctesias* in his history of *Persia* (d), after *Herodotus*; and with that of *Diadurus Siculus*, which has been already mentioned.

The words of this historian are these: *Darius ordered a tomb to be built for himself on a double mountain, where his friends, who had an inclination to see him, caused themselves to be raised up by a priest, with the aid of a rope.*

When all these particulars are duly considered, it must be granted that there is a great resemblance between *Chilminar*, and the palace of the ancient city of *Persepolis*: But it would be difficult to assign the particular time when it was founded, because when *Xenophon* (e) mentions the journey *Cyrus* took from *Babylon* to *Persia*, to visit the king his father, he only says, that having left his troops by the way, he proceeded to the city, without naming it. As to any other particulars, it is very probable, that the city of *Elymais*, which was the capital of the kingdom, was afterward called *Persepolis*. As to the figures and ornaments that are to be seen at *Chilminar*, they were made in after-times by several kings.

(a) Lib. i. cap. 24. & lib. viii. cap. 38. & alibi. (b) *Nicolas hieroglyph.* No. 36, 38, 60, 61.  
(c) *Georg. lib. ii. p. 152. seq. Edit. Calamb.*  
(d) *Vide Excerpt. Phot. Segm. 13. sec. p. 642. Op. Herodot. Ed. Francof.*  
(e) *Lib. viii. cap. 37.*



*Observations concerning the founder of the royal palace of Persepolis, which was destroyed by Alexander the Great, and is known at this time by the name of Chilminar.*

The Macedonians  
masters of  
Persia.

WHEN Alexander the Great had conquered king Darius, and seized his empire, agreeably to the prophecy of Daniel (a), that prince gave up, to the pillage of his soldiers, the famous city of *Persepolis*, which was situated on the *Araxis*, that flows on one side of *Chilminar*, at a small distance, according to the learned *Isaac Vossius* (b). He afterward made himself master of the treasures which had been amassed in the palace of that capital, from the time of *Cyrus* the founder of the *Persian* empire. Those treasures, according to ancient authors, amounted to a hundred and twenty thousand talents (c). To these must be added six thousand talents which were found at *Pasagarda*; 50000 at *Susa*, and 26000 at *Ecbatane*, which amount in the whole to 202000 talents, exclusive of the money that was at *Damascus*, *Arbela*, and *Babylon* (d): Tho' *Diodorus* and *Plutarch*, as well as *Justin*, say there were no more than 40000 talents at *Susa*.

His treasures.

Nothing can give a better idea of the ill use Alexander made of his fortunate conquests, than the excesses he committed on the day when he celebrated their festival. He invited all his friends on that occasion, and several courtisans, among whom was a Grecian woman, named *Thais*, who, seeing him heated with wine, persuaded him to fire the stately palace of that city, and, at the same time, spirited up all the guests, to imitate the example of that prince. His troops, who were then encamp-

ed at a very small distance from the city, seeing the flames, and imputing them to chance, immediately hastened thither to prevent the consequences; but when they beheld Alexander with a torch in his hand, they threw away the water they brought, and assisted him in completing the destruction of that fine palace, the glory of the east, and the seat of its kings. This event according to *Diodorus*, (e) happen'd about the close of the fourth year of the 112th olympiad; in the year of the world 3621, according to *Hebraicus*; the 4385th of the *Julian* period, and 327 years before the birth of our Lord Jesus Christ. It is said that Alexander intended, by this action, to revenge the conduct of *Xerxes*, who had formerly destroyed the temples of *Greece*, and particularly those of *Athen*, in the same manner. But *Arrian* censures the proceeding of Alexander (f), and declares this to be an improper manner of avenging himself on the ancient *Persians*. He adds, that *Parmenio* employed all his efforts to prevent the destruction of that fine palace, and told Alexander, that he ought to preserve the rich acquisitions of his valour, and that he would infallibly draw upon himself the hatred of the *Asiatics*, who would imagine that his only intention was to destroy *Asia*, instead of deriving any real advantages from his conquest of that country (g). He accordingly preserved it, but did not enjoy it for any long time; and this empire was rent, and divided after

(a) Chap. xi. ver. 3. &c.

(b) Ad Pompon. Mel. cap. viii. p. m. 320.

(c) Vide Diod. Sicul. lib. xviii. p. 600. Edit. Steph. seu p. 124. Edit. Wech. Conf. Curt. lib. v. cap. 20.

(d) Conf. Curt. lib. vi. cap. 4. Arrian lib. iii. de exp. Alex.

(e) Lib. 8. p. c. seq.

(f) Lib. iii. p. m. 65.

(g) Conf. Curt. lib. v. cap. 22. seq.



1704. his death among his captains. And when these had weakened themselves by their continual divisions and wars, the *Parthians*, under the conduct of *Asaces*, made themselves masters of *Persia* and several other of its dependant states. But the *Persians* commanded by *Artaxerxes*, regained the possession of those territories, in the time of the emperor *Alexander Severus*, and the *Mohammedan Khaifabs* afterward made themselves masters of the same, and then the *Sophies*, from whom the present king is descended.

Tho' *Arrian*, *Quintus Curtius*, *Justin*, and some others, call the palace of *Persepolis*, the palace of *Cyrus*, it would yet be difficult to point out the true founder, as has been already observed; But if it was not built by *Cyrus* himself, it might possibly have been erected by *Cambyzes*, *Darius*, or *Xerxes*, as far as can be judged by its architecture. This conjecture is even strengthened by a passage in *Diodorus*, (a) who declares, speaking of the magnificence of *Thebes* and *Egypt*, that indeed the structures which were raised there, still subsisted in his time, but that all the ornaments of gold, silver, ivory, and stone, had been carried away by the *Persians*, when *Cambyzes* caused the temples of *Egypt* to be burnt, and that out of the spoils of that kingdom which were transported into *Asia*, the palaces of *Persepolis* and *Susa* were built, and that workmen were sent from *Egypt* to raise those structures. The same *Diodorus* indeed says in another place, that the palace of *Susa* had been built long before the foundation of the *Persian* empire, by *Memnon* the Son of *Tithonus*, whom *Teutamus* king of *Assyria*, is said to have sent to the succour of *Priam* during the siege of *Troy*, with 10000 *Ethiopians*, together with as many troops of *Susians*, and 200 chariots; and

that the palace was called *Memnonia* from him (b). With respect to the city of *Susa*, it is said to have derived its name from the white lillies which grew in the adjacent parts; and it is agreed, that *Cyrus*, and the *Persians* caused a palace to be erected there, after they had subdued the *Medes*, in order to be nearer to *Babylonia*, and the other dominions that were subjected to their empire; at least, this is the opinion of *Strabo* (c). *Pliny* however declares, (d) that the palace of *Susa* was built by *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes*; which, with what has been cited from *Diodorus*, may have occasioned the opinion that this prince enlarged that city, and founded a palace there, especially as this is confirmed by (e) *Ælian*.

It cannot, in my opinion, be doubted, that the palace of *Persepolis* was likewise built, or at least adorned and embellished with the spoils of *Egypt*, as *Diodorus* has observed. There might, indeed, have been a city and castle of that name, in the time of *Cyrus*, but it certainly had not then attained to that degree of splendor and magnificence, in which it afterward appeared, at least it is not mentioned in that manner by any historian. And what is still more to our purpose, *Herodotus*, *Xenophon*, and the other historians of those times, do not rank even the palace of *Persepolis* among the royal mansions of *Cyrus*. *Justin*, indeed, after *Trogus*, and some modern writers, slightly mention the city of *Persepolis*, but reckon only the palaces of *Babylon*, *Ecbatane*, and *Susa*, among those of *Cyrus*. It is likewise certain, that the ancient *Greek* historians, *Herodotus*, *Ctesias*, and some others, hardly take any notice of that of *Persepolis*, and positively declare, that most of the kings who reigned after *Cyrus*, resided at *Susa*. Beside, *Cassiodorus* (f) ranks among the seven wonders

(a) Lib. i. p. 40. Ed. Steph. Bz. p. 41. Wech.

p. 109. Wech. Conf. Herod. L. v. c. 53. seq. & L. vii. c. 1. 31. Strabo L. xv. p. m. 728. Suppl. lib. voce *Susa*.

(c) L. c. p. 137.

(d) Lib. vi. c. 27. Hist. Nat.

(e) Lib. i. c. 39. Conf. Gail. Hist. in Comm. suo ad Dionys. Orbis descript. Ver. 1074. p. 357. Bz. Londin.

(f) Lib. vii. ep. 13.



1704. of the world, the palace of *Cyrus*, founded at *Susa* by *Memnon*, with the utmost magnificence, and that the very Stones of it were riveted together with gold; and yet it cannot be denied that the seat of the *Persian* empire and of all the east was fixed at *Persepolis*, in the Time of *Xerxes*, and *Alexander the Great*. See *Quintus Curtius* to that effect(a). The palace of this capital may have even been called the palace of *Cyrus*, and this prince might formerly have made it the seat of his residence, before that edifice had received the ornaments which were afterward added to it; but he can never be considered as its founder: For if it was really finished with so much magnificence, and adorned with the spoils of *Egypt*, as *Diodorus* declares, it must have been after his death. *Cambyses* likewise could not be the founder of it, any more than his father, since he died in his return from *Egypt*; and it is impossible it should be *Smerdis* the *Magus*, who usurped the crown after the death of that prince, since he enjoyed it but six months. I therefore conclude, that it was erected by the same *Darius* who adorned and embellished the city of *Susa*, and that *Xerxes*, the richest and most potent of all the *Persian* kings completed the Work. *Strabo* (b) confirms my opinion, when he declares,

that after the kings of *Persia* had 1704. embellished the palace of *Susa*, they did the same by those of *Persepolis* and *Pasargada*, where their treasures and archives were deposited, because they were fortified places, and had been the residence of their ancestors. Beside, the habits of the figures that are still to be seen among the ruins of this palace, have no correspondence with those of the ancient *Persians*, but resemble those that were afterward introduced by *Cyrus* and his successors. We likewise find in *Quintus Curtius*, (c) that after *Alexander* had recovered from his intoxication, he repented of the action he had committed, and said, that the *Persians* would have been more mortified to have seen him seated in the palace, and on the throne of *Xerxes* at *Persepolis*, than to behold the same palace reduced to ashes. But this historian is mistaken, when he pretends, that not the least traces of this palace were to be seen after that conflagration, except the river *Araxis*, which marked out in some measure the place where it was situated. For it is certain, that there are still to be found at *Chilminar*, most of those particulars, which the ancients ascribe to the palace of *Persepolis*, though much impaired, as appears by the plates and figures inserted in these travels.

## C H A P. LV.

*The author's departure from Persepolis. His arrival at Zije-raes, or Chiras. The description of that city. His arrival at Ispahan.*

1705. AFTER I had employed almost three months in searching after all the famous antiquities of *Persepolis*, and had fully satisfied my curiosity, I set out from thence

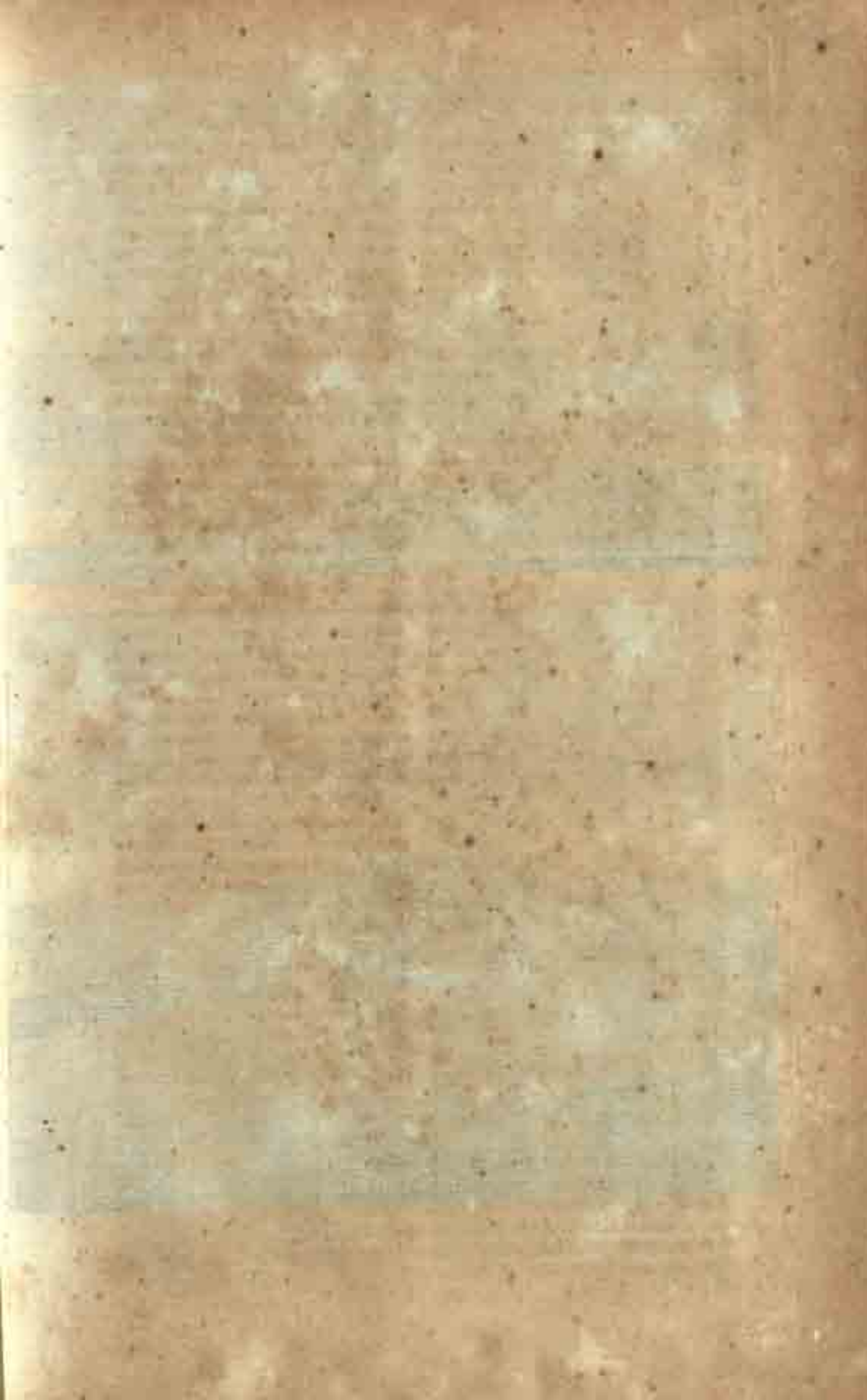
the 27th. of *January*, 1705, and returned through the plain, where I did not find so much game as I had seen the first time, the season being far advanced. When I had

(a) Lib. v. c. 23.

(b) Cit. 513.

(c) Lib. cit.







LE PORT DE LA SERRA





1704. proceeded half way in my journey, I drew the three mountains, on which had formerly been the fortresses already mentioned. The first and largest of these mountains is that which seems divided in the middle; the two others on the right, are near the bridge of *Jesuctoon*, and the remotest of them is generally covered with snow. The representation of them may be seen in plate 172. and with the bridge of *Pal-Chanie*, over the river of *Roetgoena*, or *Bendimir*, in plate 173. There was so much water in the country adjacent to *Sergoon*, that the horses were up to their girths, which made me very uneasy with respect to my papers, the horse who carried them being frequently in danger of falling. After I had passed through this inundation, I left the town of *Sergoon* on my left, and advanced toward the mountains, which are very high and stony, and arrived there in the space of half an hour. I travelled over them to the south-west, and passed by several *Caravan-ferais*, and some burying-places shaded with cypresses; and came, that evening, to *Zji-raes*, which is nine leagues from *Persepolis*, and went to lodge at the convent of the *Carmelites*.

This city begins to be seen a little beyond the mountains, which are then to be left 500 paces to the right; after which we discovered a great number of tall cypress-trees, with a wall cut out of the rock, from whence a stream of water falls like a torrent, after great rains. The road between the rocks is deep and narrow, and leads to the city. This is situated to the right, and has a wall of earth on the right and left, but much impaired on one side. It is about 300 paces in length, and adjoins to a gate which is five paces wide at the entrance, and enlarges into ten as you advance. When we had passed through this gate, which is very large and lofty, we came to a narrow passage, called *Teng-alla-agher*, bordered with buildings, on the right and left, like the *Chistr-*

bag at *Ispahan*, but most of them are in ruins, as well as the gardens, which are filled with cypresses and fruit-trees. At the distance of 1500 paces from the gate, and in the middle of the public way, is a basin seventy two paces in length, and forty-six in breadth, lined with stone. On each side is a wall in form of a half moon, with arches and seats; and on the left a mosque, which extends one hundred paces in front. The bridge of *Pal-Zjæ-Sade*, is <sup>as from</sup> ninety paces from thence, and <sup>bridge</sup> as many in length. It is built of stone, with four arches, of which that in the middle is the loftiest. It crosses the river *Roetgone*, whose source is between two little mountains, twelve leagues to the north of *Zji-raes*, and discharges itself into the sea of *Derjanemeck*, or the *Salt-Sea*. The pass of *Teng-alla-agher* begins at this bridge, and is thirty paces wide. At the end of this the way lies through another passage of the same extent, and which is carried on to one of the oldest gates of the city, called *Davase Hanie*, or the iron gate, which is greatly impaired, and serves at present for a *Bazar*. It is vaulted, and extends to the length of eighty paces. Several *Turkish* characters are inscribed on this gate, and the ruins of a tower above it. It affords a passage into a great street, on the left side of which is a burying-place, and a ruinous garden, with several edifices on the right. This street extends to the heart of the city, which is a small league in circumference. In the reign of *Abas the Great*, it was governed by a certain lord, named *Eman-Cauli-Chan*, who was much esteemed by that prince, as well for the great services his father had performed for the state in the war against the *Turks*, as also for those which he himself had accomplished, by wresting the fortress of *Ormuz* from the *Portuguese*, by the assistance of the *English*. This was a place of such importance, that it formerly constituted a kingdom of that name, with the territories and cities that were its dependencies, and



1705.

A faithful  
account of  
a journey  
of Gou-  
ron.

it extended as far as *Lacr*. The king, in order to recompence so signal a service, honoured this lord with the title of duke, or governor of all the country which lies between this city and *Gouren*. This prince likewise usually styled him his grand duke, and when the *Dutch India* company first came to traffic in *Persia*, under the direction of *Hubert Ulfhieb*, he gave this lord full power to treat with them, on what conditions he should judge most advantageous to the state; which was a very extraordinary concession in a country where the kings are so jealous of their authority and power; and it accordingly excited against him the jealousy of the ministers and lords of the court, who resolved to ruin him after the death of king *Ahas*, who was succeeded by *Sephi*, his grandson, to whom they did not fail to render the governor suspected. This prince being thus prejudiced against him, commanded him to appear immediately at court, under pretext of imparting to him an affair of the utmost consequence, but in reality to destroy him. The governor resolved to obey this mandate, contrary to the sentiments of all his friends, who represented to him the danger to which he was preparing to expose himself; and that he could have nothing to apprehend, if he would continue where he was, since neither his enemies, nor the king himself, would attempt to offer the least violence to him there. But as this lord was conscious of his innocence, and, at the same time, was impelled by the fatality of his destiny, he set out for the court, where he was perfectly well received and caressed. He was likewise persuaded, that in case the king had been determined to destroy him, he needed only to have demanded his head, by virtue of the absolute power of the eastern monarchs, which as he had not done, his mind was free from all suspicion, and this occasioned his ruin: For the king caused him to be assassinated in a bath, by his greatest enemies, among whom was

his own son-in-law; and not content with this victim, they sacrificed to their barbarous hatred his fifty natural sons, the eldest of whom they murdered, and caused the eyes of the rest to be plucked out. Such was the catastrophe of this great man.

At the end of the street I lately mentioned, are several others, full of shops, and which cross each other to the right and left. The *Indians* have a *Caravanferai* there, and some *American* are likewise there, but the traffic which they transact, is not very considerable.

In the heart of the city is a large edifice, the facade of which resembles that of a mosque, with portals and two fine towers, the upper part of which is impaired. This structure, which is called *Madre ze Imon Couli Chan*, is a public college, where all sorts of sciences are studied. There are six great mosques in this city; the first of which is dedicated to one of the twelve *Imam*s, and has the denomination of *Ghateen Kjeomet*; the second is called *Zeyd alla dien Ofeyn*; the third, *Sjegnoerbags*; the fourth, *Zadaed mier Mohammed*; the fifth, *Cbjed't Zieraeg*; and the last, *Mad-zyd nou*, or the new mosque. There is another great city on the side of this, and adjoining to the bridge already mentioned, and I was assured by some persons, that, beside the mosques which I have named, there are three hundred more, that are smaller, and serve for chapels; and 200 baths. This city contains thirty-eight quarters, twenty one of which belong to the faction of *Heyderes*, and seventeen to that of *Mammet-ellars*. There are likewise about 700 very poor *Jewish* families in this place; they inhabit a particular quarter, and are vine-dressers for the generality. Some of them, however, manufacture stuffs of gold and silks. They pretend to be descended from the ancient *Jews* who were carried from *Jerusalem* to *Babylon*, and afterward settled in *Persia*. As for the *Indians* there were about a thousand of them in this city, and they acquired

The Af-  
fection of  
China.



1705.

acquired their subsistence by changing gold and silver, and likewise by usury: But the number of the *Europeans* there is very inconsiderable. The principal among them are two *Carmelites*, one of whom is of *Milan*, and his name is *Pedro d'Alcantara de Sainte Terefe*: I may add too, that he is a gentleman with whom I have passed many agreeable hours. The other is a *Pole*, seventy three years of age, thirty seven of which he has spent in *Persia*, where he has been three times. The name of this gentleman is *Sladislau*. There is likewise an *Italian*, named *Francisco*, who supplies the *English* merchants with wines; and a *Portuguese*, who makes those which his countrymen yearly transport from *Gauzon* to the *Indies*.

Washed  
buildings.

Most of the buildings of this city are in ruins, and the streets so narrow and dirty, that they are hardly passible in rainy seasons; and there are several places, where passengers are obliged to bend their bodies, in order to walk under the arches before the houses, and especially in the quarter inhabited by the *Jews*. The streets are likewise rendered very offensive by a number of places of easement, which are all without, and render the air very unwholesome, in consequence of which the generality of the inhabitants are very lean and pale. The *Europeans* themselves are subject to a certain indisposition, in the summer season, which frequently carries them off; and the burying-grounds lie open to the *Jacksals*, or wild dogs, that are engendered by a dog and a fox. These creatures often commit great disorders in the city, and in the night-time make dismal howlings which much resemble a human voice.

The cypress-trees are the principal ornament of this city, and indeed I never saw any so fine, nor in so great a number, in any other place. There are likewise several large gardens without the city, which are filled with these trees, as are also the avenues, where care is taken to plant them with great regularity.

Half a league from the city, to the north, are several tombs of saints, in the mountains: The name of the most considerable of whom is *Baba Koj*, or the saint of the mountain, where he lived a long time in the utmost solitude. The *Persians* have a singular devotion for that place, and daily resort to it. These tombs have several apartments; and in the lowest of them is a court, with a fountain surrounded with cypress, and other trees, among which I took notice of some whose stocks were thirty palms in diameter. We ascended from this tomb into another that is higher, by a stair-case of sixty two steps, each of which is about three inches high, and at the top of these, are five others covered with a small dome, under which the body of a solitary is deposited.

I chose this place as commodious for me to make a draught of the city, but the weather proved too unfavourable that day. On a little rock, at the foot of the mountain, are the ruins of a beautiful structure, with a large basin without water, and likewise a spacious garden full of cypress, and other trees, with beautiful alleys, where the trees were planted in straight rows. At the end of the middle alley are the ruins of another edifice, which corresponds with the former. The garden was encompassed with a mound of earth, but it was all over-grown with weeds, and entirely neglected at that time. This amiable place is called *Terredent*, or *Paradise*; and two hundred years ago it was the residence of a king, named *Karogio*. Half a league from the city are likewise to be seen the ruins of the ancient fortress of *Kallac-Fandus*. I climbed up with great difficulty, and found some remains of a wall on the rock, composed of small stones strongly cemented together with a composition as hard as the rock itself. This fortress was once half a league in circumference, as far as can be judged by the little that still remains. There was likewise a second wall, higher than the first; and

1705.

Tombs for  
Saints.

Abundant  
fuel from  
trees.

1705. and as the top of the mountain is covered with heaps of stones, they are probably the ruins of a lesser fortress, that was at some distance from the other. The rocky part of the mountain, forms likewise a kind of wall to the west; from whence one may see several stones, that have fallen from a higher wall, and the ruins of a tower, contiguous to the first wall. There is a very steep way in this place, which extends to the summit of the mountain, and some remains of a wall, joined to the tower already mentioned. I drew the annexed design, on the south west, where I saw some fragments of a building on the rock; and the middle part, which is now separated from the rest, constituted

RUINES DE LA FORTERESSE KALLAY FANDUS.

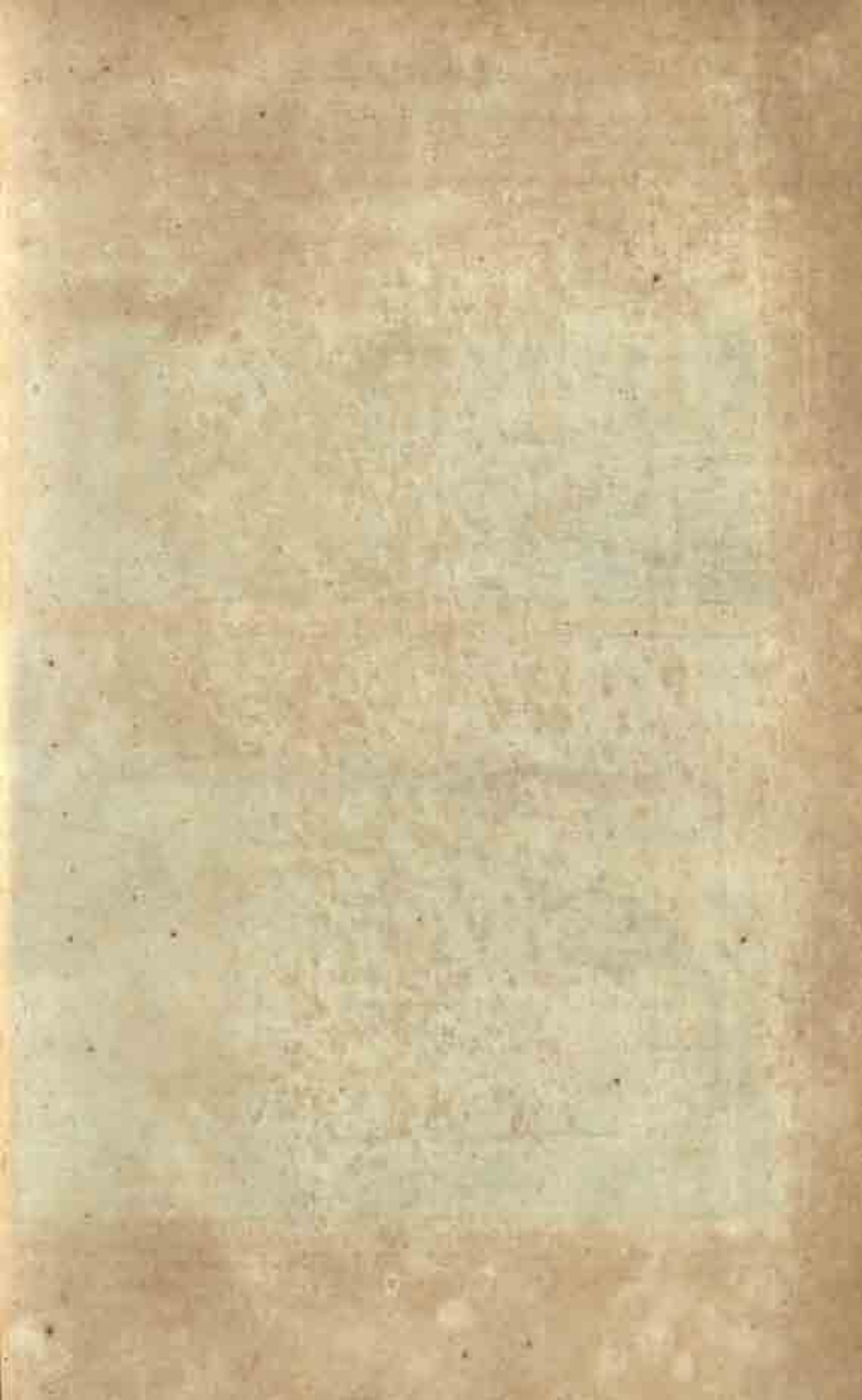


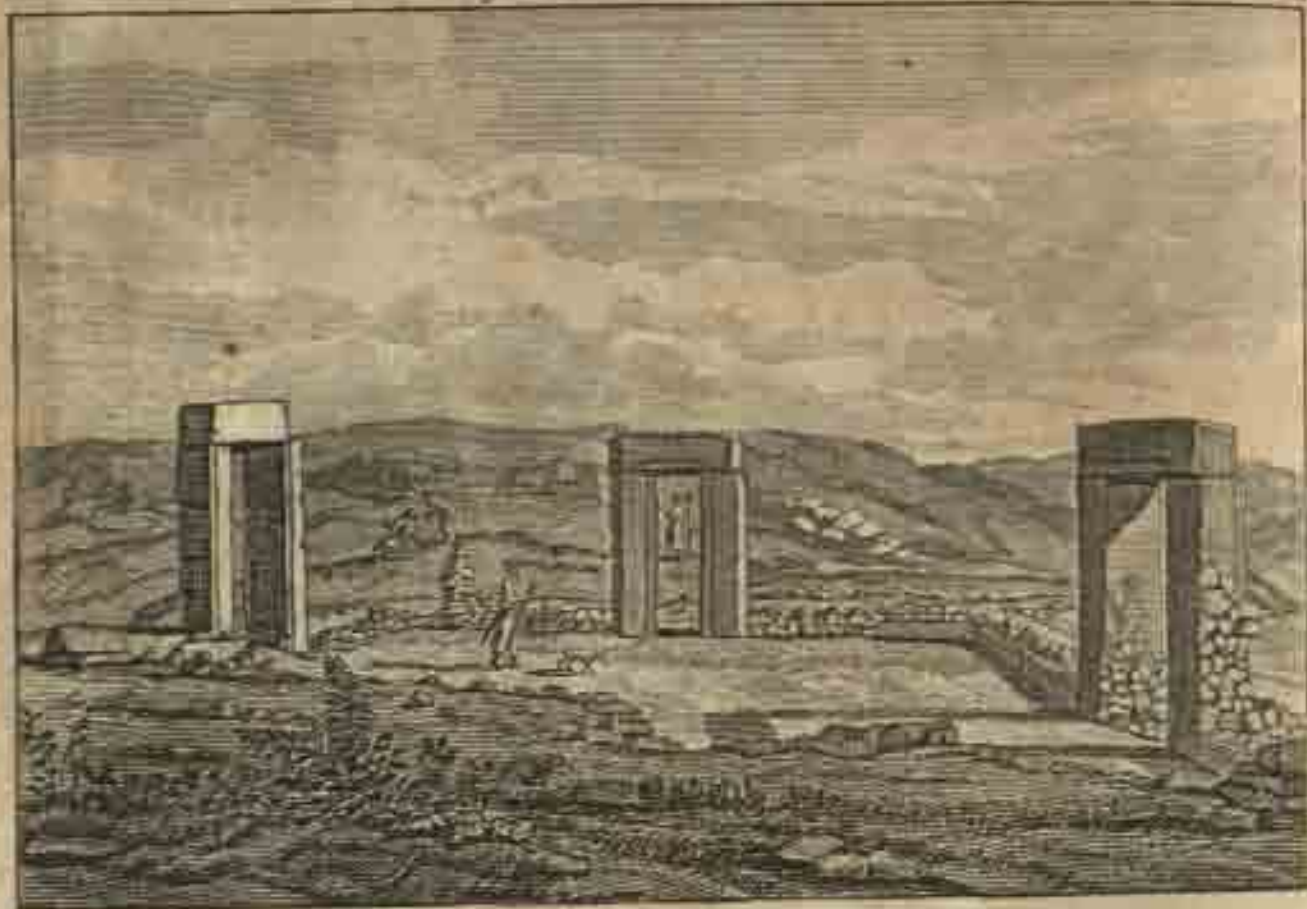
The tomb  
of a fine  
Persian  
poet.

one of the towers of the wall. I had likewise a view of another ruined edifice in the plain, together with the tomb of one of the greatest poets in Persia, known by the name of *Siegsady*, who lived about 400 years ago, and caused this tomb, which is large and well built, to be erected. He was a Dervise, and a native of *Zjerratt*; and there are still extant twenty Arabic books, in his manner, and two in the Persian language. On one side of this tomb, is a large

octagon basin, the water of which is moderately warm, and plentifully replenished with fish. The basin is surrounded with a low wall, and the water flows out of it toward the city, from under a building, and then forms several other fountains, which disperse their streams through the meadows; but no one is permitted to catch the fish that pass from one of these fountains to another. I, however, caught a few cray-fish. All these structures are shaded with fine cypress-



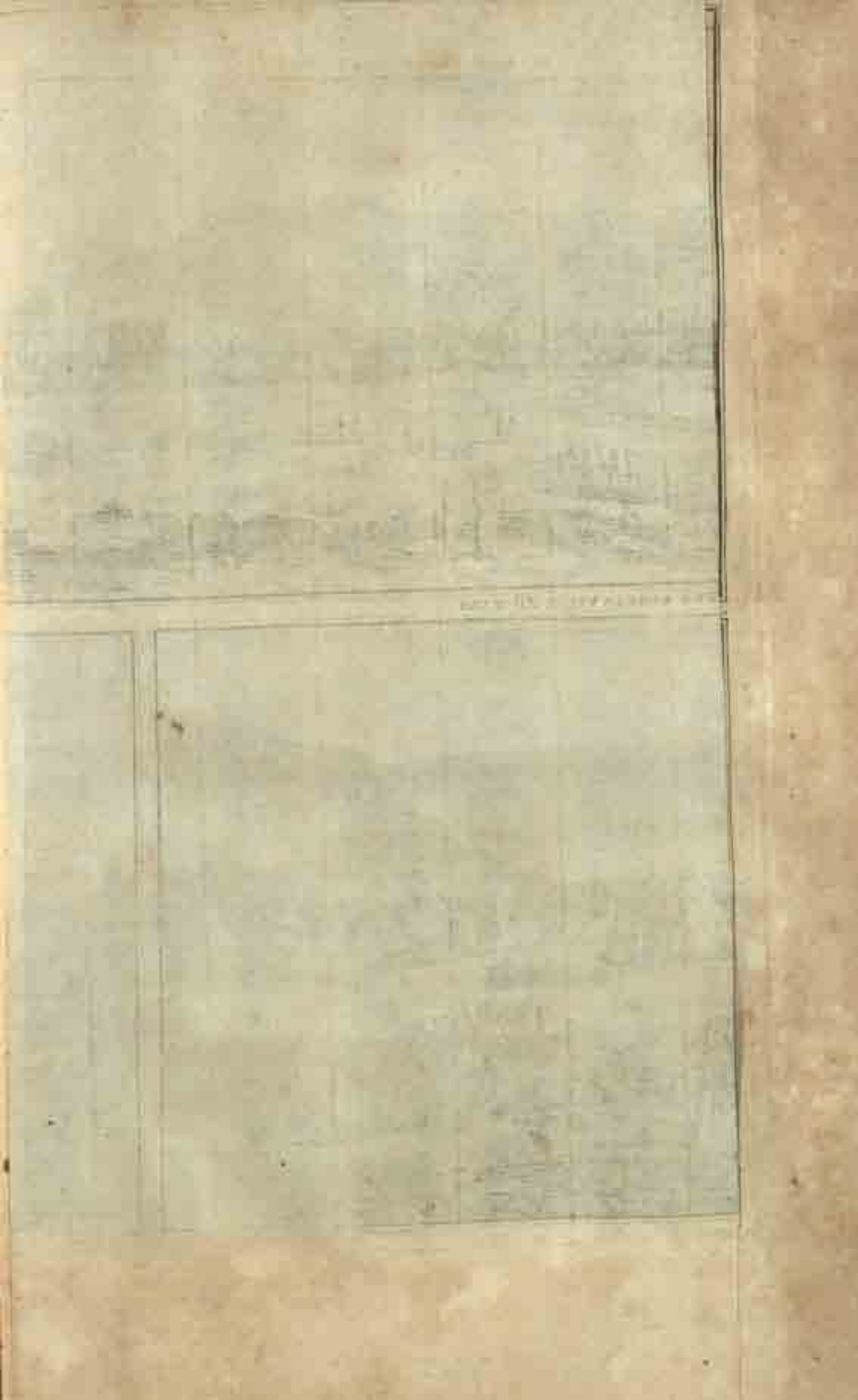




FIGURES SUR LE ROCHER.









VUE VERS LA VILLE ZU-RABE.

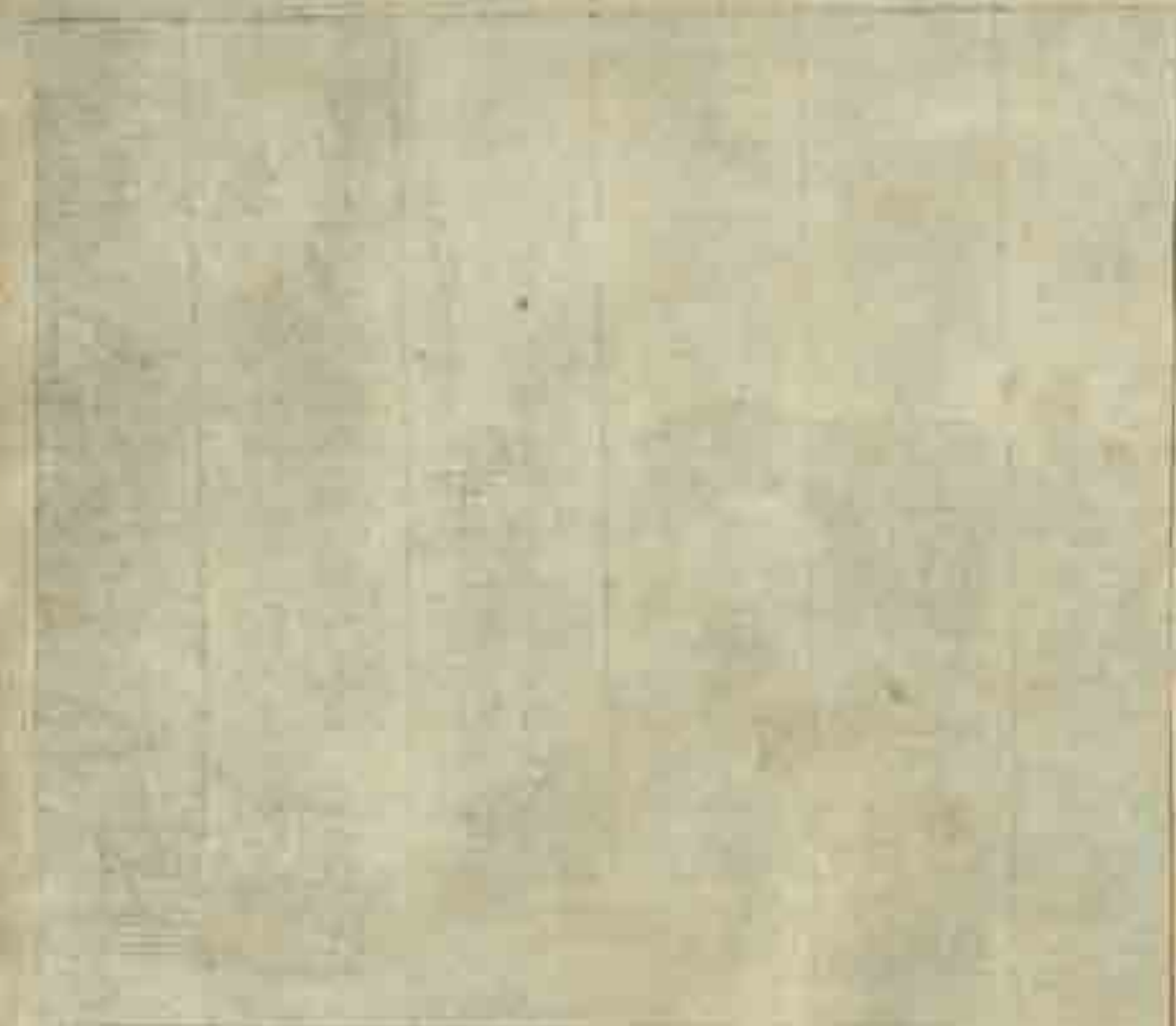
VUE PROCHE DE LA PORTE DE ZU-RABE.

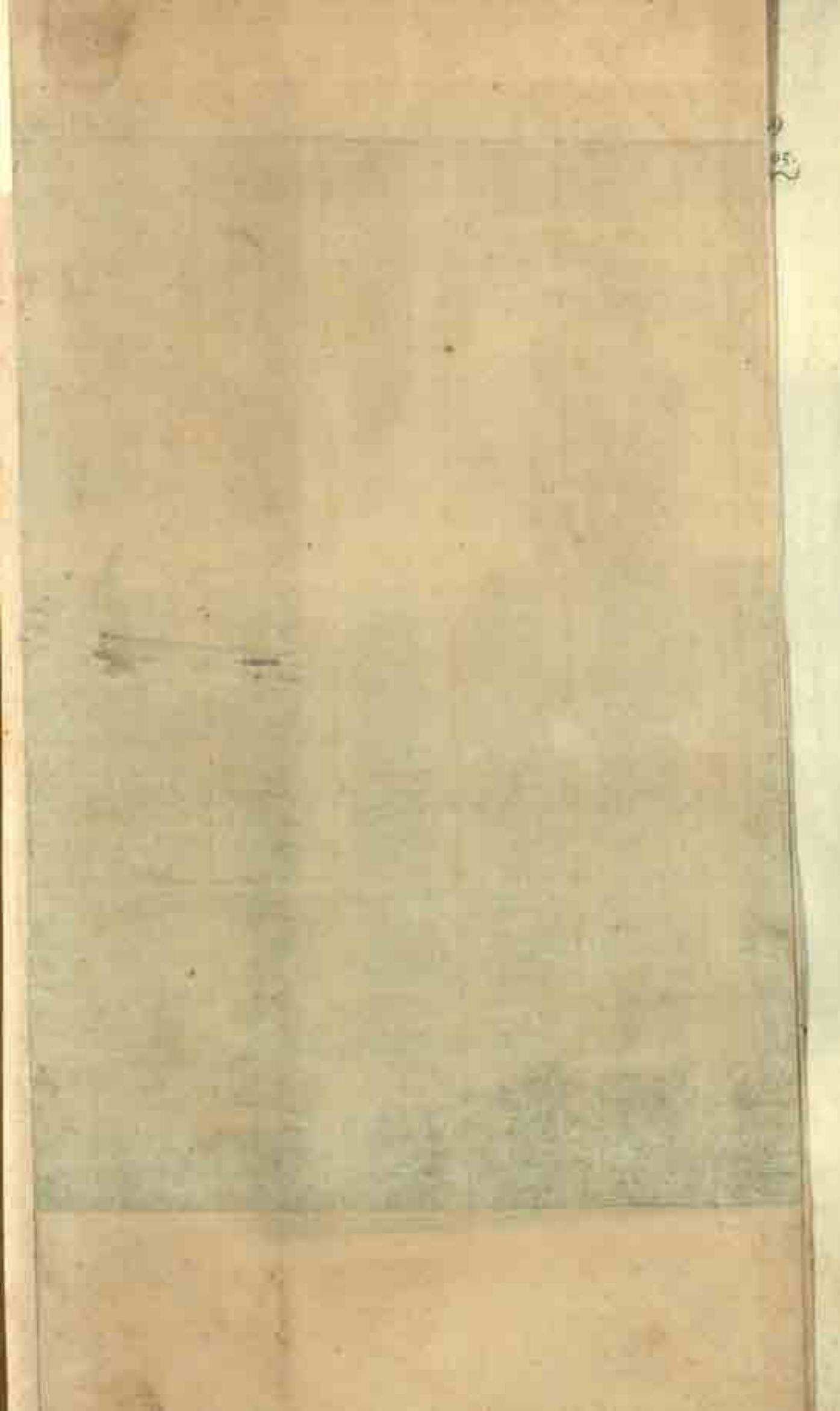




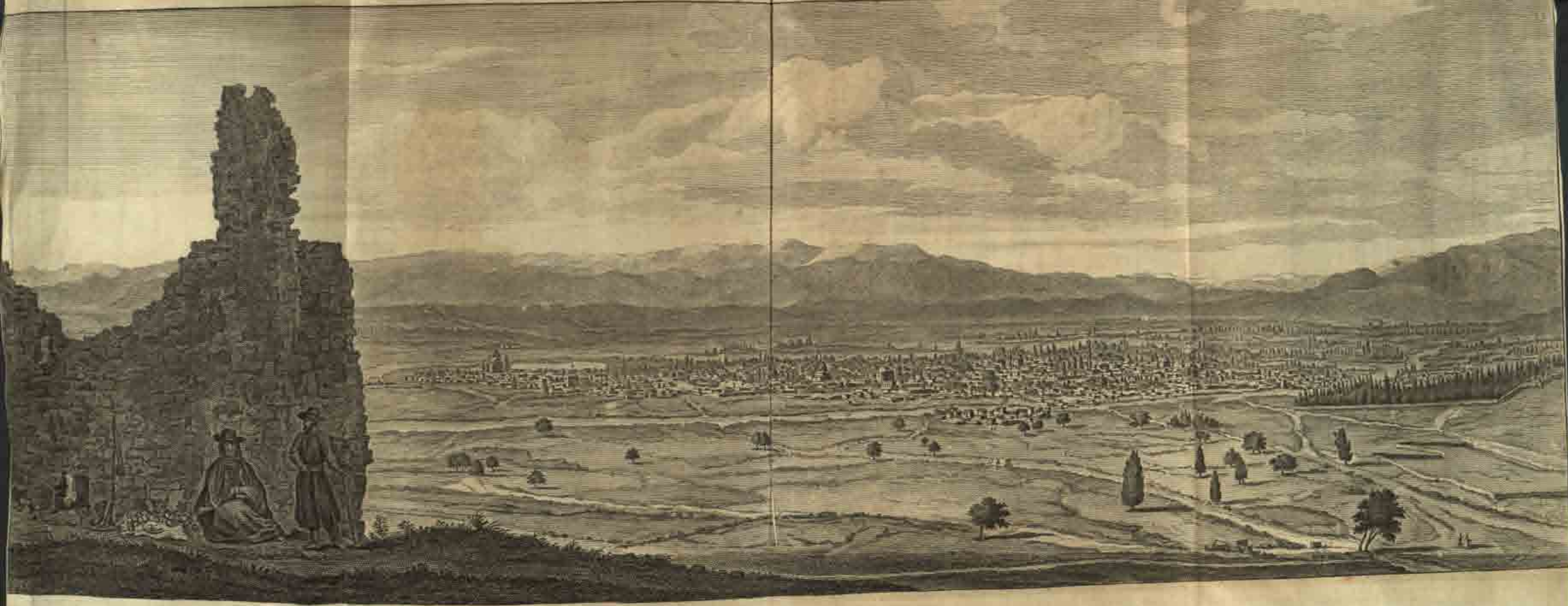


TABLE OF CONTENTS















1705. cypress trees; and there is a beautiful meadow, which serves for whitening of linnen.

As I observed the prospect of the city made a more pleasing appearance on the mountain I have mentioned, than it did on that where I first began to draw the intended design, I returned thither in a few days, to the east, and completed the drawing represented in the plate 174, where I have marked the particular objects with numerical figures. 1. *Gbatzen Kioment*. 2. *Siegh Zyed Oddien*, a mosque demolished by the Turks. 3. *Zeyt alla dien Offein*. 4. *Seig noerbags*. 5. *Zadard mier Mokammed*. 6. *Cha't Zieraeg*. 7. *Mad Zid Nou*, or the new mosque. Between the last of these is seen the college already mentioned. 8. *Bibie doelteroen*, a large structure, where are some tombs. 9. *Zeyt mier alie kamse*, near the bridge of *Pol Zja Zade*, without the wall of the city. 10. The *Gbiaer-barg*. 11. *Zeyt adien*, a village, on the river of which is a bridge fifty six paces in length. 12. the river of *Roetgoene*. 13. *Seme Verdomeck*. 14. *Koey Sieg*. 15. *Ferradout*, or paradise. There is likewise on the mountain, where I drew the design of the city, an exceeding deep well, hewn in the rock, the opening into which is fifteen feet long, and eight broad.

We cast into it several stones, which made a surprising noise in their descent. I had an inclination to sound the depth, but the cords which I had procured, not being of a sufficient length, I caused them to be untwisted, and then fastened together, upon which I found the well to be 420 feet and eleven inches deep. We afterward threw into it large balls of oiled cloth, set on fire, and fixed upon iron plates, in order to obtain a view of the bottom, and in what manner it was formed, but the depth was too great to afford us that discovery, notwithstanding those flaming balls shot forth a great blaze. We then threw down others, which were not fastened like the former, and the light of them appeared, and then vanished from time

Vol. II.

to time, which made us conclude that the cavity was not continued down in a strait line, and that there had been some other entrance. It, however, was a real well, made for the preservation of water, and there was another, something less, in the same mountain.

In my return to the city, I desired a man of letters to inform me, by whom these fortresses were built, and at what time? He assured me, they were erected by a *Guebree* king, named *Fandus*, and that the mountain of *Kalley Fandus*, on which they were situated, had received its denomination from him: that it was surrounded with the sea at that time, and that 6000 years had elapsed, since they first began to build on that plain, on the side of *Zjie-raet*, in the reign of *Siemschid*, who was then emperor of *Persia*, and has been already mentioned: He added, that this prince was the founder of *Persopolis*, which was built after *Zjie-raet*, or *Chirac*. This city is in the province of *Pari*, or *Parfistan*, to the south west of *Persopolis*, and on the river of *Roetgoen*, twelve easy days journey from *Ispahan*, and about twenty foot from *Gamron*; which distances are very ill observed in the maps, that place this city at an equal distance from *Ispahan*, and *Ormut*.

Without the gate of *Dervasy* <sup>A fine alley.</sup> *Bagh Zjia*, to the north west, is the lovely alley of *Kact-Zjia-Barg*, which extends to the King's garden, which is ninety five paces wide, and 966 in length. When we had passed <sup>The King's garden.</sup> through the lodge, at the end of this garden, we came into another beautiful alley, bordered with cypress-trees; this is 620 paces long, and twenty broad, and is covered over with flowers in the middle. We there saw a delightful house, surrounded with a charming canal; there is likewise a fountain at each corner of the building, which is square, and they mingle their streams with the water of the canal. This house is spacious, and in the middle of it is a grand hall, covered with a dome,

O



1705. a dome, which is filled with niches, both within and without. Before we entered the house we had the view of a square basin to the left, whose angles are eighty five paces long. This beautiful alley is bordered on each side with seventy two stately cypress trees, one of which was twenty two palms in circumference. There is likewise another alley, behind the house, bordered with cypress and fena trees, and its extent is equal to that of the others. This garden is called *Beeg Side*, or the royal garden. I was there the twenty second of *March*, when the festival of *Neuw-rae* was celebrated, and the people then resort from all parts, for their recreation in this garden, so that the alleys resembled a fair among us.

I walked round the city, without the wall, that I might have an exact knowledge of its circumference; and I set out from the house of the *Carmelites*, which is without the northern gates. I then turned to the right, and advanced to a little bridge with two arches, under which a canal flows from the north west, and serpentine around the city. Its source is half a league from the old gate, already mentioned, and it flows through the plain, and gardens. This canal is always full of water; and at the distance of half a league from it is another, which loses itself in its approach to the city. There is likewise a third within the space of a quarter of a league from this; and to the south west of the city are two or three ponds, filled with reeds and wild herbage, among which a vast number of ducks from their nests. Most of the houses, as well within as without the city, are in a very wretched condition; but the adjacent country presents a charming prospect to the view, and is covered with a luxuriant growth of corn, and all other grain at the proper seasons of the year, and as far as the mountains, which are distant about two leagues to the south-west. The city itself is about two leagues in circumference; and before I returned to the fathers, who

entertained me, I drew a design of this amiable view, which is represented in plate 175, where every remarkable object is distinguished by numerical figures. As 1. the road to *Ispahan*. 2. A little chapel consecrated to the sister of *Hali*. 3. The chapel of *Elias*. 4. The garden of *Chiar-bag*. 5. The tomb of *Zieg-Zady*. 6. The governor's house. 7. The ruins of the ancient fortresses. 8. The river, where the caravans stop.

I likewise drew the prospect which the eye commands on the mountains toward the city, together with the garden to the right, on this side of the gate, and in which several *Europeans* are buried: Particularly *Mr. Blockboven*, a member of the *Dutch India* company, who died the twenty fourth of *May* 1666. One *Dupont*, a *Frenchman*, and some others; among whom are four ecclesiastics. This draught is exhibited in plate 176, and another in plate 177, which was designed near the gate on that side.

I have likewise represented the fine alley of *Teng-alla-agber*, and the mosque on one side of it.

Two *English* gentlemen arrived here from *Ispahan*, in the Month of *February*. One of them was named *Gayer*, and the other *Maynard*. We went together to take a view of a mountain, a league and a half from *Zjie-rae*, on the left side of the plain, and to see a mosque there, which is distinguished by the name of *Ma-Zjit-Madre-Suleman*, or the mother of *Suleman*. It was a square building, and extended about twenty paces, from one corner to the other. There are three portals still to be seen, like those at *Persepolis*: The first is to the east; the second to the north west, and the last to the north east. They are eleven feet in height, and on each of their pilasters is the figure of a woman as large as the life, and holding something in her hand, like those at *Persepolis*. Below that, to the north west, and on each side of the rock, are nine small figures much impaired.



1705. impaired, and half buried in the earth, and on the north east is a stone which resembles a tub. All the rest is enclosed with stones, which were ranged there in some later time. Most of the pilasters are out of their places, which must have been occasioned by some earthquake; but the cornice of that in the middle is very little damaged. The representation of it may be seen in

plate 178. A quarter of a league 1705. from this place, are the ruins of a wall, which formerly enclosed this mosque; and at the distance of another quarter of a league, are several trees, planted along a stream of the most agreeable running water in the world, which springs from a little rock, and the neighbouring mountains, and then flows to the east, forming a small river in its

ALLER DING-ALLA-AGHER.



progress. We found the depth of it to be six feet in some places. It likewise abounds with fish, which we did not spare, and they afforded us an agreeable repast, in a cool shade of rocks and trees. This place is called *Kadamga*, which signifies a welcome unexpected. We then proceeded half a league from thence, to see some figures carved on the rock, and distributed into three compartments. The first contains three figures, one of which has its hand on the hilt of a large sword. The

second represents a man, with something round on his head; and the third is a mirrored figure, with its hand on the hilt of a sword, like the first; but they are so disfigured, that they are hardly distinguishable. On the side of the rock is a little pond shaded with fens, and some other trees, as may be seen in plate 179. When we had satisfied our curiosity in this place we returned to the city at sun-set.

We there found three French merchants, who came from *Gamron*, and

*Antient figures.*



1705. and were going to *Ispahan*; and they set out soon afterward with the *English* gentlemen already mentioned. As to my self, I received a letter from *Gamron*, the 27th of *March*, which informed me, that a vessel arrived there from *Ratavia*, the 26th of *February*; but that it was not as yet known, whether she was to return thither; and that Mr. *Kasselein*, our director, had received his dismissal, with leave to return to the *Indies*, but that he would not set out before the month of *August*. This account made me resolve to return to *Ispahan*, having no inclination to continue at *Gamron*, during the summer heats, which is the most unhealthy season of the year.

I departed from *Zje-rac* the twenty-sixth of *March*, in expectation of travelling alone; but had the good fortune to find the *English* and *French* gentlemen, who began their journey before me, still at *Sergoen*. The next day we crossed the plain, which was floated over in such a manner, that the beasts of burden were obliged to take another way. We arrived, about noon, at *Mir-chai-ken*, but would not stop there, because we intended to be early at *Persepolis*, which these gentlemen had not seen. I accompanied them thither, and when they had satisfied their curiosity, we returned to the village, where we found our equipage, and then passed the night there. The next morning we proceeded on our journey, by *Naxi Rustan*, the floods not permitting us to keep the usual road. After we had visited the tombs at that place, we continued our journey to the north, over the mountain, that rises to the east, and came to a place where we saw twenty three apertures hewn in the rock, the largest of which was about three feet in depth, and as many in breadth. The others were much smaller, and near to each other; but we could not judge for what use they were intended.

We there saw a fine country, 1705. well cultivated, and full of villages, and flocks of sheep and goats; and observed that the young were separated from the others.

As some of us frequently alighted from our horses, to kill game on the plain, where a great number of mares and hares were feeding, three or four of ours began to run after them, and we found it very difficult to rein in those upon which we were mounted; and one of them threw his rider into a ditch: but after we had employed abundance of pains to catch them, and readjust our arms and equipage that were scattered over the plain, we could not forbear diverting ourselves at this adventure; after which we pursued our journey to the mountains, where we likewise found several cavities in the rocks, and a demolished fortress to the left. We then crossed a river, always advancing through the plain to the east, and arrived at *Majien* at the close of day, after a journey of nine leagues.

The rain, which fell that evening, and continued all night, obliged us to stay there the whole morning; after which we travelled by the side of the river, which was dry at my first arrival there, but was then full of water, and we came, about six, to the *Caravanferai* of *Imasfala*, four leagues from the place where we had passed the night. The next day we proceeded as far as the *Caravanferai* of *Aed-ben*, where we made an agreeable repast, with the provisions we had brought with us, and the addition of some good fish, which we found there, and arrived, at the setting in of the day, at the *Caravanferai* of *Aes-pas*, after we had travelled seven leagues. The wind blew from the north, full in our faces, and I never felt the cold more severe. We resumed our journey on the last day of the month, and came by noon to the ruinous *Caravanferai* of *Dombayne*, where we found plenty of water and wild fowl,



1705. fowl, which afforded a fine collation; and we arrived, about four, at the *Caravanferai* of *Koskiejar*, after a journey of six leagues. We saw a little hill in the village, on which the inhabitants pretend that there had formerly been a fortress, but no remains of it were then to be seen. I think I never beheld any place which more resembled that mentioned by the evangelist *Mark*, in the second chapter of his gospel, and where the paralytic person was brought into a house in *Capernaum*, where the Saviour of the world then was, while the four men who introduced him, uncovered the roof of the house, in order to let him down as he lay on his little bed.

We continued our journey, the first of *April*, through the plain, with greater facility than before, and stopped at the bridge of *Pol-Siakoe*. About one at noon, we passed by the *Caravanferai* of *Kievcliar*, and spent the night at *Egerdoe*, after travelling seven leagues. The next morning we proceeded to *Jef-degaet*, where no houses of refreshment are to be found; and we then beheld on a mountain, some ruins of a wall which had formerly been part of a fortress. This mountain is a real rock, around which several large inverted stones are to be seen. We renewed our journey on the third of this month, and took some refreshments in the town of *Anabast*, where excellent sugar candy is made. This town has still a wall of earth, with the remains of a castle built in the reign of *Abas the Great*. We then passed by the town of *Abas-abast*, where we

1705. saw two towers, which now serve for dove-houses. These are the first that are to be found in this part of the country, and the last in the road from *Ispahan*. We passed the night at *Mag-zoet-begi*, after a journey of six leagues. We there saw another dove-house, and set out, the fourth of this month, by break of day. We crossed a plain full of villages, gardens, and dove-houses. Behind us were mountains covered with snow, and we found it warm in that quarter.

We travelled that day no more than five leagues, to the town of *Kominja*, where we arrived about noon, and proceeded the next morning to *Majaer*, which is five leagues from thence. I set out, on the sixth, with *Mr. de l'Etoile*, before day, and left my other companions behind, that I might arrive at *Ispahan*, in two days. We met on the road with *Mr. Davood*, interpreter to the *English* factory, who was travelling to *Zje-raet* with two *Armenian*. We afterward proceeded to the *Caravanferai* of *Mierja-elrasa*, where we fed our horses, and found an *Armenian* priest, who till then had accompanied the persons we met. We came about four, to the tombs of the christians, where the friends of *Mr. de l'Etoile* waited for his arrival. I likewise found our interpreter there, who expressed the utmost joy to see me, and after we had rested there for the space of half an hour, we proceeded to *Ispahan*, and went to our director, who was surprised at my return, which I had concealed from every one but himself.



## CHAP. LVI.

*Fine gardens belonging to the king, and the queen-mother, at a little distance from Ispahan. News from the Indies. A demolished fortress on the mountain of Deif-selon. The director of the Dutch company visits a Persian lord of great rank. The arrival of a new Director.*

I Returned to my old lodgings at the *Caravanserai*, soon after my arrival, tho' the director importuned me to continue with him. I afterward went to visit my friends, and, amongst the rest, Mr. Billon, a French gentleman, and minister of Malta at the court of Persia. He had acted in that character only from the month of December, and had already obtained his audience of leave, on the twenty-second of March, 1705. He likewise paid a visit to our director, with whom he supped; and he regaled us, in his turn, the twelfth and thirteenth in the Easter week. On the twentieth I went to visit, and pay the usual compliments of the season to, the gentlemen of the English factory, who entertained me at dinner and supper. The next day I went to see the Armenian ecclesiastics of that city, and likewise of Yulfa, to wish them a happy festival, on the part of the director, whom they had already complimented on that occasion. On the twenty-fifth the mourning for Husein was resumed; two days after which I accompanied the director to the new garden, which belongs to the king, and is near five leagues in circumference; and we there passed the time in a very agreeable manner.

In a short time after we received the news of the battle of Hochstet, wherein the French were defeated by the allies, which occasioned a universal joy among the English and Dutch.

On the first day of May the famous procession of Husein was solemnized, almost in the same man-

ner as it was the preceding year; but there is always some diversity to be observed.

I took a little journey on the eighth, about three leagues from Ispahan, to see one of the principal gardens belonging to the king; the name of it is *Konma*, and it is situated in a fine plain filled with villages, and a variety of other gardens, which afford a charming prospect to those who view them from the mountains. Several officers of the custom-house reside in that quarter, to collect the duties on all mercantile commodities which pass that way. This garden is distributed into two divisions, and surrounded with walls. In the middle of the first is a large canal, on which those who visit the garden may recreate themselves in a boat. It is likewise covered with birds, that make an admirable effect; and on one side of it is a large edifice in ruins. It is supplied by another canal which flows into it, after it has traversed a long tract of land. As to any other particulars, this garden has nothing considerable to boast, except a lovely alley, and a few small canals.

We proceeded from this garden to that which belongs to the queen-mother, whose name is *Mar-jam-beek*: We arrived there at an early hour, and diverted ourselves with fishing, having prepared nets for that purpose: And we succeeded so well, that we renewed that recreation the next day, on the river *Roetgon*, over which is a fine bridge of stone. We were as fortunate there, as we had been the preceding evening, and we sent

News of  
the battle  
of Hoch-  
stet.

The pro-  
cession of  
Husein.

The king's  
garden.

A descrip-  
tion of the  
king's gar-  
den.

The garden  
belonging  
to the  
queen-  
mother.



1705. sent part of our fish to Mr. *Kastlein*: We likewise killed twenty pigeons before we returned to *Ispahan*.

On the thirteenth of this month, the minister of *France* paid a visit to our director, who kept him at supper. The next day we returned the visit, and continued with him two hours.

A new general of the India company.

On the twenty eighth, Mr. *Kastlein* acquainted all those who were employed under him, in the service of the company, that Mr. *William de Hoorn*, general of that company, had resigned his employment, in favour of Mr. *Johu de Hoorn*; and he then discharged them from the oath of fidelity they had taken to the former, and was to be renewed to his successor. The letters which brought this intelligence from *Batavia*, were read in public, and the cannon fired while each letter was reading; as is usual in all places where a company has any factory, or other establishment. This ceremonial was performed in the garden belonging to the *India-house*, and under the *Talash*, which is a kind of theatre, or open gallery, open before and on each side, with a fountain in the middle. The rest of the day was passed in drinking healths, and it concluded with illuminations, and other rejoicings; and as it was then *H'itfontide*, the director entertained us in a very splendid manner, according to his usual custom.

The giants mountain.

As there were several antiquities about *Ispahan* which I had not seen, I determined to visit them in order, and accordingly went first to the mountain of *Deif-jelon*, to the north of the river of *Zenderue*, where I saw several other mountains, separated from each other in the plain. The people of this quarter imagine they were antiently inhabited by giants. The mountain of *Deif-jelon* is separated from another only by a cleft, through which a flow of water issues. On the summit of the former, which resembles a sugar-loaf, most of these antiquities are to be found, and on

the south west is the wall of a fortress that formerly stood there. I however could satisfy my curiosity only in part, because the rock was too steep to be ascended by me: Our lackey, notwithstanding this, climbed up to a considerable height, but could not get over the wall. so that we could have no account of any thing on the other side of it. This mountain is extremely hard, and replenished with veins of iron. Our huntsman attempted to ascend to the top of the other, which rises much higher than this, and he was very expert at climbing. We ordered him, that, in case he should find any thing worth observing, to give us notice of his discovery, that we might advance thither ourselves, if possible; but after we had waited above half an hour, in expectation of some intelligence from him, we returned, with much difficulty, to the place place from whence we came; and when we had descended to the foot of the mountain, we beheld our man greatly embarrassed on one of the steep sides of the rock, where it was said to be impossible for any one to fasten himself. He however, accomplished his design, tho' in a manner that made us tremble; for he supported himself by his hands and feet, amidst the projections and fissures of the rock, notwithstanding he was encumbered at the same time with his gun, which hung at his back.

He informed us, that he had found on the summit of the mountain three wells, hewn in the rock, and that the opening was about twelve feet in diameter. He also added, that he discovered in one of them, an iron chain as thick as a man's arm, and fastened to the rock. He likewise told us, that this well was sunk the deepest of any, in an oblique descent, and that the aperture was larger than those of the rest. He further declared, that he threw several stones into the cavities of these wells, but they were so exceedingly deep that he could only hear the sound of one. He assured us beside, that he discovered the ruins of a street, built on both sides,





sides, with a cistern in the middle, and two bridges that were partly demolished; and over which a passage was still practicable, they being three feet wide, and ten in length: That they had formerly afforded a communication, from one village, or neighbourhood, to another, and were carried over one of the cisterns. He then continued to acquaint us, that the first object which presented itself to his view, was the way or street already mentioned; that he believed it might contain 155 paces in breadth, and that several divisions of the antient apartments, were still visible among the ruins. In a word, that the summit of the mountain was a level surface. I have drawn the representation of the first mountain, with the wall on the top. It was inhabited some years ago, by a set of

robbers, who were afterwards chased from thence, and all the passages conducting to it were destroyed, to prevent them from concealing themselves there for the future.

We returned by the bank of the river, which we afterward crossed, on a very ruinous bridge, and then threw our nets into the water with very little success; but we had better fortune the next day; after which we returned to *Ispahan*.

Soon after this little expedition, I attended our director to the house of the first minister's secretary, from whom he had received an invitation to pass an hour with him. It was then but eight in the morning, and he entertained us with tobacco, accompanied with liquors and confections: when this collation was over, they retired into another apartment, and rejoined us about half



1705. an hour afterward. A variety of provisions and fruits were then served up according to the season, together with lemonade, sorbet, rose-water sweetened with sugar, and several other sorts of hot and cold liquors, of all colours, and perfectly agreeable.

The author's observations.

We continued there till one at noon, and I was afterward informed, that this invitation was made by the order of the first minister, who had his reasons for not receiving the visit at his own house. I then began to be sensible, the court was desirous that the company should employ their good offices to obtain the liberty of some pilgrims, whom the *Mosket Arabs* had taken in the *Perfian* gulf, as they were returning from *Mecra*; and that they would likewise take upon them to accommodate the misunderstanding which then subsisted between the court of *Persia* and the *Arabs*, without any intervention of that court.

Unlucky days.

The nineteenth, twentieth, and twenty first of *June*, are accounted unlucky days by the *Persians*, who then discontinue all affairs, and the shops are shut up.

A new director.

On the twenty seventh in the morning, a courier belonging to the company, arrived with a letter to Mr. *Kastelein*, from Mr. *Bakker*, who had lately succeeded him in his place, and gave him notice of his being at *Desdagaz*, which is twenty five leagues from *Ispahan*, where he intended to arrive the next day: Upon which Mr. *Kastelein* ordered his deputy, and the other officers of the company, to wait upon the new director, and congratulate him on his arrival. We set out, at seven in the evening, to the number of twenty three persons, all on horseback, with Mr. *Kastelein's* master of the horse, attended by eight couriers, at our head. We had likewise nine *Banians*, or *Indians*, on horseback, with four couriers; so that our troop was composed of forty four persons. We made a short halt at the *Caravanferai* of *Margh*, and arrived about midnight at that of

Vol. II.

*Merfa-alie-rela*. We travelled another league, on the 27th, with two *Frenchmen*, and an *Armenian* merchant, who had joined us, but the heat was so stifling, that we were obliged to shelter ourselves in the shade of the mountain of *Ortiagerire*, where we supped in a very agreeable manner. We there found a *Persian* lord, who had retired into a grotto to enjoy the cool air, having, for that purpose, quitted his tents which were set up in a field, where he was causing some wells to be sunk, by the King's order. The nobleman sent us refreshments of fruit, and ice, which he imagined we wanted extremely, though we were well supplied with all accommodations of that nature; notwithstanding which we accepted of his civility, and returned him our acknowledgments, with a present to his messenger; and likewise sent him some of our fruits, with thrice the quantity of ice we had received from him; and for which he thanked us, but gave nothing to the person who carried them to him.

About eight at night, we perceived, on the mountain of *Marghal*, the flambeaux of our new director, agreeable to the custom observed by persons of rank, who travel by night in *Persia*. We then mounted our horses immediately, leaving some domestics to take care of our provisions, with an intention to return thither, provided the director would stop there, to wait the arrival of his lady, who had not advanced so far as himself, and this was accordingly consented to. The lady herself came some time after, preceded in the same manner, by a flambeau, and we remounted our horses, in order to proceed to the last *Caravanferai*, which we had passed by as we came, and we arrived there at midnight.

The arrival of the new director.

Our director and his train marched in this manner: His gentleman of the horse was at the head, followed by a led horse, two guides, and six couriers. After these, Mr. *Bakker* appeared, accompanied by a

The order of his march.

French

Q

1705. *French* gentleman; then came the *Kuljan*, or the person who carries the *Tobacco*, seated on a *Jagtan*, which has been already described. This servant was followed by the *Bacc-adroger*, or a man who carries such furniture as may happen to be wanted on the road; and a water-carrier, who has a leather bucket filled with it, under the belly of his horse; there were likewise two grooms, and as many cooks, with the proper implements; as also another servant, who is charged with the care of the bedding; a valet to sweep the chamber, beside four *Maresja* slaves, seventeen horse-men, and six couriers.

The director's lady was attended by two *Dutch* women, who were in the service of the company; she had likewise two guides, and as many couriers, with a footman who led her mule by the bridle, and was followed by another, who conducted four female slaves; there was also another servant seated on the *jagtan*, and likewise a torch-bearer. The whole Troop was composed

of thirty two persons, among whom 1705. were nine couriers.

On the 28th of this month, Mr. *Bakker* entertained us at dinner, and we arrived, about the close of the day at *Ispahan*, where he was received under a discharge of the small arms of the company. His lady, who was not inclined to enter the city till night, was received in the same manner. She was of *Dutch* extraction, but a native of the *Indies*. Mr. *Kasfelein* treated her with all imaginable politeness, and entertained her at supper.

On the last day of the month, the king's music was heard all night, on account of the festival of *Baba-jodisia-adien*, which has been formerly mentioned. On the eighth of *July*, that of *Mohammed* was solemnized; when his Majesty's music played anew, and most of the shops were shut up.

On the 12th and 13th of *July* I made all the necessary preparations for my journey, and took leave of my friends, in order to set out the next day, with Mr. *Kasfelein*.





## C H A P. LVII.

*The author's second departure from Ispahan. The order in which he and his company began their journey. Very singular plants. Tombs. Vast swarms of Gnats. Their arrival at Zje-raes.*

WE set out on the 15th of July, about ten in the evening, without acquainting any one with our departure, that we might avoid all ceremonials, and prevent the great number of Mr. Kasselein's friends at Ispahan, as well Christians as Persians, from accompanying us out of the city, according to custom. They had, with that view, desired him to acquaint them with the day and hour of his departure; particularly the bishop of the Armenians, who had great obligations to him: But he acted with as much secrecy as possible, contenting himself with the unblemished reputation he had acquired, during his long residence in Persia, and with the esteem his friends entertained for him. He therefore was only attended by his deputy, and the company's interpreter, with whom some Indian couriers joined themselves. Our company, however, amounted at last to forty one persons, thirty of whom were on horseback. The daughter of Mr. Kasselein placed herself, with her waiting woman, in a *Kasua*, which is a kind of litter. The women slaves had been sent away the preceding year.

The cooks, and four other servants, who carried tapestry, quilts, and all other necessaries for the journey, were ordered to set out before the rest of the company, that all things might be orderly disposed at the place where we were to lodge.

Two of Mr. Kasselein's chief domestics marched on the sides of his daughter's litter, to oblige the Moors whom they might happen to meet to give them a free passage. She was likewise accompanied by two

couriers, one of whom, an Armenian, led the mule of the litter, which was lined all round with red. These litters are very commodious for travelling; and there are some mules which carry two, in the nature of packers. Camels are also employed in this service; but not with so much convenience.

The director of the carriages never advances to any distance from the litter, but to see that nothing is wanting. The *Kasua* generally sets out half an hour before the rest of the company; and as it is accompanied by a flambeau in the night, they never lose sight of it. Those who conduct the baggage are ordered likewise to march before, but they are frequently overtaken in the way.

We arrived, about two in the morning, at the *Caravanserai* of *Mierfarsalefa*, where the interpreter *Sabid* entertained us very handsomely with some provisions he had ordered to be brought from Ispahan. The Indian couriers returned in the afternoon, and we came to *Majaer* at one in the morning, where our interpreter entertained us a second time. Mr. Oats and he parted from us at that place, after having shed abundance of tears; and, indeed Mr. Kasselein had acted like a father to the first, who had been his deputy, and the other was his intimate friend. This separation was made upon the way at some distance from the *Caravanserai*. We stopt twice near a small river, and arrived about midnight at the tombs of *Zia-rena*. Some domestics had been sent in good time to secure the lodgings, which were granted us by the inhabitants,



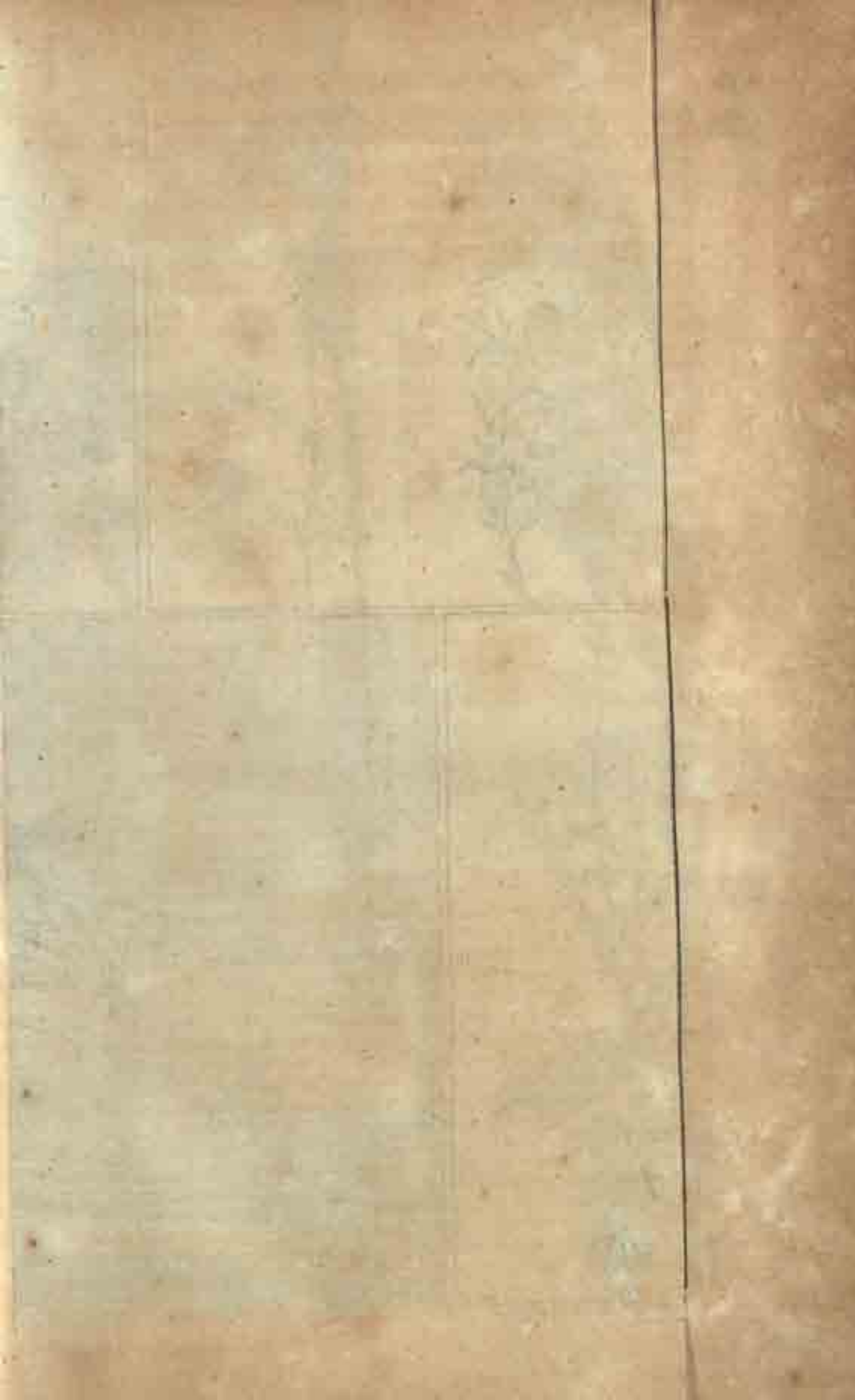
1705. tants, who were sensible they should be well paid. They also prepared a kind of *Kereg* against our arrival, for the accommodation of the women. We passed the night very quietly, and afterward diverted ourselves in a beautiful place, where was a basin full of fish. This place appeared to me so agreeable, that I took a draught of it, and here

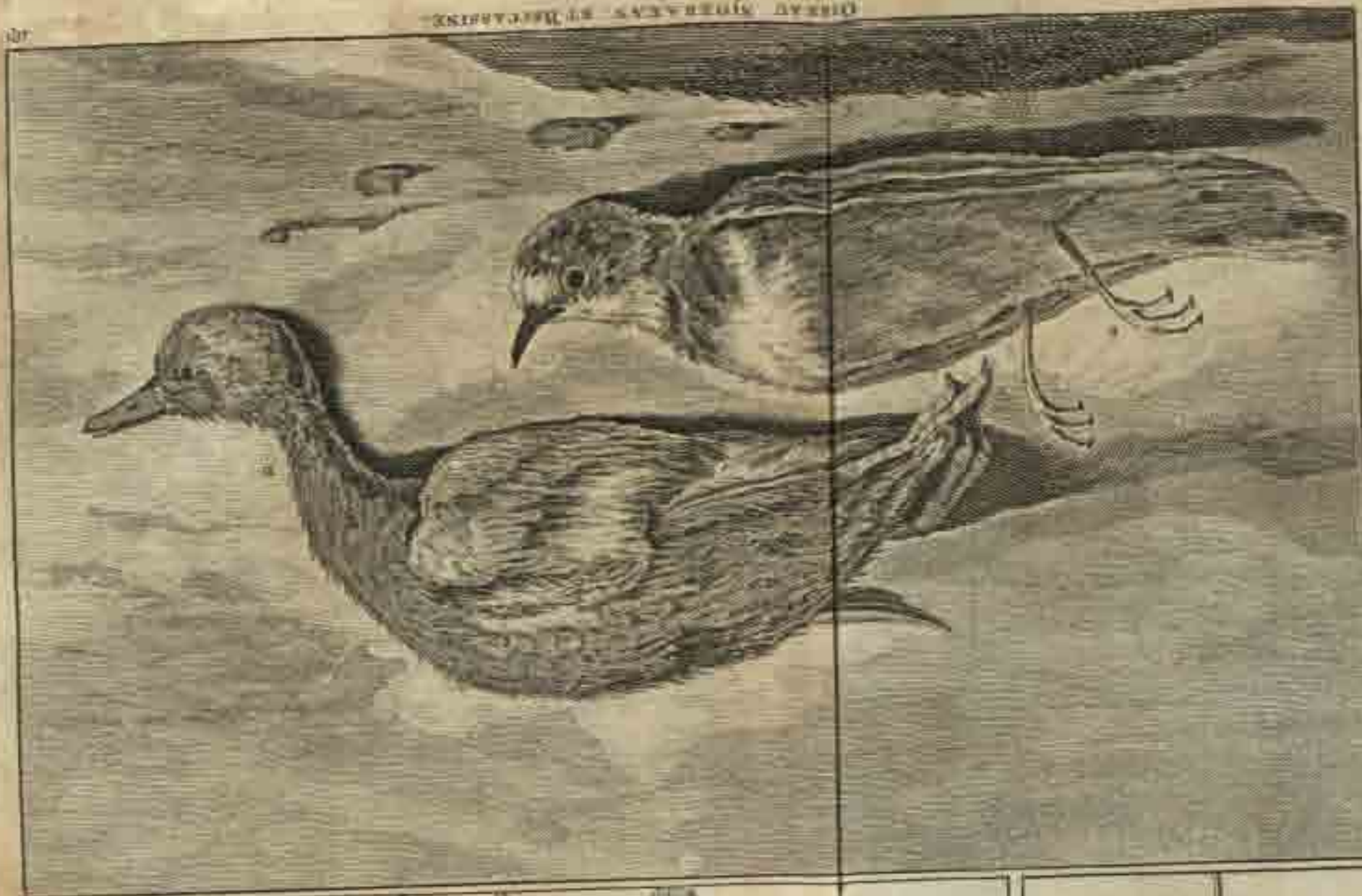


present it to the reader. We continued there till the 19th, and after having passed through the city of *Cominsja*, which lies all in ruins, and drank coffee in the garden of *Baba-ziel*, we ordered the flambeau to be lighted, and arrived about midnight at *Mayjet-begi*. We saw the next day seven or eight flags, and endeavoured to shoot them, but they ran from us. We passed the night at *Aep-nahart*, and came the next day to *Jef-daguet*, where we diverted ourselves in a garden full of fruit. We afterward cast nets into a small river, which runs by the side of the garden, and at the first cast drew out sixteen

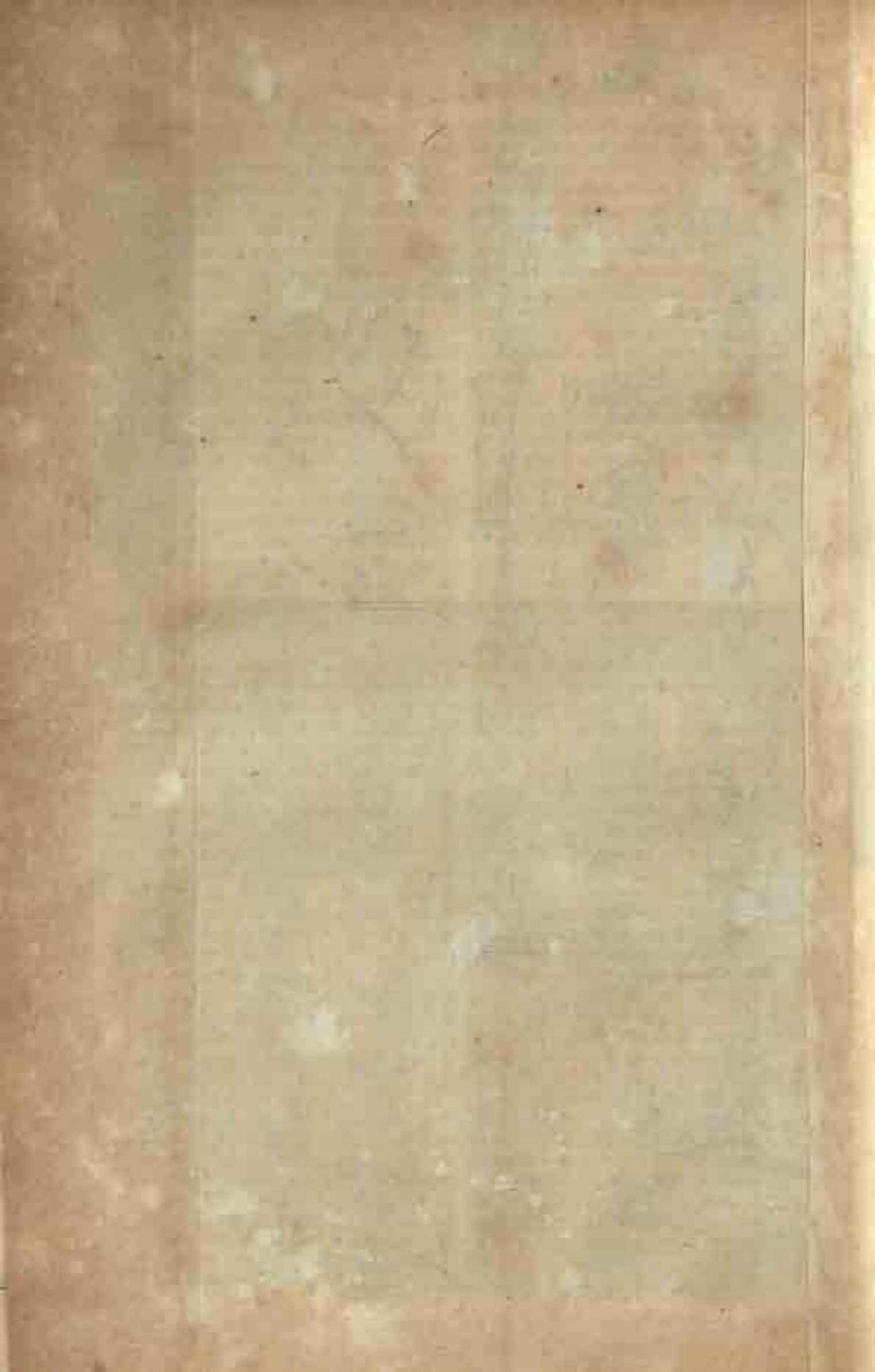
large fishes, and a prodigious number of small fry, which we caused to be dressed several ways, the fish in that country being extraordinary good. Five or six women, whose habitation was in that garden, entertained us very agreeably, and when we had returned them some marks of our acknowledgment, we repaired to the *Caravanferai*, from whence we proceeded four leagues on the 24th, and stopt at the village of *Gambes-Lala*, where there are but few houses. We saw abundance of deer in the mountains, without being able to approach them; but in recompence for that disappointment, we met with several peasants in











1705. in tents, who supplied us with good fresh butter, milk, eggs, and chickens, which afforded us an agreeable repast, and we came about ten in the evening to *Degerdoo*, where we were obliged to pass the night in a very bad *Caravanferai*; but this was not the only inconvenience, for the inhabitants of the place are very uncivil, being privileged, because they are in the king's service, whose horses are fed in this quarter. Those of *Keskiefar*, seven leagues from thence, are not much better.

On the 26th we passed the greatest part of the day, and also the night, at *Poellakoe*, where we caught abundance of fish, in a small river, and among the rest three fine carps. As there is no *Caravanferai* in that place, we were obliged to divide ourselves into several companies. The next morning, as we were going out of the village, we met two of the company's couriers, who came from *Gamron*, and were carrying to *Ispahan* the news of the death of Mr. *Wichelman*, director of the company's affairs in that city, where he died the sixth of this month of a violent fever, which carried him off in two days. This was very unwelcome news to Mr. *Kastelein*, who feared this unfortunate circumstance would retard his journey to *Batavia*. He ordered these couriers to return with him to *Keskiefar*, three leagues from thence, that he might have time to examine the letters which they had in charge. This news created him so much uneasiness, that he was unable to close his eyes for the whole night, and it deprived us of all the pleasure we had promised ourselves in the remainder of our journey, as we had reason to be apprehensive that the death of this gentleman would oblige the director to stay at *Gamron*, to look after the affairs of the company. He wrote the next day to *Ispahan*, and *Gamron*, but delayed sending the letter designed for the last place, because he imagined he might probably meet another cou-

Vol. II.

rier, which afterward happened 1705. accordingly.

We, however, continued our journey through a plain well inhabited, and plentifully stocked with game, and other animals, especially sheep and goats; and after having repassed the high mountains, we came to *Affa-pai*, where we found a good *Caravanferai*.

I rose early in the morning, and found in that village a dry plant, which they call *Madraen*. It rises about two feet from the ground, with a growth of several small branches, which are very short, and closely compacted together, and full of yellowish buds at top, as I have represented them at the letter A. in plate 180. The inhabitants distil from this plant a liquor as strong as ginger, which the plant, as dry as it is, resembles in the smell.

I found also another plant, with little bells hanging down at top, with five points like the flower of the pomegranate, having some small leaves on the stalk, which is something taller than that of the other plant. The bells of it are full of large blackish seeds, which are contained in a shell like an acorn. The inhabitants are unacquainted with the name of it, and know only that the seed causes a kind of giddiness in the head. This plant is exhibited at the letter B.

I found likewise a plant of wild Spanish wheat, something taller, and it glows with a beautiful red when ripe, till which time it is tinged with green. The reader will find it represented at the letter C, without leaves, which differ in nothing from those of the Spanish wheat. As to its qualities, it is so hot, and costive, that one cannot bear it in one's mouth. The fruit of these three plants are drawn as they appear in their natural growth. At a little distance from them we saw a few turpentine trees, the gum of which the peasants carefully collect, in order to sell it at *Ispahan*. The fruit of them, which consists of small green berries, is pickled.

R

The Madraen plant.

Wild Spanish wheat.

Turpentine trees.



1705. and used instead of capers. There is a bough of it in plate 181. and on one side of it a white flower call'd *Geel-nafranie*, the stem of which is pretty high, and bears a profusion of branches, spotted in the inside with yellow and red. We had a prodigious storm that day, which however did not incommode us more than the dust, as we had the wind on our backs, and were then in a large plain full of canals, marshes, and *Willows*. This part of the country is infested by a vast number of wild boars, that march in troops, and destroy all the seed and fruits of the earth, and pursue their ravages as far as the entrance into the villages. The inhabitants, in order to remedy this mischief, set fire to the rushes which afford them a retreat, and destroy'd above fifty in that manner; but those that escaped the flames spread themselves all round, in such a manner, that the people themselves were obliged to have recourse to flight, and have never disturbed them since, for fear of drawing upon themselves some greater calamity. They assured me, that some of these creatures were as large as cows. The same day, in the afternoon, we met upon the road the domesticks of the duke or governor of *Laer*, with fifteen Kafuas full of women, and we arrived about nine at *Oed-joen*. We had dispatch'd some servants before to secure us lodgings in a garden, which the king had in that quarter, where we found the tomb of *Sultan Hossen Mameth*, a king's son, whom they pretend has been buried there 280 years. This monument is in a small apartment, cover'd with a little dome, and the coffin is of stone, cas'd with wood, and is cover'd with a pall, which reaches to the ground, and has a turban upon it. As there were several other apartments, we were very well lodg'd. And as soon as the sun appear'd above the horizon we went a fishing, and had excellent sport, in a small river, which runs by the side of the village. We returned thither the next day, and were as

successful as before: After which we 1705. set out out about five in the evening, and when we had cross'd the mountains of *Imanfade*, we came about nine to the town of that name, after having been expos'd to excessive heats all that day.

The first day of *August* we went to see the tomb of *Imon Sadde Ismael*, who, if the Inhabitants may be believed, has rested there 700 years; and the veneration for the tomb of this *Santon* is so great, that even the grandees of the court and the great officers of the army, are prohibited from approaching it, or even the town, when they are travelling, (in order to secure the people of the place from the insults which others suffer.) This tomb, which is built of stone, is tolerably large; it is likewise cover'd with a dome, and surrounded with a wall, to which there is a door.

We set out at four o'clock, and arriv'd by eight at *Maj-ien*, where Mr. *Kastelein* and his Daughter took lodgings in a pleasant garden, and we went to a *Caravanjerai*, which was not far off. I found in that garden a plant call'd *Chef-terech*, which is about four or five feet high, and bears a great many branches, and large leaves. It likewise produces little berries, which contain four grains of seed, of a clear chestnut brown, and has a very strong smell, proceeding from the flower, which is small, and variegated with colours of white, blew, and violet, streak'd with red. This plant is in great esteem for its agreeable odour, which is the only known virtue it enjoys. The reader will find it represented in plate 182. I took also a bird, called *Sioerakan*, very like a duck, and as big. It has a yellow head, with a red beak and feet, and is represented in plate 183. I caught also another bird, which passes there for a *supe*, the plumage of which is black, grey, and white, and the feet red, the reader will find it at the letter E.

The next day we proceeded on our journey, and had a distant view of the mountain, mentioned before, upon



1705. upon which there was formerly a fortress.

As we continued to advance, we found the plain full of cattle, and the country people employed in cutting the corn with a crooked knife, like a sickle; grasping as much of it as they were able in their left hand. Instead of threshing it they use a small carriage, with four wheels, which they roll several times over the corn, after they have laid it in little heaps, in order to bruise the straw, and force out the grain; after which they toss it up and down in the wind, and nothing is left but the grain and the ears. When this is done, they separate the ears, and beat them again, in order to force out the rest of the grain. As all the people were then come out of the villages, the country was entirely covered with tents.

In the evening, after we had crossed the river of *Beudemir*, upon a bridge, near the two mountains already mentioned, on which a fortress formerly stood, we passed the night at the *Caravanferai* of *Abgerm*, at half a league distance from that bridge; and from thence proceeded with our flambeaux to a mountain, at the foot of which a fine spring of water gushes out as clear as crystal. This stream abounds with fish, that easily slide under the rock into several subterranean hollows. It is about three feet in depth, and the water is so extremely clear, that all the fish may be easily seen. This gave us an inclination to employ our net, and we brought out at the first draught twenty fish, three or four of which were a foot long: But it was impossible for us to close our eyes any part of the night, the *Caravanferai* being full of gnats, which continually disturbed us, and obliged us to quit that inconvenient lodging. One of our domestics, who resolved to continue in bed, was so ill treated, that we hardly knew him the next day. Our young lady had likewise her share, although she had taken all possible

precautions not to be disturbed, and was continually moving about, without once lying down. Even the very horses were extremely incommoded by these noxious vermin.

We set out from so disagreeable a place by break of day, and passed over a stone bridge, half a league in length, and built over a marsh; but as most of the arches are very small, the waters, when they happen to swell, flow over the top. The plain is cut into a variety of channels, and likewise abounds with rice.

About ten in the evening we came to the *Caravanferai* of *Parlegoor*, where we met with a courier from *Gamran* to Mr. *Kastelein*, who informed us, that the widow of the deceased director, Mr. *Wichelman*, died the 12th of the same month of *June*. That place was also full of gnats, which rendered it impossible for us to read the letters which the courier brought, so that he was obliged to go back with us to the *Caravanferai* of *Bacits-gardie*, two leagues from *Zjie-raes*.

On the fourth we sent back the courier to *Ippahan*, where he had also letters to deliver; and then we proceeded to *Zjie-raes*, where we alighted at a house of Mr. *Kastelein*. Father *Alkantera* came immediately after, and I went to visit his companion about noon.

The next day the merchants, who traded with the company, came to wait on Mr. *Kastelein*, and the most considerable person among them, whose name was *Hazje Nobbie*, made him a present of several bottles of oil of *Santal*, together with some distilled waters, sweetmeats, and fruits, for which the bearer was handsomely gratified. The next day we were visited by several *Persian* merchants, who had great dealings with the company.

That day we went in great ceremony to pay a visit to *Hazje Nobbie*, who entertained us after the manner of the country, with hot liquors, sweetmeats, and tobacco, by the side of a beautiful fountain.

His

The inconvenience  
occasioned  
by Gnats.

The author's arrival  
at  
*Zjie-raes*.



1705. His house was the finest in all that town; and he pressed Mr. Kastelein to defer his journey for some days, in order to take the diversion of the country; but he excused him-

self from accepting the civility. On 1705. the eighth in the morning two couriers from Ispahan passed by with letters for Gamron,

## C H A P. LVIII.

*The author's departure from Zjie-raes. Fertile fruit-gardens. The retreat of the Pagans. The author's arrival at Jaron; with an account of its situation. Abundance of dates, &c. Wild pistacho and turpentine-trees. The ruins of some antient fortresses. Hot winds. The author's arrival at Laer.*

*The author's departure from Zjie-raes.*

WHEN we left Zjie-raes, we entered upon a plain, and the bridge of *Pol-jassa*, which is partly in ruins, and the great drought had drained all the water from under it. At a little distance from thence, upon the middle of the plain, is a high mountain separate from the rest, and we struck to the right of it, in order to proceed to the Caravanferai of *Babba-bad-jie*, five leagues from Zjie-raes; and where we arrived at midnight.

The 9th in the morning Mr. Kastelein had a fit of a fever, which obliged us to stop in a garden, after a journey of four leagues. In our way thither we passed by several pleasure-houses, and fine gardens, and then began to ascend the mountains, from whence we had a view of Zjie-raes, at the end of the plain. We continued our course to the village of *Paroe*, half a league from the high road, where the garden was in which we were to stop; and by the side of it ran a small river, in which we found crayfish. We renewed our journey the next day in the afternoon, and arrived about 9 at the Caravanferai of *Messe-farie*. Immediately after which we went a fishing with flambeaux, and caught some carp and cray-fish. This part of the country is full of villages,

the inhabitants of which were out in the field under their tents, along the river side, with their cattle.

We pursued our journey at six in the morning, and passed by a village of extraordinary length, all the houses of which were built with rushes. We then crossed very stony mountains, and stopt at the Caravanferai of *Paeyra*, which is surrounded with villages, and lies about four leagues from the place where we had passed the night. The country is watered by a small river, and the mountains are full of willows, and wild fig-trees; and they likewise produce plenty of sage; the figs of these trees are not unpleasant, but they are very little coloured.

We continued our journey on the 12th, and found several great heaps of stone in the way; which the people would persuade us were the ruins of some antient city; but I could not discover any part of its foundations. A great number of villages and gardens appear on the right, towards the mountains.

It was eleven at night when we arrived at the Caravanferai of *As-monger*, after having passed over several hills, and stony mountains, and some valleys. On the 13th the people of the place brought us some figs,



1705. figs, raisins, and citrons from the mountains. I here saw a small catamountain coloured like those of the isle of *Cyprus*, with long legs, and strait ears, that are likewise of a considerable length, and a tail like that of a rat; but I observed when she licked herself, that her tongue was not so pointed as those of common cats. We set out the next day at six in the morning, and came to several handsome houses with gardens, in the shade of which we rested ourselves, after we had travelled three leagues, the sun being very hot, and most of our company tired. These gardens are situated in the town of *Tadawoon*, which subsists by their produce; and they are filled with pomegranate, orange, peach, and fig trees, beside large growths of palm, and most of them are laden with fruit at the same time. We likewise found abundance of melons there; and all these fruits are produced in great plenty by the copious streams of water that enrich the soil. They are carried from thence to *Ispahan*; and as this place is encompassed with mountains, it appears like a wood at a distance.

*Delicious  
groceries.*

About half a league from thence, and among some steep rocks, are several grottoes, which I went to see on the 14th after the heat of the day was over. I perceived before these grottoes some remains of a stone wall well cemented, and a small tract in the most steep part of the rock, which slopes from the mountains on the right and left. Thro' the valley, between these mountains flows a river, round which a severe cold always reigns. The inhabitants of the country pretend that the *Guebres* retired formerly into these grottoes. But I shall hereafter be more particular in my description of them, having passed that way on purpose, in my return from the *Indes*.

We were prevented from proceeding on our journey that day, because *Mademoiselle Kastelein* had the misfortune to be indisposed with

a fever, which encreased to such a degree in the night, that she became delirious; which sensibly afflicted her father, who loved her tenderly, and alarmed us on his account, because he would not stir from her, though he himself had but a weak constitution, and was subject to several disorders. That lady's waiting maid was likewise taken ill, which added to our embarrassment, and made us resolve to sit up with her mistress, one after another, to relieve her father, who had great need of rest. The violence of her fever continued till the seventeenth, when it came to a crisis, and she slept toward morning: It was then thought proper to have her carried in her litter, by four men, to *Jaron*, and we chose out eight of the strongest peasants in the village to relieve one another.

A fish was brought to us that day, as big as a *Kabeliau*, or *Mehuel*, to which it had some resemblance, and a great deal of the relish; but I had never seen one so large in that country. We had it dressed after the *Dutch* manner; and as we had some carps, we made a tolerable good repast, and continued our journey as far as the mountains. As the litter, which was carried by men, proceeded but slowly, we did not arrive till midnight at the *Caravan-serai* of *Miebguck Sogte*, after we had travelled about three leagues.

We pursued our journey on the 18th, and passed over some craggy mountains, after which we entered into a champion country, cut out into canals, over which were small bridges, and arrived at midnight at *Fagra-bact*, where we took up our lodging in a pleasant garden full of palm-trees, with a row of senna in the middle, and a variety of pomegranate, orange, quince, and pear trees, with many others; the fruits of which were admirable. This garden had not any considerable extent, but was the finest I ever saw. There was a house in it raised very high, the walls of which were extremely thick. It was likewise adorned



1705. adorned with two fine fountains, and a handsome basin in the middle, with a fountain spouting before the front of the house. The water of this basin was conveyed by a subterranean channel, to the two fountains, and served also to water the whole garden. This place belonged to the duke or governor of *Gamron*, called *Mameth-Momien Chan*, whose ancestors had likewise been governors of that place.

The author's arrival at Jacon.

On the 19th we set out in the evening for *Jaron*, which is but a league from the garden, and arrived there about nine o'clock, at a *Caravanserai* near the city, where we found a good well, covered with a kind of stone dome.

The situation of the city.

At break of day I went into the city, which is very mean, and looks more like a village, the houses being all built of earth, and separate from one another. I saw two or three poor little mosques, in which they were performing service. As this city is full of palm-trees, it looks at

a distance like a wood. This, of all the trees in that country, is what is esteemed most, both for its beauty, and the goodness of the fruit, which is the best in all *Perfa*. They reckon the annual product of each of these trees at seven florins; and they bear, one with another, 300 pound weight of fruit, every pound being worth two farthings. They furnish the principal revenues of this city, the inhabitants having no other trade by which they can subsist. The government belongs to *Ibrahim Chan*, duke of *Zje-rats*; but as that lord is always at court, he keeps one of the king's lieutenants here, as well as at *Zje-rats*. I have exhibited a view of that city, which extends from east to west as far as the mountains. We staid till the 21st, and hired eight fresh men (those whom we employed before not being willing to go any farther) to carry the sick lady, who continued very weak, to *Laer*. Mr. *Kaslelein* wrote from thence to *Gamron* to order another litter to meet him.

1705.

We

JARON.

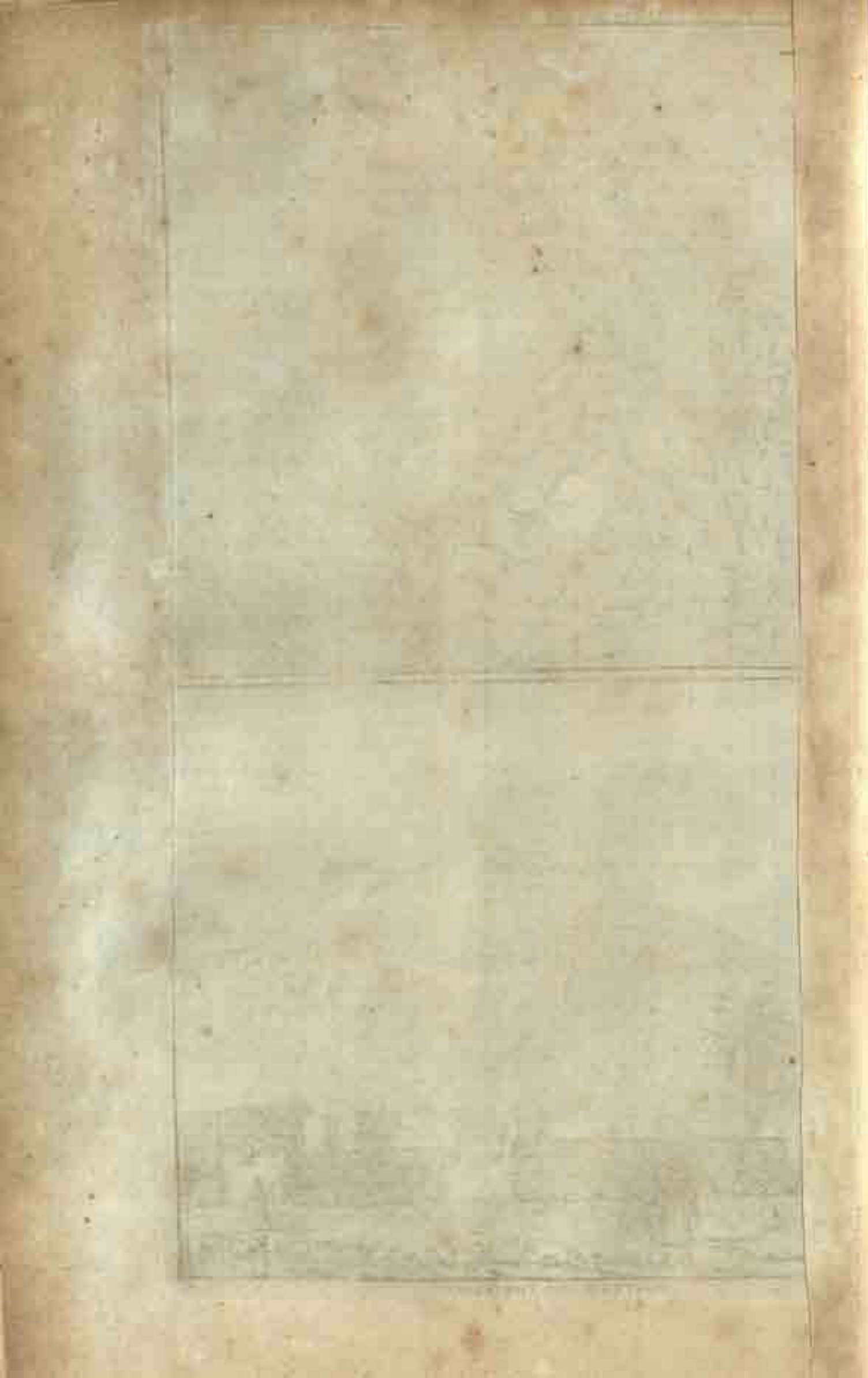














1705.

We set out about one in the afternoon, and proceeded south-west over the mountain of *Yaran*, which rises very high; and we were always mounting aloft, or descending between rocks, where we found the way very difficult to our horses. We had advanced to the middle of the mountain by break of day, and came to a place where the steepest part of the rock is surrounded with a wall, and the way very stony. We saw upon this mountain several large cisterns, cover'd over, and without any water at that time; but there is generally too much in winter. There are also abundance of pistacho and turpentine trees, which produce great quantities of gum. I found a piece so hardened by the heat of the sun, that I could keep it without melting. It was nine by that time we had passed the mountain; and we arrived an hour after at the *Caravanferai* of *Ziatalle*, a beautiful stone building, and very commodious for travellers, situated likewise in a plain bordered with mountains, at five leagues distance from the place where we had before passed the night.

We set forward at midnight, and passed over several plains and mountains; which latter were not so high as those we had crossed before; and yet the ways were very bad. We arrived by day-break at a spring, which is supplied from the mountains, and from thence descended into a valley, through very stony ways.

We arrived, about eight, at the *Caravanferai* of *Mou-fer*, where we found a *Carmelite*, who came from *Gamron*, and whose companion died on the road, by a fall which broke his leg. He had also been sick himself for some time, and was going to *Iffahan*. We stopped at this *Caravanferai*, which, tho' small, is tolerably commodious; a garden full of orange and other trees, furnished us with fruits for our refreshment. I found under these trees a plant, the lower leaves of which were a span in length, and half as much in breadth. Those which grew higher up the tree were

smaller, and had a kind of down upon the stalk. The inhabitants of the place call it *Goes-futoor*, or camel's ear, but are unacquainted with the virtue of it. I found another plant, call'd *Zia-rack*, whose leaves steeped in butter have an admirable effect in curing those people who have worms in their arms or legs, a disease very common about *Gamron*, where this plant is carefully cultivated. It produces only one cucumber, which is crooked and very pointed; the flowers, which rise on the top of the stalk, are red and white, and the plant itself is represented in plate 184.

We set out from thence at midnight, and arrived in the morning at *Dam-banje*, where we dispersed ourselves into several houses; the *Caravanferai* of the village lying in ruins. I went to see, about half a league from thence, westward, a mountain, separate from the rest, upon which there was formerly a fortress. I found upon the top a well dug into the rock, the mouth of which was ten feet in diameter, but the depth was not very considerable, as appeared by the fall of some stones, which I threw in. There was a vault on one side of it nineteen paces in length, and twelve in width, with a dome above it, containing seventeen feet in diameter. It was round and open a-top and on the sides, but it then appeared in a very ruinous condition. This mountain, which is very steep on the north side, has toward the south-south-west, a path of sixteen paces in length, and a width of fourteen in the middle; it is partly cut out of the rock, and begins at the dome, from whence it extends to one side of the mountain; but grows much narrower at each extremity than it is in the middle, as may be seen by my representation of it in plate 185.

The sun being upon the decline, we returned over the plain, which was filled with seed, and I saw a field near the village with a growth of cotton, of an extraordinary height, which however was not yet in flower.



1705. *er.* We found in the night a well of extraordinary good water, with which we filled our leathern jacks, that were empty before. The heat was then excessive, the wind being more sultry and insupportable than I had ever experienced it in any other country, and travellers are extremely incommoded by it. This quarter is full of villages.

Mr. *Kasselen* and I resolved to go before that night without the flambeaux, being fatigued with that troublesome pace. We proceeded to our right, and observing some persons stretched under tents, we engaged them to shew us the way. After we had travelled five leagues, we arrived about one in the morning at the village of *Aei Zjerassie*, but as it was unprovided with a *Caravanferai*, we took up our lodging at a tolerable good house, where we found the water a little brackish. Several travellers had written their names on the walls of this house, and among others, I read these words: *Mr. Directeur Keits died here in the year 1640, the 29th of May.* This happen'd during the travels of *Mr. Van Leenen*, counsellor extraordinary of the *Indies*, whom the company sent at that time to *Ispahan* in quality of ambassador, and to whom the director was to serve as a deputy. He was interr'd in that place without any ceremony, and even without a stone over his grave. This village is large, and contains a great number of gardens, full of palm and other trees. We here received letters from *Ispahan* and *Gamron*, and after we had dispatch'd the couriers who

brought them, we pursued our journey the twenty-sixth, an hour after sun-set, over some craggy mountains, and through bad roads, and arrived about one in the morning at the *Caravanferai* of *Bieries*, which is seated in a plain, and we had then travelled about five leagues. This *Caravanferai* is a large and beautiful stone edifice, well built, as is also the rest of the village, which is full of palm and other fruit trees. About a league from thence are the ruins of an ancient fortress, together with a wall round the mountain, and some ruinous fragments upon the top. This place is call'd *Kostel-Bieries*. There is also a well cut into the rock. The whole is exhibited in plate 186, together with some palm-trees and houses.

We set out the next morning before day, and arrived about ten o'clock at *De-lakoe*, a large handsome village, accommodated with a good *Caravanferai* of stone, and a large growth of palm and other trees. The conductor of the beasts of burthen entertain'd us here, and we set forward a little before night. We passed over the mountains, and then perceived a water-mill on our left hand, with a large cistern above it, made for the reception of part of the water which flows from the mountains through a stone channel. The rest runs into the plain by other canals. The road from thence to *Laer* is full of country-houses and gardens. We passed through this city, and took up our lodging on the other side, after we had travelled about four leagues.

*Directeur  
Keits's  
tomb.*





## CHAP. LIX.

*A description of Laer. A great number of wells. The reception of Mr. Kastelein. A fine Caravanferai. The author proceeds to Gamron. The arrival of the fleet from Batavia. A new governor of Gamron. The author's indisposition.*

The city of  
Laer.

THE city of *Laer* is the metropolis of an antient kingdom, which the *Persians* with much difficulty have reduced under their government, and it is at this day a place of great commerce. It has also a silk manufactory, and the best cannons in all *Persia* are cast here.

Its situation.

I found all the avenues to that city in good repair, and the houses for the most part very high, among which there were many with openings for the admission of air. The stone *Bazar*, which is in the middle of the city, is the most beautiful of all the buildings: It is arched over, and full of shops, with two ranges in the middle,

and the length of it is 216 paces. At the end of this *Bazar* is a fine square, and, below the gate, the *Ragema*, or the place where the musick of the city may be heard. Opposite to the *Bazar* is a large building, with a delightful entrance; and it serves for a mansion-house for the duke or governor, *Treas Chan*. The castle, which is entirely built of stone, is situated on an high rock, whose summit it almost surrounds. The avenues to this city resemble a wood, the land being covered with palm, orange, and citron trees, which almost shroud the city from the eye. I now shall present the reader with a draught of this, and likewise of the

LAER.





1705.

castle, which I took from the top of the *Caravanferai*. It extends itself much farther on the left-hand than on the right, but the trees prevent it from being seen. It lies open like a village, and is extended very far on each side between the mountains. It has a great number of mosques, but none that are beautiful. The chief of them, which has a large dome, is called *Pier-Panon*, from one of their saints. The city is filled with cisterns, vaulted above, to preserve the water.

Aug. 26

The governor sent this day, a congratulation to Monsieur *Kastlein*, upon his arrival, with a request, that he would continue there some days, to afford him sufficient time for acquitting himself of that duty in person; adding, that he should not have failed in sending before, if he had known of his arrival. Monsieur *Kastlein* returned him his acknowledgments for the civilities he had rendered him, and assured him, that his being obliged to depart immediately, gave him a sensible regret. A few moments after he received a handsome present of fruit from one of the principal merchants of the city, who came to pay him a visit, and was entertained agreeably to the manner of the country.

We continued our journey till evening, through a charming plain, bordered with trees, and houses on one side, which are said to form great part of the city; and after having passed through several villages, we came about midnight to the *Caravanferai* of *Basla-paryouu*, at the distance of four leagues from the city. We quitted that place on the 30th, and passed three times over a little river, which, at that time, was very shallow, but forms a considerable stream in the winter; and we arrived about two hours after at *Basile*, where we waited for the litter. We then pursued our journey, and came in eleven hours to a little *Caravanferai* half demolished, where we found an aged woman with some provisions. This part abounds with cover'd cisterns, the water of which is exceeding

good, and many people are employed to dig others, and likewise wells, without which neither they nor the cattle could subsist. They are also extremely diligent in searching for springs, as in the first ages of the world; of which we find an example in the first book of *Moses*, where it is said, that *Isaac* repaired the wells, which his father had dug, and the *Philistines* had filled up after his death.

As this was the season for hot winds, and sultry heats, which left no room to expect any favourable change of weather, we travelled by night as much as possible. The last day of the month we passed over a stoney plain, at which time fell a thick fog, accompanied with a kind of drizzling rain, which occasion a disagreeable smell, which is a common circumstance in this country, in the night, and at that time of the year. We then passed over some mountains and rocks, and arrived about one in the morning at the *Caravanferai* of *Gormet*, after a journey of five leagues.

The 1st of *September*, we again took the road, and found all the country filled with palm-trees, to the distance of a league from the town. Care had been taken to cover the parcels of dates with wicker baskets, as well to keep them from the sight of passengers, as to prevent the birds from devouring them. We then proceeded, not without much difficulty, over rocky mountains, and some rivers, which were very scanty of water, to make amends for the frequent inundations, in other parts of the year. Sometime after we met the *Kajua*, or new litter, which had been sent for from *Ganren*, attended by twelve bearers, who were to carry it by turns. They placed in it the sick lady, who then found herself more easy than she had been in the other; and we arrived about two in the morning, at the *Caravanferai* of *Tangbedalau*, where we met Monsieur *Batker*, Inspector of the magazines, (of whom I have already taken notice,) together with the

1705.



1705. the company's secretary and house-keeper at *Gamron*, and who were come to meet Monsieur *Kasfelein*. A small canal passes through the *Caravanferai*, which is not very large, but extremely agreeable, and well-built: It is all of stone, and the water of the canal, which runs thro' it, flows from a little rivulet at a small distance from it. It has likewise the advantage of being sheltered from the hot winds. The earth also in all the adjacent parts, is filled with little subterranean canals, which convey the water into the cisterns round about. All sorts of provisions are daily brought from the villages, to a water-mill, which is at the foot of the mountains, and near the *Caravanferai*.

The next day we advanced eastward, and at midnight arrived at the *Caravanferai* of *Goer-Bajer-goer*, after a journey of four leagues. The company's house-keeper at *Zypeslein* then found himself so much indisposed, that we were obliged to place him in the *Kasua*. We arrived about eleven that night at the great town of *Koreffon*, which is seated in a plain, and took up our lodgings at the house of the bailiff, without stopping at the *Caravanferai*. As it was extremely hot, I laid myself down under the trees, where the wind was not quite so stifling; but the heat returned towards morning. We continued there till sun-set, and then passed over a large plain full of wild trees, and crossed the river of *Koreffon*, which was then very low; but it frequently overflows in the winter. There is a bridge a quarter of a league in length; but entirely useless, by reason of its being ruinous in the middle. I found this to be seven paces wide; it had likewise several arches, and a parapet on each side. We arrived about one in the morning at the *Caravanferai* of *Geje*, after a journey of five leagues, and found some women there, who sold fresh butter, with eggs, and good fowls; but the water is very indifferent.

We renewed our journey on the 5th at sun-set, and arrived about midnight at the *Caravanferai* of *Band-alie*, after having travelled five leagues. That building is open on all sides, for the commodious admission of the breezes, which blow from the sea, and are very refreshing; that place being not above 3000 paces distant from the gulf of *Persia*, which much resembles the main sea.

The interpreter *Varyn* visited us that evening, with some of the *Indian* courtiers, to congratulate Monsieur *Kasfelein* upon his arrival, and present him with some refreshments. The next day they brought us a regale of smelts, and small pike, together with plaice; and a few little oysters, which were none of the best; and these were accompanied with a present of *English* beer. In the morning I took a walk by the sea-side, but found nothing worth my observation: It was exceeding hot; but a wind which blew from the sea toward the south, was very refreshing. The *Caravanferai* where we were, lies north of the *Persian* gulf, which extends itself from east-north-east, to west-south-west toward *Kongé*, which stands upon its shore. From hence one may perceive the isle of *Kismis* in the gulf, at south-south-east, and at east-south-east, that of *Lareek*, between which the ships usually pass. The way from thence to *Gamron* lies eastward, and partly along the shore. We travelled on in the evening, and about a league from that place met Monsieur *Clerk*, the deputy director, with the treasurer; and we arrived at the town about ten in the evening, where Monsieur *Kasfelein* alighted at the company's house, and I at the house of one of the company's servants. Five *English*, and two *Dutch* vessels, were then in the harbour, with many others that were built in the country. On the 8th Monsieur *Lid*, director of the *English* factory, came to visit Monsieur *Kasfelein*; and I went next day to his house, where I was very well received.

On

The author's arrival at *Gamron*.



1705.

*Monfieur  
Kasselein  
made de-  
puty of  
Gamron.*

October 2

On the 18th a yacht arrived from *Batavia*, and we were informed by those on board, that she was followed by five other vessels. She brought letters from the company, who had constituted *Monfieur Kasselein* director at *Gamron*, in the place of *Monfieur Wichelman*, who had desired to be dismissed from that service before his death. As soon as this account was made publick, the new director received the usual congratulations, the cannon belonging to the company were fired off, and answered by those of the fleet; and the evening passed in all manner of rejoicings. Our vessels also discharged some volleys. The next day the director of the *English* factory came to congratulate ours on his new dignity, and on the 26th one of the *English* vessels set sail.

On the 12th of *October* one of our vessels sailed for *Bassura*, and the five ships which were expected from *Batavia* arrived the next day; and their sloops came to anchor about noon. They were commanded by admiral *Beer*, who hoisted his flag on the top-mast. The *Elle-met* was to accompany those ships which were to sail for *Surat*, and had on board *Monfieur Six*, the company's deputy, to adjust the differences that were arisen between them and the people of that country, and to remain there in the quality of director. The baron de *Larix* embarked in one of those vessels for *Ispahan*, where he was also to continue as deputy to *Monfieur Bakker* the director.

*Arrival of  
governor of  
Gamron.*

The king having about that time conferr'd the government of *Gamron* upon *Manteb Alie Chan*, great rejoicings were made for the space of 3 days successively, and the cannon of the castles in the city were fired off, as likewise were those of *Ormus*, *Larake*, and *Kismis*. This lord had already enjoyed that government about eight or ten years before; but he afterwards obtained that of *Kirman*, from whence they have all their wool, and where is also a mine of silver. The last governor of *Gam-*

*ron* had been deposed, in consequence of several complaints which were made against him at Court; and it was thought advisable to leave his son there by way of precaution. *Mierfa-Mzerella*, who was to command in the absence of the governor, arrived on the eleventh, when most of the inhabitants went out to meet him, and he was received with a salute from the artillery of the castles. The people likewise received orders not to work that day, and were not permitted even to load or unload the ships.

On the 12th I was seized with a violent fever, which continued all that night, and increased the next day. As soon as I was sensible of its attack, I drank a large glass of wormwood, which had been very serviceable to me two or three times before; and I then walked by the seaside, in hopes that exercise would relieve me; but was obliged to take to my bed at my return. In the mean time the director went to pay a visit to the king's new lieutenant, who received him with a salvo of the cannon that were planted before his house; and the same was done at *Monfieur Kasselein's*, when the governor came to visit him.

My fever still continued, and made me delirious in the night. All the nourishment I then took was broth, and I drank nothing but tamarind water sweetened with sugar. I afterward became very laxative, which weakened me extremely. The fever left me in ten days, but it was a considerable time before I could recover my strength.

The *Banians*, or *Indians*, were at that time celebrating their new year. It is customary for the courtiers of that nation to make presents on that occasion, to the director, and all the officers employed under him, each in his order, even to the meanest, to whom they give little pieces of stuff flowered with gold and silver; and they likewise make illuminations. The director returned the visit to the two principals, who

1705.

*The inhabi-  
tants go  
out to meet  
the deputy.*

*The au-  
thor's in-  
disposition.*

*The new  
year of the  
Indians.*



1705. who are very rich; and they entertained him with artificial fire-works. Their house is very large, but without any manner of ornaments.

The 21st was attended with prodigious claps of thunder, and a very

boisterous wind, followed by some rain, which proved very serviceable to the fruits; and for which they returned thanks, by singing after the manner of the country.

## CHAP. LX.

*A description of Gamron. The air unhealthy, and very hot. The author resolves to depart from thence.*

*Description  
of Gam-  
ron.*

THIS city was formerly called by the name of *Camrang*, by the *Portuguese*, on account of the small cray-fish, which are called *Gamberi*, and abound there in great plenty. The *Persian* appellation of this place is *Bander-Abasse*, or the port of *Abas*, who made himself master of the town, and likewise of *Ormuz*. It is computed to be 200 leagues from *Ispahan*; but it is certain that *Zje-raes* is but seventy two or seventy three leagues from that metropolis; and the distance from *Zje-raes* to *Gamron*, does not exceed 131 leagues, which added to the other, make in all but 186, as I found a second time in my return. This city is a small league in circumference: It is likewise open, and extends itself along the sea-shore from east to west, or from north-east to west-south-west. It has no considerable buildings, and most of the houses have a very mean appearance on the outside. The best are those which belong to the *English* and *Dutch* factories, that of the governor being but indifferent. It is very inconvenient for strangers to reside there: the common sort have only a set of wretched huts, and even the *Bazar* itself is but a mean place. There are, indeed, four structures which have the name of castles; but they are low, small, and ruinous. That of the four which is farthest in the city, has some pieces of cannon

to salute the ships. The poor people dwell there in cottages made of boughs, and covered with the leaves of the palm-tree, of which there is great plenty in that city. The principal houses are furnished with machines to draw and receive the wind. They are made like square towers of a considerable height, and are accessible to the wind on all parts, except the middle, which is closed up. Those two sides, which are most exposed, have two or three openings, which are long and narrow, and those of the other two sides are less. There is likewise between each opening a small advanced wall, which receives the wind, and turns it back into those apertures, by which means the houses are always rendered airy, when there is the least gale of wind. The inhabitants generally take a short nap about noon, and pass the night upon the terraces during the hot seasons, which would otherwise be very inconvenient. But when these are over, they lie in chambers, as in other places. These towers, for the reception of wind, are very ornamental to the city.

A flag is always streaming upon the houses of the *English* and *Dutch* *India* companies, and serves for a signal to their ships. The house which belongs to our company, is the most beautiful structure in the city, and is built on the edge of it

*A new  
house be-  
longing to  
the Dutch  
factory.*



1705. toward the east. The first foundation was laid there in 1698, by Mr. *Haeghamer*, the company's minister. It is very large, and furnished with fine magazines; the chambers too are handsome, and of a considerable height. There is likewise a very magnificent and beautiful hall in the middle of the apartments above, whose windows, as well as those of the director's, and his deputy's lodgings, have a prospect to the sea, from whence these apartments are refreshed with the most agreeable air in the world: But this house is not finished as yet.

*A view of the city.* I drew the city from one of our barks, the large vessels lying at too great a distance. The reader will see the representation of it in plate 187, and the whole is distinguished by numerical figures. 1. The governor's house. 2. One of the castles. 3. The house belonging to the *French* company. 4. The *English* company's house. 5. That of the *Dutch* company. 6. Another of the castles. 7. The *Dutch* Company's new house.

*The burying place of the Europeans.* The *Europeans* are buried in a tract of ground to the north of the city; and it is filled with lofty tombs covered with domes. One need not be surprised at the great number of them, since the air is very unhealthy, and the excessive heats carry off a vast multitude of people. But nothing is more pernicious than the burning fevers, which are there more common than in any other place, and frequently prove fatal in the space of twenty four hours. The months of *October* and *November* are not less dangerous; for the air is then either very damp, or exceeding dry: The latter is the least dangerous, and the water is fresher, and better to drink than in a rainy season, the humidity giving it an ill flavour, and rendering it very unwholesome. Camels are sent for water to *Eysien* upon the mountains, about four leagues from the sea, and this is the wholesomest water in all the country. The inhabitants likewise send for it to *Nayhan*, which is a league from the city, near the sea; but this

latter is not so good. We had tolerable weather during my continuance there: but the heat lasted longer than usual, and was extremely incommodious. It is sometimes insupportable; and I have been assured, that it has even melted sealing-wax. In this extremity they throw off all their upper garments, and cause themselves to be sprinkled over with water. Our interpreter had a well, in which he passed a great part of the day. These immoderate heats always occasion severe distempers, as I have already observed, and happy are those who escape them. But even these are not exempted from great inconveniences, of which one of the most remarkable is the worms, which eat into the arms and legs of persons, and which are not drawn out without their being exposed to apparent danger, by breaking them in the flesh. In a word, one could not find a more rigorous punishment for malefactors than confining them in a place like this. One, however, seldom fails of finding some people of merit and distinction here; whom interest, and the hopes of raising a great fortune, have drawn thither, and whom death often snatches away before they have attained to the height of their desires.

The vessels anchor about half a league from the city, from whence small barks are sent to load and unload them, by the assistance of persons appointed for that purpose.

The principal isles of the *Persian* gulf are, 1st that of *Ormuz*, three leagues distant from *Gamron*. The capital of that isle, and of the kingdom of that name, was formerly very famous among the cities of *Asia*, for the greatness of its commerce; it lies at the mouth of the gulf, near the south-side of *Persia*, and was formerly governed by a king of its own, under the protection of the *Portuguese*, who demolished the citadel. The *Persians*, assisted by the *English*, made themselves masters of it in 1622; nor has the city ever flourished since. They even yet value





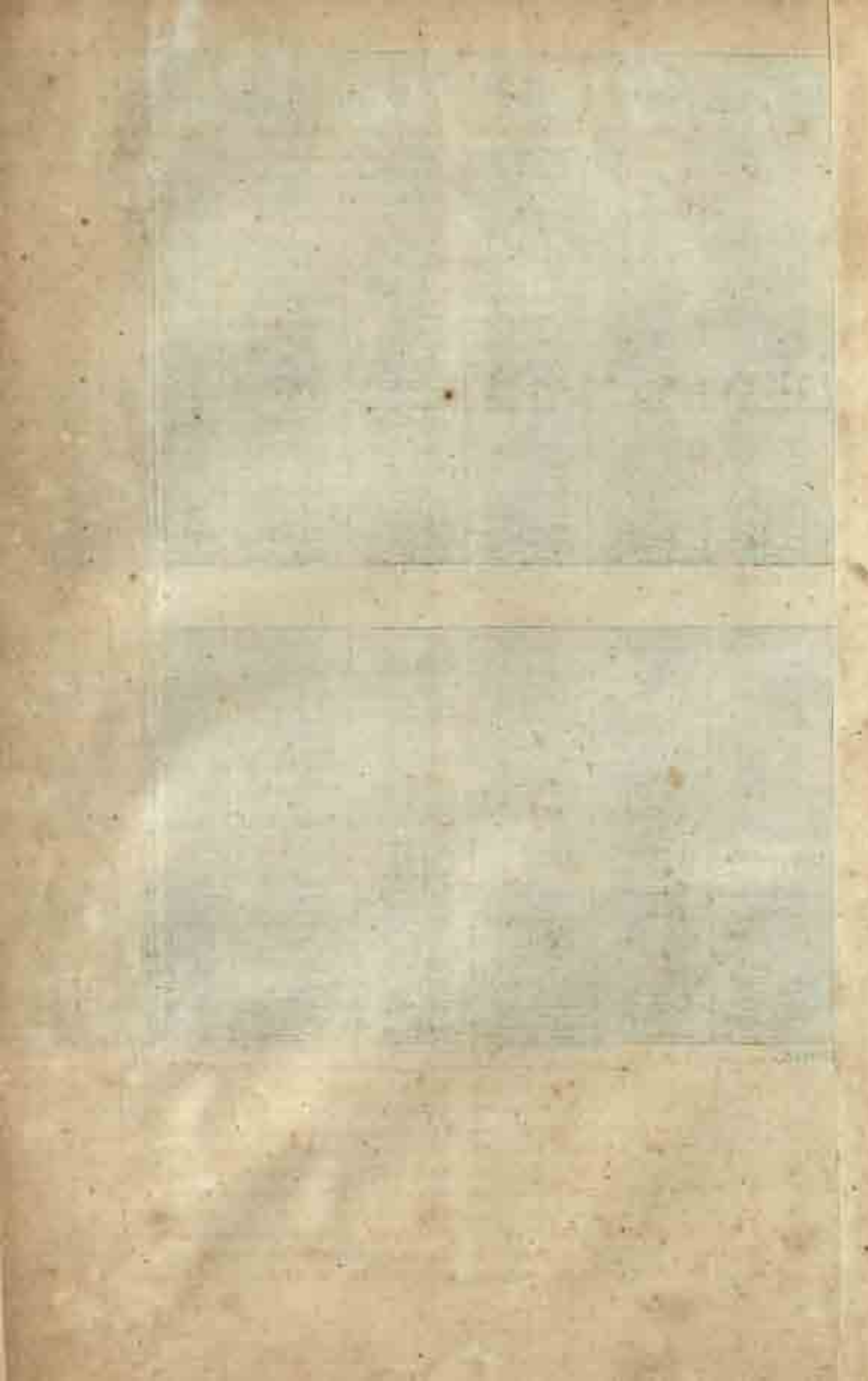


GAMRON.



LES ISLES D'ORMUS, LAREKE, ET KISMIS.





1705. luc their castle, into which strangers are seldom admitted: Nor are even their ships allowed to approach it, for fear of giving umbrage. There was formerly a bed of sand near this isle, on which were found pearls; which have since been poisoned, as is reported. The isle of *Lareke* is five leagues south-south-east from *Gamron*, and that of *Kifmis* four leagues and a half at south-south-west. This is the largest of the three, and about six or seven leagues in length; it supplies them with most of the wood used by the carpenters of *Gamron*, and likewise with timber for refitting foreign vessels which put in there; it extends almost to *Conge*, and ships may pass between them.

*Lareke.*

*Kifmis.*

Each of these islands has a citadel, but none of them are considerable,

except that of *Ormuz*. They are represented in plate 188; that of *Ormuz* is marked with A, its citadel, which is at the extremity of it toward the north-west, with B; *Lareke* with C, and *Kifmis* with D.

The *Meydrecht*, one of the company's ships, being ready to sail for *Batavia*, I ordered all my goods to be carried on board, and two days after embarked myself, although I was not then fully recovered, but found myself so very weak, that I was scarce able to support myself. I, however, preferred the sea to travelling by land, which appeared to me more dangerous, flattering myself that the air of the sea would be more healthful for me, in which I was not deceived.

## CHAP. LXI.

*The author sets sail from Gamron for Batavia. The coast of Malabar. The isle of Kover. The rocks of St. Mary. An English ship at anchor before Mangeloor. Dolphins, flying fish, and other kinds. A sea monster. The author's arrival at Cochin. The civility of the governor.*

*The author's departure from Gamron.*

WHEN I had taken leave of the director, and all my friends, I went on board the 25th of October. We hoisted sail in the night-time, and steered our coast south-east by south, between the isles of *Ormuz* and *Lareke*, in the *Persian* gulf, and between the kingdom of *Persia*, *Arabia deserta*, and *Felix*. On the next day about noon, we discovered the cape of *Mausendon*, at north-west by west, and the cape of *St. James* at east by south, and at the distance of about five or six leagues.

*Cape of Mausendon and St. James.*

On the 29th, the wind being at south-east, with a brisk gale, we saw again the cape of *St. James* at

east by south, and, toward the south, the island itself, and north of the bay of wood, upon the coast of *Arabia* at north-west by west, and the bay at south-west by west, and when we had advanced within three or four leagues of the shore, we found ourselves in 25 degrees 38 minutes north latitude, at sixty fathom water.

The wind changing in the evening to south-west, we steered our coast east by south, the night being very clear. The wind increased the following days, and the weather continuing fine, we pursued our voyage south-south-east, in order to reach the coast of *Arabia*.

The



1705. The first of November, and the following days, the wind proved variable, and the sea calm. On the 7th we came to the height of 21 degrees 10 minutes north latitude, steering our coast east-south-east. The next day we advanced to 19 degrees 43 minutes, and on the 12th to 17 degrees 53 minutes. About noon a brisk gale rose at north by east. We sounded, but found no bottom at 100 fathom that day, nor for some days after.

The coast  
of Malabar.

On the 15th, at break-of-day, we discovered the coast of *Malabar*, from south-east by east to south-east, at seven or eight leagues distance from us. We then steered south-east, the wind being north-north-east, and very strong. We sounded again, but without finding any bottom. After sun-set, we lost sight of land, the air being thick and cloudy. The wind was tolerably calm in the night, and we steered our course eastward, and entered into the *Indian sea*, which is between the eastern coasts of *Africa*, and those of *Arabia*, *Persia*, and the *East-Indies*, the isles of *Sumatra*, and *Java*, and other small eastern isles, and the southern continent.

On the 16th, the air being cloudy, we found ourselves in the northern latitude of 15 degrees 12 minutes, and the 17th at 14 degrees 19 minutes. On the 18th we were becalmed, and had a cloudy season, with some lightening in the night. In the morning the weather proved fine, but the wind was variable. On the 20th there was so great a calm, that we went backward rather than forward, the tide, which is very strong at west by north, being against us. On the 22d the weather continued the same, and we had still the tide against us north-west by west, while we steered to the north-west. The weather did not change the next day, and having sounded in the night, we found from seventy to seventy five fathom water, upon a greyish bottom, mixed with sand and oyster. The next day at dawn we had another view of the coast of

*Malabar*, sailing under the wind in fifty to fifty five fathom water the bottom being still the same. At noon we were obliged to cast anchor in fifty eight fathom, by reason of a calm, and the strength of tide. We were now in the latitude of 15 degrees 35 minutes, and within sight of land; but were unable to distinguish what particular land it was, because the weather was foul and very cloudy.

The 24th some of us imagined we saw the cape de *Cama* at south-east, and I am persuaded we were not mistaken, though others doubted it, because the water was chang'd, and they found no bottom. We stood out to sea again that day, and as the wind was easterly, and we were sailing to the south, the tide carried us off again from the coast, and we found that the ship had advanced fourteen or fifteen leagues to west-north-west, and that we had been driven back from the shore above sixty leagues.

The 25th, the weather being cloudy, we were surpris'd by a great calm, and came about sun-set within three or four leagues of the point of *Anchediva* at east by south, and toward morning, within five or six leagues of *Onor*, likewise at east by south, in the latitude of 14 degrees 17 minutes; we continued our course south-east by south in the night, the wind being north-west.

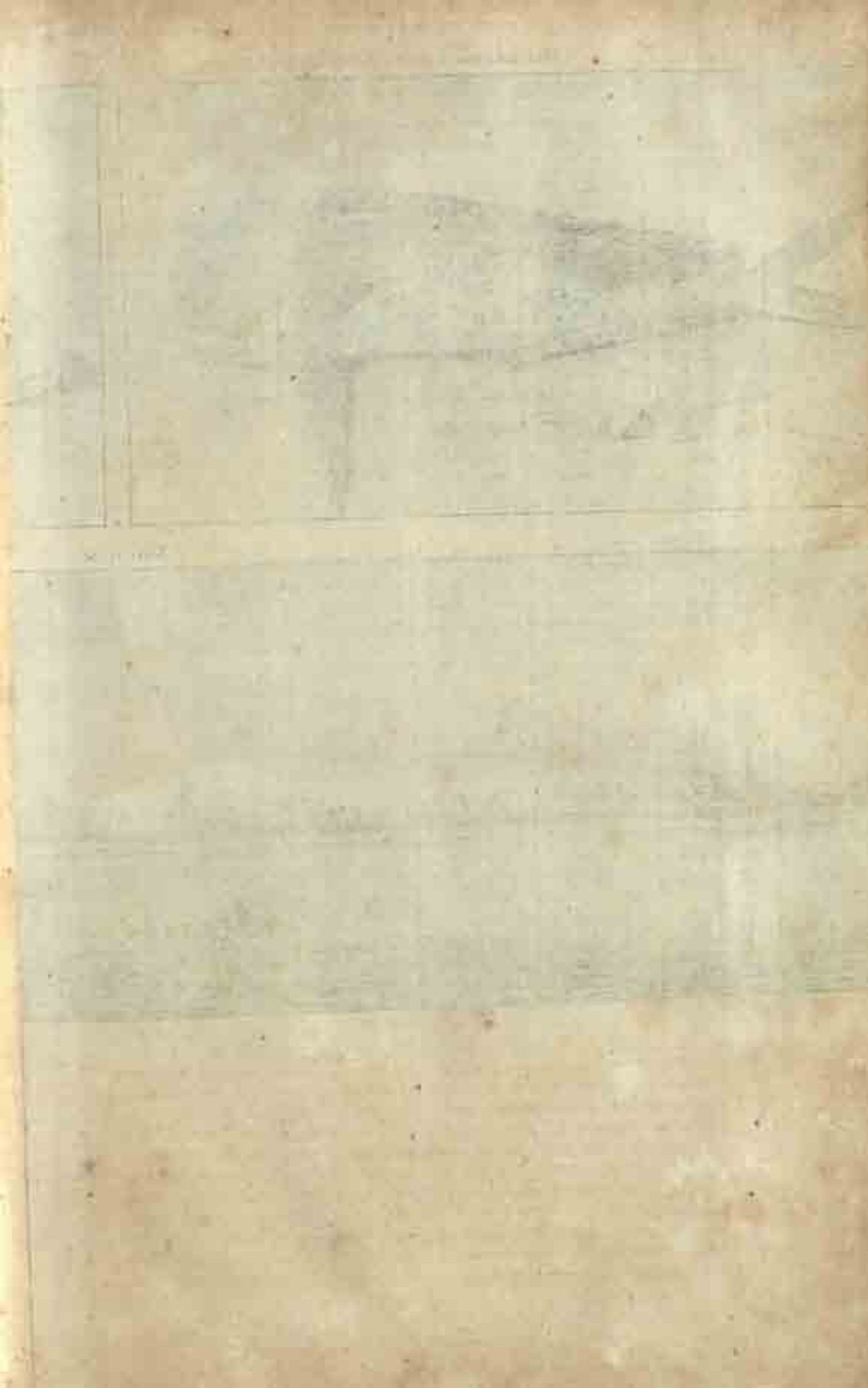
The 27th, at break of day, we discovered the isle of *Koveri*, to the south-east, and at the distance of three or four leagues, and we came within two leagues of it about noon, at east by north, in the latitude of 13 degrees 50 minutes. At sun-set we discovered the most southern continent at south-east by east, and the isle of *Koveri*, at east-north-east, about five leagues from us. We continued our course in the night, south-east by south, from east-north-east, with little wind, having from twenty-six to thirty fathom water, upon an oozy bottom. The next day, being about four leagues from land, we had some rain and a calm, which

1705.

The cape  
de Cama.

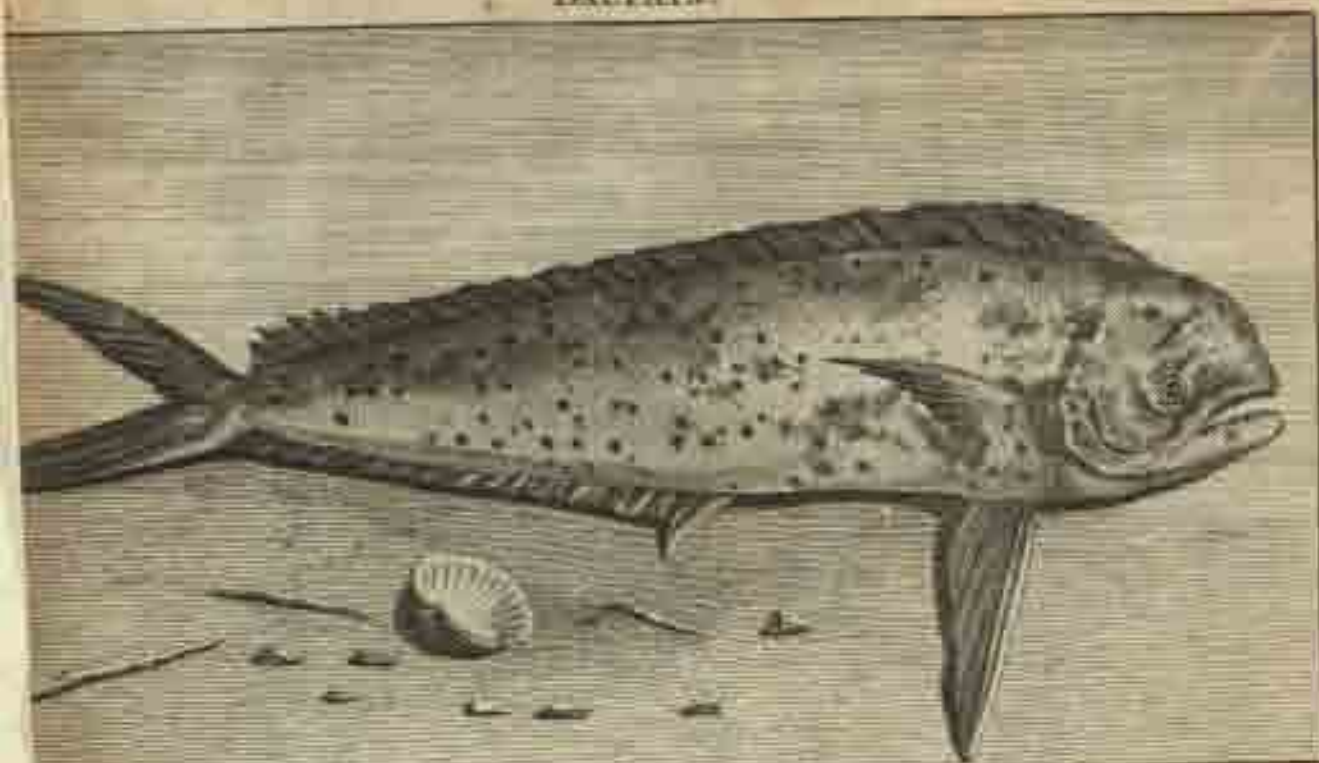
The point  
of Anchediva.

The isle of  
Koveri.

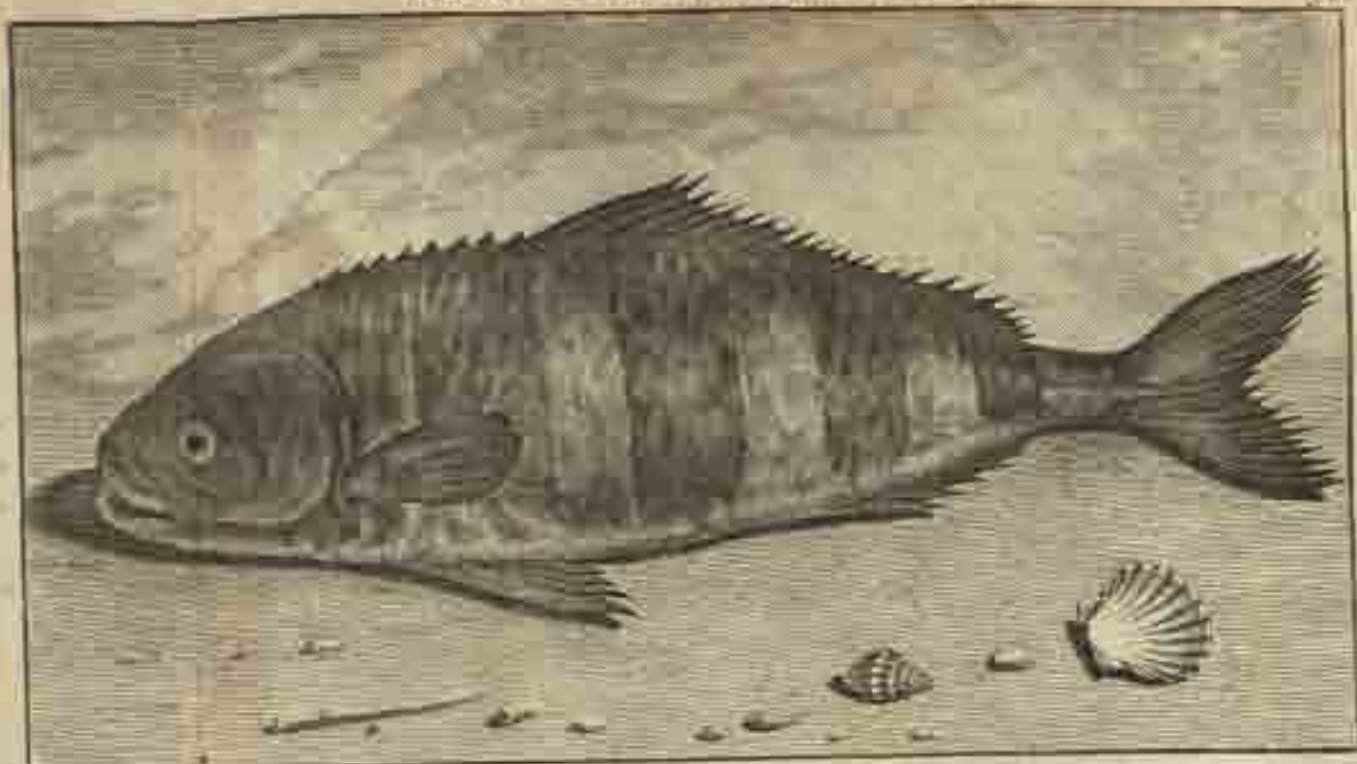




DAUPHIN.

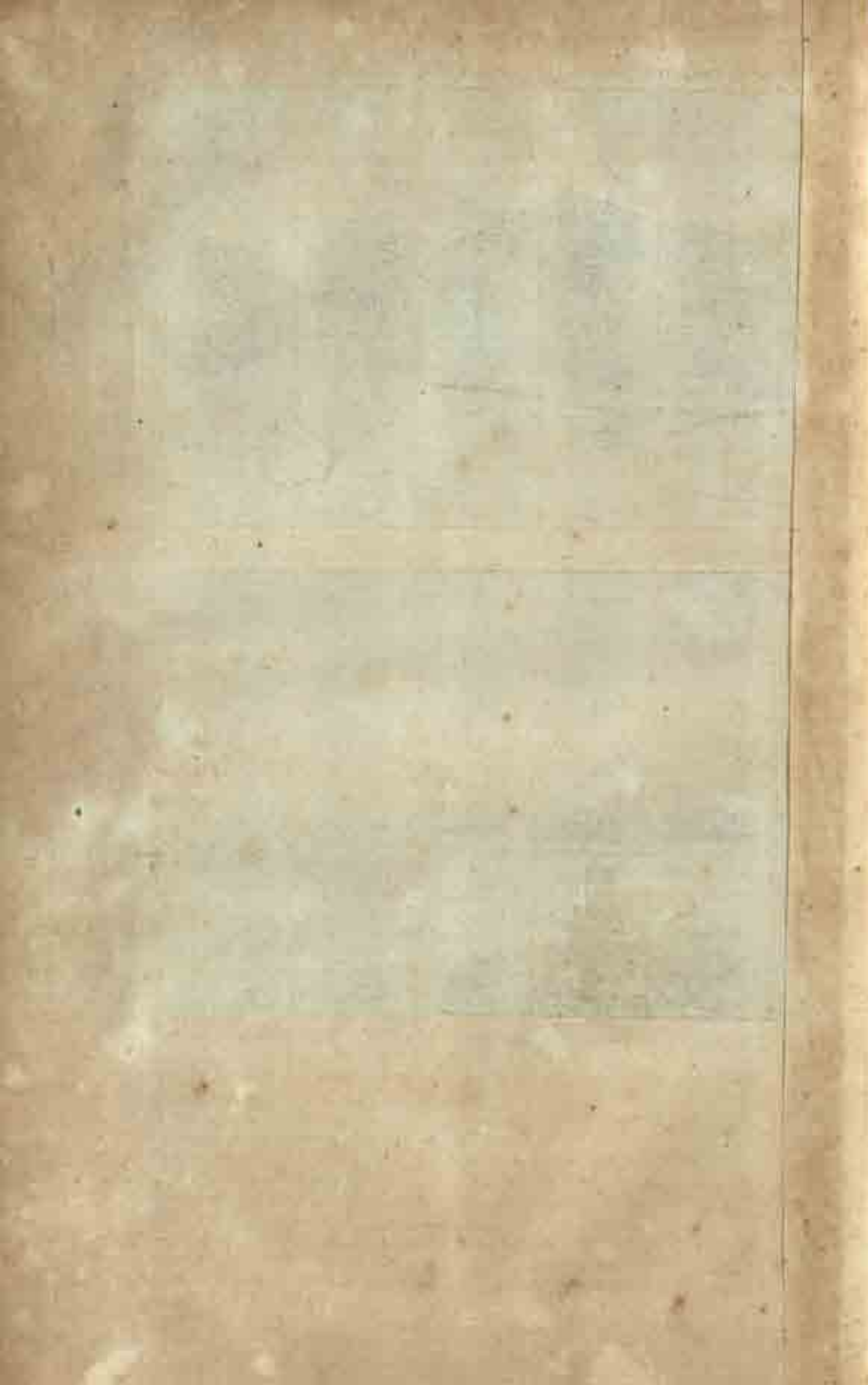


POISSON NOMMÉ LOOTSMANNEN.



KOCHIN.







1705. which obliged us to anchor in nineteen fathom water, that we might not go back any more, because the tide was very strong. The 29th, at break of day, we founded, because of the shoals of St. Mary, which were about a league and a half from us, at east by north. In the mean time the calm and the tide continuing favourable to us, we remained at anchor till noon, when we stood out to sea again, with very little wind, steering south-east by south.

The 30th, at break of day, we discovered a vessel at anchor before *Mangeloor*. We were then about two leagues from land in sixteen fathom water, and passed before noon by that place, which belongs to the *Dutch India* company, and has a small citadel. There are several high mountains in the inland part of the country, and one upon the shore. About noon a bark came up to us with ten *Malabars*, who informed us, that the vessel we had seen upon the coast, was an *English* ship, and that the captain had given them a letter for ours, and desired him to let that bark accompany us to *Kanunor*; from whence the master was to carry by land to *Calicut*, a letter for the director of the *English* company, who resided there. To this our captain consented, and ordered his men to furnish those in the bark with all the accommodations they wanted.

That place is in the northern latitude of 12 degrees 29 minutes. At sun-set we came within about two leagues and a half of the *White Beacons* at north-east, and to the point of *Monladely*, which lay south-south-east, at the distance of three or four leagues. The next day the *Malabars* left us, in order to proceed to *Kanunor*.

We had frequently the pleasure of seeing and taking many sorts of fish. We first caught a dolphin with harping irons and hooks. It is customary to fix a little bundle of feathers on them, and then cast them into the sea at the end of a rope fastened to a pole. The dolphins,

who take these tufts for flying fish, upon which they continually feed, follow the bait till they are taken. This is the less extraordinary, as those little fish, who are apprehensive of the dolphins, fly as long as they are able above the surface of the sea; but as they are obliged frequently to plunge themselves into the water, the dolphins, who pursue them, seize upon them, as I have often observed. I have preserved in spirits of wine three of these fish, that fell as they were flying upon the deck of our ship; a circumstance which often happens. We took one of these dolphins which was four foot long, and the head was ten inches thick. They have a yellow belly, speckled with blue, up to their eyes; and the rest of the body is tinged with a light blue, blended with spots of a deeper complexion, especially upon the top of the head. The fins are purple, green, and white, with a small intermixture of yellow near the edge. Their colour changes when they die, and resembles that of the purple-fish. They have one fin upon their back, from the head to the tail, and another from the middle of the belly to their tail, two others under the body near the neck, and one on each side of the head: Their tail is forked, and their eye-balls are encircled with a ring of white. Their mouth and teeth are small; the head of the male is much larger than that of the female, and they have but few intestines. The sailors eat them dressed in the same manner as the *Cabillan*, or *Melwell*; and they afford a tolerable good relish.

The first we took was the largest and finest; but as my eyes were then out of order, I could not make a draught of it. My fever likewise returned, which I attributed to too great a repletion, having had an extraordinary appetite at sea, and using no exercise. I even believe that this contributed not a little to impair my sight. When I had continued three weeks in that condition, I recollected that I had brought from



1705. *Holland* a microscope, and some other glasses, which employed and diverted me very agreeably; and by the help of these I drew one of the dolphins, which the reader will find represented in plate 189. They likewise enabled me to read in the night, when I was prevented from sleeping by an itching, and a heat which had continued upon me ever since my sickness at *Gamron*. We took a variety of other fish, some of which were a foot long. These were sea-perches, usually called *Pilots*, and they have some resemblance to river perches. Their bodies are speckled with brown and blue streaks, an inch in breadth, and which grow narrower near the tail. These fish are continually playing about the rudder of a ship, and are commonly accompanied by another fish called *Haye*. They are likewise dressed for eating like river perches. I preserved a small one in spirits, and the reader will find it exhibited in plate 190.

*Haye.*

*Sea-monster.*

We also frequently saw on the side of our ship, a fish which the sailors call the *Devil*, or *sea-monster*. It is a large flat fish, very like a turbot, and has a great deal of the taste, as they told me, but is not quite so large, nor so long. His wings, or fins, are always expanded, and from his tail issues out a long narrow

streamer, which in the sea appears 1705. white, and in its motion resembles the undulation of a serpent. The rest of his body is brown, intermixed with white spots, and is about twelve feet in length, and more in breadth, when his fins are extended. We endeavoured to hook him with a harping-iron, but could not succeed, though he appeared two or three times at the head of our ship. Our captain assured us, that he had struck several times at one, but that he always made the harping-irons fly back with great violence, and without receiving any wound. Some of these fish are reported to be large, and strong enough to over-set a sloop.

We came within a small distance of *Cochin* the 3d of *December*, and anchored in the evening in six fathom and a half water, at the distance of a league from the city. The gates were then shut; but were soon opened to us; and we went to wait upon the governor, to whom our captain delivered the letters he had received for him. He favoured us with a very civil reception, and obliged us to sup with him; he likewise pressed me to accept of a bed at his house, but I excused myself, chusing rather to lodge with my fellow-travellers.

*The author arrives at Cochin.*





1705.

1705.

## C H A P. LXII.

*A description of Cochin. The author's departure from that city. The cape of Komerin. The island of Ceilon. Point Adam. The author's arrival at Gale. The taking of a crocodile. A description of it. An account of some extraordinary animals, plants, and sea-herbs.*

I Returned the next day to the governor's house, and desired him to lend me a bark to cross the river, that I might take a draught of the city from the other side, and he immediately granted me that favour. I there beheld an infinite number of trees of a surprizing beauty, and different from any I had ever seen before. From this situation I drew the north prospect of of the city, as it appears in plate 191. No. 1, represents the company's fishery. 2. The station appointed for the guards of the citadel, and its entrance. 3. The bastion of *Gueldest*. 4. The port of the bay. 5. The governor's house. 6. The church. 7. The captain's house. 8. The deputy's house. 9. The flag hoisted upon an old ruinous tower. 10. The company's magazine. 11. The purveyor's house. 12. The place where the sailors lodge. 13. The extremity of the wall.

The situation of the city.

This city is about half a league in circumference, and has two gates, one of which, that fronts the shore, is called the gate of the bay; and the other the river gate. They have dug a canal on this side, where the company's barks ride, and by the side of it is the timber-yard. From thence one passes over a great wooden bridge, in order to arrive at this last gate, near which is a river, that flows into the ditches of the city, and bears large vessels. The bastions of this city have the several names of the provinces of *Gueldres*, *Holland*, *Utrecht*, *Friesland*, and *Groningen*; and the little bastion, which is near the fishery, is called *Overijssel*. The captain's

house is at *Stroomenbourg*. The governor's hall, which has a prospect to the sea, forms also a kind of point or bastion, and there are likewise two half-moons among the other works. The place is very agreeable both without and within; the streets are spacious, and the houses handsomely built with brick. There is also another wood-yard for refitting ships, and for the use of those who come in or go out. The governor's house is a large structure, composed of fine apartments. The *Sieur Moorman* is the present governor, and he is a gentleman of a very obliging disposition. He presented our captain with several plants that grow in that part of the country, and are esteemed as great curiosities; and we sent him a present of corn in return. They have great plenty of fish, and all sorts of flesh; so that a cow is sold for three or four crowns; a hog for a crown and an half, a hen for two pence, and a duck for six pence. They are likewise as well supplied with rice, but the soil produces neither corn nor wine, nor have they any of either, but what is brought thither. *Stroomenbourg* is also under the jurisdiction of the commander of the city, whose deputy is named *Bitter*. We took up our quarters in one of the handsomest houses in the city, with *Monsieur de Graef*, an ensign in the service of the company. Their money is of two kinds, *viz.* *Panams*, which are equal to a quarter of a Dutch shilling, and *Bajarekes*, thirty two of which are equivalent to a penny.

This



1705. This city, which lies in ten degrees of north latitude, is the capital of an ancient kingdom of that name, and had formerly a bishop: It is situated in the eastern part of *Asia*, near the coast of *Malabar*, which extends itself partly from south to north. It has a high mountain in the eastern part of it, and the soil is very fertile and pleasant: A continual spring flourishes there, and the ground is always enamelled with every kind of flowers, as has been observed by the famous *Antonides*.

*Malabar* was formerly subject to an Emperor, whose dominions extended from cape *de Komeryn*, as far as *Mangalore*, on the frontiers of the kingdom of *Chunara*: But I found in the memoirs left by the governor of *Rade* to his successor, that this powerful empire, which formerly contained four millions seven hundred thousand men fit to bear arms, was, after the death of the last emperor, divided into thirteen or more kingdoms, governed by the principal men of the empire. The chief of these princes is the sovereign of *Cochin*, descended in a direct line from *Cheram-Perimal*, and from the great *Samorin*.

As I made but a short stay in that country, I could not inform myself of any other particulars, except only that the flat part of the country is watered by many navigable rivers, some of which are very large.

The governor entertained us this day at dinner, and we embarked in the evening with much difficulty, by reason of the violence of the waves, which beat continually against the rocks. We set sail in the night, and there fell a heavy rain, accompanied with thunder and lightening; after which we discovered some high mountains about two leagues distant from us, while we steered south-east. Toward the next evening we were again threatened with a storm, and were obliged to furl the sails. We advanced an hour before night, near the cape *de Komeryn*, when the weather grew fine again; but the wind changed, and continu-

ed against us all the next day. It rained part of the night; and we doubled the cape on the 8th in the morning, the wind being at north-east, and we lost sight of it in the afternoon, steering to east-south-east, and to south-east by east. In the night we were surprized by a calm. However, we continued our course every day with a changeable wind, and discovered the isle of *Ceylon* the 10th in the morning, with a high mountain in form of a sugar-loaf, which is called the *Peak of Adam*. This peak is visible only at some particular times, because it is involved in clouds, which descend even to the bottom of it. The reader may see a representation of it in the following plate.

We cast anchor at eight in the evening, in thirty nine fathom water, and hoisted sail again the 11th at break of day, so that we advanced in a short time within sight of the city of *Gale*, but were not able to arrive at it till the evening, by reason of a calm, which obliged us to cast anchor a league and a half on this side of it in seventeen fathom water. The next morning, our captain sailed in the sloop to the city, in order to deliver the letters he had in charge. We weighed anchor about ten, but the wind being against us, and very strong, we could not get into the harbour.

When any ship approaches the bay of *Gale*, a cannon is fired every half hour, to give notice to the pilots to come on board, because there is no passing farther without being exposed to apparent danger, from the rocks which are hidden under water; some seventeen feet from the surface, others fifteen and twelve, and many less. I went in the evening to the city with the pilot, and lodged at an inn. The next day I visited the governor, whose name was *Walters*; and he received me in a very obliging manner, and offered me all the service in his power. He was but newly arrived from *Krin*, where he had been director. As I intended to continue some time in that city, to refresh myself, and recover my health, I left

Isle of Ceylon

Adam's Peak

Rocks



1705.

1705.



PIC D'ADAM.

I left the inn, and went to lodge with one of the company's sergeants. It rained incessantly till the 17th, tho' it had continued above two months, and the preceding year had been exceeding dry. But the weather grew fine again in a short time.

I found five of the company's ships in the port; three of which returned to *Holland*, and two other vessels after arrived here from *Bengale*. On the 18th the governor gave an entertainment to those who were preparing for their return to *Holland*, and above sixty persons were present; but my ill state of health prevented me from being one of the number.

About midnight there happened a sad accident. One of the men who had drank too freely, set fire accidentally to one of the ships that were to return, but they had the good fortune to quench it before the flame, which had already seized the rigging, could reach the powder, otherwise the ship, with all her tackling and cargo, had been inevitably de-

Vol. II.

stroy'd, and the others exposed to very great danger.

Two of those ships sailed out of the harbour on the 20th, and anchor'd in the road; the third follow'd them the next day, and I took this opportunity to write to my friends in *Holland*. In the mean time the drum was ordered to beat in the city, to summon the sailors on board, upon pain of being put in irons, and after the cargo had been reviewed, they set sail on the 24th. The same day arrived a vessel from *Amsterdam*, and two *English* ships passed by the port, steering westward. My fever returned then with a *Diarria*, which weakened me extremely.

On *Christmas-day* a crocodile was taken alive, sixteen feet and a half in length, and five and a half in breadth. We were assured that he had devoured thirty two persons upon that coast, beside several others whom he had doubtless destroy'd in different places. They had often given him chase, but to no purpose till then. After they had

Y

killed

A terrible  
accident.A crocodile  
taken alive



1705. killed him, they dragged the body to the governor's house, from whence he was sent to the surgeons of the hospital to be dissected. My curiosity drew me thither to see the inside of that monster, and examine whether he had not in his body some remains of any human creature. And we accordingly found the trunk, arms, and legs of a man, together with the skull, feet, and hands, and a prodigious quantity of fat, which is used as a medicine, and is said to be excellent for the palsy, and all relaxations of the nerves, and likewise for rheumatisms.

*A description of that animal.*

It is pretended that there are some places where these animals are not injurious to any. When they lay their eggs, they place them in a hole in the ground, where they are hatched by the heat alone. As soon as they are opened, the parent crocodile appears, and swallows down all the young ones that chance to run into her mouth: the rest jump into the water. There are some as big again as that I am describing. They have no tongue, so that when they open their mouth, one perceives a frightful cask. When they are upon land, on a sandy soil, they run with such a prodigious speed that a man cannot escape them by flight; but upon a hard and stony ground they are not so swift, because the bottom of their feet is exceeding tender. They devour cattle without any difficulty, and even a wild ox, and their teeth are so long, that they grind their horns to powder. But their eggs are scarce bigger than a pullets, and are altogether as white. Their yard is but small in proportion to their bulk, and is slit at top with a kind of small tongue beneath. They dry'd that of this crocodile, as a present for me, and gave me one of the testicles, which had a smell something like amber. I likewise received from them a bottle of the grease of that monster.

*The manner of taking it.*

They take these crocodiles with a large hook fastened to a skain of forty or fifty strong threads, which

insinuate themselves between the monster's teeth in such a manner as renders him unable to disengage himself, or break his hook, which penetrates as far as the stomach, and fastens there; but if the hook were to be fixed to a thick cord or chain, the crocodile would easily bite them in sunder. These threads serve also to conceal the hook.

These monsters are also found in the ponds in the isle of Ceylon, and other parts of the Indies. There is another manner of destroying them, and even of preserving them for a shew to the people, which is this:

*Another manner of destroying them in rivers.*

They take a very dry tube, three or four feet in length, which they fill with quick lime, and fasten to a dead pullet; the crocodile, as soon as he perceives it in the water, never fails to swallow it. But when it has remained in his body for the space of twenty four hours, the wood bursts, upon which the fire flies about, and then burns, and consumes him, so that when he is thus filled with fire, which continually preys upon him, he leaps out of the water, and expires in an instant.

One may judge of the strength of these crocodiles by the efforts they make after they are caught with a hook, and have been opened, in order to take out their entrails, since, even in that condition, they rise again, and frequently run twenty or thirty paces. I was told, upon this occasion, that about fourteen years ago, the crew of a ship, called *The King of Buntam*, took a \* *Haai*, that had forty five little ones in its belly, which, when it was opened, came out, and began to swim in a vessel of water prepared for that purpose, and that the least of these fish was larger than a *Merlan*.

\* *A large sea-fish, which is devourer even.*

I ought to take notice here, that they presented me with two large bottles filled with various sorts of animals preserved in spirits; among which were little crocodiles, young sea-lizards, cameleons, scorpions, millipedes, a blind serpent, and several other creatures.

*Strange creatures.*

They



1705. They gave me likewise some other productions of the sea, which were not very considerable. I went myself, but with no great success, to search along the shore for others, and appointed some persons to do the same; but what they brought me was in a manner useless, and among other things were a great number of stones. I chose what I liked most out of them, and threw away the rest, which they had picked up without much curiosity, I not being able to accompany those to whom I gave that employment, by reason of my weakness. This island likewise produces plants, and medicinal herbs, which are extraordinary good, as the inhabitants pretend; but strangers ought to be well acquainted with them.

I sent into the woods to seek for some of these productions, particularly for an herb called *Hackmelle*, of which they report wonders; and among other particulars, that if one wraps up a flint stone in one of its leaves, the moment any one takes it into his mouth the flint breaks into a thousand pieces, and that the juice of these leaves is a specifick remedy for the gravel: They much resemble those of celery, only the leaves are tinged with a deeper green. I intended to extract some of the spirits; but not having sufficient time for that operation, I was obliged to content myself with bringing away some dried leaves, and the exterior buds, which are used like tea, and are extremely good to bring down the stone, and dissipate the gravel.



## C H A P. LXIII.

*The revenue which the India company receives from the isle of Ceilon. A description of the city of Gale. The people converted to the Christian religion. The habit of the Singales. Abundance of elephants. Cinnamon trees.*

THOUGH I was offered in this place all manner of information necessary for a circumstantial description of the isle of *Ceilon*, and the satisfaction of the readers curiosity in these particulars, I did not make any use of them, because my ill state of health, and the little time I had to continue there, would not permit me to go far up into the country to make any discoveries myself, and to see those pieces of antiquity which are said to be there. I was likewise unwilling to trespass upon the resolution I had taken, not to relate any thing which I had not seen with my own eyes; for which reason I shall content myself with mentioning the principal revenues which the company receives from that famous island.

The most considerable is that produced by cinnamon, which is better there than in any other part of the world. As soon as the governor has ordered the number of cinnamon bales, required by the company, the *Chalins*, whose business it has always been to peel off that valuable bark for the sovereign of the isle, fail not to furnish him with it at a very inconsiderable expence.

The second revenue is, that which proceeds from the *Arack*, the trading in which, without the company's permission, is prohibited to all the world. The servants of the company are obliged to carry the rice into their magazines at a very reasonable price; and they carry on a very advantageous traffic with the merchants of *Coromandel*, who come thi-



1705. thither for it. Beside which the company likewise frequently sends that fruit to *Bengale* and *Surat* in their own ships.

*Cloth.* The third is that which arises from the sale of the coarse cloth of *Madura* and *Coremandel*, which are sold as they come from the manufacturer, without being whitened; and this commodity produces a considerable profit.

*Elephants.* The fourth arises from the sale of elephants, which are brought from *Columbo* and *Maturan*, as well as from the kingdom of *Jassnatnam*, where they are sold very advantageously to the natives of *Golconde*, and the other *Moors*.

*The manner of transporting these animals.* The elephants, which are taken in the countries of *Columbo* and *Maturan* were formerly transported, with much difficulty, in the company's ships, to *Jassnapatnam*. But they have found out, some years since, the secret of cutting a passage, for near fifty leagues, through a very thick and wild wood, from *Negomb* through the country of *Kander*, as far as *Jassnapatnam*. This difficult undertaking was accomplished by the assistance of the natives, who have at length performed it at a small expence.

The capture of these elephants is also performed by the inhabitants of the country, under the direction of the company's officers. If I had ever had an opportunity of being present at one of these exploits, I should not have failed to have given a particular account of it. But as I have never been an eye-witness to it, I shall content myself with saying, that several persons worthy of credit have assured me, that in one single chase they have often taken, in the country of *Columbo*, near 160 elephants, and sometimes more.

*Pearl fishery.* I might here likewise mention the advantage which accrues to the company from the pearl fishery which is carried on in that island, and in the dependant countries, as well at *Tutucorin*, upon the coast of *Madura*, as in the gulf of *Arippe*,

under the government of *Mannaer*. 1705. But as that revenue is altogether unsettled, and produces sometimes more, sometimes less, I cannot give an exact account of it. However, as they are continually fishing in one or other of these places, it is not to be doubted, that the company find their account in it. I have before me some pieces which might authorize me to speak more exactly; for I have made it a maxim with myself, not to mention any particular of which I have not a certain knowledge. I shall therefore only say, that the principal revenue which the company receives from this fishery, results from a tax laid upon the stones which are used for that purpose; every diver who works there, being obliged to have one, to make him sink to the bottom of the water. Each bark contains more or less; the largest of them are from sixteen to twenty pound in weight, and the smaller weigh about six or eight pound: So that when that fishery shall be brought to perfection, and they can employ 450 vessels, the profit will be very considerable.

*The Parrawas.* The *Parrawas*, who are those that profess the *Roman* religion, pay seven rix-dollars for each stone; the inhabitants of the country nine and a half, and the *Moors* and *Mohammedans* twelve; a custom introduced by the *Portuguese*, and continued by the company.

*A description of Gale.* I shall now proceed to a description of the city of *Gale*, which is rendered very strong by its situation, being surrounded on the side next the sea, with shelves of sand and rocks which render it inaccessible, without the assistance of pilots from the port, which forms a half-moon in the eastern part of the city, and is well provided with cannon. It has also strong walls, and good entrenchments cut into the rock, and bulwarks in many of the angles, the principal of which bear the names of the sun, moon, and stars: Between these bastions are the city gates; and there are some other fortifications,









1705. fications, namely, that of the *Sail-  
ers*, of *Utrecht*, of *Venus*, of *Mari*,  
of *Ælus*, and the *Standard Rock*.  
There is but one gate to the east,  
which is that on the shore. The  
city is about half a league in its in-  
ward circumference; for there is no  
walking round it without. It has  
some tolerable streets, which are  
not paved, but covered with turf,  
and several of the houses make a  
handsome appearance, particularly  
that of the governor, which is spa-  
cious, and full of beautiful apart-  
ments: It is built upon an emi-  
nence, over-against the company's  
magazine, which is very large; but  
the walls which are next the water  
are very damp, and the upper part  
of the structure, which is of wood,  
is rotted and eaten by white ants, of  
which there are vast numbers in that  
country. The entrance into this ma-  
gazine is at the city gate, and one  
end of it has been formed into a  
church, where the *Hollanders* per-  
form their devotion in the morning,  
and the *Singales* in the afternoon.  
The country adjacent to this city is  
full of gardens, shaded with fine  
trees, and formed into beautiful al-  
leys. The mountains, which rise in  
the eastern part of the country, are  
cover'd with woods, and from thence  
one may easily pass along the shore  
to the port. These woods are full  
of wild-goats, hares, and birds, but  
the market is seldom furnished with  
any of this food, but with respect  
to other provisions, it is almost as  
well supplied as that at *Cochin*, but-  
ter excepted, which is very dear,  
and far from being good. When  
any ship is discovered out at sea,  
a flag is hoisted upon an old build-  
ing situated on a rock, where a  
guard is always stationed.

The money of that island is all  
of copper: The largest species of it  
amount to near two of our *shs*, and the  
smallest to about a *denier*. But the  
*Dutch* money is likewise current there.

They have several schools for  
the *Singales*, who are converts to  
Christianity, and good masters, who  
are instructed by the ministers to

1705. inform them of the articles neces-  
sary to their salvation, and to give  
them a good education. These mi-  
nisters visit the schools every six  
months, which produces a very  
good effect.

Their *Singales*, who are half *Hollands*  
*Moors*, have, for their whole cloth-  
ing, but one piece of linnen wound  
about them from the waist to the  
knees, all the rest of their body be-  
ing naked. The women wear this  
habit something longer; it resem-  
bles a petticoat, and is tinged with  
several colours. They have like-  
wise a little waist-coat of cloth,  
hanging loose below. The better  
sort of them have two of these  
waistcoats, with an ornament of  
fringe on the uppermost; when they  
appear abroad, and go to church,  
they put on white stockings, with  
embroidered slippers; but in the  
house their legs are without any co-  
vering, and they have wooden sandals  
on their feet. Their heads are al-  
so uncovered, and their hair is  
tucked up behind. Their necks  
are ornamented with a small chain  
of gold, to which is fastened a  
jewel, which falls upon their bosom.  
They likewise wear another larger  
chain, which hangs down to their  
petticoat. They have also over their  
left shoulder a white flowered scarf,  
or of some other colour, which de-  
scends as far as their knees before,  
and is short behind. The sleeves  
of their waistcoat flow to their  
wrists, around which they wear  
bracelets of gold, or any other  
metal, as represented in plate 192.  
There are among the most consi-  
derable of them some *Mestices*,  
who speak good *Dutch*. These are  
the off-spring of *European* and *Ma-  
rises* parents.

This island abounds with elephants, *Elephants*,  
as I have already observed, and two  
hundred of them are sometimes taken  
in one chase, with snares made of o-  
fir, and which are extended to the  
distance of three leagues. These  
captures are made every third year,  
after which the elephants are sent by  
the company to *Coromandel*, and  
Sarat,



1705. *Surat*, as well as to other places. The largest of these animals are sold for 2000 rix-dollars; and the others at a price proportionable to their age.

*The cinnamon tree.* The tree which bears cinnamon, is the most considerable of all those that grow in the island. The oil of it is produced by the flower, and has the consistency of soap. It is likewise as white as tallow, and has not any smell. It is said to be an excellent remedy for chilblains. Monsieur *Made* the treasurer, was so obliging as to present me with a quantity of this production.

*Situation of the Isle of Ceylon.* This island of *Ceylon*, or *Ceylan*, which the inhabitants call *Lankaron*, and *Tenariffin*, is supposed by some to be the *Taprobane* of the ancients. It stretches into a large extent, is almost round, and its fertility is very

great. It lies south-west of the *East-Indies*, north of the *Indian sea*, and south-east of the coast of *Coromandel*, in the gulf of *Bengale*. It likewise comprehends seven different kingdoms, the chief of which is that of *Kander*. Its most considerable cities are, *Kander*, *Columbo*, *Punte-Gale*, *Zegembo*, *Jassnaputnam*, and *Baticalo*.

The first day of the year 1706, I went to pay the customary civilities to the governor, who received me in a very obliging manner. On the third, letters arrived from the governor of *Columbo*, with orders to send away our ship without any other company, though we had agreed with two others to return together to *Batavia*. We set sail on the 5th, after having taken leave of the governor.

## C H A P. LXIV.

*The author's departure from Gale. The isle of Engano. The coast of Zillabar. The streights of Sunda. The author's arrival at Batavia. The civility of the general of the Indies.*

*The author's departure from Gale.* I WENT on board the 6th of *January*, about six in the morning; at which time the treasurer came to take a view of our loading, and when he had satisfied himself in that particular, we weighed anchor, the wind being north-north-west; we steered, at first, southward, and then to south by east, with a favourable wind, which changed in the night, and then ceased on a sudden. The next day we lost sight of the isle of *Ceylon*, proceeding south-east by east, with variable weather, accompanied with rain, and stormy-winds, which obliged us to lower our top-mast. On the 13th at night we had a view of the north star before us, which was a very extraordinary circumstance, because it is very seldom

seen by those who advance toward the line; and especially in bad weather. The 18th the wind shifted to north west, and we steered our course south-east by east, and passed the equinoctial line to 31 minutes of south latitude, and the longitude of 124 degrees, and 32 minutes. The 19th the wind being at west-south-west, we continued our course to south-east by south, in 38 minutes, and the 20th we came into 1 degree 45 minutes; and about morning, the wind being west-north-west, and blowing a fresh gale, into two degrees 8 minutes, steering our coast south-east by east, favoured by fine weather, which lasted all the next day; but then changed, and continued bad to the end of *January*.

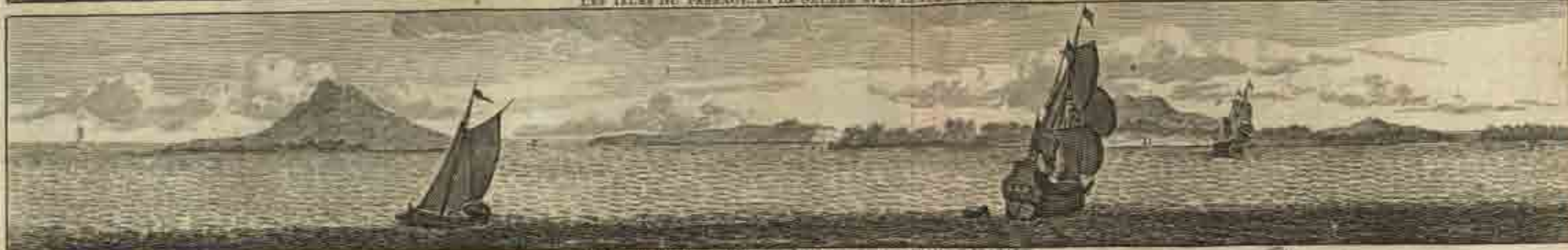
At







LES ÎLES DU PASSAGE, ET DE SEINE AVEC LA TERRE FEMME.



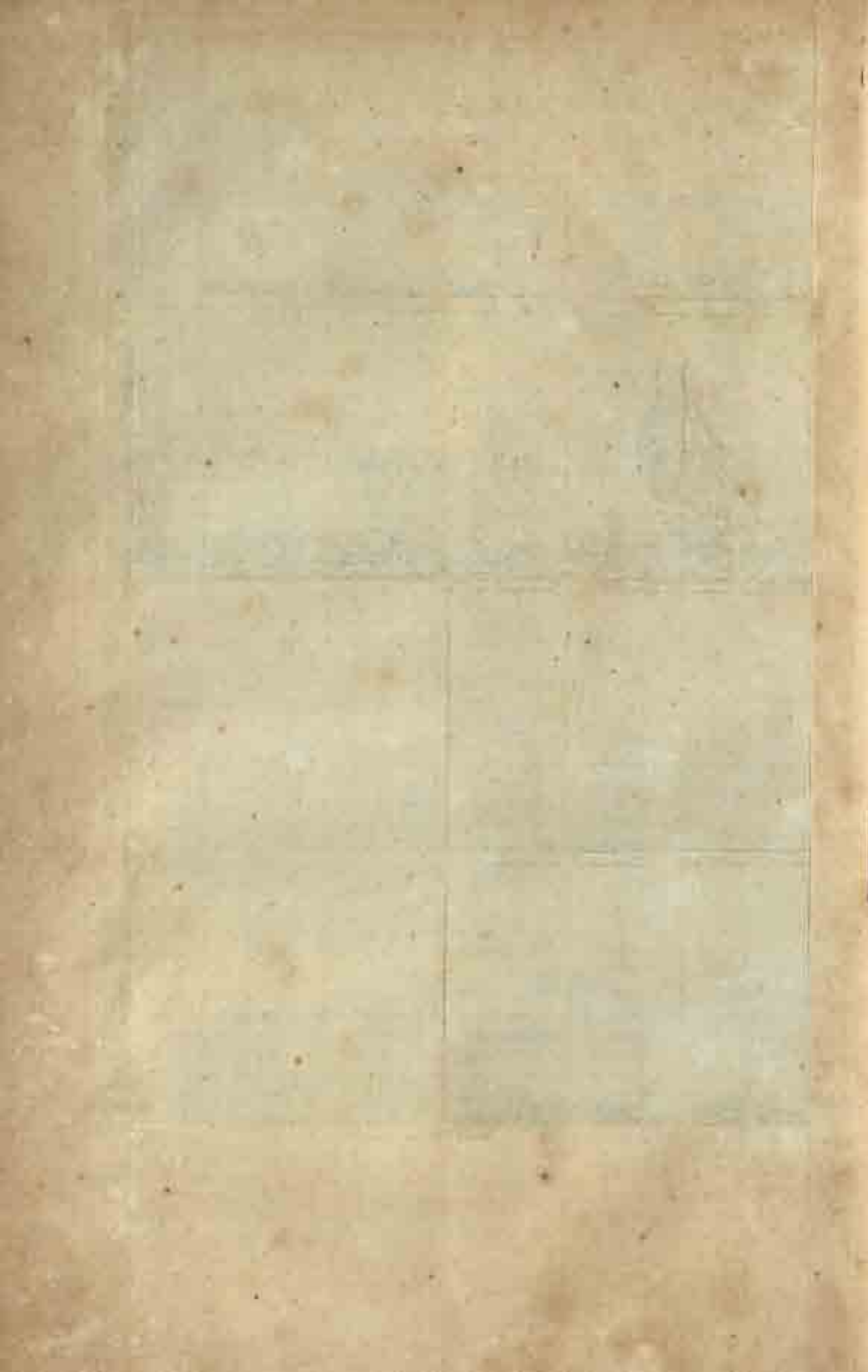
VOYAGE DU SUDAN, CÔTE DE JAVA ET DE MADAGASCAR.



II ÎLES LOUÏSE, LA MONTAGNE BLEUE, LE CHATEAU ET LA SERRA DU LE CAP DE BAYAN.







1706. At the beginning of February it grew fine again, and we had hot weather, with some calms. But on the 4th the wind varied, and the sky grew cloudy, which made us hope for a change; for we greatly feared the calms, which might have retarded our voyage for a long time. The wind rising at south-west, we continued our course south-east by east. The 5th, the wind continuing favourable to us, we came into 4 degrees 32 minutes south latitude, and the weather changed a little after, otherwise we might have discovered land, steering continually south-east. We afterward had thick, heavy weather, and much rain in the night, both which are very usual on the western coast of the Indies in winter. We, however, continued our course east-south-east, making little sail, because we were near land: We at last came into 4 degrees 38 minutes of south latitude, and into the longitude of 127 degrees 25 minutes, where we were driven up and down by storms till the 11th of the month, when the wind shifted to south-west, from whence it blew with great violence. About noon we found ourselves in 5 degrees 3 minutes, always steering east-south-east, the weather being wet and cloudy; we likewise sounded, but found no bottom. We had seen in the evening some white gulls, which, the seamen say, is a sign that one is not far from land, because they never fly far from the shore. The next day we saw another, and proceeded in the night to west-south-west, making but little sail, till at length, having been tossed about for some time by changeable wind, we discovered the isle of *Engano* to south-west, at the distance of seven or eight leagues, and on one side of us, the mountains of the high land of *Zillabar* at north-east.

We continued our course between them with great satisfaction, for having discovered land, after we had so long wished for that sight; we then sailed first to east-south-east, the weather continually changing, and being gener-

ally rainy; we then steered to south-east by east; and at length to east, and to east by north: When we were about seven leagues from the eastern coast, the men sounded, but found no bottom at eighty fathom. The 16th we discovered high land at north-east, being about five leagues from the coast, and found ourselves toward noon in the latitude of 6 degrees 15 minutes. We afterward saw the *Imperial* island, to east-north-east, at six or seven leagues from the cape. We then directed our course eastward, being favoured with very fine weather, and the wind blew so briskly toward evening, that we approached the straits of *Sunda*, where we found several pieces of floating wood, with birds upon them. We then steered east by south, with cloudy weather, and unexpectedly found ourselves on the 17th, within a quarter of a league of the *Prince's* island. The master of the ship was the first who perceived it, which greatly surprized him, and not without reason, because we should infallibly have run ashore, if the weather had not suddenly cleared up. Two or three men, who had been ordered to look out carefully, were punished for their negligence on this occasion. We then tacked about immediately to north-west, and north-west by west, and found by sounding, that we were three leagues from the point, having been carried back by a strong tide since the last sounding, eight leagues and a half to south-west, though we had been favoured by a good wind from the west during the night. A resolution was then taken to proceed without delay to south-west, while we had it in our power, and this was immediately put in execution. We then advanced to south-south-east, in order to double the western point, and then kept to east-north-east, till by steering in this manner, we came about two in the afternoon to the farthest point of the island of *Java*, where we found forty-two fathom water upon a bottom of thick sand, covered with shells and small



1706. small flint. The wind, by good fortune, favoured us, and had it not been for this advantage, we might possibly have been obliged to put in to some neighbouring port for two or three months, in order to wait for a favourable gale.

The  
Straits of  
Sunda

This strait of *Sunda* is about a league and a half in breadth, within thirty seven or thirty eight leagues of *Batavia*; forming a passage from the *Indian* sea to the south, between the coast of the island of *Sumatra* to south-east, and the western side of the island of *Java*, on which the city of *Bantam* is situated. When we had made some advance into this strait, I drew the prospect which was then presented to me: The *Prince's* island lying north of *Java*, and this latter bearing to the south, beyond which is seen another island at a great distance, but not quite so high, and the name of it is the *New Island*. I have represented this view in plate 193. where the *Prince's* island is distinguished by the letter A; that of *Java* by B, and the *New Island* by C. The depth of water is from thirty to forty fathom in this strait; but sailors cannot find any bottom at the entrance on the other side, to the north of the *Prince's* island, where the strait opens to a great breadth. At sun-set we continued our course east-north-east, about three quarters of a league from land, the wind being north-west, but blowing very moderately, and the tide was also against us. The wind changed in the night, after which we were becalm'd, and had showers of rain. The weather likewise continued thick for some days; but this did not prevent us from proceeding to the fourth point, which lies north-east about two leagues from *Krakatau*. Some fishermen of that coast advanced toward us, and we sent out our sloop in order to be supplied with some refreshments from them. Some of them came on board, and brought us several *Pomper*, a species of small flat-fish, together with some *Mosbankers*, another little flat-fish, which

is none of the best. They furnished us likewise with several sorts of fruits, and, among the rest, *Kassers*, which are round, and red, and very like ses-chinuts, only they are smaller than those, and covered with prickles. This fruit grows in large clusters, like grapes, with small stalks; they have also a large kernel, which resembles a plumb-stone, and the flavour has a sweetness tempered with acidity, which is not disagreeable to the taste. They brought us also another sort of fruit called *Langst*, which is very round, and its colour an intermixture of yellow and red, not unlike an *Abricot*, and it grows in the manner of grapes: beside these, our fishermen supplied us with young *Areeks*, and *Betelbladeren*, or leaves of the betel, of which I shall treat more largely in my description of *Batavia*. The 19th we had unsettled weather, and steered our course north by east, and to north-north-east, and the wind and tide being against us, obliged us to anchor about noon in twenty fathom water. We, however, soon set sail again with a favourable wind, bearing to north-north-east, and to north-east by north; but did not continue long in this course. We cast anchor again on this side the point of *Bantam*, which lay north-east by north, at the distance of a league and a half. The wind changed frequently in the night, and abundance of rain fell. We sailed again in the morning, and continued our course to north and north by east, in nineteen, twenty two, and twenty three fathom water; but were obliged to come to anchor again about noon, in sight of several high islands. In the afternoon, the wind shifting to south-west, we came about evening into the latitude of the point of *Bantam*, at north-east by north, being then about two leagues from land. We then cast anchor again, not daring to advance amidst the darkness of the night, lest we should run upon one of the islands; we had likewise much thunder and lightening. The 21st, the wind

blew



1706. blew against us at north-east, and the tides were so strong, that we found it impossible to advance. In the morning we were supplied by a bark from *Java*, with fruits, and a parcel of lean chickens. We had the point of *Bantam* to the north-east, and the isle called *Topperi-boetd-je*, at north-east by north, about a league and a half from us. In the afternoon, the wind shifting to the south-west, we set sail again with a favourable tide, and steer'd our course north-east by north. We came in the evening to the point of *Karackatouw*, which was about a league and a half from us to the north-north-east, and about two leagues from the isle of *Topperi-boetd-je*. As soon as it grew dark, we perceived some fires upon land, and had several flashes of lightning. About ten o'clock we were becalmed, and obliged to cast anchor in twenty seven fathom water, but that calm was immediately followed by a violent storm.

On the 22d I drew two beautiful prospects, the first of which is exhibited in plate 194. where D marks out the isle of *Passage*. E that of *Selebes*, and F the northern side of the continent of the inner western coast. The point of *Bantam* is represented at the letter G, in plate 195. together with the coast of *Java* at H, and the *Chapeau de Brabant* at I. There is likewise a view of all the mountains, and islands filled with trees, which form a very agreeable prospect. We had then the point of *Bantam* to the north-east, and the *Chapeau de Brabant* to the north-north-east, about a league and a half from us, and toward noon we perceived a *Batavian* vessel under sail, with a bark belonging to the company. The vessel was a *Dutch* pink, on her return to *Europe*. As soon as we saw their flag, we hoisted ours, and sent our sloop out to enquire after news; she on her part sent two pilots on board us, who did not stay long; and in the mean time the company's bark arrived, according to custom, to ex-

mine and take an account of the ships which arrive in that sea. The master of the bark ordered the captain of our ship, on the part of the magistrate of *Batavia*, to send his clerk on shore with the company's letters, upon which he immediately obeyed, and we then set sail again with a westerly wind. We had the point of *Bantam* at east by south, and the *Chapeau de Brabant* at west-south-west: Advancing in thirty two fathom water, about eleven at night, we anchor'd in sixteen fathom, beyond the point of *Bantam*, 18 leagues from *Batavia*. The 23d at break of day we hoisted sail again, the wind being at west-north-west, and blowing with a brisk gale. We then discovered the gulf of *Bantam*, which extends itself to a great length.

On one side of this gulf we had a view of *Long-Island*, which we left on the right. We had also a prospect of the blue mountain, which is very high: This is represented in plate 196. in which *Long-Island*, otherwise called *Pou-Pouang*, is exhibited at K, the blue-mountain at L, the gulf of *Bantam* at M, and the point of *Bantam* at N. We passed by that city, in which we could partly distinguish the highest buildings. We had *Raby* to the north-north-west, at the distance of about a league and a half, and we steered with a wind from north-west, and from south-west, to east-north-east, and east by south, in ten, twelve, and fifteen fathom water. This part of the sea has several islands, where we were often obliged to anchor by reason of the calms. At last we approached *Batavia* the 24th. The commander *Brouck* came to meet us in his bark, and brought me the agreeable news that I was expected by the governor-general, Monsieur de *Hoen*, who had received notice of my coming by letters from Monsieur *Wilson*, burgo-master of *Amsterdam*.

The commander offered me a passage in his bark to the city, when we arrived about ten, and were in-



1706. formed that the governor was gone to pass the day at a country seat. M. de Geerlagh was so good as to lend me his charriot to carry me thither: The way to it was exceedingly agreeable, being bordered with trees, and pleasure-houses on each side. The house to which I went was not above half a league from the city. I met with good company there, and the governor in particular received me with open

arms, and invited me to dine with him. In the evening we all returned to the city, and I lodged in the castle with him. He gave me a packet of letters, in which there was one from the burgo-master *Witjen*, dated the first of May 1705. After supper I was conducted to my apartment, where I immediately went to bed, being much fatigued, and indisposed.

1706.

The arrival of the general of the Indies.

## CHAP. LXV.

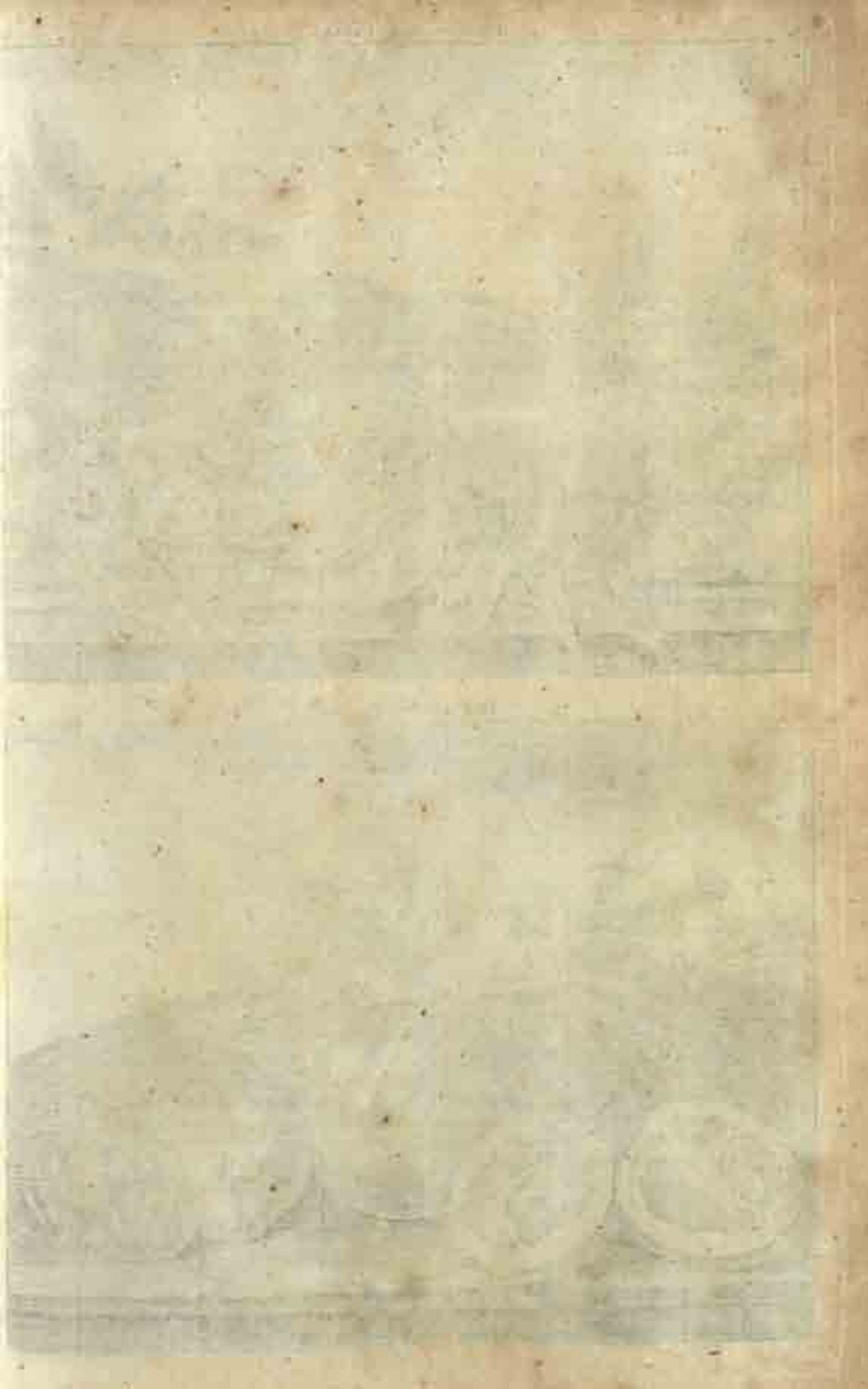
*The author's indisposition. The inhabitants of the South. A rigorous punishment. Extraordinary fruits. Chinese comedies. The director-general's pleasure-house.*

MY indisposition increased to such a degree, as obliged me to keep my chamber. M. Brower, the company's first physician, attended me, by order of the governor-general, and gave me hopes of recovering my health in a few days; nor was he deceived, for he had such good success, that I was in a condition to walk out the beginning of March. I had not the least relish either for wine or beer since my sickness at Gamron, and had drank nothing but water, and sometimes a little brandy. But the refreshments with which I was now supplied, recovered my appetite, and I began to paint several *Indien* fruits, which afforded me an agreeable amusement. As soon as my health was a little improved, I went to visit M. Ouffbeern, who formerly had been governor-general of the *Indies*, and he received me in a very obliging manner. He was about seventy years old, and very healthy and vigorous for his age. He had likewise exercised that important charge for the space of thirteen years, and then quitted it with no other view

than to pass the rest of his life in peace and tranquillity. I had a long conversation with him, which proved very satisfactory to us both, and he made me promise to visit him frequently, and show him all the curiosities I had then in my possession. I afterward visited M. de Riebeck, director-general of the company, and the general de Wille, together with some members of the council of the *Indies*; as also M. Garfin, first secretary to the company, who all received me with great civility; and especially my old friend M. Hoogkamer, who had formerly been ambassador to the court of *Persia*, and was then vice-president of the council of justice; and I took this opportunity to renew my acquaintance with that gentleman.

Some days after I went to pay a visit to M. de Roy, major of the citadel, where I found four men, whom a ship, called the *Pinson*, had taken from the southern coast, with two or three women, who were permitted to enjoy their liberty. These savages, who were six in all, had been brought to *Batavia*, from

Discoveries of the Coast.













HOMME SAUVAGE DU SUD.



1706. from whence two of them escaped, and the other four remained in the service of the company, who sent them aboard their ships in order to learn our language, and that some account might be obtained from them of their own country, to which they were intended to be sent back after they had made those discoveries which were then wanted. They were treated in this manner, that they might have an opportunity of representing the humanity of the company to their fellow natives, and to induce them to engage in a commerce with our nation; for till then they had never permitted strangers to enter their country, and the ship of which I have been speaking, was the first that ever arrived on that coast.

These savages had something so peculiar in their air, that I had an inclination to paint one with his bow and arrow in his hand, agreeably to their manner, and as may be seen in plate 197. They have no other covering than a slight cincture of cloth round their waist, and which hangs down a little before: They have also a small ivory bracelet round their left arm. I took one of their bows, and several arrows which I have kept by me. These latter are made of cane, some larger than others, and have a great many points which render the wounds they make very dangerous; but their extreme slenderness prevents them from flying very far.

Several *Chasse* were executed about that time, and two of those unhappy wretches had their flesh torn off with red hot pincers; after which they were broken upon the wheel.

The former governor sent me his chariot to convey me to a pleasure-house which he had without the city. I passed some hours there very agreeably, and shewed him part of the designs I had taken in *Persia*, with which he seemed very well satisfied. In the evening I returned to *Batavia*, and on the 30th of March a galley called the *Noëtte*,

set sail from thence with the company's letters. I took this opportunity to write to my friends.

I had already painted several species of fruits, which the reader will find exhibited in plate 198, where A is a certain fruit called *Fructe Kafri*, the flavour of which is sweet, and the colour a beautiful red; it has likewise a great resemblance to the sea-chestnut, and the tree bears very large leaves. B a fruit called *Mangustangus*, which has an agreeable sweetness, and is likewise very salutary: The size of it is equal to that of a China orange: It is also white within, and cover'd on the outside with a chestnut brown. C represents two *Goyaves* ripe and open; the fruit is red within, and it resembles a water melon. On one side are exhibited others of this species, which are small and green, together with their leaves. This fruit is certainly very pleasant, and is about two inches in diameter when ripe. D represents another fruit called *Klopper Royal*, the juice of which is very pleasant, and there are several sorts; this is properly the cocoa-nut, which is about the size of a melon, and has a white pulp within, which adheres to the shell, and is good to eat. E is placed at a fruit called *Fructe Rittah*, which is very grateful to the taste, and much esteemed; it has likewise a bright violet colour, spotted with brown. F exhibits an orange called *Piepienje*, or rather a large cucumber, with its blossom and leaves. G a red and white *Jambou*, with its foliage; this fruit much resembles a peach in its flavour; and on the side of it are drawn two of a smaller kind. A in plate 169, marks out a fruit called *Tamati*, the coat of which resembles a shell. This fruit is beautifully tinged with red on the outside, and full of kernels like a cucumber; its flavour is likewise agreeable, especially in sauces. B an *Annona*, whose outside is grey and rough while the fruit continues unripe, but it afterwards assumes a violet colour, and is something larger than an orange; the flavour of this



1706. this fruit is agreeable enough. The leaves are about the length of one's finger. C represents a large citron full of a delicious juice, inclosed in a very thin rind. D exhibits two

*Pompe-  
melons.*

*Pisong.*

*Pompe-  
melons.* *Pompe-  
melons.* one large and entire, the other opened. This fruit is red within; but there are some of a white hue, and which have fewer kernels. Its flavour and scent resemble those of a *China* orange; it is shaped like a melon. E represents a sweet and pleasant fruit, called *Pisong*, which the inhabitants peel like a fig: It has a green tincture before it is ripe, but this deepens into a yellow when the fruit has attained its due maturity. It is about five inches in length, and at the top rises a flower blended with violet and red, and which falls when the fruit is ripe. The stalk produces another flower, a foot and an inch in length, and five inches in diameter. This flower is tinged with a violet colour, intermixed with red and blue. The leaves of the tree which bears this fruit are about two fathom in length, and one in breadth; they likewise glow with a deep red on one side; and between them and the flowers from whence the fruit springs, one sees a profusion of other long flowers, some yellow, others blue and red; and they form a most agreeable view. The trunk of the tree is not above three fathom high, but the thickness of it is very considerable. The rind is full of sap, and they stew the inside like cabbage.

*Chinese  
comestibles.*

*Chinese  
comestibles.* I went about this time to see a theatrical performance in the *Chinese* manner: The stages are erected in the street, and front the houses of those who give these entertainments, or contribute to the expence on that occasion. I observed in the vestibule of one of these houses, a large high table covered with all sorts of provisions, finely disposed, as well wild-fowl as fish, and among the rest a hog's head split. There were likewise confections, and other delicacies, on one side of which were a great number of round flat loaves

heaped up one upon another. A little higher (for this table had the form of an altar) were all sorts of fruits, embellished with flowers, and before the table a man stood in the habit of an ecclesiastic, with an open book in his hand, adorned with very extraordinary figures; the place was likewise finely illuminated: The person I last mentioned frequently threw pieces of copper on the ground, and then resumed his reading. He was likewise joined by a second actor, who made several motions, which seemed to express some of their sacred ceremonies, and gave me reason to believe, that the piece they were then performing had an intermixture of religious worship. However, as they all continued silent, I went to another theatre, where the performance was already begun. This structure resembled the other, but was not altogether so magnificent. Eight or ten actors appeared upon the stage in comic habits, and among the rest two women, who alternately sung and spoke. Every one of these persons uttered soliloquies at particular intervals, with extraordinary gestures and contortions of body: The performance closed with a circular dance, and the actors retired in good order, moving to the musick of their own instruments. Among other things were several basons, which they struck one against another, agreeably to the manner practised at *Japan*; these were accompanied with a clang of lesser basons, intermixed with the modulation of soft flutes, and the theatre was illuminated with *Chinese* lamps and candles. When I went from thence, I returned to the place from whence I came, and where the performance was also begun. The actors were more numerous, and the theatre was likewise larger than the other. These representations are exhibited in most parts of the city, and continue all night, some beginning sooner in the evening, others later, and they continue from the beginning of *March* to the end of *April*. They represent

1706.

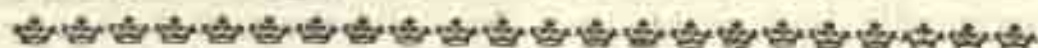


1706. sent the adventures and history of the antients, as well in tragedy as comedy, as is the practice among us; and I was informed, that all the actors in these pieces were maidens in disguise. I have frequently seen performances of this nature in the *Indies*; but am apt to think they are executed to more advantage in *China*.

The director-general's country house.

The next day the director-general *Riebeck* invited me to accompany him into the country, and we accordingly went out of the city in a chariot, but afterward mounted on horseback, because we found the roads very bad. We passed over part of his lands before we arrived at his country-seat, which was about a league and a half from *Batavia*. I found the soil which lies nearest to the city of different colours, and rising in several little hillocks, which form a very agreeable prospect. All the lands which belonged to the director were covered with rice, which, instead of being mowed, is cut down at the proper season, with a small sickle. As this production is sown at different times, it is ripe in some places before it is quite green in others. He had also planted a great number of fruit, and other trees, which were not yet come to per-

fection. His house was all finished, except the stables and kitchen, upon which they were at work every day. He told me that he employed above an hundred oxen in the cultivation of his land, and other rural works. We returned in the evening to the city, along the river side, where a great number of delightful seats are built, as in our country. I found myself very much fatigued at my return, being still very weak, and I began to be much incommoded by the heat, as well as by several small pimples which came out all over my body. But this is a common disorder in that country; it is even counted very wholesome, and I really found my self better. The worst circumstance which attends this distemper is, that it indisposes one from sleeping; and, indeed, it is impossible for those who are seized with it to rest above two or three hours in a day. There is an easy method of curing it, but the remedy is worse than the disease, because it exposes one to great danger, by driving the pimples in. My sight did not grow any better, so that I was always obliged to use spectacles; but age, perhaps, might contribute very much to this defect.



## C H A P. LXVI.

*Pleasure-houses in the parts adjacent to Batavia. The manners of the Baliers. Pepper-plants. Vast numbers of apes. The rejoicings occasioned by the taking of Batavia.*

A little journey of the author's to the estate of Mr. Kasselein.

I HAD again some fits of my fever toward the end of *April*, but they did not prevent me from accompanying a few friends to Mr. *Kasselein's* estate. He waited for us with a coach and two horses at a small distance from the city, and at a place called *Wellevei*, a little

beyond the fortress of *Noortwick*. The domesticks were gone before to the *Corps de garde* of Mr. *Cornaille*, about three quarters of a league from thence. This is a square wooden building, surrounded with a quick-set-hedge, and has some resemblance to a fort, having a high centry-box



1706. box on each point toward the plain. Here is commonly stationed a guard of thirty or forty soldiers, commanded by a lieutenant or ensign. We were seven in number, with three domesticks, guarded by five or six *Indians* on horseback, and eighteen *Baliers* on foot armed with long pikes, among which were two streaked with black, and finely adorned with gold at the extremity; the rest were red embellished with silver. Most of them wore a large dagger at their girdle, like the *Ganfsjaers* of the *Turks*. These *Baliers* are natives of an island, which lies to the east of *Java*, and they have the reputation of being the most warlike people of that quarter, chusing rather to suffer death than shrink a step from their enemies; forty or fifty of them will often put to flight two hundred of the *Indians* of the isle of *Java*. This quality is accompanied with an assiduity, and inflexible fidelity to those masters who use them well; for they are not to be treated with severity. When we had proceeded about half a league on our journey, we came to the sugar-mills of a *Chinese* named *Tanfanko*, upon the great river *Tsulinan*, or the river of women, which in some places is eight or ten fathoms wide, and in others not above two. We dined there in a very agreeable house, with a handsome garden belonging to it, and continued there till three o'clock. I here found some butterflies of a surprising beauty, and have preserved a dozen of them. We had sent away our domesticks and horses before us, that they might pass the river before our arrival there, in order to gain time, and we followed with three chariots, each of which was drawn by a buffalo, which we were obliged to change three times in an hour, the ways were so very bad and rugged. When we came to the river I have already mentioned, we were obliged to pass over it in little boats, made of the bark of a tree, and, an hour after, we arrived at *Mr. Kastelein's* country seat at *Se-*

*Baliers.*

ring-sing. It is situated upon the declivity of a point which projects from a hill, and from whence one enjoys a full view of the great river. This point much resembles an amphitheatre; the seat upon it is entirely built of wood, very neatly compacted together, and raised upon a good foundation of stone, which advances three feet above the ground. This situation was chosen in order to preserve the building, and secure it from rotting, and being infested with white ants. The house is two stories high, the first of which is inhabited by the domesticks, and is used as a conservatory for all the provisions: The second story is reserved for the master of the house; and it contains a fine hall, with a small apartment on each side; together with a large one fronting the entrance into the court. Under this is a room furnished with seats, for the use of the servants; and over it is a place open at the top, and glazed on the sides, for the use of those who play on *Baliers*, which instruments I shall hereafter describe. This edifice is square, and surrounded with wood painted green. On each of its sides is another building, one of which serves for a kitchen, and has likewise two small chambers for the slaves. The other is the magazine, where the rice is deposited; and it has likewise two small chambers for the servants. Behind the magazine is a large hen-house, and a stall for cattle. There is likewise a spacious yard for poultry, surrounded with a quick-set hedge, and a fine gate is intended to be built at the entrance into this place. On the right of this yard, is a piece of ground covered over, for the accommodation of passengers with a shelter; and the chariots and other carriages are likewise set up here. The garden is on the east-side of the house, and has a descent of thirty-six feet toward the river; together with thirty six steps divided into three flights: The first consists of fourteen steps, and is furnished with seats for the conveniency of those who







PLANTE D'UN POIVRIER.





1706. who have an inclination to rest themselves. The second has twelve steps, the seats like those of the former; and the third has ten, at the bottom of which is a passage over a little bridge, to a place of easement on the river. These steps are railed on each side in a very elegant manner. There is likewise another descent, like that already described, toward the river, and on the north-side of the house, together with steps of the same structure with the others. On the edge of the water is a summer-house, and at the end of the garden a fine hall, where the master of the house usually dines, and which commands an enchanting prospect. There is likewise another hall raised on pillars, upon the bank of the river, and from whence there is a communication with the preceding by a small bridge, handsomely railed, and a descent to the river is also formed by a flight of steps. This seat is represented in plate 200. There is a place over the gate, where the musicians seat themselves when they perform upon their instruments, as they frequently do ten, or twelve, or fourteen sometimes in a band, to entertain company. Their musick consists in striking several basons one against another, in conjunction with the beat of drums, and the sound of pipes. They have also a kind of a harp, and a large tabor, which serves for a base, and is struck only with one stick. They, however, form a harmony not disagreeable to the ear.

After we had been sufficiently diverted in this place, we mounted our horses, in order to accompany our host to his estate at *Manpang*, and *Depok*, which lie southward of the seat I have been describing. In our way thither, we passed over several fields full of sugar, and *Seringjing*, a small plant like a reed, from whence the country received its name, and which shoots out even on the trees. We then entered a wood newly planted, and covered with short grass, that makes the most

agreeable appearance in the world; 1706. it is likewise disposed into beautiful alleys. When we had travelled a league, we came to the source of a small river shaded with thick trees, where travellers often stop to enjoy the fresh air, and repose themselves. Half a league from thence we entered upon the lands of *Depok*, in a valley through which the great river flows. I there saw two pepper <sup>Pepper</sup> plants, which grow round poles, or <sup>plants.</sup> green props, like beans in our country, at the distance of six feet from one another, and the poles are about eighteen feet high.

As the rays of the sun cannot penetrate their foliage, one may walk in their shade during the greatest heats. The pepper springs out in clusters that resemble a growth of gooseberries, and the grains are green at first, but afterward assume an orange colour, which proceeds from a shell that enfolds them, and which peels off when rubbed in the hands, the pepper which then remains being of a white hue. I gathered a small branch from this plant, and the reader may see it represented in plate 201.

After dinner we went down the river in a small canoe, and found the current run with great violence over a rocky, stony bottom, notwithstanding the winding flow of the river. We arrived in two hours at *Seringjing*, having passed by several cottages inhabited by *Negrees*. The banks of the river are very steep, and bordered with trees: We there <sup>Apr.</sup> saw abundance of apes, on the branches, as well as on the earth, which was covered with them. Most of these animals are grey, but we saw a few that were black. Several of the same species are likewise to be found in the woods.

I drew two *Baliers*, who were <sup>Baliers.</sup> slaves to Mr. *Kosleim*, with the dress they wore in this as well as in their own country. They sold part of their habit, which is usually made of a striped stuff, round their waist, to which they fasten it by one end, and suffer the rest to flow down



1706. down to their feet. The upper part of their attire, which is of a different colour, covers their breast, and then descends to their knees. They generally have a handkerchief in their hand, and their hair is plaited into a point on the upper part of the head. Their arms and feet are naked, as may be seen in plate 202. The 203d plate represents them in the habit they wear on horseback; a black mantle being cast over their body, and their head covered with flowered linnen, and a red hat. They have likewise a handkerchief in their hand, on this as well as on other occasions.

The author's return to Batavia.

When we had passed some time in that place, I took my leave of Mr. Kastelein, who was so obliging as to lend me two slaves, who were to be my guides, one on foot, and the other on horseback. I again crossed the river, in order to proceed to Batavia, through the woods, which is the best way, *Sering-fing* being but five leagues distant from that city. At my return a blast of thunder fell upon a house, which received great damage from that casualty.

The author's resolution.

I determined at that time not to engage myself any farther in the *Indies*, contrary to my first intention, which was to visit all the coast of *Coromandel*, in order to discover the antiquities, customs, and religion of those parts. But I found myself too weak for an expedition of that nature, and was likewise apprehensive of a relapse into my former illness, having had some fits of my fever at *Sering-fing*. I was therefore in no condition to bear the fa-

tigue and inconvenience of so long a voyage, and had need of rest for the recovery of my health, and to qualify me for my return by land. I had also some other reasons, which shall be mentioned by and by.

The 30th of May, being the anniversary of the taking of Batavia in 1619, under the conduct of general Koen, was celebrated by a festival, according to custom. The governor-general gave a magnificent entertainment to the members of the council of the *Indies*, and the magistrates of the city, who were elected that day. Two counsellors of justice were also invited, together with two of the principal merchants; four ministers, and several private persons, among whom I was one. The rejoicings began on Sunday about five in the evening.

Rejoicings on the anniversary the taking of Batavia.

In the general's court was placed a long table, with chairs for that officer, and the members of the council of the *Indies*: The rest of the company disposed themselves according to their respective ranks, but in a standing posture, tho' there were several seats in the court. They drank prosperity to the city, and its magistrates, the cannon firing at the same time from the citadel, ramparts, forts, the neighbouring isles, and from the ships which lay in the road. Part of the citizens also appear'd under arms, fifteen in each company, with colours flying, and there were six of these companies in the whole. There was also a body of horse, headed by the proper officers. The company at last broke up, after they had partaken of a very splendid entertainment.











1706.

1706.

## C H A P. LXVII.

*The situation of the isle of Edam. Remarkable fishes. A Chinese feast. The manner of preparing sugar, indigo, &c.*

Isle of Edam.

THE weather was hot and rainy at the beginning of June, and then I went to the isle of Edam, about five leagues from Batavia. General *Kamphuisen*, to whom it had belonged, consigned it at his death to the present general of the Indies. In our passage thither we met a vessel coming from *Ambony* with the late governor of that colony, whose name was *Coyet*. Our pilot was intrusted with the direction of affairs in the isle of Edam, where ships are sometimes obliged to stop, or else at that of \**Sam-repos*, till the arrival of new orders. He enjoined the master of that vessel to go into the road of Batavia, and he immediately obeyed.

This isle is half a league in circumference; the shore is covered with stones and coral, and the inland part of the country with fruit and other trees. There is also a good promontory which shoots out into the sea, to a considerable length, and beyond it is another, upon which the deceased general built a handsome house with two facades, and a flight of stairs on each side. This was the usual place of his residence, and he took great pleasure in collecting plants, and productions of the sea. The same curiosity drew me thither, and I had the good fortune to take some remarkable fish, which I failed not to delineate, having provided myself with cloth, and colours for that purpose, and likewise with spirit of wine for the preserving these creatures. I took, among others, a sea cray-fish of a surprising bigness, a beautiful colour, and finely spotted; together with a crab near the same size, coloured with a blewish brown, intermixed with white spots: The two claws

were tinged with a bright purple variegated with white, and covered with little prickles. The feet, which were almost blue, were shagged with small prickles, which were red within, and others of a white complexion, rose on the body. The reader will find five of these fish represented in plate 204, from the life. That which is distinguished by the letter A, is called *Ikam-peti*, which signifies the Box-fish. It is almost square, flat on each side, and hard as wood; and the colour is yellow, spotted with black. On each side of the head is a small fin, and another on the body near the tail. That which is marked with B, is blue, and has a circle of golden yellow round its eyes, and a streak of the same colour upon one part of its body; The mouth is full of teeth, the eyes are large, and black; and the tail is coloured with a violet dye, blended with yellow and white. This little fish is called *Ikam-batoe*, or the Stone-fish; because it generally shrouds itself among stones and rocks. The letter C exhibits a very small fish, of a beautiful red, with three blue streaks, bordered with black on the body. The largest that I ever saw of this kind was not above two inches long. It has one small red fin, which, together with the tail, that is coloured in the same manner, makes a very beautiful effect. My fisherman brought me three of this species, which usually swim together in that number, and are easily seen in that water, which is altogether as clear as crystal, and the bottom itself may be discovered without any difficulty. This fish is not called by any particular name. D shews another small flat fish, whose length exceeds his breadth; the body has a bluish cast on the

\*Ourus.

Remarkable fish.

Sea-cray-fish.

A crab.



1706, the upper part, and toward the belly, but all the rest of it is brown. Round the head is a black circle, out of which the eyes project; the throat is black both within and without; and all the space between the mouth and eyes is of a beautiful yellow, as is also the tail. It is without a name, as well as the former. That which is exhibited at the letter E, is called *Ikam-kajoe*, or the *Wood-fish*, because it delights in streams shaded with trees: It is of a bright blue, but has the back tinged with yellow; the body is likewise mark'd with four large brown streaks, which are not extended to the belly. It has also one pointed fin upon its back, another between that and its tail, and two at the belly. A, in plate 205, marks out a small round fish, called *Ikam-batse*, or the *Rock-fish*, and it resembles one of the former. It is of a reddish blue, and has seven or eight little blue streaks on the body, the nether part of which is black. Its short and white tail is formed like a pair of scissars, with a little red streak toward the end; on each side of its head is a fin dyed with yellow and blue. The body of this fish, which has some resemblance to a plaice, is a dusky blue; the flavour of the flesh is very agreeable, and the skin is extremely thick. B marks a *Ikam-tamar*, or kind of carp; the colour of whose body is an intermixture of red and white, and part of the head glows with a fine red. Out of the mouth issue two points, which are two inches in length; it has two red fins under its belly, and a third extends from thence to the tail. There are likewise two upon the back with sharp points, and one on each side of its head, red and white like the tail, which parts into several sharp extremities. This fish is about a foot and four inches long, from which one may judge of the others, that are represented in miniature in the same plate. C points to an *Ikam-Kapak*, which signifies a *Stone-bream*. This fish has the top and each side of its head of a fine red,

and the under part mixed with blue and white; the body is blue, with large streaks of a violet hue, and red fins. D marks an *Ikam-gargasie*, or *Saw-fish*, the body of which is of a clear blue, streaked with brown and black; the belly is white, and the mouth yellow, as are also the fins, especially that which is upon the back; the whole is sprinkled over with black spots, and the points of its fins are as sharp as a saw. It has likewise a yellow tail, spotted with black. E is an *Ikam-boeren*, or *Bird-fish*, which is white, and formed like a plaice, with two large black streaks on the body, from between which there comes out a white kind of a streamer, pointed at the end, and a foot in length; the lower part of the body and the tail are yellow, as are also the fins, which grow out from the black streaks; the head is small and pointed. There are but few fish of this species.

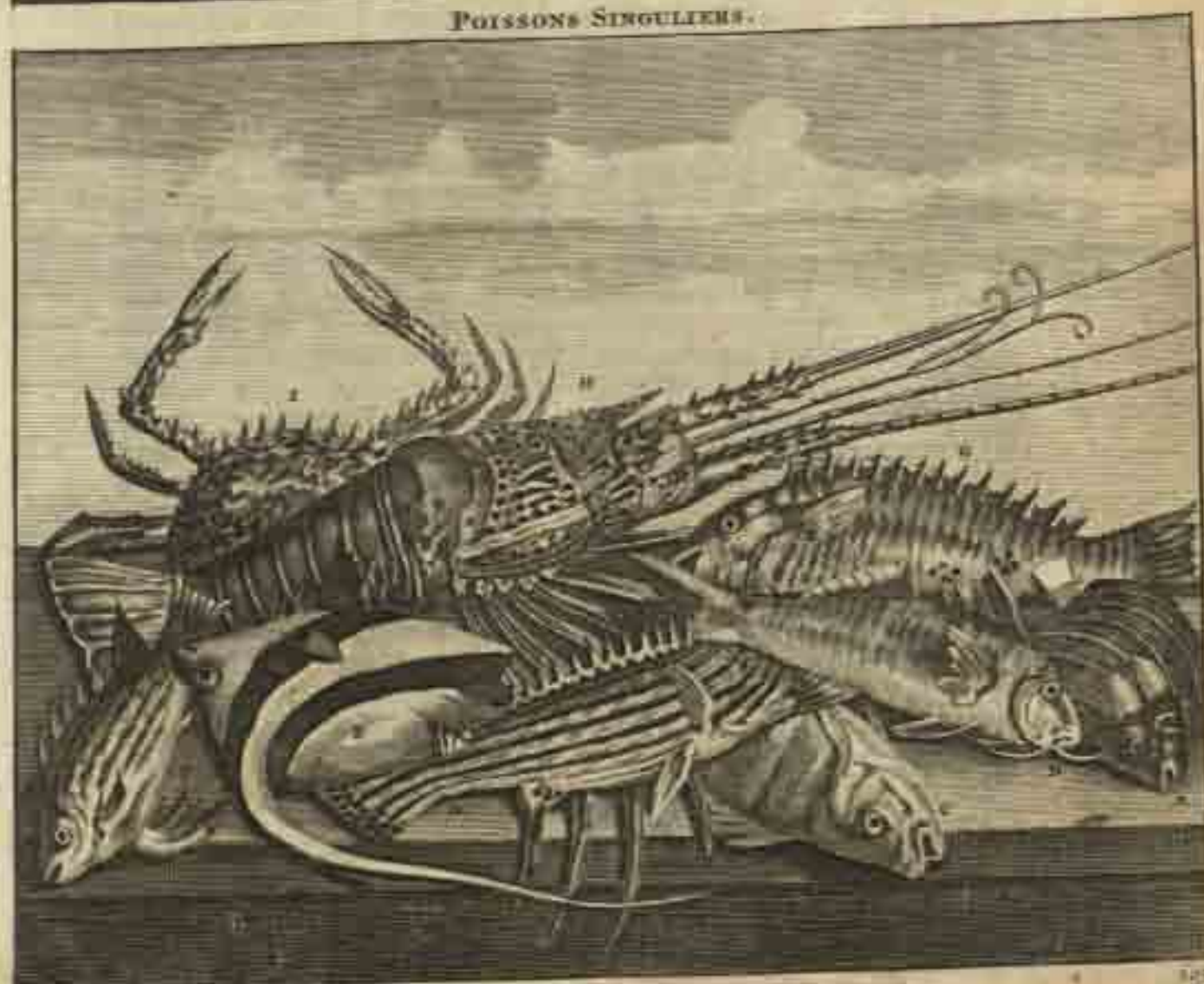
F marks an *Ikam-marr*, or *Gold-Gold-fish*; it is of a bright blue, with red streaks along its body, and spotted with yellow, which looks like gold; the fins and tail are red, yellow, and white, and the top of the head all red.

G represents an *Ikam-kakatoua*, so called from a bird of the same name and colour: It is of a transparent bluish green, and has several reddish spots, which resemble network, and a yellow spot on each side the head, which is red and green: The fin upon the back is of a fine green, intermixed with blue and yellow; those on the sides are green and blue like varnish, and that which is under the body has a yellow cast. I omitted taking notice that the cray-fish I mentioned before was all green, except the tip of the head, which was red, as were also the two large horns which come out of it, and are four inches long, and three quarters of an inch in breadth; at the extremity of these are two other horns, which are a foot and seven inches long, and likewise another pair, which are but half





POISSONS SINGULIERS.







1706. half as long as the former, and are contorted at the end, one being white, and the other almost entirely black. This cray-fish had all the upper part of his body full of black and white spots and streaks, as well as the tail, and two large yellow and white streaks upon the sides: The feet were long and pliant, and finely streak'd with green, black, yellow, and white. It was a foot and five inches in length; but there are some of a smaller size, and they afford an admirable relish. I painted all these fishes from the life, and have preserved some of them in spirits. This cray-fish is represented at the letter H, and the crab at L. I found also some flying insects in this island, and among the rest several butterflies. But they have nothing singular in them.

As I commonly accompanied the fishers, when the weather was fine, and as the water is so clear and transparent, that one may see the bottom, I found several short branches of coral. I even undress'd myself sometimes, that I might advance farther into the sea, and gather some of these productions. I was then convinced that coral is formed of a certain thick slime produced by the sea, and which fastens to the rocks, and then hardens, and grows into the form in which we now see it. It appeared very beautiful under the water while it was liquid, and was tinged with a fine yellow, mixed with white and brown; I pulled off several pieces from the rocks in that condition, in hopes they would preserve their beauty and colour by drying in the sun; but the event proved otherwise, and they changed to a deep dirty brown; nor could I attain to the art of drying them in any perfection.

*The Isles of Alcoaer, Enkhuysen, and Leiden.* After I had dispatched all my affairs in this island, I embarked, in order to return to *Batavia*, and passed by the island of *Alcoaer*, which lies nearest to that of *Edam*. That of *Enkhuysen* lies a little more to the south, that of *Leiden* in the mid-way, and that of *Hoorn* over-against

*Of Hoorn and Smith.*

1706. this last. This is inhabited by fishermen, and the isle of *Smith* lies on one side of it toward the south. As the wind was fair for us, I arrived in a short time at *Batavia*.

At my return I took a walk with our governor-general through the city, to see some new buildings, which he had lately caused to be erected; and in the way thither I observed green boughs upon the houses of the *Chinese*, which were shut that day, by reason of the feast of *Phelomaphie*, which they celebrated at that time.

I had before observed in the port, several neat barks full of *Chinese*, who were all in motion on account of the feast; the origin of which is as follows.

The *Chinese* have a particular regard for those who have signalized themselves in the service of their country, or made any discoveries advantageous to the publick, and celebrate their memory after their death. A certain man, called *Phelo*, having first made a discovery of salt, and not receiving any acknowledgment, took umbrage and retir'd, nor could they ever learn what became of him. His countrymen, who did not at first perceive the advantage of salt, having at length discovered it, were so angry with themselves for their ignorance and ingratitude, that they sent several persons in quest of *Phelo*, but could never gain any intelligence of him. They then resolved to celebrate in his honour this feast of *Phelomaphie*, which they do with very particular solemnity and devotion, by lanching about the sea in several barks, as if they were in expectation of finding that great man.

Soon after Mr. *Kasselein* invited me to one of his plantations, where I saw them make all the preparations of sugar. He had erected for that purpose a mill, which was worked by two buffalos. A man was stationed to take care of that part of the mill where the sugar canes were deposited; and which in the first working are only bruised, and

*The feast of Phelomaphie among the Chinese.*

*The discovery of salt by one Phelo.*

*A plantation of Mr. Kasselein.*

*A sugar-mill.*



1706. and then drawn through an aperture on the other side. The juice flows into a well, and passes from thence thro' a subterranean gutter to the place where the sugar-pots are, and the boilers. At the second operation a larger quantity of sugar is drawn out of these canes; and the rest at the third. It is then boiled and poured into earthen pots peirc'd thro', in order to discharge the grosser particles; and the mouth of the pots are strongly closed up with fresh clay. This is the first and best part of the sugar. They afterward draw out a second juice, and then a third: I found the sugar-canes were like those I had seen in *Egypt*, being about seven or eight feet in length, and three or four inches thick.

Indigo.

This place likewise furnished me with the sight of indigo, which grows on small shrubs, that have several little branches twined together. They commonly shoot up to the height of a foot and a half from the ground, and the leaves, which are pressed in order to extract the indigo, are small. The seed grows in long and slender clusters, agreeably to the representation in plate 206.

Coffee.

The letter B exhibits a branch of the *Kawwa*, or the pods which contain the berries of coffee, which are green before they have attained their maturity; yellow when half ripe, and of a reddish violet colour when their growth is completed. The flower very much resembles that of *Jessamine*, having six long pointed leaves, which are yellow in the middle. These pods were brought from *Arabia* some years since; but the best plants were destroyed in 1697, by an earthquake, which shook the whole city of *Batavia*, and overturned all the gardens around it, in so destructive a manner, that nothing was left in the general's garden. But some curious people having afterward discovered a few shoots of this plant, were industrious to cultivate it anew, and succeeded so effectually, that there is reason to believe these plants will be

rendered very numerous in a few years. 1706. Those persons therefore are very much deceived, who imagine that this fruit grows in no country but *Arabia*, and that the trees which produce it cannot be cultivated in any other climates.

At the letter C the reader will find a representation of the leaves of a wild plant which grows in the woods: Some of these leaves are red, others white; but the plant bears only one red flower. The three branches which are there exhibited, are almost as large as they appear in their natural size. Here is likewise a growth of cocoa, of which *Cocoa* chocolate is made. This fruit has a charming appearance on the tree: It is red and yellow, and one often sees five or six of them one above another, and about six inches in length. The leaves are large, and long; some of them are tinged with yellow, others with red. The tree itself is represented in plate 207.

Leaves of a wild tree which grows in the woods.

I likewise observed a growth of *China* citrons, shaped in a peculiar manner, and shooting out several points. They have some resemblance to those which I have described in that part of the first volume of these travels which treats of *Rama*, but they are not so large. This fruit has not any kernels, and is of a beautiful yellow. It flourishes to great perfection in this soil, and is exhibited in plate 208.

Citrus of China.

I saw likewise another fruit, which the *Portuguese* call *Jaka*; *Jaka* the *Indians* *Nanka*, and the *Dutch* *Soorjake*. It is very large, and something like a bagpipe; the colour is of a reddish green before it is ripe, but it changes to a dusky, as it advances to its maturity. This fruit incloses several other large fruits of a yellow complexion, and which contain white kernels. As the flavour of it is sweet, it pleases most people, and is reckoned very wholesome. Two of them are represented on a tree, in plate 209.

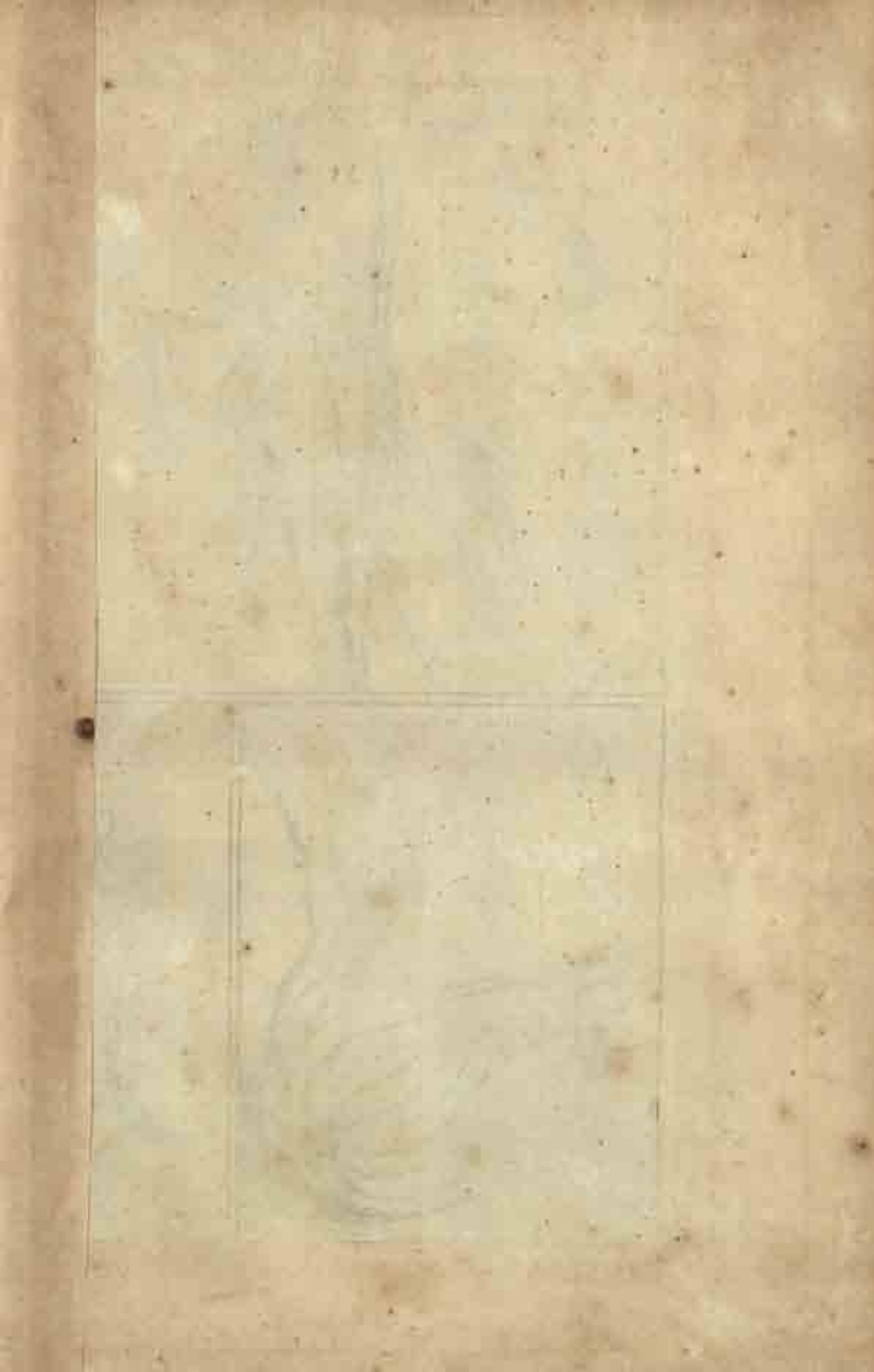
There is also another fruit called *Nannam* by the *Portuguese*, and *Nannam*, *Pockie anjeng* by the *Indians*. The taste







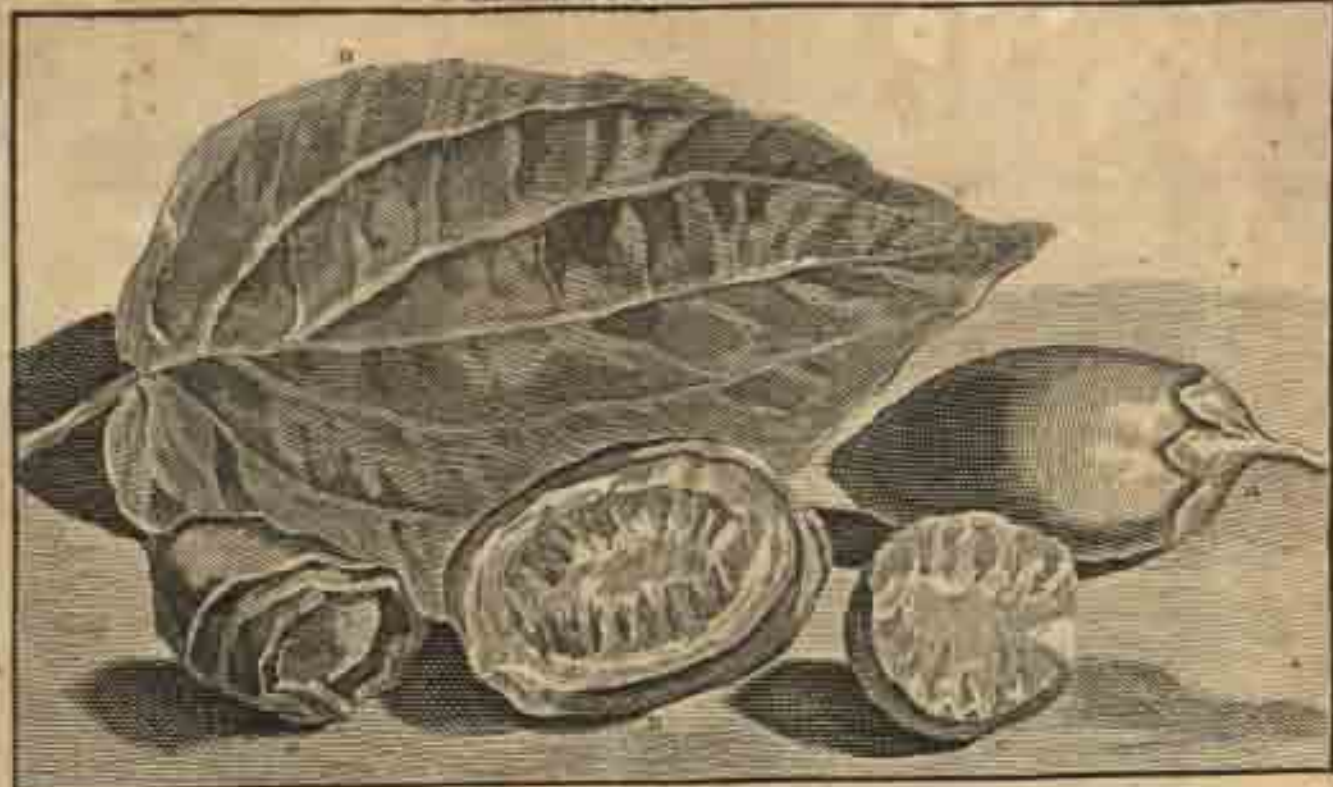












FILANDER.







1706. taste of it is agreeable; it is likewise coloured with a greyish yellow, and greatly resembles a pear. The flower is red, yellow, and white, and grows in clusters; the leaf and form of it are represented in plate 210. The *Blimbing* is also a plant, the fruit of which is large, and long: Its flavour resembles that of a goosberry, and the flower of it is red. Where any person has corroded his mouth, with vinegar, or any other acid, he cannot have a better remedy than this fruit, which is represented on a tree in plate 211.

*Arack.* The *Arack* is a fruit which grows in thick bunches, on a large high tree, the bark of which is very thin, and the leaves long. It is of universal use, not only with the natives of the country, but also among strangers. It is shaped like a plumb, and grows yellow in ripening. I have represented one of them mark'd with A in plate 212: Another, which is ripe, with B, and half a one without the outward rind. They divide this half into seven or eight parts, which they wrap up in the leaves of *Betel*, rubb'd with a red of *Siam*, or else with white lime. This is chewed till the saliva becomes as red as blood; and this they pretend is an excellent remedy to preserve the teeth and gums. But I could never be prevailed upon to use it, finding something very disagreeable in the flavour; beside which it often happens, that those who are not accustomed to it, find themselves indisposed, and faint away; though these circumstances never happen but when they take a bad sort. This leaf of *Betel* grows like those of *French beans*, and the reader will find some of them represented at the letter D. It is commonly of a dark grey; but there are some of a green tincture, and these are the best. The manner of wrapping this fruit in the leaf may be seen at the letter E.

*Filander.* When I was at our general's country seat, I saw a certain animal called *Filander*, which has something very extraordinary in it. There were several that ran loose with rub-

Vol. II.

bits, and had their holes under a small hill, encompassed with a rail. 1705. This animal which I have represented in plate 213, has its hind legs much longer than the fore, and has the same skin as a large hare. It has a head like a fox, and a pointed tail; but what is most extraordinary in it is, that it has a bag under its belly; into which the young ones retreat even when they are very large. One may frequently see their heads and necks extended out of the bag, but when the dam runs, the young are not visible, but keep at the bottom of the bag, because she leaps very much in her speed. Some days after I went to see a review of a company of *Bougis*, in presence of the governor and the general *de Wilde*. The officers first saluted them, and then fixed their pikes in the ground, and drew their daggers, with which they performed several exercises, crying out at the same time with loud voices, that they would kill all enemies that would presume to confront them. They afterward, to shew their vigour and address, made several motions with their bodies, which were more like contortions of wrestlers, than an exercise of military men. They likewise found themselves animated with fresh ardour by being well shod, instead of which they were formerly accustomed to go barefooted. The airs they gave themselves in their march, were sufficient to create a hearty laughter, and the general *de Wilde* could not help saying to me, *They give many among us to see comedies and farces, but can there possibly be a more diverting sight than this?*

The soldiers were all habited in different manners: Some had large *bonnets*, small waistcoats, and short breeches; others had hats with broad brims made of the bark of certain plants twisted together. There were some, who had bonnets in the form of sugar-loaves, others who had only a cloth twisted round their heads: Some had machines on each side their heads, like gilded horns, which



1706. which formed a very ridiculous spectacle: Some were even covered with armour; they were likewise armed with firelocks, daggers, and pikes, longer than those of the officers, who had all pistols at their girdles.

While these were employ'd in performing their exercises, there passed by some other companies of soldiers, who were to take their arms, in order to embark in some vessels designed for the kingdom of *Samaran*, upon the eastern coast of the isle of *Java*, about sixty leagues from *Batavia*, under the government of king *Pangeran Poga*, who

had been deposed by his nephew, and afterwards re-established by the company's forces. And as *Adi-Pati*, the nephew of that prince, had escaped, and endeavoured to create his uncle fresh troubles, these troops were sent in pursuit of him.

The governor having informed me soon after, that a vessel would shortly set sail for *Bantam*, which I was desirous to visit, I embraced that opportunity, and he was so good as to give me letters of recommendation to the governor of that place; and likewise to the administrator of the company.

## C H A P. LXVIII.

*The author's voyage to Bantam. A description of that kingdom. The author is admitted to an audience of the king.*

The author's  
voyage to  
Bantam.

THE 11th of July, after I had taken my leave of the general, I went on board the *Munster*, a vessel of twenty six guns, and sixty seven sailors, all *Europeans*, with a reserve of ten *Indians*; and we advanced about noon, into the latitude of the isle of *Hoorn*. As the wind stood fair, we presently after passed by those of *Amsterdam*, and *Middlebourg*, which lay south between two rocks, that are about six or seven feet under water; and are always visible, by reason of the clearness of the water.

The islands  
of Hoorn,  
Amster-  
dam, and  
Middle-  
bourg.

Of Com-  
buis.

We advanced westward toward the isles of *Combuis*, which we saw on the right, and found ourselves about five o'clock near the isle of *Antropopbagi*, four leagues from *Bantam*. The night, which was very dark, obliged us to cast anchor, but we continued our course at break of day, in cloudy damp weather. We doubled the point of *Pontang* at eight o'clock, and coasted along the great *Poelenadi*, which

\* New-  
ant-  
eri.

The isle  
of Poelen-  
adi.

we had on the right, and a little after by a small island of the same name, where we found but four fathom water; and after having touched at the isles of *Poelenadi*, we came about ten into the road of *Bantam*, and about noon to the city. I went directly to the house of the commander, *Monfieur de Rbeede*, who received me with a great deal of civility, as also did *Monfieur de Wys*, administrator of the company.

I took a walk the next day with an intention to take a view of the city both within and without, in order to which I went out by the water-gate, where there is always an advanced guard. It is a small gate of the old wall, near the point or bastion of *Speelwijk* toward the north; and from thence I proceeded along the sea-shore, by a way which is often floated over with water when the tide is high, and it was then so wet that I was obliged to strike into another road bordered with trees between several gardens.

A descrip-  
tion of  
Bantam.

I saw



1706. I saw a range of wretched houses, covered with leaves, and inhabited by fishermen, who go to *Batavia* to sell their fish. The first place one meets with in this quarter, is the bastion of *Caranganto*, rebuilt with stone in a square form, with a battery of ten pieces of cannon. There are six other bastions on the side next the sea, another toward the east, and three small ones toward the west. From thence there is a passage over a draw-bridge, and another of stone, under which runs a river that derives its source from the mountains, and discharges itself into the sea. It flows at the extremity of the city, on the side next the sea, and near the *Bazar*, which is full of *Chinese* shops, where fruits, and other provisions are sold. On one side of the *Bazar* is a large *Chinese* building, where the captain or chief of that nation lives; and on the sea-shore are erected a great number of fishermen's huts, and some salt-houses. The *Dutch* landed near this place on the 7th of April 1682. In the way as one returns back, a road is struck out between the two bastions of *Caranganto* and *Speelwich*, to the Palace, where a stone bridge is built over the river already mentioned. The king commonly divers himself the last day of the week with running at the ring in this place, and over the bridge, with the lords of his court: The great mosque called *Mit-zid*, is at the end of this bridge on the right hand.

The author  
demands  
audience  
of the king.

I was informed at my return, that they had already weighed and counted out the pepper money, which the vessel in which I came was to carry to *Persia*; and that the prime minister of state was to go at four o'clock to the commander's house to receive it. I took this opportunity to desire that minister to introduce me to the king; and as our commander had already told him (in pursuance of the order he had received from the general) that I was greatly desirous of the honour of paying my duty to that prince:

1706. He assured me, that he would not fail to represent my request to his majesty that very day, and return me his answer as soon as possible. That lord, who was named *Pangeran*, prince of *Pour-ba-ngara*, was accompanied by ten inspectors of pepper, and he seated himself in a chair between the commander and chief inspector of the barriers. The others were placed on the contrary side, after the manner of the orientals. He came by water to *Speelwich*, attended by sixteen domestics. The commander entertained them with confections, and fruits, accompanied with bread, cheese, tea, and tobacco. They afterward counted the money, and sealed it up in bags of 1000 *Spanish* rials. The commander then took the prime minister by the hand, and conducted him as far as the river. The next day about nine o'clock the chief inspector of the barriers came to acquaint me, that I should be admitted to an audience of the king at two in the afternoon, and that his majesty was gone for that purpose to a pleasure-house, which he had about a quarter of a league from the city. He asked me, if I would accept a horse, or choose to go on foot, upon which I thanked him, and gave him to understand, that I preferred walking. He came to me at the appointed hour, and we were attended by *M. Kaef*, who had been the company's resident at *Bantam*, before they had possessed themselves of that place, and had returned thither about three months, in order to transact some negotiations, by virtue of which he was admitted to the audience with me. We were likewise attended by a secretary, who was to be our interpreter. We found at the gate of the city four led horses, which the king had sent us, but we did not use them. The prime minister waited for us at the entrance into the palace, in order to introduce us to his majesty; and we proceeded by a stone conduit raised about two or three feet above the surface of the ground,



1706. ground, in which is a leaden pipe, which extends from the pleasure-house, where the king then was, as far as his palace. This conduit had been made about two years, and is supplied with water from the mountains, which rise at the distance of about two leagues from thence; and this water discharges itself into a river, which flows through the country. It was three o'clock when we arrived there; and after we had waited some time, a lady of the court came to acquaint us we might enter. We saw, as we were passing along, one of the king's lodges, in which stood three coaches, the drivers of which were *Hollanders*, who were habited in scarlet after the *Dutch* manner.

The arrival at one of the king's pleasure-houses.

When we had passed over a wooden bridge, railed on each side, we entered by a small door into a vestibule, where the king was seated on a couch, on the side of which were five or six ordinary chairs. He tendered his hand to us, and received us in a very favourable manner; after which he ordered us to sit down, which I accordingly did, after having paid him my compliments. The prince was seated at the upper end of a table, and we placed ourselves on each side of him, and were immediately served with confections, fruits, and other refreshments; after which tea, tobacco, and pipes were brought to us upon silver salvers, with two lighted candles. Some time after we were entertained with hot provisions, such as *Pilau*, ragouts, chickens, roast-meat, and fruits; together with hard eggs, and radishes cut into slices. Every one had his napkin, and a plate filled with meat. What appeared to me most extraordinary was a large dish full of a particular food, which resembled starch, and slices of pears, the taste of which I found to be admirable; but as for liquor, we had nothing but water, which was poured out of a beaker, as well for drinking as washing of hands.

Is admitted to the king's presence.

Nothing surprised me more than our being served by none but women:

The prime minister was seated on the ground, at the lower end of the table, with his legs crossed after the manner of the eastern people. His wife served at table, like the others, and even I had the honour to be waited upon by that lady. Monsieur *Kaef* was seated on the right hand of the king, and served by three or four women of the first rank. There were others behind him, seated on the ground, and among the rest one who held a firelock in her hand; her companion grasped a small pike, and a third held the king's cane, varnished with black, with a silver apple. They rose from time to time, as I shall afterward relate more at large.

1706.

Behind these were five or six of the king's youngest sons, from three to six years of age, all very beautiful, and of a tolerable good complexion. This prince had no children by his first consort, but had eight by his second, who was his cousin german, and the widow of his brother, who had no children by her. The eldest is about thirteen years old, and the king has several other children by his third wife. This numerous off-spring did not prevent him from espousing a fourth, who has not the title of queen. This prince has likewise forty concubines, and 850 women who wait upon him in his palace.

Fifteen or sixteen ladies were behind these young princes, and three or four other companies of women appeared in the vestibule; so that above 200 of them were then in motion. All of them had their necks uncovered; their arms and legs were likewise naked; a kind of petticoat was fastened to their waist, and a small piece of linnen above their bosom; their hair was also plaited back on the top of their heads.

The king wore that day a small bonnet about five inches deep, the white borders of which were about an inch in breadth; the rest was of a violet colour. His veil was shaped after the *Turkish* fashion; it was

The turban of the king.



1706. was likewise of a brown colour, and the buttons of it were silver. It was girded about him with a small sash of a violet colour, the ends of which hung down before. He likewise wore a dagger studded with gold; his legs were naked, but he had red slippers after the *Dutch* fashion.

When the dishes were removed from table, the king offered us tobacco, and asked me, if I had an inclination to take any: I answered in the affirmative, but added, that I could do very well without it. I also took the liberty to ask, whether the king smoked, and they answered yes, but that it was very moderately. He then enquired of me, if I would smoke provided he did? To which I reply'd, that this would be too much honour for me. He asked me likewise, if I had any tobacco? because he thought mine might be better than his own. As I happened to be provided with some, I filled a pipe, and had the honour to present it to that prince, who smoked half of it, and then gave the rest to his secretary, who had none.

*His Majesty's*

This prince, who is very affable and curious, asked me several questions concerning the countries thro' which I had passed, and the most remarkable things I had seen. In particular, he enquired, who were the most powerful kings on earth; what was the extent of their dominions, what the manners of the inhabitants, and which were the largest and most famous rivers in the world? I then related to him all the particulars of the *Nile* and *Volga*, which I had measured both at their sources and outlets, and afterward gave him a description of several other rivers.

In speaking of the world in general, he asked me how long the *Christians* thought it had subsisted, and how much longer they believed it would continue? To which I returned him the best answers I was able to make. The king took such

Vol. II.

1706. pleasure in my replies, and the other particulars with which I had the honour to acquaint him, that he desired me to transmit them to him in writing from *Batavia*, and I accordingly promised to obey him.

The king informed me, in his turn, that all the inhabitants of that country were formerly pagans, and that it was about three hundred years since they embraced the doctrines of *Mohammed*, at the solicitation of one of his ancestors, whose name was *Saejoeboenan Abael Machasin*, who was reckoned a saint by the people, and to whose empire they submitted themselves. He then conversed with me about *Turky*, the *Holy-Land*, and *Jerusalem*. He also caused a *Turkish* merchant of *Bethlehem*, to be introduced, whom chance had brought into that part of the world, after he had lost all his cargo at sea.

We had a long conversation together, with which the king was so well satisfied, that he often shook me by the hand. He desired me likewise to visit him again the next day at nine in the morning in his palace, and to bring with me the journal of my first voyage, for I am informed, says he, that your book is in the hands of Mr. *de Wys*. He then turned to Mr. *Kaef*, and told him, that he had no need to give himself the trouble to come again, for the letters which he was to carry to *Batavia* should be delivered to him the next day, and that he might depart immediately after.

The king conducted me into every part of his pleasure-house, which consisted of three stories, each containing a variety of apartments. He likewise informed me of his sentiments, with relation to the grandees of states, and the counsellors of princes; and in what manner they ought to be rewarded, or punished. He highly extolled virtue and fidelity, and added, that a prince could never sufficiently repay the services of his subjects; and whenever they committed any faults, to which

E c

human



1706. human nature is obnoxious, it was incumbent on princes to pardon them, in consideration of their past services; and that instead of using violent remedies, every circumstance should be softened as much as possible. He added, that kings ought not to suffer themselves to be swayed by their passions, nor to act with precipitancy and inconsideration. To which he subjoined, that he was not ignorant of the mischief which jealousy occasions in courts. I afterward took the liberty to tell him my sentiments, which I strengthened by several examples drawn from history and the ancients.

*Situation  
of the  
king's plea-  
sure house.*

The situation of the house where we then were, is charming as well on the land side, as on that next the sea; and it is likewise surrounded with a beautiful canal, the bottom of which is paved. While the king conducted me from place to place, and discoursed with me in the manner I have related, he was attended by the ladies armed as I have already described. As the night drew on, I took my leave of his majesty.

We found three coaches at the gate, 1706. in one of which the king desired me to place myself. He then mounted his horse, with three or four of the young princes, and the ladies of the court placed themselves in the other coaches. I was informed that queen *Rato-ansem* was among them, and that she diverted herself with fishing with the women of her train, while we were with the king. The other women returned on foot, every one loaded with baggage. There were likewise two hundred guards armed with pikes, who followed the king. Those who are nearest his person are called *Kejarans*, and the others *Souranagars*. All the subjects of this prince are *Javanites*, and the strangers who reside in his dominions are *Malayans*, *Makassars*, and *Bahers*. When they are not in his service, they are obliged to retire out of the way while he passes with his women, after the manner of the orientals. We arrived by night at the castle, where we took leave of his majesty, and were conducted to our habitations with two large lanterns.

*The author  
takes leave  
of his ma-  
jesty.*



## C H A P. LXIX.

*The author is admitted into the King's presence a second time. Comic dancers. He takes leave of the King. The language of the Javanites. Their worship. The Origin of the Kings of Bantam.*

*A second  
audience.*

I Failed not to go the next day at the appointed hour, with secretary *Gebius*, to the prime minister's house, in order to wait there for the lady who was to conduct me to the palace. I was very much surprised at the plainness and simplicity which appeared in the house of that great lord. The lady, for whose arrival we waited, came soon after and conducted us to the king,

whom we found upon the castle wall over the great gate, employed in viewing a chariot which the magistrates of *Batavia* had presented to his majesty, and it arrived there the preceding evening in a bomb-vessel.

As soon as we were seen by that prince, he made a sign to us to come up where he was. He was surrounded by women, who supported six parasols behind him. From thence



1706. thence we were conducted into the hall of audience, which is separate from the rest of the building. This hall was also full of women, among whom were three dancers, the principal of whom was perfectly beautiful, and dressed in a very elegant and singular manner. There was here also, as on the foregoing day, a large table covered, at the upper end of which the king placed himself, and ordered me to seat myself on his right hand, and the secretary to sit next me.

They presented us at first with tea, and presently after the queen appeared, and placed herself on the left side of the king. As soon as we saw her come in, the secretary and myself rose, and made a profound reverence, but the king obliged us to sit down again. We were afterward served with several sorts of provisions, and among the rest, a plate of *Dutch* cheese, which the queen placed by me, thinking to please me, for which I testify'd my acknowledgment, by eating a piece of it, and likewise tasting of every dish upon the table. The king, who saw this with pleasure, asked me if the sauces were to my liking, and what I thought of their manner of dressing their meat, to which I answered, that I thought every thing exceeding good, and that I could not give a better proof of that opinion, than by eating as I did. The king smil'd, and seemed contented. Then the dancers began to exercise themselves. The queen *Ratoe-Anoen*, who is the second of his majesty's wives, and the most considerable of them all, and whom I have already mentioned, was in the flower of her age; her person was very amiable and genteel; her complexion was admirable, her air majestic, and her behaviour perfectly agreeable and engaging. She was habited after the manner of the ladies of the court. This princess returned in an hour's time, and after the tables were cleared, the king read over part of the relation of my voyage,

*A description of the queen.*

which I had brought by his order, 1706. and explained it to him as well as time would permit. In the mean time the king ordered one of his concubines to come in, and placed her over against me. This lady was fat, and very fair, with fine light hair, but her cheeks were bloated, and her eyes half shut. She asked me of what country I took her to be; I reply'd that I did not know, but if she allowed me to guess, I thought she might be a *Russian*, since I had seen some ladies of that country like her at *Constantinople*. However, I was mistaken; for she was a mountaineer of the isles situated south-east of *Ternate*, the inhabitants of which are called *Kackerlackes*. These people have a much longer night than day, and cannot bear the light of the sun, which makes them always keep their eyes half shut, and they seldom appear in the day; this lady was so fat that one could hardly see her eyes. The king then ordered six of his children to be brought in, and they were placed upon the table, two by two in a chair, because they were yet very little, and they were his majesty's children by that queen whom I last mentioned. They were beautiful, and finely shaped, and their complexions were as white as snow. There were two princes and four princesses, the eldest of whom was nine years of age. At length the king asked, if I was satisfied with the reception he had given me, and I replied, that his majesty had been pleased to honour me infinitely more than I deserved. Upon which this prince added, *You are the first European whom I ever admitted to my hall of audience; and it is an honour which I have never granted to the counsellors of the India company, nor even to the commander; nor should I have accorded it to you, if you had not been a stranger in whom I discover something agreeable and entertaining.* This I tell you with my own mouth, that you may have no reason to doubt of the truth of what you have now heard. I then rose, and made a pro-

*One of the king's concubines.*

*The king's children.*

a pro-



1706. a profound reverence to his majesty, and humbly thank'd him for all his favours, upon which he again did me the honour to present me his hand. The secretary had already told me, when the queen appeared, that it was a favour, which the king had never granted to any person; and that when the commander and his lady came to pay their duties to her majesty, she thought it sufficient to receive them in an upper apartment, that princess never appearing before strangers in publick. In the mean time we amused ourselves with smoking, and the principal dancer began to dance. She wore a crown of gold, with a chaplet of flowers, which hung down as far as her waist; her head was likewise graced with a variety of other ornaments. She was clothed with a beautiful vest, and a rich petticoat; her arms were all naked up to her shoulders, except those parts of them which were ornamented with large golden bracelets. But what appeared to me most extraordinary, was, that she had green spots on her cheeks, and eye-brows of the same colour. Her dance consisted in certain movements of the body which bended forward to her waist, without any air, or agreeableness; and she advanced very slowly, and almost without moving her arms. She afterward took two drawn daggers, one of which she placed with the point toward her throat, continually dancing with surprising gravity. The other dancers had black spots like flies, upon their faces; and all their habits consisted only of a vest, with drawers over their shifts. They performed a comic scene, and acquitted themselves with great perfection. One represented a *Dutchman*, and the other, who had some smattering of our language, complained that he gave to others what was justly her due. She gave herself a variety of airs, and made a thousand grimaces, and motions that were not very decent, with a surprising agility, which raised the laughter of the whole company.

Two of the king's dwarfs then appeared, and endeavoured to imitate, and turn into ridicule, that dance. The king had married the least and most diverting of them, to one of the ladies of the court, whom he shewed me. The principal dancer appeared a second time with a silver porringer full of *Piesang*, a fruit which they usually chew, and has been already mentioned. She presented it to me and the secretary, upon which we took some of the fruit, and put money in the place of it, as is customary. While the farce was representing, they brought in hot slices of meat, wrapped up in green leaves, and the king gave one to the dancer who expressed the most humour in the part she performed. She pulled it to pieces in a very odd manner, and then filled her mouth with several morsels of it, but without discontinuing her discourse, though she uttered her words in a very imperfect manner. While she threw one piece into her mouth in this manner, she drew out another, and then approaching us, as if she intended to speak to us, she distorted her face into horrible grimaces.

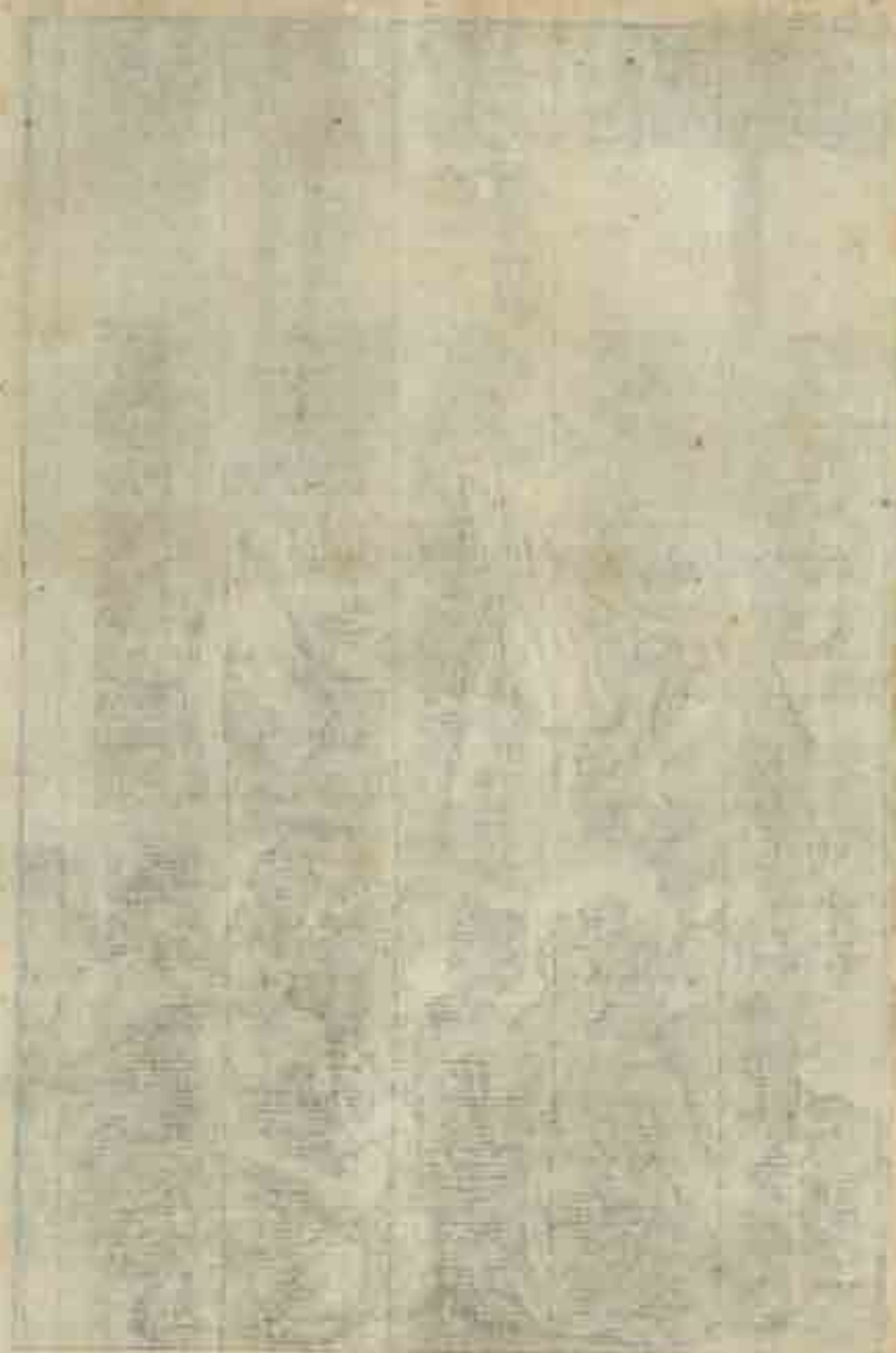
This kind of entertainment continued till two in the afternoon, when the whole being over, the dancer brought us again the money which I had just put into the porringer, but instead of receiving it, I desired her to keep it, telling her it was not the custom among us to take back any thing we had already given. The king then conducted me into all the apartments of his palace, from the top to the bottom, after he had pulled off his shoes in order to go up, and we followed his example, that place being esteemed sacred. He even conducted me into the queen's apartment, the chambers of which were very small. Having at length had the honour to entertain his majesty with various subjects of conversation, and for a considerable time, he took his leave of me, and desired me to pay his compliments to the general. I returned

1706.  
Dwarfs.











1706. my acknowledgments to his majesty, for the honour which he had vouchsafed to afford me, and wished him the enjoyment of a perfect health, together with a happy and fortunate reign, and that those princes who were to succeed him, might equal in glory their illustrious predecessors. The king, on his part, had the goodness to wish me all imaginable prosperity, and a happy return to my native country, and then conducted me through a wooden gallery into another edifice, having been accompanied thither by the two eldest damsels, who advanced no further. When we were come down the king put on his slippers, and we our shoes. I then took leave of that good prince, who again did me the honour to tender me his hand, after which I returned to my lodging.

The author takes leave of the king.

The prince of that prince described.

The complexion of this prince is very brown and sanguine, and there is something noble in his mien: His eyes are brown, his eye-brows almost black, and the mustachos he wears are small. I have already sufficiently described his habit. He was then about thirty three years of age, and had as many children.

The reader will find in plate 214 all that appeared most remarkable in the hall of audience, where the king received and entertained me. I drew a sketch of the whole scene upon the spot, without being ob-

1706. served, because I was thought to be writing down particulars of the audience, that I might not forget any of the honours I had received. For I had acquainted the king, that I should not fail to publish the instances of his goodness to me, in order to preserve the memory of them; and the ladies of the court were exceedingly pleased with this declaration.

I shall now describe the ornaments and ensigns of honour with which the king is accompanied when he appears in publick. These are generally near his person, and are supported by ten ladies of quality; 1. a *Tjeler*, or sword of state; 2. a *Saweniggaling*, or golden cup; 3. an *Ar-dawilika*, or wooden bird gilt, upon which are borne the vestments of the king; 4. a *Serypienangdoor*, which is found in the *Maldive* islands; 5. a *Lante*, or little measure; 6. a *Souasse-kuispidoor*, or small cane made of the root of a tree; 7 and 8. two carabines; 9. a *Sjaratan*, or small drinking can; 10. a bowl of *Souasse*. These are the ornaments, or ordinary ensigns with which the king is usually accompanied, and which he changes, increases, or diminishes at his own pleasure.

As I am unacquainted with the language of the *Javanites*, I shall content myself with exhibiting their alphabet, which consists of twenty characters.

The Javanese alphabet.

| A.   | B.  | C.  | D.  | E.  | F.   | G.   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| u    | p   | w   | y   | hu  | u    | bu   |
| Ha.  | na. | ta. | ra. | ka. | da.  | ta.  |
| H.   | I.  | K.  | L.  | M.  | N.   | O.   |
| u    | u   | u   | u   | u   | u    | u    |
| fa.  | wa. | la. | pa. | da. | dja. | ija. |
| P.   | Q.  | R.  | S.  | T.  | V.   |      |
| u    | u   | u   | u   | u   | u    | u    |
| nja. | ma. | ga. | ba. | ta. | nga. |      |



1706.

The religion

With respect to their religion, that of *Mohammed* prevails more than any other, in the island of *Java*, where it has been established for the space of 300 years, as I have already intimated; but the inhabitants of the eastern side are nothing near so zealous as those of the western. The king who governs these last has assumed, with the *Chirebomes*, the *Arabian* title of *Sultan*, which the king who rules the people that inhabit the eastern side of the island has ever refused to this day. It is even said, that there is still a third part of the island which has not submitted to the *Mohammedan* doctrines, but still retain the worship of idols, after the manner of the ancient *Javanites*, whose descendants still inhabit the isle of *Baby*.

The origin of the kings of Bantam.

King *Macboem*, or *Soefueknang-Goenang-Diati*, who has been already mentioned, was, according to the chronology of the *Bantamites*, grandson of king *Bani Israel*, who reigned in *Arabia*. This prince, who had an inclination to see the world, passed through *China*, in order to arrive at the island of *Java*, where he landed at a place called *Damack*. After he had continued there for some time, he proceeded to *Sirrebon*, where his interest was espoused by many of the inhabitants. He dy'd, and was buried there, and it is reported that his tomb, which is held in great veneration, is yet to be seen. This prince was the first, who introduced *Mohammedism* into this country, and his tomb, which is surrounded by several buildings and walls, is esteemed so sacred, that it is yearly visited by a great number of *Mohammedan* lords, and ecclesiastics, who bring presents from their respective princes, and especially from the king of *Bantam*.

A royal tomb.

This king *Macboem*, or *Soefueknang-Goenang-Diati*, espoused, at *Sirrebon*, the daughter of *Kiay Giudbing Babadan*, by whom he had no children. He afterward married the daughter of *Ratoe Ayoe*, by whom he had one son named *Pancumbabam Sirrebon*, and sometime after he

espoused another daughter of the same *Ratoe Ayoe*, and the younger sister of the former, by whom he had a son called *Hasanodin, Peng*, or *Depati Secrasowan*, whom he declared his successor, and who, after the death of that prince was known by the title of *Soefueknang*, or *Pangeran Seda Kingkingh*. This *Hasanodin* quitted *Sirrebon*, and caused himself to be declared king of *Bantam*, by the name of *Pangeran*. His father had married him to a daughter of the king of *Demack*, called *Pangeran Ratoe*, by whom he had several children. He afterward espoused a daughter of *Radja Indrapera*, who had for her dowry the country of the *Sillabari*, a people of *Banta Houlon*, on the western coast of *Pollowhang*, and he had two children by this prince's. I omit those he had by other wives, and by his concubines. He died at the age of 120 years, and left his crown to his son *Joseph*, who took the name of *Pangeran Passarecan*. This prince had several wives, who brought him a numerous off-spring, and he was succeeded by his son *Macbomet Pangeran Seedanrana*, who had likewise several wives and children, and left his crown to *Abema Vacher Abdul Kader*, the son of one of his concubines, who was the first that assumed the title of *Sultan*. He married *Ratoe Adjoe*, daughter of *Pangeran Aria Ranga Singa Sari*, by whom he had several children, and among the rest *Abel Moali*, who was his successor. This prince had several wives, and a numerous issue; and by his first wife *Ratoe Keelon*, daughter of *Pangeran Djaya-karta*, he had a son called *Abdoelphatachi*, *Abdoel-phata*, to whom he left his crown. This latter prince, who had several children, was succeeded by his son *Abdoel Kabar Abenajar*, who had five wives, and several children, and among the rest, *Moechamad Jachien*, who reigned after him; and *Abce Macbasin Moechamad dijenot abidin*, who now fills the throne.

1706.

First king of Bantam.

Second king of Bantam.

The third.

Fourth.

Fifth.

Sixth.

Seventh.

Eighth.

Ninth.



1706.

1706.

## CHAP. LXX.

*The situation of Bantam. A lady of an extraordinary age. The author's departure from Bantam, and return to Batavia.*

*The people  
of Bantam.*

AFTER I had satisfied my curiosity at court, I resolved to take the side prospect of the city of Bantam, and the governor lent me a bark for the more commodious execution of my design, in the road which lies on the north side of the

city. Number 1. marks out the governor's house; which is white, and covered with red tiles. 2. the guard at the bastion of *Speelwich*. 3. the house at the corner of that point; this is an agreeable mansion, where the king generally diverts himself

BANTAM.



when he visits the governor. On the top of this house, (which is built of stone) is a platform with a balustrade of lattice-work, and this situation commands a delightful prospect. 4. the gate where the advanced guard is stationed. 5. the wall. 6. the gate, through which is a passage to the governor's house. 7. the pepper mountain. 8. the hills of *Scoringa*. 9. the mountain of *Pienang*. 10. the port into which the small vessels come. It advances into the sea to a great extent, and is very shallow; it likewise passes through

the whole city as far as the back front of the castle. The few small houses in the adjacent parts, make but an inconsiderable appearance, and the trees with which the city is surrounded, obstruct the view of the rest, together with that of the castle. While I was drawing this prospect, I saw a crocodile, who appeared at different times, and frequently raised himself above the surface of the water. The castle is a *large oblong square*, surrounded with a high wall, and likewise fortified with four bastions, and two half-moors



1706 moons between them. It is near a quarter of a league in circumference, and is well furnished with artillery, together with a *Dutch* garrison of 400 men.

*A Description of the city.* The city is built upon the sea-shore, and is two good leagues in circuit. Most of the houses are wretched buildings, being made of the branches of trees, and covered with leaves. There are also suburbs, and cottages along the coast of the sea, and on the land side. It is very populous, and the number of children there is very extraordinary.

*Esh.* I here found very good eels, and in great numbers, with which I fill'd several pots, for presents to my friends at *Batavia*.

*Trade.* All the commerce of that quarter consists only in pepper. The great haven comprehends near three leagues in circumference, and is as wide as it is long at the entrance, so that ships ride there with all possible security; it is likewise the largest I ever saw. This kingdom, which is in the southern part of the *East-Indies*, lies in the north-west tract of the island of *Java*; it is near the freights of *Sunda*, and at the distance of about twenty-five leagues from *Batavia*, which is westward from it. I took the diversion of the water in a canoe, which is a small vessel of that country, pointed at both ends, and made of the hollowed trunk of a tree called *Bayer-juriam*, which is generally of a surprising thickness. These boats go very well with oars. I was accompanied by a *Prussian*, who had been settled some time in that country, and was well acquainted with the language and all the customs of it. We went to a place called *Cerame*, which is filled with tombs. It lies about a league from *Bantam*, upon the bank of the great river, which flows from the mountains. These tombs were erected for the families of the kings of *Bantam*. The chief structure is entirely ruinous; all the rest are inconsiderable, and disposed in covered places. Several bodies are to be seen, ranged by each other, without any tombs,

and only covered with earth raised to a small height above the surface of the ground, with little stones joined together in the form of tombs. This place is surrounded by a single wall. We went to bathe ourselves at our return, in the river near the garden where the king sometimes resorts to refresh himself in the same manner.

We landed at a little distance from the city, in order to visit a lady who was 130 years old. She had been mentioned to me by the king, who likewise ordered me to go and see her. She lived with the king's great aunt, who had the direction of all the dancers. As we came from that prince, we were introduced into the apartment of the women, who were desired to dance, as thinking we came for that purpose; But I returned them my acknowledgments, and declared, I had already enjoy'd that pleasure; upon which they conducted us to the king's aunt, to whom I testified my gratitude for the honour she intended me, and told her, that I only desired to see the antient lady; upon which some of her women, who were curious to see me, took upon them to be my conductors. I found her in a very mean apartment, seated upon a kind of table, covered with grey cloth, after the manner of the country, and her head bare. She was yet very fresh, and had a tolerable strong voice, but her legs were so weak that she could not stand, and she was reduced to meer skin and bones. As the day began to close, I desired a candle might be lighted, and when I had taken it in one hand, I held the other before it, and asked the old lady, if she could distinguish the light. *How should I,* reply'd she, *since you hold your bond before it?* She, however, was incapable of distinguishing the features of a face. I then asked her, in order to try her memory, from what country she came? *I am a native of Jackatra,* said she; (this was the antient name of *Batavia*, before it was taken by the company ninety seven years ago,) and



1706. and I came, when I was young, to dwell at Bantam, where I have known seven kings, whom she particularly named; she always ate with a good appetite, but grew childish at some particular times, when she no longer asked for food, upon which occasion care was always taken for her supply. Her eyes were sunk deep in her head; her hair was entirely grey, and very thin; and her great age had bent all her fingers inward. After we had satisfied our curiosity, we took leave of the king's aunt, and thanked her for the civility with which she had treated us.

I employed the next day in making preparations for my departure, the ensuing evening, in one of the barks of the country, having no inclination to return in the vessel that brought me hither, and which set sail the preceding day, because contrary winds frequently retard the course of these vessels, for a considerable time, in that season of the year. I desired Mr. de Wys to hire me one, but he was so good as to lend me his own, which was larger and more commodious than the common ones, and I embarked about seven in the evening with Mr. Kaef, who returned with me. The governor and Mr. de Wys, gave me their answer to the general, and I returned them my acknowledgments for all their civilities. The governor would even accompany me out of the city gate, where I found Mr. de Wys, and the secretary, who waited to take their leave of me.

The haven on that side is neither broad nor deep, the sailors therefore were obliged to use a pole to push the bark forward, which is very tiresome, because they make but a slow advance. As soon as we were got out, we were obliged to cast anchor, in order to wait for a land-wind, which rose soon after. We made such way in the night, being favoured by a fine moon-light, that at break of day, we gained sight of the vessel which set sail in the evening, and had the wind against it. Thus by continually coasting, and passing between the islands, we arrived about three in the afternoon at Batavia, where I surprized the general, who did not expect me so soon. I acquainted myself to him of the compliments, with which I was entrusted on the part of the king, and gave him the letters I had for him. I likewise entertained him with an account of whatever had happened to me, and with which he appeared very well satisfied. I then went to pay my duty to the old general, who was overjoyed at the good success of my voyage.

I carried with me from Bantam some little birds, which I put into spirits of wine to preserve them. The most beautiful of them had a violet spot upon the top of his head; his breast and tail were tinged with a fine red, and all the rest of the body was green. There were also several other small birds with red breasts and tails, and others that had those parts of a grey complexion.



*The manner of receiving the letter of the king of Bantam. Wild fruits. A present, and letters from the emperor of Java. The arrival of captain Dampier.*

*The manner of receiving the letter of the king of Bantam.*

THE letter of the king of Bantam, which Mr. Kaef had in charge, being arrived in the road of Batavia the 19th of July, Monsieur Sabandbaer, master of the ceremonies, was immediately sent, with seven or eight principal officers of the company, and some of the chief merchants, to receive it. This letter was placed in a large silver dish, covered with yellow damask, richly flowered, and borne by a halberdier, accompanied by a slave in livery, who supported the damask covering. When they were come to the castle, they passed between two ranks of soldiers of the garrison under arms, and who were posted from the great gate, as far as the governor's apartment, with ensigns display'd, and drums beating. A treble volley of small arms, and the cannon of the castle, were then discharged, and a magnificent entertainment was prepared in the hall of the council of the Indies, where the governor, and the general of the company were seated; the secretary appear'd standing, and the halbadiers were disposed round the table.

*A present from the emperor of Java.*

The company received on the 23d a present of thirty three horses from Soerjoenang Pakochoana, emperor of Java; these were succeeded on the 26th by letters from that prince, which were received with the same ceremony as those of the king of Bantam. This present was accompanied by fifteen or sixteen young female slaves. This is the same emperor, whom the company replaced on the throne the preceding year, after having driven out his nephew Adepattie, who had possessed himself of the kingdom of Matarnie. This empire, which is called Sematarn, is on the eastern coast

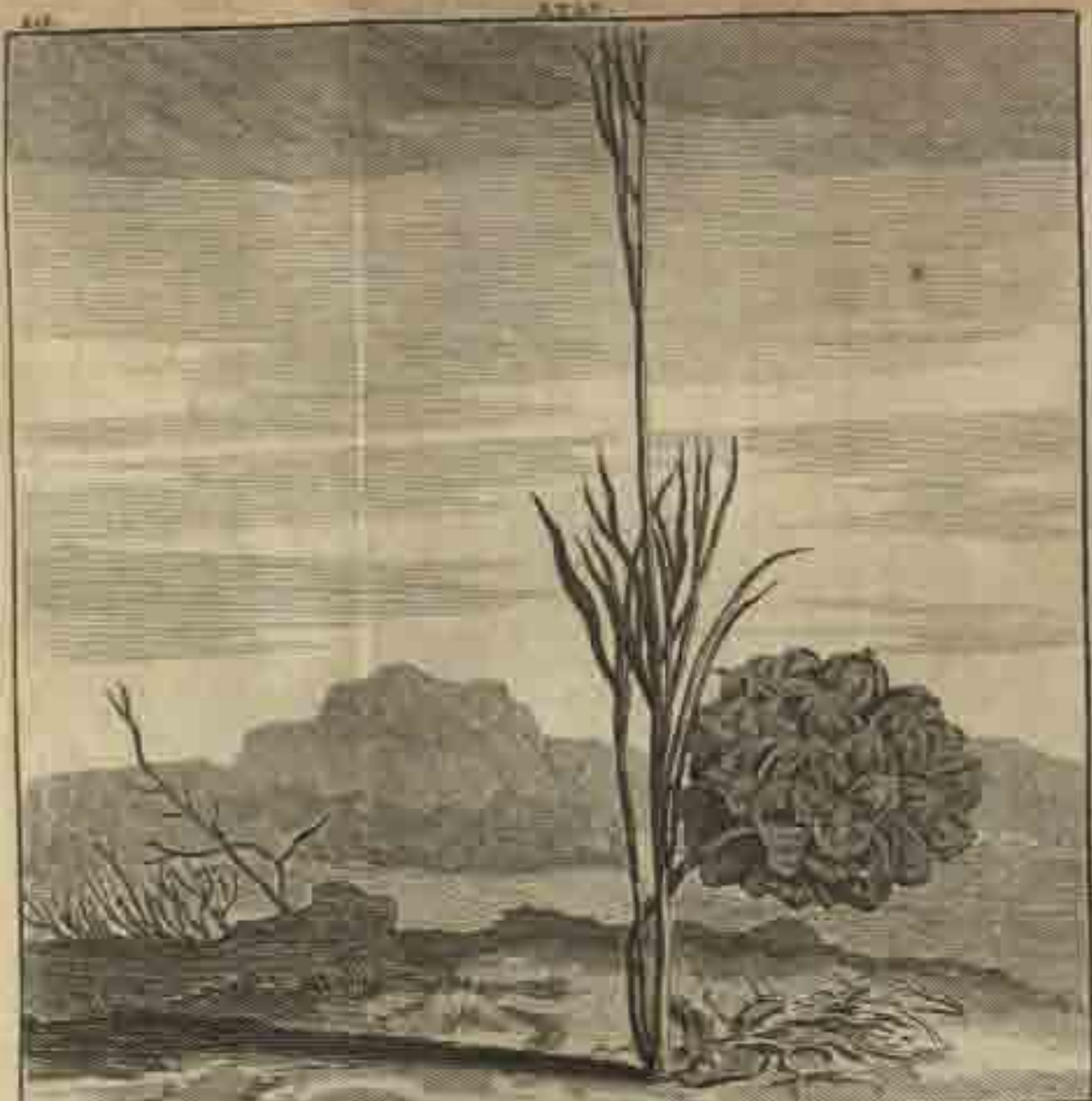
of Java, about sixty leagues from Batavia. The war lasted three years, but the deposed prince could never prevail upon himself to give up his pretensions: Time, however, decided them at last.

I received, much about that time, a present of wild fruits, which are found in the woods, and I took a draught of six different species of them on paper. The *Atap*, or *Pick*, of which they eat the inside, grows in clustres, about a foot and a half in diameter; the leaves are long and narrow, as may be seen in plate 215. The *Froete Mitri*, is a fruit with white kernels, so very malignant in its nature, that no one can taste it without immediate death. The reader will find one, open, with some of the leaves at the letter A, in plate 216. The *Froete Tiackou*, is also a fruit, of which they eat the inside; it is green, and incircled with eight leaves, and is as large as it appears at the letter B. The *Kandake* is a long fruit, the flower of which bears no seed, but they set the branches of it. The leaves are very beautiful, and agree with the representation at the letter C in plate 217. D marks a fruit, the name of which I could not learn; it is of a beautiful red when ripe; the leaves are long, and narrow, and close to one another. The 6th is the *Baple Kamme*, a fruit of which they eat the kernels, of the middle part, which are very large: They are likewise planted, because they contain the seed of the fruit, which is very soft. The leaves resemble those of ivy, and the fruit is represented in plate 218, as it grows naturally. I have also added in plate 219, a fine red flower, which something resembles a rose, though it is formed



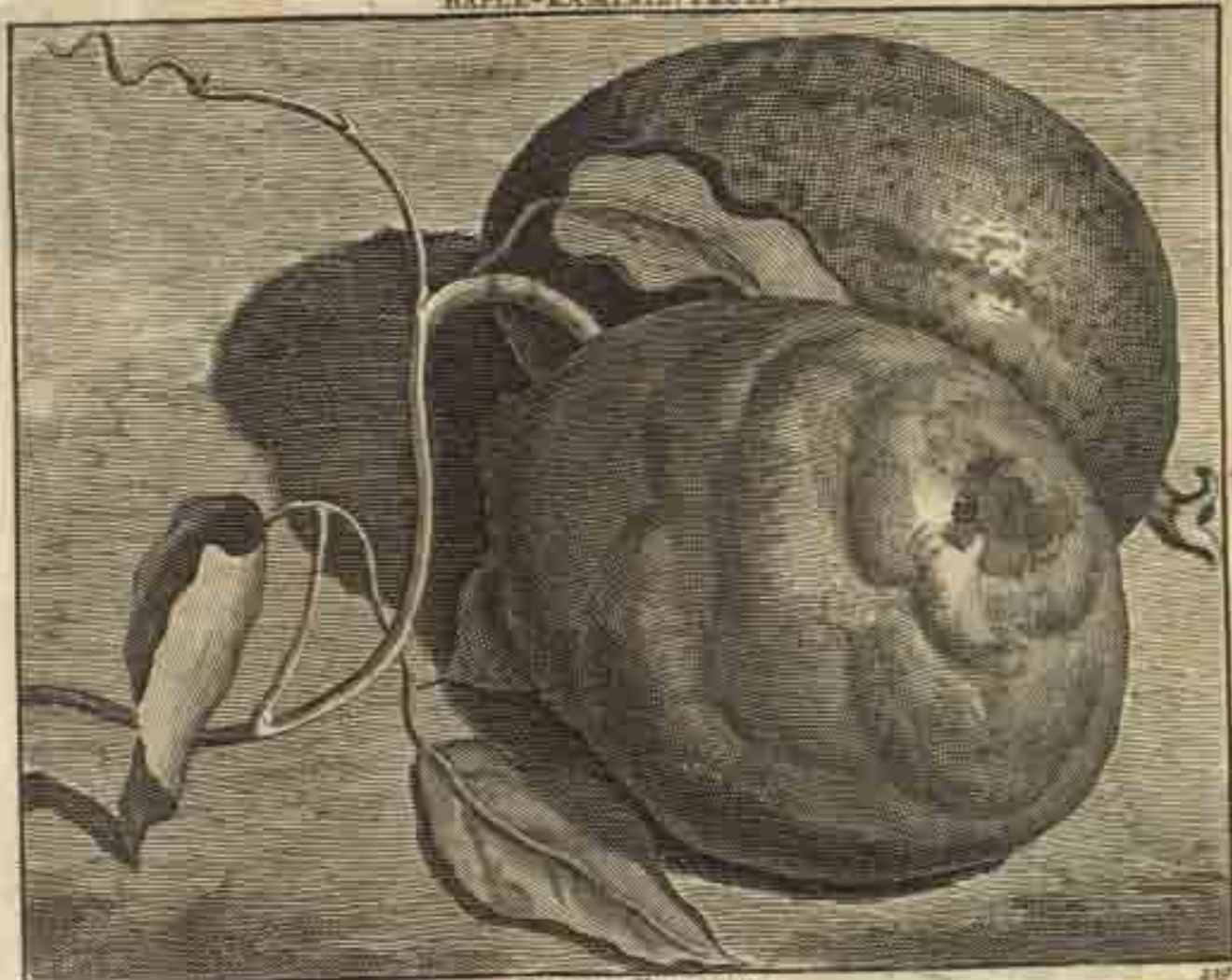








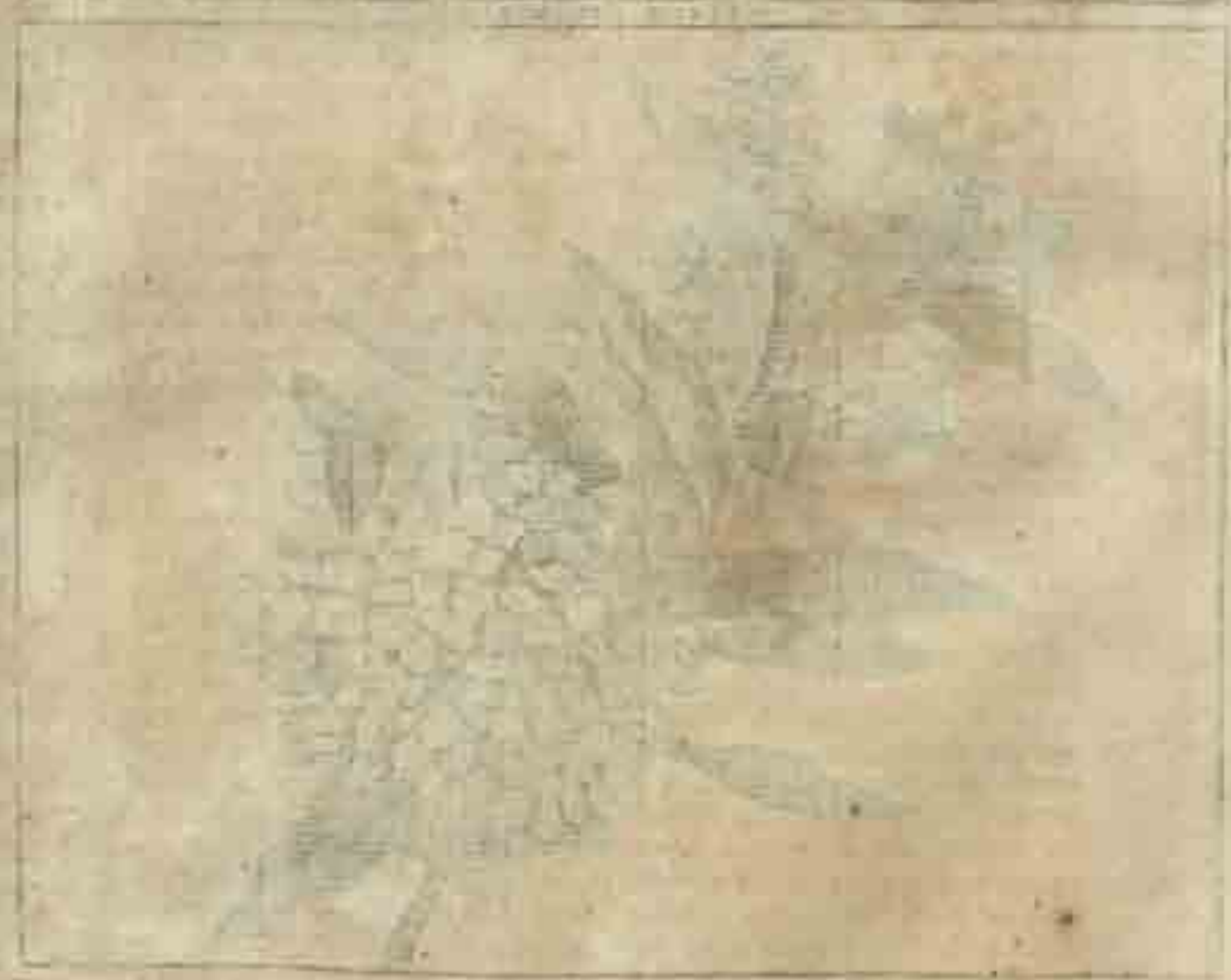




FLOR. STRANON.







1706. formed of several small flowers joined together.

*Animal  
productions.*

I likewise received, among several other curiosities, a parcel of gold, silver, antimony, chrystal, and gold dust, taken from the mines of *Gillebaer*, on the western coast of *Sumatra*, together with a sea-plant, which is found at *Amboina*, and called by the *Indians Akkar-babaer*, a name compounded of *Akkar*, which signifies a root, and *Babaer*, which signifies the sea, as if one should say a sea-root. The *Arabs* call this plant *Kalbabaer*, the first syllable of which signifies the heart, and the second the sea, that is to say the *Sea-heart*. They pretend that it is an admirable remedy against the strangury; and in order to prepare it for that purpose, these branches, or roots, must be reduced to powder, and infused in water, a small tea cup of which is then to be taken: The same preparation is also said to be excellent for relieving the pains of a woman, newly brought to bed, but it must be mixed up with two thirds of *Den-ty de bada*, *Adas*, and *Poole Sary*, and a large tea cup of it should be taken thrice.

*An extra-  
ordinary  
plant.*

*An admir-  
able reme-  
dy.*

In *Amboina*, and *Ternate*, are found whole forests of a tree called *Gahbe-gahbe*, which the inhabitants use instead of rice. They cut off the stem and branches, and take out a kind of pith that resembles a sponge, and which they dress like rice. When this tree is seven or eight years old, they fell it, and then cut it into pieces, which are steeped in water, after they have been well cleansed. These are afterward made into *Sagoe*, which the *People* of *Amboina*, and most of the orientals, use instead of bread; they also make them into biscuits, which will keep several years.

*Sagoe.*

*First book  
of Kings  
ch. ix. ver.  
23.*

The island of *Sumatra*, which is opposite to *Malacca*, is thought to be the place from whence *ophir* was formerly brought, and where both the *Syrians* and servants of *Solomon* gained such large treasures, as I have observed in my first voyage. There is still to be seen a small island before *Malacca*, and which the inha-

bitants call *Opbir*, but sailors and geographers distinguish it by the name of the *Red Island*. There is also found, both on the east and west side of the island of *Sumatra*, abundance of gold, of which I saw several pieces almost round, and very near as big as a pigeon's egg, and others longer, without any mixture of stone.

North-west of the island of *Sumatra*, lies the city of *Atechem*, or *Achim*, where the queen keeps her court; that territory, as I was informed, being governed only by women, who derive their principal revenue from the mines. The *Dutch* company had formerly a factory there, but it has been removed for some time.

A *Dutch* vessel, called the *Wave-  
ren*, being accidentally set on fire in 1691, seventy persons, among whom was a young *Dutch* lady, saved themselves in the sloops, and after having been upon the sea for the space of nineteen days, and as many nights, were cast upon the coast of *Sumatra*. They arrived ten days after at the city of *Achim*, in a deplorable condition, after having sustained the utmost severity of hunger at sea. The queen being informed of their arrival and adventures, ordered them to be brought before her, and treated them with abundance of humanity; she caused two pieces of cloth to be given to each of the officers, and one to every sailor, to cover them, and endeavoured to comfort them under their calamity, by assuring them that she would take care of them. She likewise gave orders for supplying them with provisions, and all necessary accommodations, and even continued to provide for them with all the goodness and generosity imaginable, till they could find means to transport themselves to *Malacca*, from whence they went to *Batavia* in the company's vessel.

*A melan-  
choly ac-  
cident.*

*The gene-  
rosity of  
the queen  
of Achim.*

The last day of the month, the famous captain *Dampier* arrived at *Batavia* from *Ternate*, with twenty eight of his crew on board one of

*The arri-  
val of  
captain  
Dampier.*



1706. of the company's vessels. He set sail from England in September 1703. with two ships, and after he had coasted along *Brasil* to sixty degrees south latitude, he doubled the cape of *Hoorn*. The tenth of February he advanced as far as *Ilha de Fernando*, where he met a French vessel, with which he had a sharp engagement, but was obliged to quit it, because he saw two others making up, and he then made all the sail he could toward the coast of *Chili* and *Pern*. At length being come into eight degrees north latitude, he landed with a few men at the river of *Saint Mary*, but was repulsed from thence; after which the ship which accompany'd him, and was called the *Cinque Ports*, left him near *Panama*, and from that time he never heard any thing of her. Toward the middle of May one of his pilots fled from his service, together with twenty of his sailors, in a Spanish vessel which he had taken in the bay of *Nicaya*; and while he was abandoned in this manner, he met a large vessel of *Manilkas*, with which he fought a whole day without being able to make himself master of her. These disasters created a misunderstanding between him and his factor, and likewise his second pilot, and the rest of the crew; and it rose to such a height, that the factor and the pilot, accompany'd by thirty two sailors, forsook him, and went to

His adventures.

the *Indies*, in a Spanish prize in 1706. In this condition he arrived at *Amboina* the twenty-eighth of May, from whence, after he had sold his vessel called the *St. John*, which was no longer capable of being serviceable to him, he embarked in one of the company's ships, in order to proceed to *Batavia*, and from thence into *Europe*. He had taken at different times, and before his second ship left him, thirteen or fourteen vessels, and some Spanish barks in the *South-Sea*, without acquiring any considerable booty. Finding his company, therefore, reduced to twenty-eight men, after he had been forsaken by part of his crew a second time, he continued still to cruise for some time, and took four prizes, till at length, his ship, the *St. George*, being no longer in a condition to keep the sea, he left her, and went into one of the barks he had taken, and to which he gave the same name. He also resolved to sail through the *Indian* sea, and at last arrived in a very bad condition at the island of *Bathian*, where he sold his vessel, and proceeded from thence to *Ternate*, and then to *Batavia*, where he embarked for *England*, with some of his men, in a ship of that country, and the rest, who greatly disagreed with him, went after in the company's ships which were returning to *Holland*.

1706.

1706.

## C H A P. LXXII.

*A description of Batavia. The castle or citadel. Agreeable pleasure-houses. Strange nations. A great number of Chinese. Wild animals. Abundance of fish, plants, and pulse.*

*Subjection of Batavia.*

THE city of *Batavia*, formerly called *Jacatra*, was reduced under the government of the united provinces of the *Low Countries*, in the year 1619, as has already been intimated. The governor-general *Koen*, who made himself master of it, rebuilt it by the advice of his council, and added a citadel to it, with an intention to make it the seat of government of all the countries and places which were in subjection to the united provinces in those parts; and the company from that time gave it the name of *Batavia*.

*In situation.*

This city is in *Asia*, southward of the *East-Indies*, and in the western part of the island of *Java*. It is situated in 6 degrees and 16 minutes of southern latitude, and in the longitude of 107 degrees 15 minutes; it has likewise a fine port, and a good road.

*In arms.*

Its arms are a sword of azure in an orange field; the point of the sword is raised, and passes through a crown of green laurel. The borders, and jurisdiction of this city, are extended eastward, as far as the kingdom of *Sirrebon*, westward to that of *Bantam*, southward to the *South-sea*, and northward over all the neighbouring isles in this part of the sea.

*Religion.*

The reformed religion is established in all the places which have any dependance upon the company, in the same manner as it is in the united provinces, and all other doctrines are prohibited from being taught, under very severe penalties. The *Sunday*, and all the festivals, are observed there in the same manner as they are in *Holland*.

Vol. II.

The city has a delightful situation, and I was assured that it has been very much embellished within by several beautiful structures, and the country round about it by a variety of fine pleasure-houses, within the space of six years. All the avenues are bordered with fine trees, and small canals, and yet the natural beauty of the country, which is covered with a continual verdure, surpasses all the ornaments of art. The city of *Batavia* is a league and a half in circumference, and the ditch from twelve to fifteen fathom in breadth. The walls, which are of brick, are twenty one feet in height, and the rampart a fathom and a half in thickness; there are likewise five gates, namely, that which fronts the water, to the north, that of *Utrecht*, to the west; that of *Dieft*, and the new gate, to the south; and that of *Rotterdam* to the east.

*The beauty of the city.*

The citadel has two gates; one toward the land, on the south-side, and the other next the water, on the north. It is a quarter of a league in circumference, and is fortified with four bastions, called the *Ruby*, the *Diamond*, the *Pearl*, and the *Saphir*. These are all well provided with brass cannons, and have handsome stone walls of a considerable height, together with large magazines, stored with ammunition, provisions, and mercantile commodities. The entrance by the land-gate opens into a large square, surrounded with handsome houses; of which that which belongs to the governor-general takes up the greatest part of one side of the square. That of the director-general is over-against it, and the chappel of the citadel between them.

*The citadel or castle.*

H h



1706. them. There is a communication, by a gate, between this and the house of the governor, who has a seat next the pulpit. There is likewise another for the director-general, the general of the troops, and the members of the council of the *Indies*. The rest are seated according to their rank and dignity: There are also chairs opposite the pulpit, for the women who belong to the citadel, and whose number is inconsiderable. General *de Wilde*, and two or three other members of the council of the *Indies*, are placed next the director-general. The passage into the large square lies between several magazines, over which are some apartments. The water-gate opens into a square which had some resemblance to the former, and where is also a range of houses inhabited by the two principal merchants of the castle, and other of the company's officers. On the side of this gate, are several magazines like the former, together with the chancery, into which there is a passage by a back door of the governor-general's house. This is what is most remarkable in the citadel. At the entrance by the land-gate is a flight of stairs, which ascend to the apartment of the major of the place; as likewise to the arsenal, and the quarters of the soldiers of the garrison; and from the top of this place a delightful prospect opens every way to the view.

The governor's palace.

The governor's palace has a handsome stair-case, balustraded on each side with stone; its front is likewise very beautiful, and built after the *Italian* manner. At the entrance into it is a fine vestibule, where the halberdiers are stationed, and some apartments on the right hand, which front the square, and on the left hand a handsome gallery, with large beautiful windows on the right, which look into a court, on the other side of which are several apartments. At the upper-end of the gallery is a hall, where the governor gives audience, and over the gallery is another hall of much the same structure, together with a range of

apartments. The top of the building is ornamented with a fine tower, which commands a delicious prospect. The principal officers of the palace are lodged on the other side of the court, which I just now mentioned, where is also the kitchen. Beyond the vestibule is a small garden, which affords a passage to the council-chamber, which is a large apartment, adorned with the pictures of all the governors in full length, except the present one, and his predecessor, which I was resolved to paint, notwithstanding the disorder in my eyes; but I could not finish that of the last, by reason of his indisposition, and some disappointments which happened at that time.

I shall now set down a list of the governors general, who have been employed in the service of the company, and have exercised that important charge.

The first was *Peter Beth*, elected by the chamber of seventeen in the year 1609. he possessed this place till the year 1615, and died the second of *January* in the same year, in his return to *Holland*. His successor was *Gerard Reinst*, who died of a bloody flux at *Jacatra*, the 7th of *December* in the same year.

The 19th of *June* 1616, the council of *Ternate* nominated in his place *Laurent Reael*, who was recalled the 25th of *October* in the following year. He was succeeded by *John Peter Koen*, who set out from *Holland* in 1618, made himself master of *Jacatra* the 30th of *May* 1619, and gave it the name of *Batavia*, the 21st of *August* 1621. He returned to *Holland* the 2d of *February* 1622, and left in his place *Peter Charpentier*, who returned to his own country the 12th of *November*, 1627.

The 25th of *September* in the same year, *Mr. Koen* returned to the *Indies* a second time, in quality of governor-general, and died there the 20th of *September* 1629. His successor was *Jacob Speke*, who returned to *Holland* the 4th of *December* 1632.

Henry



1706. Henry Brower succeeded him, and returned to Europe the 31st of December, 1635. His office was conferred on Anthony Van Diemen, who died the 9th of April 1645.

He was succeeded by Cornelius Vander Lyn, who returned to his own country the 11th of June 1650, and was succeeded by Charles Reyniers, who died the 18th of May 1653. John Martfuyker was nominated to this important charge, and confirmed in it the 16th of June. He died the 4th of January, 1578. Ryklof Van Goens succeeded him; but having voluntarily resigned his generalship, was succeeded by Cornelius Speelman, who died the 11th of January 1684.

The same day was employed in the provisional election of John Kampbuisen, who was confirmed the 7th of August 1685. He laid down his post the 27th of November, 1691, and died the 18th of July 1695.

His successor was William d'Outsborn, who resigned it the 15th of August 1704; and it was given the same day to John Van Hoorn, who quitted it the 29th of October 1709, and had for his successor Abraham de Riebeck.

As the hall where the pictures of these governors were hung was ancient, it was thought advisable to pull it down, and workmen are now employed in rebuilding it. The council in the mean time assembles in the hall which fronts the fish-pond: This apartment is very spacious, and rises on an eminence above the pond; it has likewise a cabinet which affords a fine prospect. On each side of the hall are small gardens full of fruit-trees, with a low wall on the side next the pond.

In the passage from the citadel through the land-gate to the city, is a large stone bridge, built over the ditch, and the Esplanade, beyond it, leads to a pleasant road bordered with trees. At the end of it is a Corps de Garde upon the bank of a river, which has a bridge over it, and a gate in the middle, where a centinel is stationed.

The governors stables, andgrooms lodges are on the other side of this river, opposite to the Corps de Garde; and not far from thence is a scaffold, on which are executed those who are condemned by the courts of justice of the citadel; but those who are condemned by the magistrates of the city, are executed in a spacious square before the town-house. This was a large building of a considerable height, and adorned with a beautiful front; but the whole structure was so very ancient, that they are at present employed in pulling it down, in order to rebuild it. Leaving this edifice on the left hand, the passage lies through the new street, and from thence into the suburbs, which are to the south. About the distance of one hundred fathom from thence is a reservoir, the water of which falls from the mountains, and is conveyed to this place by stone gutters; and as this water is very good to drink, it is transported to the city in small barks. The passage is continued, with this reservoir to the left, and five powder mills, together with several beautiful gardens; and on the right a large number of brick and lime kilns, to the left of which runs a small river, which turns the mills, and the river Carrot flows to the right.

The advanced guard of Ryswick is a league from thence, and half a league from a fine estate or farm of the director-general of Riebeck; it is distinguished by the name of Tanna-aban, or red-land; the red-lands already mentioned, beginning at this place, four leagues from Sering-fing, and twenty from the blew mountain.

After passing through the same gate, and leaving the great river on the right, one comes into a charming road bordered with trees, and fine gardens. This leads to the fort of Jacatra, near which are the tombs of the Chinese; and at a little distance from these is the governor-general's garden. Nordwick house, which belongs to Mr. Kastelein, is not far from this place; and beyond it is another guard near a place called Struifwick. A



1706. A league from the gate of *Rotterdam* is a small gulf, and the fort of *Anjol*, where a garison of thirty *European* soldiers is stationed. There is likewise an oyster-fishery in this place, and the gulf must be crossed in order to go to *Tanzenpree*, where there is a noble house, with beautiful gardens and fish-ponds, from whence a fine prospect opens to the sea. This estate belongs to the heirs of captain *Egberti*.

A passage along the sea-shore leads to the two *Marvudes*, which were formerly the residence of the rebel *Jonker*. This place, which is three leagues from *Batavia*, supplies all the wood which is burnt in that city, and there is no proceeding farther, by reason of the thickets which fill this part of the country.

In passing through the gate of *Dieft*, one advances half a quarter of a league to the east, where the road then turns to the west, and leads to two little forts, one of which is half, and the other three quarters of a league from the city. At a little distance from hence is the canal of *Mocker*, which flows from *Tangeran*, and was made by the bailiff of *Mosk*, who has been re-imburied his expences, which amounted to a very considerable sum. The money, however, may be considered as lost, since no use can be made of the canal. If, indeed, it could be rendered navigable, it would prove of vast advantage to the city, that quarter producing a plentiful growth of wood. *Tangeran*, to which this canal extends, is five leagues from *Batavia*, and separates the territories of that city from those of *Bantam*.

From the gate of *Utrecht* one may proceed in the same road, to the north, as far as a place called the *Flude*, where a guard of fifteen soldiers is stationed, with a sergeant and two corporals. This guard is on the western point of the sea-shore, by which means it renders any farther passage impracticable.

All the out parts of the city are filled with beautiful gardens and

fruit-trees, and are very populous as well as the suburbs, some of which extend to a great length, and on the side of them are several agreeable canals.

Every quarter of the city is full of *Chinese*, who are an indefatigable people, and very ingenious, especially in imitating whatever they see performed. These people cultivate most of the landed estates in the country, and have the direction of all the sugar-mills, and those other places where arrack and brandy are made. They likewise keep all sorts of shops, dress provisions, and sell liquors: Their houses therefore are always filled with sailors. Malt-spirits being a very profitable commodity, a vast quantity is accordingly consumed.

When I came to this city, I found thirty vessels in the road, and there were almost as many when I left it, exclusive of the barks which belong to that country.

No appearance can be more agreeable than that of the canals, which are bordered with trees, and adorned with the finest houses imaginable. The canals of most note are the *Tygergarst*, the *Jonkergragt*, the *Katimanigragt*, and the *Rhinocerosgragt*, and that which is formed by the great river; the rest are not so considerable: The largest streets are those which are distinguished by the names of the *Prince*, the *Lords*, and *Newport*. There are three churches, namely, the *Dutch*, the *Portuguese*, and the *Malayan*, where service is performed in those languages. There are also several other ministers, who are sent to those places where the *Dutch* have any settlements.

This city is inhabited by a great number of strangers, some of whom are habited in a very particular manner, while others are almost naked. The *Chinese*, who are most numerous, wear a kind of shirt, and under it a strait pair of drawers, which hang down to their feet. Some of them have wide sleeves to their shirts, others those which are very narrow, and











1706. and buttoned on their wrists: Their legs are naked, and they wear slippers: Their hair is plaited round a bodkin, on the top of their heads, like that of women, and they always go bare-headed, and carry a fan in their hand. Their wives are habited after the manner of the country. There are also abundance of *Metisi*, who are a people descended from *Moors* and *Europeans*. The *Kastietjes* have a nearer resemblance to the *Europeans*, or *Whites*, and there are a third sort of them, called *Poclietjes*, whose complexion differs very little from ours. They speak broken *Portuguese*, and pretend it is their natural language. Most of them understand *Dutch*, and are likewise acquainted with the language of the country. Their habit resembles that which I have described before in my account of the island of *Ceylon*. The other strangers whom one finds at *Batavia*, are *Makassars*, *Bougis*, *Baliens*, *Malayans*, and *Moors* of *Amboina*, or *Ter-nate*.

*Provisions.* With respect to their provisions; their meat is not extraordinary, especially their beef, which is very lean, and they have no mutton but what is brought from other places. The small quantity of milk which their cows yield is very surprising; but these defects have some compensation in the abundance of small game in the woods. But the consumption is not considerable, tho' they are brought to market. Their chief food is pullers, which are brought from the coast of *Java*, together with ducks and geese, and sometimes deer, and elkes. The circumjacent woods are full of wild

boars; and they likewise harbour 1706. *Tigers*, and *Rhinoceroses*, with great numbers of apes, and other animals.

This city is plentifully supplied with fish, the largest of which are most esteemed; namely, the *Kakap*, the *Jacob Evertsen*, the *Bream*, the *Cabillau*, the *Royal Fish*, and the *carp*. There are also smelts, soles, and a kind of plaice, &c. together with cray-fish, crabs, oysters, and eels, and a large kind of cray-fish, whose flavour is admirable.

Herbs are equally plentiful; and there is no want of good *French* beans, green peas, carrots, parsnips, large and small raddishes, and potatoes, of which some people make bread.

I have presented the reader with a profil of the city in plate 220, which I took in one of the company's barks, and the whole is marked with numerical figures; 1. shews the structure where the great bell is hung; 2. the advanced guard; 3. the magazines of oil; 4. the stores of wood; 5. the place where rice is deposited; 6. the castle, or citadel; 7. the gate which fronts the water; 8. a gate of lattice in the castle wall; 9. a smith's shop; 10. the wood-yard; 11. the magazine for cloves; 12. the free port; 13. the east cape or point; 14. the western cape; 15. the river; 16. the sea-mark, called the duke of *Alva*, erected upon a bank of sand at the mouth of the river. As this city is very low, one can see nothing on the side next the river, but the land which lies above it, together with one side of the citadel, and the mountains which are covered with trees.



## C H A P. LXXIII.

*The retinue of the governor-general of the Indies. The dignity which attends that employment. The difficulties inseparable from it, as well as from those of the other directors. The author resolves to return by land. A recital of the honours he received.*

I Shall now give some account of the honours which are rendered to the governor-general of the *Indies*; who, in the name of the company, governs all the territories they possess in this country.

*The governor's train.*

He usually devotes *Wednesday* and *Saturday* to his recreation, at one of his country seats, on which occasion he is preceded by a quarter-master, and sixteen horsemen, together with a trumpet, and two halberdiers on horse-back. He is seated in a light coach, made after the *Spanish* fashion, and drawn by two horses. His master of the horse rides by the side of it, followed by six other halberdiers, who ride two in a breast. These are succeeded by two other coaches, in which are those who accompany the governor, and the procession is closed by forty-eight horsemen, with their captain, two quarter-masters, and a trumpet at their head. He is attended almost in the same manner when he passes through the city, only his guard is then composed of foot; but his master of the horse, and the halberdiers, are always on horseback, unless he be going either to a wedding or a funeral; for then the halberdiers march on foot with their partisans in their hands. But the master of the horse rides always beside the chariot.

*The manner in which the troops are reviewed.*

On *Sunday*, after divine service, he causes his guards to parade in the court of the citadel before his palace. First appears a led horse richly caparisoned, and led by the bridle by an *European*; next a company of cavalry, armed with cuirasses, and attended by a trumpet; then

a company of granadiers, followed by a battalion of fusiliers, pikemen, and musquetiers, armed with head-pieces, and preceded by six hautbois. They march twice round the place in good order, and are well acquainted with every branch of their exercise.

These marks of grandeur contribute in some measure to soften the fatigues of so weighty and arduous a charge; for this great officer has never any rest or vacation, as among us. He is harassed with letters and packets, from the moment day begins to break, and is continually employed in the affairs of the company, by reason of the vast extent of the country which is under his jurisdiction: Beside all which, he has a variety of business to transact with the ships that yearly come from *Holland*. The sun is no sooner risen than the two principal merchants, the commander of the citadel, the major, the architect, the chief engineer, and several others, come to give him an account of what passes, and to receive his orders. About eleven o'clock the *Sabandhaer* waits upon him, to give him a particular account of the barks, merchandises, and persons that are arrived, and the place to which they are bound; after which he dispatches the necessary pass-ports, and must likewise give audience to those who have any affairs to transact at the palace.

*The duties and state of a governor.*

These attentions engage him till dinner-time, when he has not above half an hour's rest, and he even employs part of that time in talking of business; after which he returns to the duties of his province till supper. So that to form a true judg-



1706. judgment of things, without being influenced by outward appearances, one must needs pronounce him a meer slave, who has not a moment to himself, and dares not pass one night out of the citadel. He is likewise obliged to give the company an account of all that passes on the coast of *Java*, and its dependent territories. Every member of the council is obliged to do the same by a courier, with respect to those affairs which are under his direction.

*The assembling of the council.* The council assembles constantly twice a week, and sometimes oftener, as any extraordinary occasion may require. Foreign ministers who arrive at *Batavia*, are not permitted to depart from thence before they have been conducted to an audience of the governor.

These constant employments, which were always presented to my view, caused me to recollect the manner in which I had passed my time at *Moscow*, where, when I asked my friends, how long their festivals and rejoicings were designed to be continued, they immediately replied, that their diversions began with *January*, and ended with *December*. How different is this manner of living, from that of persons of distinction in this country! I was therefore so far from envying their grandeur and prosperity, that, on the contrary, I thought myself very happy in being able with a moderate fortune to enjoy a pleasing tranquility of mind, in conjunction with a state of liberty, without which all other advantages are of no signification.

*The director-general.* The most important charge next to the governor's, is that of director-general, which is altogether as fatiguing; since he is obliged by his station to buy up, and dispose of all the merchandise of the company, of what nature soever it be, and to what place soever they send them; beside the other employments incident to this office. In a word, he has the management of every particular that relates to commerce;

and all the merchants and officers of the company render an account to him of what passes, and receive from him the keys of the magazines, the charge of which is consigned to his care. This director also issues his orders with respect to the particular cargo each ship is to take on board.

During my continuance at *Batavia*, no one was more esteemed than Mr. *de Wilde*, general of the company's troops, and the third officer in their service. He is also a member of the council of the *Indies*, and a person of extraordinary merit. I shall not give any particular account of the members of the council, nor of those who possess inferior stations, since what relates to them is sufficiently known in our country. For which reason I shall only add, that I do not believe there is any place in the world where they write so much as in the offices belonging to the company, where a number of extraordinary penmen are employed.

As I had no longer any affair to detain me at *Batavia*, I thought of returning home by *Perfia*, and found myself the more inclinable to undertake that journey, because I was informed about that time, that four *French* men of war were cruising on the *Indian* coasts, and had taken the *Phoenix* on the coast of *Coromandel*, in her return from *Bengale*, and two *English* ships in the beginning of the year; beside which there was some misunderstanding between the great *Mogul* and the company, in consequence of which that monarch would no longer permit them to trade on the coast of *Coromandel*. As it therefore was impracticable for me to go thither without hazard, I resolved to return by land as soon as possible, though I was advised to the contrary, and was also pressed to take the opportunity of embarking in one of the ships that were returning, to which I had no manner of inclination. The governor-general, perceiving my resolution was fixed, informed me, that in

*The general of the company's troops.*

*A misunderstanding between the Mogul and the company.*



1706. eight or ten days he should dispatch two ships for *Persia*, and that I might have a passage in one of them. I then desired a pass-port from the director-general, which he granted me immediately, telling me at the same time, with all imaginable civility, that he was sorry to lose me so soon, and before I had seen one of his estates, which he intended to have shewn me.

*At this time  
house be-  
longing to  
the gover-  
nor gene-  
ral.*

I, however, went to divert myself once more at *Stratford*, with the governor, and general *de Wilde*, together with other persons of distinction. This place, which belongs to the governor, is beautified with the finest avenues and most delightful walks in the world. It is likewise full of fruit-trees, and watered by the great river, which runs on one side of it. The house is built of wood, and contains a spacious hall, with a variety of other apartments. We breakfasted here, and went afterward to another house belonging to this lord, where we arrived before noon, and found some members of the council of the *Indies*, with other friends, and were entertained in a very elegant manner. The governor told me in the evening, that the director-general was to go the 11th of *August* to the isle \* *without rest*, and that I might take this opportunity to see it. The director likewise was so obliging as to desire me, two days before his departure, to accompany him thither, and sent me the following order the same day.

*Those who have the command of the ship called the Prince Eugene, are hereby authorised to receive on board the person and baggage of Cornelius Le Bruyn, in order to conduct him into Persia; and they have orders to lodge, and entertain him in the captain's cabin.*

Given at the castle of *Batavia*,  
the 6th of *August*, 1706.

A. D E R I E B E E K.

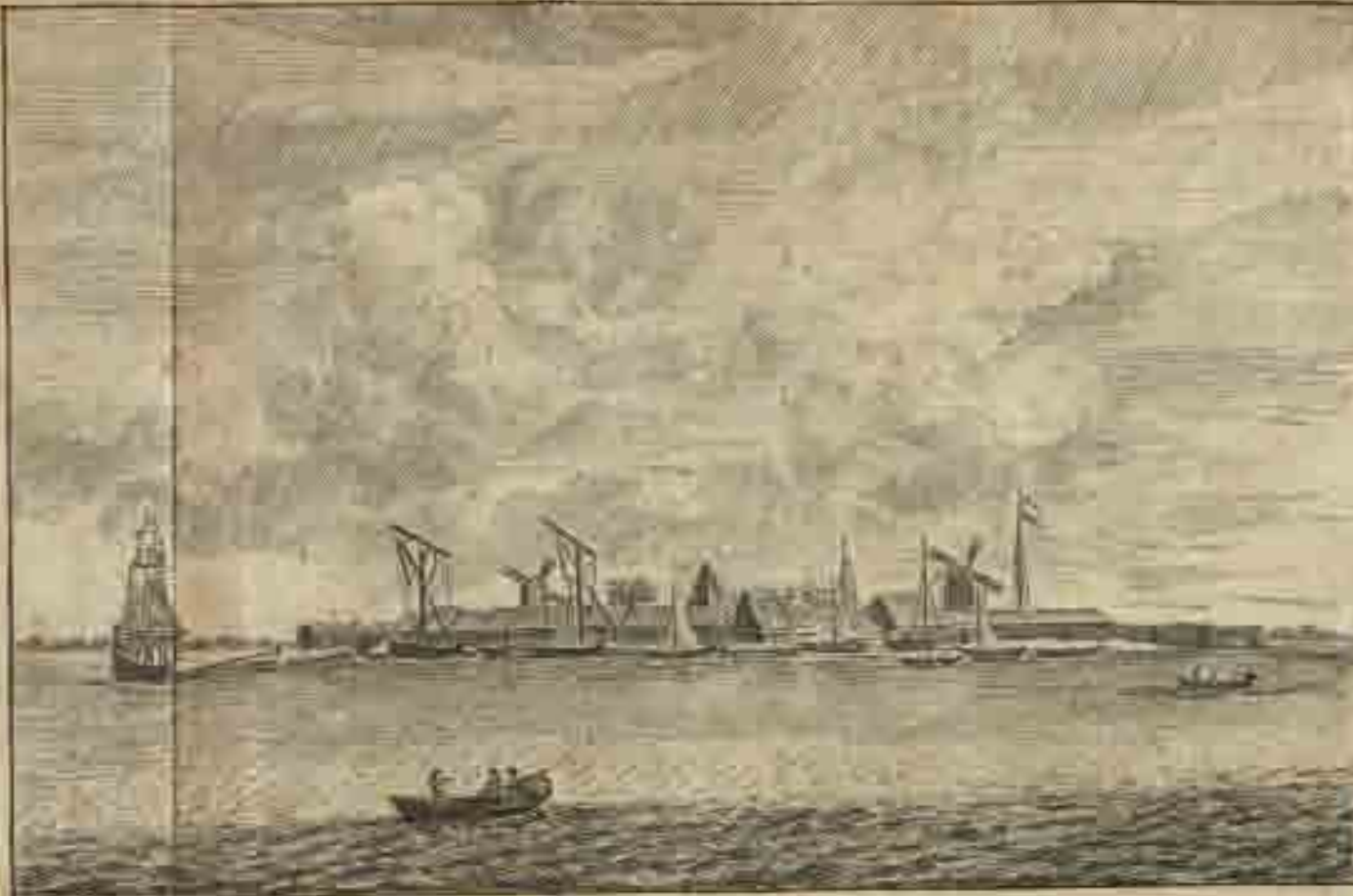
1706. I failed not to go at the appointed time to the director's house, where I found above twenty persons, who were to accompany us to the isle *without rest*, which is about three leagues from *Batavia*. We set out on this little progress with the sound of several trumpets, and haut-boys, and all the ships in the road hoisted their flags and streamers, which afforded a very agreeable prospect. We arrived there about eight o'clock, and took a view of the island, and the fort, which is well provided with cannon, and has a good garison. They make in this island all things necessary for reënting ships, and there is such a continual noise of hammers and anvils, that it is justly called the island *without rest*. It is surrounded with banks of sand, which prevent the approach of larger vessels, and none but small barks pass between that and the isle of *Kuiper*, which is over-against it, at a small distance. I went over to it, and took from thence a draught of the former. While I was thus employed, the director visited some of the members of the council, and about noon they gave me notice by a sloop, that it was dinner-time. I had then just finished my work, which the reader will find in plate 221. The galley in which we came appears at the point of the island, and upon the bank are three cranes with several small vessels.

Several fishes of extraordinary beauty were shewn me at my return; and as dinner was not then served up, I hastened to the shore, in order to take a draught of the island of *Kuiper*, which is exhibited in plate 222, for I was very sensible that the company would not part with me after dinner, because it was the director's lady's birth-day, for which reason they intended to devote that time to pleasure. We were entertained in a splendid manner both with flesh and fish, under a tent, and there was no want of wine upon that occasion. General *de Wilde*,  
and





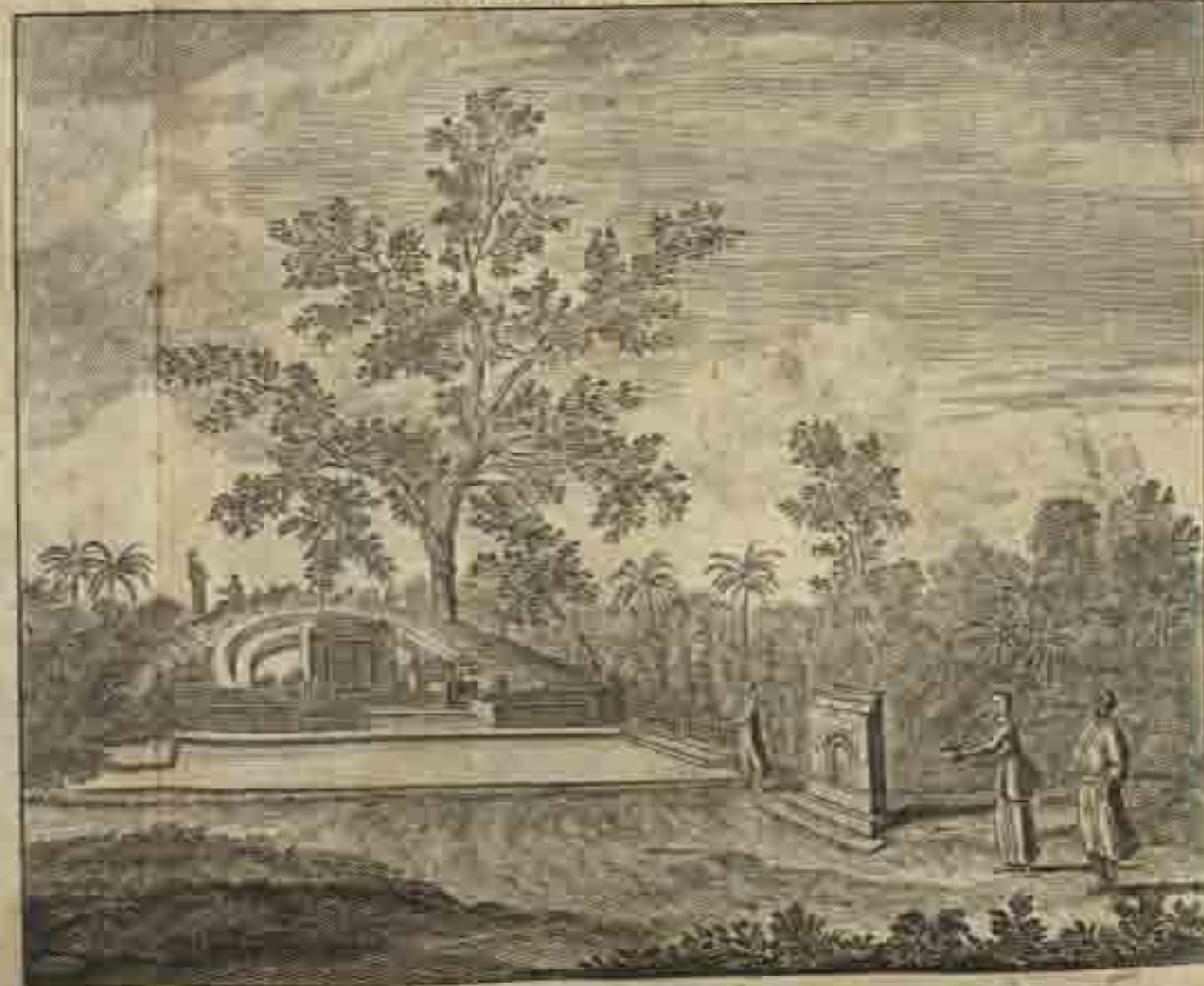




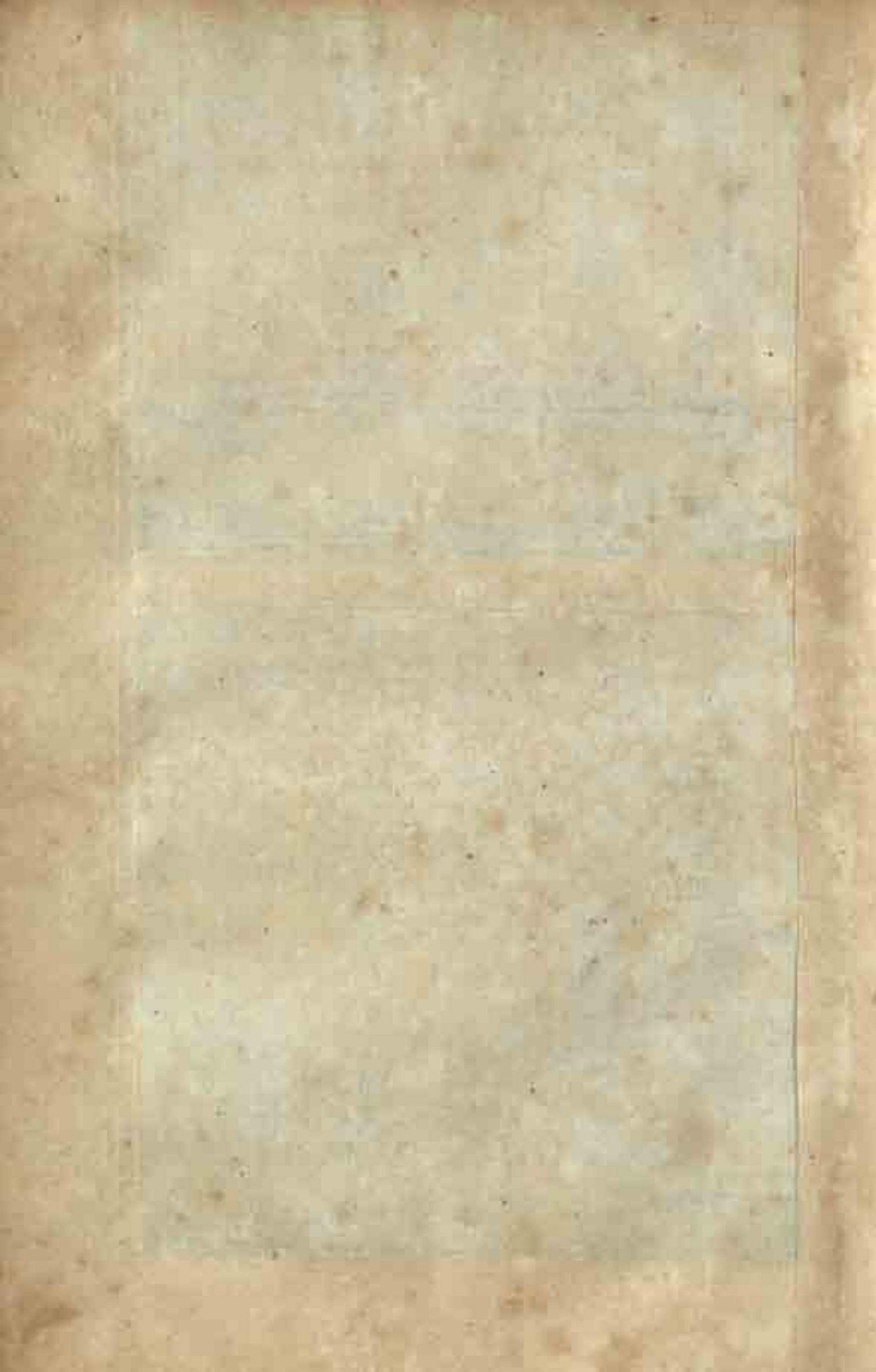
FUNERAILLES DES CHINOIS.



TOMBEAUX DES CHINOIS.







1706. and five members of the council of the *Indies* were there also. About the middle of the entertainment some *Dutchmen* made their appearance; two of them were habited like women, and they diverted us with several agreeable fancies. We returned in the evening to the same place, where we continued our diversions, and drank the governor's health, which was accompanied with a discharge of the ships cannon, and the sound of the trumpets, and hautbois. About seven we arrived at *Batavia*, and went to congratu-

late madam *de Riebeck* on her birthday.

As the time of my departure drew nigh, I went the next day to take my leave of the members of the council of the *Indies*, and to return them my acknowledgments for all their civilities. General *de Wilde*, pressed me with his usual complaisance to dine with him, and I shall always retain a grateful remembrance of the obliging manner in which he treated me: I must add too, in justice to his character, that I never saw a more polite gentleman than himself.

## C H A P. LXXIV.

*Tombs of the Chinese. Their funerals. An entertainment given by the governor-general. His civility to the author.*

Chinese  
tombs.

TWO days before my departure, I went with the governor's master of the horse, to take a view of some *Chinese* tombs; and I made a draught of them, which the reader will find in plate 223. These tombs are all built in the same form, only some are larger, and more ornamented than others.

Their  
funerals  
with  
relation  
to  
their  
tombs.

The reason they assign for this uniformity in the structure of their tombs, is, that all Men are alike shut up in the womb of their mothers, and therefore there ought to be no distinction between them after their death. They first dig a grave in proportion to the coffin, which is longer, but not deeper than ours, and is likewise very thick, and varnished over. They cover it at the same time with paper, and bind cords about it. After which they cast money into the grave, more or less, according to the rank and estate of the deceased person, and place the coffin upon it. They then make the cement which is to be employed in building the tomb, and is composed of the whites of eggs,

and other ingredients, which render it so hard, and binding, that it is impossible either to break or remove it from its place. The top of the tomb is raised some feet above the earth, in a round form, and encompassed with ornaments that resemble steps. They place likewise on the forepart several branches, and some square bases, upon which they fix the heads of beasts, such as lions, tigers, &c. painted in green, with a small intermixture of red, by way of ornament. They likewise raise, on the middle of the steps which lead up to the tomb, a small work in form of an altar, with a red border in the middle of the front, and some *Chinese* characters in gold. The pavement which is laid before the tomb, is of the same masonry with the rest of the work; it is likewise white, and divided into three compartments separate from each other, with a little elevation on the back-part. There is another altar on the right, in the front, with a kind of a niche in the middle.



1706.

The ex-  
pense of  
these  
tombs.

These tombs cost sometimes two, three, or four hundred crowns; but there are some which have no ornaments bestowed upon them. The masonry and form of the work is the same in all, because it is thought that the dead, by these means, will repose in perfect safety.

A funeral  
procession.

When I arrived at this place, I saw some people employed in making one of these tombs for a person whom they were going to inter. The procession advanced soon after, and I beheld several tents furnished with every thing necessary for a kitchen, and for preparing a repast. I carefully observed all the ceremonials practised by the funeral train, which resembled a procession, with respect to the number of persons that composed it, and the ornaments which were carried on that occasion; such as streamers, parasols, and canopies, under one of which was carried one of their saints, known by the name of *Josse*; and I likewise heard the sound of several bells. When they came to the place where the corpse was to be laid in the earth, every thing was dispatched with great expedition, and in very good order. Over-against one of these tombs was a pavilion, and several parasols, under one of which I observed a large table covered with all sorts of provisions brought from the city, and among the rest a raw hog, and a he-goat, which were to be offered to the saint I have already mentioned. In the mean time those who attended the funeral threw money into the grave; and then the corpse was let down. A priest, who stood at one end of the grave, held a book in his hand, in which he read, and by the side of him stood another, who held a silver plate full of seeds, of which he threw now and then a handful toward the attendants, as likewise upon the coffin, and the deceased woman's child, who stood on the other side of the tomb, covered with a robe of unwrought flax, which flowed over his head after the manner of the ancients, who covered themselves in

this manner with sack-cloth in times of mourning and affliction, and cast themselves upon the earth. This child, who was but ten years old, did so several times, and then rose up again by the direction of the attendants, among whom was his father clothed in white. The priest then ordered the child to approach him, and made him sprinkle some handfuls of seed upon his mother's coffin, which concluded the ceremony. Nothing appeared to me more extraordinary than the scattering of the seed, which was certainly emblematical, and signified to the attendants, that the persons who performed the ceremonial wished their posterity might be multiplied in the same manner.

While some were employ'd in making the cement already mentioned, the rest seated themselves at table, to the number of five hundred persons, among whom were several women clothed in white, with a kind of pointed cap of the same colour upon their heads, and which hung down to the middle of their body. The company continued there till the evening, under the trees. These tombs are but a small league from *Batavia*, and there are several which are not so far. The reader will find them represented in plate 224. The circumstances of this funeral repast correspond with the custom I have elsewhere mentioned, of bringing provisions to the tombs of the dead in other places. There are even some who come thither to smoke, or drink coffee, &c. others to pay their devotions, as I have seen practised at *Chiras*, or *Zie-raes* in *Persia*. They frequently make these repasts, soon after the interment of the body, upon carpets spread on the earth. This ceremonial is practised among the oriental Christians, namely, in *Georgia*, *Armenia*, and among the *Greeks*, who pour out their lamentations around the tombs of their ancestors, as has been observ'd in the account of *Ispahan*. The more sorrow they testify on these

1706.

The funeral  
repast  
page.



1706. these occasions, the greater is the honour which they render to the relations of the deceased. They also hire mourners of both sexes, who perform the ceremony of weeping for the dead, in the greatest perfection. This custom has prevailed in all ages; and the prophet *Jeremiah* mentions it in his *Lamentations*.

I returned about noon to the citadel, where the governor had caused a splendid entertainment to be prepared for some strangers, who were lately arrived from *Holland*, as well as for those, who were returning thither, or going to other places. I had the honour to be one of the guests, whose number amounted to fifty five persons, among whom were general *de Wilde*, seven members of the council of the *Indies*, and most of those who constitute the council of justice. The feast was served up in the great council-chamber, with inexpressible magnificence. The company withdrew about five, and the governor then asked me if I had compleated the preparations for my departure? To which I replied, that I had, and that nothing remained but to return him my humble acknowledgments for all his civilities. He was again so obliging, as to desire me to tell him, if there were any other particulars wherein he could be serviceable to me? Upon which I endeavoured to express my sense of his goodness in the best manner I was able.

I went the same Day to take my leave of his Predecessor, Mr. *Outshorn*, who treated me with the utmost civility, and made me a present of several curiosities. The next day I went to take my leave of the director-general *de Riebeck*, and Mr. *Kastelein*, to whom I had very particular obligations, and who did me the honour of a visit in his turn. In short, I must again declare, in justice to all these gentlemen, that no person could be entertained in a more obliging manner than I was by them; and I should think myself the most ungrateful of mankind, if I did not constantly retain a grateful remembrance of their favours. I went also to take my leave of my old friend Mr. *Hoogkamer*, vice-president of the council of justice, whose memory I shall always honour; I then embarked my goods on board the ship, which was to convey me to *Persia*.

I supped that evening, for the last time, with the general of the *Indies*, and gave my baggage into the hands of Mr. *Pauli*, a gentleman of merit, and steward to that lord; and he had the goodness to charge himself with the care of its conveyance to *Holland*. I then went on board the *Prince Eugene*, a ship of forty guns, and one hundred and thirty men, and it was one hundred and forty five feet in length.



## C H A P. LXXV.

*The author's departure from Batavia. Observations on the water near the Line. The southern coast of Arabia Felix. His arrival at Gamron.*

*The author  
set sail  
from Ba-  
tavia.*

WE set sail the 15th of August, in company with another vessel called the *Monster*, from which we had orders not to separate ourselves, by reason of the war of which I have already spoken; and we met the *Beverwick*, and several other ships coming from *Holland*. A calm obliged us to anchor in the evening near the isles of *Combuis*, in eleven fathom water. We continued our course at break of day; but were obliged to stop again in the evening, and anchor in seventeen fathom water. The next day we did nothing but shift up and down, the wind being against us to the west, and a small bark came up with us in order to sell us fruits, and other provisions. We cast anchor again, toward evening, in twenty three fathom water, and continued our course at day-break, steering west-south-west, with the wind south-south-east. That day the captain of the *Monster* came on board us, to agree with our captain, on the signals to be used in the voyage. About evening we cast anchor again near the second point of *Java*, and sailed again at day-break. We were obliged to anchor again between the second point and the *New Isle*, in twenty four fathom water. We found here a small *English* vessel that set out from *Batavia* before us, and we sent her to fetch water from the corner of the *terra firma* of *Java*, where it is very excellent. I made a draught of the *New Isle*, which the reader will find in plate 225, as also of the *Prince's Island*, opposite to it, and which is exhibited in plate 226.

*The New  
Isle, and  
that called  
Prince's.*

The next day we continued our course, and left the *English* vessel at

anchor, which by all circumstances, was to take in pepper, instead of water, in that place. As the wind was south-south-east, we passed on in the evening, at the distance of two leagues from the western point of *Java*, which lay south-east of us. We steer'd west-south-west and by south, and soon lost sight of land, the wind blowing a fresh gale. That night, and the two following days, the wind continued south-east, and we had exceeding good weather. The third day we steered westward, the wind being east-south-east. The first of *September* the captain of our ship went on board the *Monster*; and as it appeared in the evening, that we were advanced into the longitude of 104 degrees, and 45 minutes, it was resolved that we should steer westward, as far as 89 degrees, and forty or fifty minutes longitude, and 9 degrees south latitude, and then proceed northward, passing the line to the tenth degree of northern latitude; and from thence, north-north-west, as far as the cape of *Rasalgato*, or toward the coast of *Arabia*. On the fourth, the *Monster* hoisted her flag upon the main-mast, and we took down ours toward evening, and discharged a cannon, as had been before agreed. The fifteen days, in which we were to have the lead, being expired, we lay by, to let her advance before us; and as she was a very bad sailer, we were obliged to do so very often, without being able to take the opportunity of the wind, which at that time stood fair for us. This circumstance created us much uneasiness, since we were apprehensive it would prove a great impediment to our voyage.

The



1706. The 5th we lost sight of the *Monster's* lanthorn, during the night, but continued our course directly west, with few sails up. The 6th in the morning, we perceived her south-west of us, at a vast distance, upon which we steered that course, and she came up within two leagues of us. On the 8th she made a signal for changing the course, and advancing west-north-west, and on the 9th the weather was changeable. On the 10th she made another signal for some of us to come on board her, and we advanced northward in the evening. The next day we had a view of her to the north-west, at the distance of two leagues from us, and in the southern latitude of 6 degrees 42 minutes, and 88 degrees 30 minutes longitude. On the 12th, about noon, having advanced about 25 degrees northward, we came into 5 degrees 2 minutes of south latitude, steering north, and north-west, in order to come up with the other ship, which, in the evening, was within a league of us to the west.

The water  
very salt  
near the  
line.

The 13th we drew near the line, and found the water much saltier there than in other parts of the sea, not only to the taste, but even to the sight, the waves which beat against the prow of our ship leaving a thick foam of a whitish complexion, and full of salt. Some people have formerly been deceived with this appearance, in their approaches to the line, and imagined that it was occasioned by the shallowness of the water; but they were soon convinced of their error by sounding, without finding any bottom. The 16th we advanced twenty-three leagues north-north-west, as far as fourteen minutes north latitude, and 88 degrees 21 minutes longitude on the other side the line. The distance from *Batavia* to this place is computed to be 686 leagues, and from the line to *Gamron* 480. The wind blew west by north, and west-north-west, and west by south in the night. On the 18th we came into 2 degrees 31 minutes of north-

Vol. II.

ern latitude, and 88 degrees of longitude. The *Monster* took down her flag in the evening, and we hoisted ours the next day, with a discharge of cannon, and found ourselves about noon, in 3 degrees 44 minutes of northern latitude, and in the longitude of 87 degrees 21 minutes. The other ship was three leagues from us, and we were obliged to lie by and wait for her. The following days we saw several small red cray-fish playing round our ship. On the 23d we steered our course north-north-west, with little wind, which blew from south-south-east. The 24th we changed our compasses, from the fifteenth to the tenth degree north-west, and advanced on the 26th to the north by west, after having given the signal. We here saw a flight of land birds, together with some grey swallows, and afterward a white butterfly. We took one of the swallows, but restored it to its liberty again.

On the 27th, I observed an extraordinary greenness in the sea, together with a shoal of small fish, and a parcel of floating eggs. At the same instant appeared a large fish, very different from any I had ever seen before. His head was six feet or more in length, and he immediately disappeared.

The captain of the *Monster* came on board us that day, and we were then, by agreement, to steer north by west, till we should come within sight of the *Arabian* coast. They sounded twice in the evening without finding any bottom. A little after the *Monster* made a signal to notify that land was seen. As it was very high, we soon perceived it likewise, from west-south-west, to north-west by north, having sailed seventeen leagues since noon to north by west. We then steered north-east by east, till morning, when we perceived the western coast rising very high, and steep toward the west; and also another tract of land of the same form, to the north-west; and to the north a round hill like an island, about three leagues

L 1



1706. leagues from us; the greatest appearance of land was toward the west, and west by north. This was the coast of *Arabia Felix*, near the cape of *Curia Muria*, according to the maps. I drew the plan of it in the morning, and perceived to the north-west, a kind of gulf between lofty mountains, and in the middle of it an island, as it appears in plate 227. The mountains which appear on the other side of it are represented in plate 228. Before these mountains is seen an island which rises to a considerable height, but is not taken notice of in the maps, any more than the gulf itself. One can see there only two or three points, without any appearance of the island: As the weather was a little cloudy, we could not have a distinct view of the land. We afterward advanced, between the *Red Sea* and the *Persian Gulf*, steering first south-east, and then south-east by east, the wind being south-west by west, and west-south-west. About ten in the morning we saw the last appearance of that land, to the north-north-west, and at the distance of about four or five leagues from us. Our bowsprit then happened to break, and we were obliged to repair it as well as we could. About noon we came into 17 degrees 12 minutes of north latitude, steering directly east, without seeing any land. We afterward directed our course east-north-east during the whole night, the wind being west-south-west. On the 30th the wind shifted to the southward, and we steered north by east at break of day: About noon we found ourselves in 18 degrees 8 minutes of northern latitude, and 81 degrees 15 minutes longitude, having sailed but twenty five leagues north-east by east, in twenty four hours; and as we did not discover any land, we steered to east-north-east. In the evening the *Monster* fired a gun, and kindled a blaze upon her skuttle, being westward of us; she likewise fired a second time, and we saw again the fire upon her skuttle. This was the signal to sound, upon draw-

ing near to land; but we found no bottom at 150 fathom depth. We lay by till the second watch of the night, with two lanthorns lighted, that the other ship's crew might see us; but as we heard nothing of them, nor saw any light, we continued our course, east-north-east, as before, the wind being south-west, and west-south-west, and the sky very clear. In the mean while we sounded several times without finding any bottom. The first of *October* we entirely lost sight of the *Monster*, and imagining that she had changed her course, we resolved to continue our voyage without waiting for her, and advanced to the north-east by north, the wind being south-west, and came about noon into 20 degrees 8 minutes of north latitude.

The 3d in the afternoon we discovered land, and a range of high mountains, to the north-west, advancing continually north-north-west. In the evening we saw the western coast, to the west by south, about eight leagues from us: We likewise found a change in the water in the night, and advanced eastward upon that account. On the 4th there was a fog, which prevented us from having any distinct view of the land; and about noon we perceived a ship to the west-north-west, about three leagues from us: We immediately fired our cannon, and struck the skuttle sail twice, a signal which had been agreed upon between us and the *Monster*, and she did not answer, so that we concluded it was not her.

We were soon after surprized by a calm, and at sun-set we sounded, about eight or nine leagues from the high cape of *Rafalagata*. As we had scarce any wind, we came near the ship I mentioned, and found it to be the *Monster*. About noon we came into 23 degrees 30 minutes northern latitude, under the tropic, and found at sun-set that land was not above six leagues from us. During the night we steered west-north-west, the wind being east-south-east. The next day

The cape of  
Rafalagata.  
12.







CÔTE MÉRIDIIONALE DE L'ARABIE HEUREUSE.



BAYE DE MUSKETTA.



ISLE DE LAUREZ.



CÔTE MÉRIDIIONALE DE L'ARABIE HEUREUSE.



RIVAGE DU CÔTÉ D'ARABIE PROCHE DU CAP DE MONSANTON.



ISLE DE KIAMUS.









1706. day we founded within sight of a small island, or rock, about two leagues and a half from us, without finding any bottom. We found that the distance between the cape of *Rasalagata*, and the bay of *Musketta* is not so considerable as is represented in the maps. This little isle, or rock, is directly opposite to that bay, and is called by some the *Grey-Rock*; the reader will find a representation of it in plate 229.

The grey-rock.

On the 7th, we came into 24 degrees 26 minutes north latitude, and at the distance of seven or eight leagues from land, and sounded, but found no bottom. The next day we sailed but seven leagues, and discovered the coast of *Arabia*, from the south to the north-west by west.

The next day we found ourselves in 24 degrees 35 minutes, but still without finding any bottom. On the 11th, we founded in the latitude of cape *St. James*, to the north-east and by north, and about noon came into 25 degrees 25 minutes, where, sounding by the rock on this side the cape, to the east-south-east, we found sixty fathom water. We then advanced northward, and in the evening westward: We approached in the night some islands that are situated before the cape of *Monjandon*; where we found a depth of water from sixty to forty fathom, and steered to the north, with the wind at south-south-west.

Cape St. James

The cape of Monjandon.

The coast of Arabia.

The next day I made a draught of the *Arabian* coast, near the cape, with the adjacent rocks, in the manner as the whole is exhibited in plate

230. We continued our course to north-north-west, with the same wind, and sounded at some distance from a rock called *Leest*, which lay north of us, and the isle of *Ormus* north-north-west, toward which we advanced in a direct course, and found there from forty to thirty fathom water. About noon we founded again, at the point of *Ormus*, to the north-east and by north, and at the inner point of *Kismut* to the south-west, and by west. I took a draught of *Larake* to the eastward, as it is represented in plate 231; and likewise of the island of *Kismut*, which appears in plate 232. We found here a depth of water from twenty-four to twenty-two fathom, and being come, about evening, into four fathom two feet, we thought it advisable to cast anchor; after which I landed, and went to the new lodge, where the director, and other of the company's officers then resided. They were surpris'd at my return, because, when I set out from thence, in the preceding year, I was in a very bad state of health. I was inform'd that the steward of *Syepstein* was dead, and likewise two merchants, one of whom died at *Zje-raes*, as he was travelling to *Ispahan*; and that Mr. *Prescot*, the *English* minister at the court of *Persia*, had followed them. I have given a representation of the isle of *Ormus*, as it appears from the lodge at *Gamron*, when the air is clear and serene, with the castle on the extreme point to the left.

Isle of Ormus.

Isle of Larake and Kismut.

U. LAER. ORSMUS.



## C H A P. LXXVI.

*Remarkable things at Gamron. The situation of Esfin. Cotton-trees. Extraordinary plants. The arrival of the governor of Gamron. The author's departure from thence. His arrival at Laer, and Jaron.*

THOUGH I had determined to go immediately to *Ispahan*, I was obliged to continue some days at *Gamron*, to wait for the carriages from *Zjie-raei* or *Cbiras*; I therefore accompanied the director to his country-house at *Naeibaen*, which is situated not above a mile from the city, at the foot of a mountain, from whence there is a very beautiful prospect both to the sea, and toward the city. Near this place is the tree greatly commended by Mr. *Tavernier*, but which is far from corresponding with his account of it. All that can be said is, that the branches bend down to the ground,

*A mistake  
of Mr.  
Tavernier.*

and some have taken root, and shoot out like young trees; as to any other particulars, the tree is not very lofty, nor does it afford a large shade, I have seen several of the same species in the *Indies*, near *Malakka*, and upon the coast which goes by the name of *Pasjaer*. There is in this place a small house, which serves for a retreat to the *Banians* in the night. In our return we met with some courtiers of that nation, who were diverting themselves in the open field with two of the dancers of the country, and other buffoons, who performed several ridiculous feats, by torch-light, for the fun









1706. *fin* was down. We went to them, and they entertained us with hot liquors, confections, and other delicacies.

On the 23d, I hired two men, and as many asses, according to the custom of those parts, together with a guide, to conduct me to *Essir*, where he himself dwelt, and from thence to any other places which I should be inclinable to visit. This place is three leagues from *Gamron*, and seated on a plain, half a league from the mountains. It chiefly consists of gardens, and little huts, inhabited by poor people. There is a house here belonging to the company, which supplies *Gamron* with the best water that is to be found there.

*An extraordinary tree.*

The most remarkable thing I observed here, was a tree, the trunk of which was fifty two spans in circumference: It was straight in the middle, and full of branches of a proportionable bigness, with small leaves.

This tree is called *Dragtree*, and it bears a kind of a wild apple. The reader will find a representation of it in plate 233, and one of its branches, with the leaves upon it, drawn from the natural one, in plate 234. There were several names carved on the bark; and upon the trunk is a small piece of white masonry, for which the *Banians* have a great veneration, because this tree is sacred to one of their saints; the garden, in which it grows, formerly belonged to them, but they sold it out of a foolish superstition, having taken it into their imagination, that all who inhabit it will die young. It belonged at that time to the *English* interpreter. They believe, however, that those who are afflicted with a fever, or any other disease, may obtain a cure, by making a pilgrimage thither.

*Cotton plants.*

I saw here some cotton-trees, as large as a common apple-tree; most other trees of that species resemble small plants more than trees; but the leaves are exactly the same.

*Yucca*

I likewise found here a white flower, or rather the leaves of a plant, or tree, known by the name of *Yucca*.

Vol. II.

ca, and which the *Persians* call *Golie-kiele*. This plant, which comes from *Surat*, has a strong, but very agreeable odour; and the inhabitants pretend that it attracts serpents. The flower of it is nine inches in length, and grows in bunches inclosed in the leaves of the plant, which are ten inches long: This flower produces several others in its middle part. I have kept one, which was presented to me, and it still preserves its fragrance, notwithstanding it is now dry. It is five or six inches in circumference, with the leaves that enfold it.

I returned the next day to *Gamron*, through a rocky road, the tracks of which are so narrow and bad, that there is no passing but upon asses, which are small, but very swift. They are something like those in *Egypt* in the country adjacent to *Grand Cairo*.

*Alie Chan*, duke or governor of *Gamron*, arrived there the next day, and was saluted with a discharge of cannon from the citadel, and likewise from the ships which lay in the road. I went to pay him a visit, an hour after his arrival, with the director, and other of the company's officers; and he entertained us after the *Persian* manner, with hot liquors, and tobacco.

*The arrival of the governor of Gamron.*

Two days after the governor came to visit the director, with a train of forty persons, on horseback, and thirty five couriers, among whom were thirty that supported small banners. He was likewise entertained agreeably to the custom of the country, but did not stay long.

As the governor had brought several mules from *Zje-raus*, whither they were to return, I took this opportunity, and hired them to carry my baggage, having before provided myself of a horse, and other necessaries; and I fixed my departure for the 30th. I then took leave of my friends, and of captain *Helma*, in whose ship I came, and to whom I had many obligations.

The next day I gave the director the letters which I had written to the  
M m governor-



1706. governor-general of the *Indies*, and others of my friends at *Batavia*; after which I took my leave of him, and all the other officers belonging to the company.

The author's departure from Gamron.

We went in the evening to the *English* lodge to assist at the funeral of Mr. *Crown*, director of the *British* company, and I set forward at the same time, in order to arrive that evening at *Bandalie*, three leagues from *Gamron*, in the road to *Ispahan*; being accompanied only by a muletier, and one footman, because I had sent my equipage before. I renewed my journey at three in the morning, and proceeded as far as the *Caravanferai* of *Getjie*, after having travelled five leagues: We passed the day there under a tree, and set out again in the evening, when we passed over a large plain, and advanced as far as the old *Caravanferai* of *Koristan*, which is six leagues from the former.

We arrived, about ten in the morning, at the *Caravanferai* of *Goer-basir-goan*, after a journey of four leagues, and the next day, at the same hour, at that of *Bilon*, which is five leagues from the former, and where we found no company, which had likewise been our fate at that of *Goer-basir-goan*; but the peasants brought us pullets, and other provisions. This quarter, which consists of stony plains situated between mountains, is very unfertile: We found there, under a tree, our small caravan which came from *Gamron* before us, and set out again on the fourth of November. We followed it about three or four hours after, and arrived about nine at the *Caravanferai* of *Germset*, after we had travelled five leagues. I there drew part of the village, and a well covered with a stone dome, as may be seen in plate 235.

We continued our journey next day with the *Caravan*, and found the water of that quarter to be very bad and salt. But travellers commonly provide themselves of a sufficient quantity at places where it is good: After we had travelled six

leagues farther, and passed over several plains, we arrived about evening at the *Caravanferai* of *Samjengien*, where we passed the night. It was very hot during the day, and cold in the night.

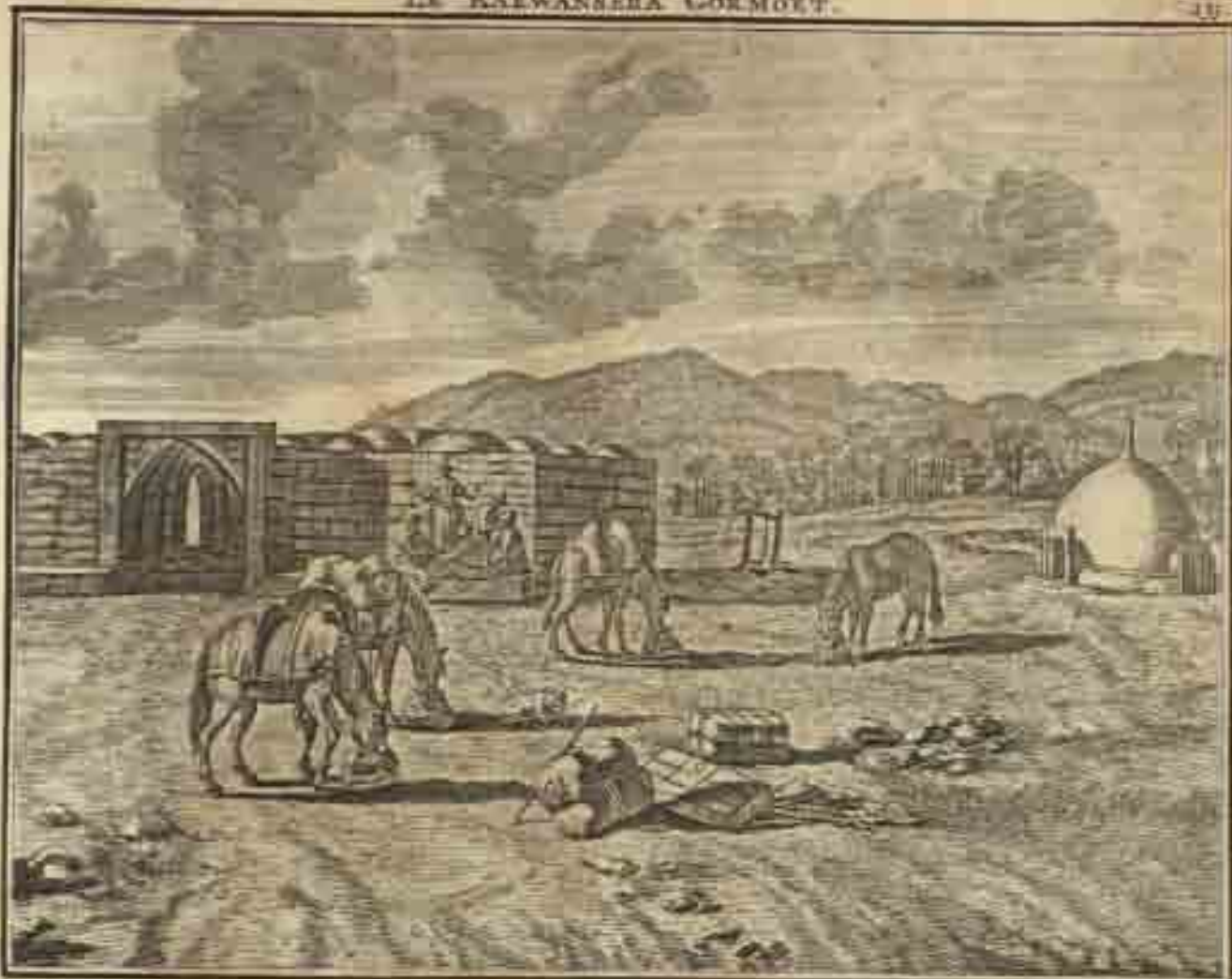
The next day we passed over a beautiful plain full of villages and gardens, as far as *Laer*, where we rested after we had travelled six leagues. We found here several travellers, and a caravan from *Zje-ran*, loaded with wine, for the members of our company at *Gamron*. We continued here till the 8th, and then pursued our journey over a plain, at the end of which, and opposite to the mountains, we found a reservoir of water, with a building, near which we had passed the night, when we travelled that way before; the water is conveyed hither by a canal walled in, and which runs cross the mountains; the reader will find a representation of it in plate 236. From thence we passed over some high and steep mountains, and then descended into a beautiful plain, where we saw a handsome stone *Caravanferai*, and a few houses inhabited by husbandmen. After we had passed over this plain, which is two leagues and a half in length, we entered among the mountains, and passed the night at the *Caravanferai* of *Dekoe*, a considerable village, full of trees and gardens, and situated upon a plain of a roundish form, and partly cultivated into arable land.

The next day we proceeded three leagues farther to *Bieries*, a large well-built town, which surpasses several of their cities. We there found a handsome *Caravanferai* of stone, from whence there is a prospect of a ruined castle, which has been already mentioned, and is situated on a neighbouring mountain.

My courier was taken so ill there, that I was upon the point of leaving him behind; but finding himself better the next day, he followed us upon an ass. After we had passed over the mountain, we came into a beautiful plain, where we saw several flocks of sheep, and a ruinous Ca-

1706.





RESERVOIR D'EAU AVEC LE CANAL.





Table - General





1706. *Caravanferai*, where there were some caravans, with camels, horses, and mules. We advanced as far as the village of *Aes-Zjierafie*, where we stopped after we had travelled five leagues. As there was no *Caravanferai* here, we took up our lodgings in a very agreeable house, which has likewise been already mentioned.

The next day we passed over a plain, which was sandy in some places, and cultivated in others: In the midst of it is a rock, and a large cistern finely shaded by a single tree which grows near it. We arrived about evening at the *Caravanferai* of *Dedomba* having travelled four leagues.

We pursued our journey on the 12th, over the same plain, as far as the *Caravanferai* of *Mausel*, where I found father *Pedro d'Alcantara*, with whom I had lodged at *Zjierae*; he was accompanied by three other *Italian* monks, and was going to embark at *Gamron*, in order to

take a voyage to *Sienpolis* in the *Mogul* country, in quality of bishop, and apostolical vicar.

The next day we continued our journey in the afternoon, but as I was obliged to leave my courier behind me, I furnished him with what was proper for his subsistence, and ordered him to follow me to *Ispahan* as soon as his health would permit him. After we had travelled five leagues, we stopt at the *Caravanferai* of *Zatal*, where the person who had the care of it being indisposed, desired me to give him a little wine, which I very readily did, and he in return made me a present of some citrons and oranges.

We set out again in the afternoon, and after we had passed over the mountains, or rocks of *Jaron*, which are very dangerous, the bad roads frequently obliging travellers to alight from their horses, we arrived late at the city of *Jaron*, having travelled five leagues that afternoon.



## C H A P. LXXVII.

*The author's departure from Jaron. An account of some antiquities. His arrival at Zjierae. A robbery committed on some merchants.*

The author's departure from Jaron.

WE set out from *Jaron* on the 15th, and when we had passed through the city, we came into a beautiful plain, full of cattle; we passed the night in a pleasant garden, which was walled in. The roads are very good in this quarter, and the plain is cut into several canals, over which we passed on small bridges of stone.

We met on the road several troops of asses laden with rice for *Laur*. I saw also a tower of a considerable height, but unaccompanied with any other building; there were likewise several tombs entirely ruinous, and a few small houses in-

habited by poor people: The name of this place is *Dennas*.

Dennas.

After we had travelled some leagues, we passed over a bridge of seven arches, under which a current of water flows when it is high, but at that time there was none. Toward evening we forded a river, and after we had travelled about six leagues, arrived at the *Caravanferai* of *Mogack*.

The next day we met two of the company's couriers, who were carrying letters from *Ispahan* to *Gamron*. We left the common road at this place, in order to go to *Tadurwan*, along the river side; and we



1706. we kept this road near an hour, before we arrived at that village, which is very difficult of access on this side, and the ways are so bad that some of our beasts of carriage fell down, one of which we were obliged to unload.

This village very much resembles a wood, by reason of the trees, and inclosed gardens all around it. It is situated on the river-side, upon a small hill, and surrounded by gardens walled in, which latter was a very uncommon circumstance.

At the end of this village is a passage over the river, which flows by the side of the mountains, and upon their decline to the north. I had formerly been here with Mr. *Kashelein*, but we came in on the other side, where the entrance is much easier. However, I had an inclination to visit it a second time, having found at *Butavia* in the memoirs of Mr. *Cuncus*, ambassador to *Ispahan* in 1652, that he had found several curious pieces of antiquity near this village, together with several subterranean passages that extended as far as *Zje-raes*, or *Cliras*, which is twenty five leagues from that place; and a well of an extraordinary depth.

I set out early the next morning, with a servant belonging to the caravan, and one of the inhabitants of the town, in order to take a view of those curiosities. I went much farther than I had done before, and found a grotto in the rock, with an aperture at the top, into which I made the countryman enter. As the bottom was visible through two or three openings near to each other, I could easily see him, and perceived that he was at the end of the grotto after he had gone about thirty paces. We met again in the common road by the river side, where I enquired of him which was the way that led to *Zje-raes*, and found that those persons from whom I had the description, had only taken their account upon trust, without examining the truth of the fact. It was the same with regard to the well

upon the mountain, which I took the trouble to ascend on the north side. I found that there had formerly been a fortress in that place, of which a few ruins are still to be seen, together with some remains of the walls, and upon the summit, a small square building covered with a dome, agreeably to the representation in plate 237. As for the prodigious fissure which is mentioned in the same memoirs, it is nothing but an uncommon gap on the east side of the mountain, where the height is very considerable, and the declivity as steep. The river flows on one side of it. The buildings which have been raised on the side of this mountain by the *Pagani* or *Guebres*, are of so strange a structure that one knows not what to make of them, and I believe nothing like them was ever seen. They are built on the steepest part of the rock, on each side, and there is still to be seen a small aperture. I have exhibited a representation of them in plates 238 and 239, as they appear on the east side, where a prospect opens on the river between the mountains, on the highest part of which is a canal full of reeds. It is pretended that these people stretch iron chains from one side of the mountain to the other, that they might secure a communication one with the other in time of war; it is also said, that on the other side of the mountain to the west, is another aperture like that which I have already mentioned. As to other particulars I was unable to obtain any certain information from the inhabitants of the village, who call this place *Goem-gabran*, or the habitation of the pagans. They likewise declare, that this place was founded by giants, who lived 1300 years ago, under the government of one *Ryllan*; but they have no foundation for this pretence, as has been already observed in my account of *Persepolis*. This place is about half a league from the village, and the subterranean passage, which has already been mentioned, a full league.

Buildings  
of a pecu-  
liar struc-  
ture.

A grotto.

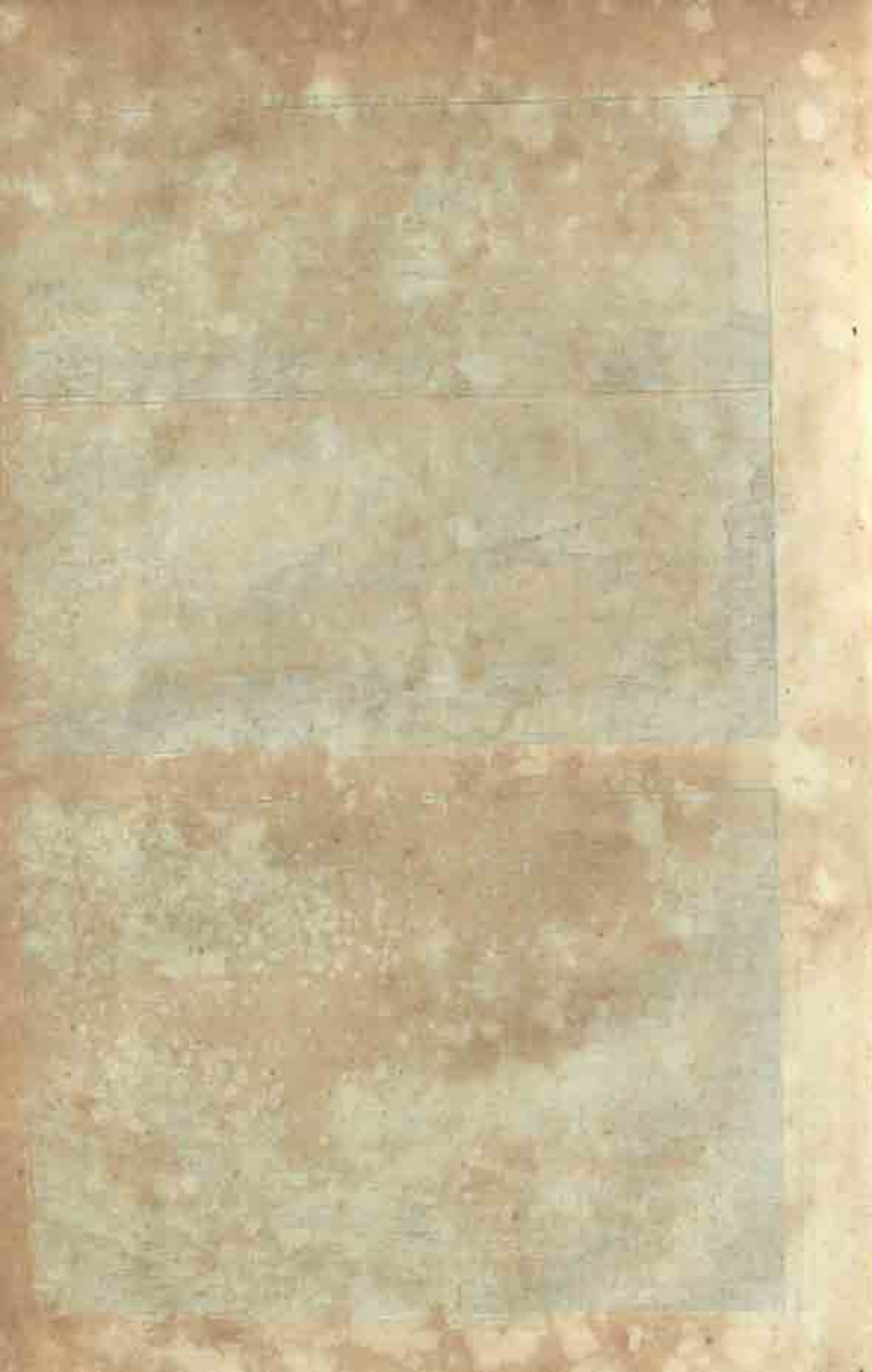




BÂTIMENS ANCIENNES.



BÂTIMENS ANCIENNES.





1706. A little on this side, toward the east, is a water-fall, which extends itself westward among the lands, on the side of the village. There is great plenty of fruit in this quarter, and some admirable melons; the weather was so excessive cold that we were obliged to have a fire.

We set out the next day at another part of the village, where we found the river much easier to be passed; and about a league from thence, we came into the high road, where we found a *corps de garde*. We then entered upon a beautiful plain, and arrived late in the evening at the *Caravanferai* of *Af-mongeer*. The greatest part of the land which lies adjacent to it, was cultivated, and the country people were employed in making canals for the distribution of the water. This place is about four leagues from the other that was last mentioned.

We continued our journey the next day, over the plain, where we saw many tents covered with black, and also met several families, the women and children of which were mounted on camels and asses; some caravans also, with several *Persians*, accompanied by women in litters, passed by us. We arrived in the evening at the *Caravanferai* of *Payra*, after a progress of five leagues; and continued our journey, the next day, notwithstanding the cold was excessive, and the wind very boisterous; but had scarce travell'd 300 paces, when we were informed by two couriers, that the road was infested by a great number of robbers, who were well furnished with arms. This information made us think it advisable to return from whence we came, and wait till evening for some caravans which we had left at the *Caravanferai*. We set out together at one in the morning, and met a caravan at break of day, but heard nothing of the robbers, whom we had escaped, and we arrived about eight at the *Caravanferai* of *Maejasarie*, where we found so much company, that there was not room to lodge above half of them, tho'

Vol. II.

the *Caravanferai* is very large and commodious. We continued there till midnight, and then proceeded on our journey, the moon shining exceeding bright. We met on the road some *Persians*, and a troop of asses, laden with rice; and after we had passed over a beautiful valley, we arrived at the *Caravanferai* of *Babajie*, which is seven leagues from the former.

We found there a caravan, and a *Persian* lord, attended by seven or eight domestics, and going to *Gamron*; we continued our journey at seven in the morning, and arrived about three at *Zjie-raes*, after we had travelled five leagues.

I took up my lodging, as usual, in the convent of *Carmelites*, where I found the old father, and the *Flemming*, whom I met the preceding year, in my journey to *Gamron*; and they were extremely glad to see me: my old friends Mr. *Latul*, and Mr. *Batar*, a *French* clock-maker, came to congratulate me upon my return. The people were still employed in their vintage. I acquainted the conductor of the caravan with my inclination to set out the next day, but he happened not to be quite ready. In the mean time a courier brought me a letter from the baron de *Larix*, dated the 28th of *November*, at *Mabyn*, which is three days journey from *Zjie-raes*. As he was desirous to see me, he had sent another by the way of *Persepolis*, having been informed by a letter from the director of *Gamron*, that I might possibly take that road. I wrote him an answer immediately, and took horse two hours after, with a *Carmelite* of the *Low-Countries*, in order to meet the baron, whom we found in a garden near the mountains, from whence we returned together to the city, where Mr. *De Larix*, who had a large train of servants, took up his lodgings with the man who prepares the companies wines. On the second of *December* we paid a visit to Mr. *Hazie Nebbie*, a famous merchant, whom I formerly mentioned. We went thither on horseback, attended

N n

by



1706. by a numerous train of servants, mounted on fine horses, of which those that belonged to the baron, and myself, had their bridles and housings all embroidered. We were entertained in a very polite manner, and continued there till noon. That *Persian* had already visited Mr. de Larix, and had sent him presents. This gentleman did me the honour to sup with me in the convent, where we passed the greatest part of the night in a very agreeable manner. The next day he continued his journey, and I accompanied him some leagues from *Zjie-raet*, and Mr. Latoul as far as *Gamron*. We pursued a deer, which the hunters who belonged to Mr. de Larix afterward took.

*Mosque of Solomon's mother.*

I changed the design I had formed of going by the way of *Persopolis*, and resolved when I came five or six leagues from *Zjie-raet*, to travel through a place called *Mazet-Madre-Sulemoen*, or the mosque of Solomon's mother; tho' I am not able to comprehend by what means the knowledge of that prince extended as far as *Persia*; for I could never learn from the *Persians* themselves, how they came to erect a temple in honour of his mother, since neither the scripture, nor any historian, has once intimated that he was ever in *Persia*, or that he ever travelled out of the *Holy-Land*. It is therefore very probable that this structure was only dedicated to the mother of one of their kings, whose name was *Solomon*. I had indeed often heard the ruins of this place mentioned by Mr. Hoogkamer, and likewise by Mr. Bakker, who had been his secretary, and had taken a draught of part of this building, which is of stone, and higher than all the rest.

There is still to be seen a large apartment, which has no tomb in it, and there are some other buildings raised about it. At the distance of two market shots from thence toward the north, upon the plain, there are also some ruins, and a large portal without any figure, and two leagues and a half from thence a

1706. wall, built with large stones round a mountain, on whose top there appears to have been some structure in antient times, but it is impossible to form any judgment of it, by the little which is now left. These ruins are about a league from the village of *Sesaboemia*.

I was informed, at my arrival at *Zjie-raet*, that it was not long since twenty robbers, in the middle of the night, and near the village of *Mayien*, attacked a caravan that was coming from *Iman-fade*, in which were three christian merchants, from whom they took 13300 ducats, and even their rings from their fingers. The merchants defended themselves with great bravery for some time, being provided with fire-arms, and each of them having a servant, who was likewise armed: They killed one of the robbers, who having no fire-arms of their own, attacked with their sabres the merchant who had shot their companion, and killed him on the spot, after which they retired with their booty.

Messieurs Latoul and Batar, whom I lately mentioned, were of the number of this caravan: The former was director of the *French* company, though he was an *Armenian* by birth, and for that reason those unhappy merchants had placed themselves under his protection. But the director and his companion had recourse to flight, the moment the robbers appeared, and about an hour after rejoined the caravan, where they found matters in the condition I have related. If they had stood firm to each other, this calamity might, in all probability, have been prevented, since they were furnished with fire-arms, whereas the robbers were only armed, some with sabres, and others with clubs. One of these merchants was a native of *Aleppo*, the other two of *Diarbekir*, the capital of *Mesopotamia*, and they were trading to the *Indies*.

In reality they had acted very imprudently, having counted, and changed their money, in a publick manner, in the *Caravan-serai* at *Isfahan*,

1706.

*Arbitrary committed on these merchants.*



1706. *pahan*, where some of this gang of robbers happened to be present, and observed upon which beast the money was laid. This accident, and some others of the same nature, obliged me to keep the high road, and not trust my self to any person. The youngest of these merchants retired hither, and the other went to *Ispahan*,

1706. *han*, to try if he could obtain any intelligence of his money, and of those who had taken it. For my part, I agreed with one of the masters of the caravan, who furnished me with two horses to carry me to *Ispahan*, with a courier, whom the baron de Larix had given me.

## CHAP. LXXVIII.

*The author's departure from Zjie-raes. Remarkable fortresses. His arrival at Ispahan. The departure of the king and court from thence.*

*The journey that I departed from Zjie-raes.*

ON the 4th in the evening, I pursued my journey, and was accompanied by some friends as far as the garden, where we went to meet Mr. de Larix; and I arrived, about two in the morning, at the *Caravanferai* at *Bast-siega*, three leagues from *Zjie-raes*; from whence I set out at break of day, to take the advantage of the morning light, since the nights were very cold; for this reason I had no inclination to accompany the caravan, which commonly travels in the night. When I had passed over some mountains, and a valley, no water was to be found; I entered upon the plain of *Sergoen*, leaving on my right hand, the village of that name, and the bridge of *Pol-ebanie*. I was much surprised at not finding a drop of water in the plain, which is commonly floated over. I afterward forded a river, because it was the shortest way, and arrived about evening at the *Caravanferai* of *Abgergm*, after I had travelled 8 leagues. I proceeded on my journey the next day, and at the distance of a league from thence, passed over a large stone bridge; near which are two mountains, on whose top was formerly a fortress. I was accompanied that day by a caravan, which durst not travel in the night, by reason of some robbers who infested that quarter. We passed over two or three

marshes, in order to shorten the way, leaving on our left hand another mountain, upon which a fortress had formerly been erected, and I then, for the first time, had a distant view of snow upon the mountains. We afterward passed a river, which was dry, and arrived about noon at the town of *May-ien*, after a journey of five leagues.

I there found a *Persian* lord, with a numerous train of servants, provided with fire-arms, which he was pleased to shew me; but they were not then charged, and had very bad flints, notwithstanding he was provided with those that were very good. He afterward shewed me a fine musquet, of *European* make, and to which I fitted a good flint. I then gave him a sight of my arms, which consisted of a good fusée, and two pair of pistols, one for the pomel of my saddle, and the other for my girdle. That lord set out soon after for *Zjie-raes*; and as the caravan, which had accompanied me the preceding evening, did not move fast enough for me, I went before, and passed over a rock, where the way was so bad, that I was obliged to alight, and lead my horse by the bridle. One of the horses that carried my baggage, fell down two or three times. I here met three travellers, who were likewise going to *Ispahan*, and



1706. and when we had passed over the rock, we descended into the plain, and arrived about three at the *Caravanferai* of *Ondja*, after a journey of seven leagues. We set out from thence at break of day, and found the water frozen over in a fine plain that was well cultivated, and full of villages; we stopped at the town of *Allepas*, about five leagues from the place where we had passed the night, and found a caravan loaded with wine for our director at *Gamron*. The next day we continued our journey, and saw a vast number of small birds in a field sowed with rice, and a little farther, in a marshy ground, several snipes, ducks, lapwings, and storks: We arrived in good time at the *Caravanferai* of *Kes-kiesar*, after a journey of seven leagues.

The next day we passed through a fine plain, that was cultivated, and full of villages, and little hills. We here met some *Persian* lords, with a train of twenty-five servants, who were all well armed, and afterward several caravans. We arrived about three at the *Caravanferai* of *Deder-goe*, seven leagues from that where we had passed the night. The next day we passed by a ruinous castle, which was situated in a place full of little hills, and then continued our journey over mountains, that were very difficult of access, and where we were frequently obliged to alight. We descended, with inexpressible difficulty, into the plain of *Jes-dagari*, where we rested ourselves at the *Caravanferai* of that name, being much fatigued, though we had not travelled above seven leagues. The next day about noon, we arrived at *Magsoebegi*, where I found Mr. St. John, who came from *Ispahan*, and was going to *Gamron*, in quality of director of the *English* company: He was accompanied by Signior *Francisco*, who had the management of that company's wines at *Zije-raei*. He continued his journey in the night with the caravan, and I mine at break of day, over a beautiful plain, full of inclosed gar-

dens, and dove-houses, as far as 1706. *Cominsja*, which is a large town, and furnished with several very commodious *Caravanferais*, and by the side of it runs a river. The next day I passed over another plain, which was likewise full of gardens, and houses, and is watered by a canal, that extends to *Majaer*, where we arrived about two in the afternoon, after a journey of six leagues. I there drew the inside of the beautiful *Caravanferai* of *Majaer*, from my chamber window, which opened toward the great gate. I have already given a description of the outside of this structure, and of the country around it, and have represented it in a plate. I departed from this place at break of day, and passed by *Mierfa-Elrasa*, which is two leagues beyond it, and three from *Ispahan*, where I arrived about three in the afternoon. I alighted at the convent of the *Capuchins*, where I was very well received by the father guardian. I chose this retreat, that I might be a little at ease, beside which, I did not intend to tarry long in that city. I was informed at my arrival, that the king went from thence the 28th of *August*, and stopped at his garden of *Sadets-abact*, till the 16th of *September*, and afterward at that of *Kes-gonna*, and the 24th at *Dowlet-abact*, three leagues from this metropolis. He was accompanied by all the grandees of his court, and likewise by his concubines: the principal design of his journey was to visit the frontiers of his kingdom, agreeably to the custom of the ancient kings his predecessors. He consigned the regency, in his absence, to the eunuch *Sefi-Coelic-Aga*, whom he invested with an absolute authority.

The next day after my arrival, Mr. Bakker, the director, did me the honour to send his steward to congratulate me upon my return, and to invite me to dine with him, from which I excused myself, with a promise to visit him in the evening. He received me with great civility



1706.



vility and friendship, and offered me an apartment in his house, for which I returned him my thanks, and went back to the convent.

The next I paid a visit to Mr. Lacke, the *English* agent, who was also so good as to offer me his house. My friends came to welcome me, and among the rest Mr. Joseph, an *Italian* surgeon and physician, who arrived at *Ispahan* since my departure for the *Indies*.

I afterward wrote to my friends at *Batavia*, particularly to Mr. Kastelein, and the baron de Larix, by a courier who was setting out for *Gauwon* with some dispatches. I

then went for my diversion into the country with the director, to the garden of *Koes-gonna*, where the king had stopped for some time, after his departure from *Ispahan*.

There is a noble building in the middle of this garden, with a large hall, very finely painted. From the top of this structure, the eye commands a prospect of all the country around; and there is a separate seraglio, distributed into small apartments. I passed the night at the company's house, where several other persons, as well as myself, were entertained the next day with the utmost civility.

1707.

1707.

## C H A P. LXXIX.

*Congratulations on the new year, &c. An entertainment given by an Armenian merchant. The extraordinary conduct and death of a minister of France. The Guebres. Their calculation of the world's duration. Their opinions and manners.*

First of  
January  
congratulations  
to him.

ON the first day of the year 1707, I went to congratulate the director, and to wish him a happy year, in conformity to the custom of the country. He pressed me to dine with him that day in company with father *Antonio*, burgo-master of *Jussa*, together with most of the principal *Armenian* merchants, and the greatest part of the *European* monks: Abundance of rain fell this day.

I went likewise, on the 6th, to pay my compliments to the *English* agent, who provided an entertainment for the same company as dined the first day at the director's. The time we passed there was rendered very agreeable by the sound of several instruments, and the discharge of five small pieces of cannon.

On the 7th, the *Persians* solemnized the last day of their grand fast, which had continued a whole month. A few days after the director honoured me with a visit, and we went the next day to dine at *Jussa*, with Mr. *Gregory Sumael*. As we were passing over a plain on horseback, the director's horse fell with him into a ditch full of snow, from whence we drew him out with great difficulty. When we came to the *Armenian's* house, we found the patriarch there, together with father *Antonio Desiro*; the second director of the *English* company, some *French* ecclesiastics, and a great number of *Armenian* merchants, in all above fifty persons. We were entertained at first with sweetmeats, hot liquors, cordial water, and tobacco; and afterward with all sorts of provisions. When

the patriarch had blessed the table, he took a loaf, and broke it, and then presented the pieces to several of the guests, which was a ceremony I had never seen before. The hall, which was very spacious, was covered with a carpet of cotton, around which we placed ourselves, agreeably to the custom of the country; and the servants were very diligent in supplying each of the guests with provisions and wine. We drank to the health of all the guests, and of several persons who were absent, and the company parted about the close of day. On the 17th, was solemnized the baptism of the cross, the particulars of which have been formerly related.

Much about this time we were informed that Mr. *Fabre*, who came to the *Persian* court, in the quality of a *French* ambassador, died at *Erzurum* the 20th of *August*; and that he had left no more than four ducats behind him, though he had contracted debts to the amount of above a hundred thousand livres at *Constantinople*, where was likewise his wife, who was a *Grecian*: It was also said, that he had brought another wife from *Paris*, and that she repaired to *Ispahan*, where she had the boldness to assume the character of the deceased, and made her entry on horseback, habited like an *Amazon*, and bare-headed; which was a conduct directly opposite to the manners and customs of the country. The event of this affair was impatiently expected, when intelligence came that Mr. *Michel*, secretary to the *French* embassy at the *Port*, was to set out for *Persia*. It

was



1707. was likewise known, by the way of Aleppo, that his most christian majesty had sent orders to apprehend Mr. Fabre, and send him prisoner to France; but this misfortune was prevented by his death.

We afterward understood by letters from Erivan, in the month of February 1707, that a quarrel arising between the servants of that ambassador's retinue, and the inhabitants of the city, on some difference which was said to be entirely owing to the ambassadress, the contending parties came to blows, and several Persians being killed in the fray, the inhabitants were so provoked, that they immediately slaughtered a considerable number of the Frenchmen, and dragged the rest of them to prison; among whom were found some Armenians, who were all beheaded. It was afterward reported, but without any certainty, that the court of Persia had given orders for sending back the ambassadress; but I shall give a more particular account of this affair in the sequel.

The author's conversation with a priest of the Guebres.

I was very desirous at that time, to converse with some priests of the Guebres, and was favoured with an opportunity of that nature by means of the English agent, a man of merit and learning, and in whose friendship I had the honour to enjoy a considerable share: He procured me a visit from one of these priests, who was attended by an interpreter, that served him in the quality of secretary, and we enter'd into discourse together. I first ask'd him, his opinion of the creation of the world, and of God's omnipotence: To which he reply'd, that he considered God as the Being of Beings, and a spirit of light, above the comprehension of human faculties; that he is immense, and present in all places; almighty, and from all eternity, and will exist to eternity; that nothing can be concealed from him, or done in opposition to his will. They have likewise a tradition amongst them, that some of the angels rebelled against God, and

had the insolence to wage war with him; and that one of those Angels, named Abliis before his fall, and after it Zeyloen, or Devil, was thrown headlong into the Doefag, or Hell, which they suppose to be in the center of the earth. They say, that God created the earth in six periods of time, which they call Mey-deserem, Mey-doeniem, Peti-esjaryhem, Eoos-aen, Meydie-jeriben, and Ammaespat-miediehem. He could not inform me whether these were years, months, weeks, or days; but was inclinable to suppose they might be days. He added, that after God had created the world, he likewise created man, and called him Babba-Adam, from whom all his descendants have received the name of Adam, but in a more particular manner amongst the Persians and Turks: That this Adam was formed out of the four elements, fire, air, water, and earth: That God afterward created his spirit, which they imagine to be a wind, and then extracted from the left side of Adam some part of his body, and a portion of his soul, with which he formed woman, in the image and resemblance of Adam: That likewise in process of time, some one, with whose name they are unacquainted, presented to Adam a certain species of corn, larger than a melon, whereof he ate, and for that offence was expelled by the deity from the seat which he had granted him for his habitation. He likewise told me, that when man was first created, his eyes were placed on the uppermost part of the head, and that they did not descend below his forehead, till after he had eaten the fruit. This notion makes it evident, that they believe his view was directed toward heaven before the fall, and after it to the earth. He added, that Adam afterward presenting himself before God, the lord demanded of him, what he had seen at his first creation? To which he replied, that he had beheld his creator; and God having further enquired what he then saw, he answered,



1707.

swered, that he then saw himself in a deplorable state. The priest likewise declared, that he knew not in what manner *Adam* and his wife afterward conducted themselves, but was certain that they had multiplied their kind, and peopled the earth: That there appeared, a long time after this, a prophet, whom they call *Zaer-fos*, and that the *Persians* to this very day take him for *Abraham*: That this prophet recommended to mankind the practice of virtue, and the detestation of vice: That mankind murmured at him, saying, *Why do you enjoin us the performance of this, and why forbid us the other?* To which he answered, *I come by the command of God: They then returned, If your assertion be true, draw yourself through the gold and silver we are preparing to melt: if you do that, without receiving any injury, we will readily believe you, and yield obedience to your injunctions.* This experiment he consented to submit to, and performed it with safety: from this circumstance they gave him the name of *Zaer-fos*, or *Zaer-fosch*, which signifies a person washed with melted gold or silver: He then gave them the books of their law, that they might be instructed in the performance of his precepts, with respect to God and their neighbour: These laws obliged them to reverence whatever was above them, namely, the sun, the fire, the water, and the earth, without paying adoration to them: The priest added, that many persons thought they worshipped the four elements, though in reality they entertained a veneration for fire, only on account of the many advantages they derived from it; for water, because it afforded them drink, and purified them; for air, because it furnished them with light, namely, the lustre of the sun and moon, which they honoured for their beneficial brightness, and paid the same regard to the earth, because they proceeded from it. Their veneration for fire is deduced from the ancient *Persians*, in the days of *Cyrus*,

*Darius*, and *Alexander*, who esteemed fire as sacred and eternal, and carried it on silver altars before their armies. They also bore the image of the sun in a chrysal vessel, and placed it over their tents, that it might be seen by all. The prophet *Ezekiel* had this practice in view when he said, *Your images of the sun shall be thrown down.*

They are not permitted to eat crows, serpents, nor camels; and even the blood of those creatures is prohibited them, as is also the hog, unless they have kept them two or three months in their own houses, and prevented them from eating any impure food.

As to births, the third day after the infant's nativity, they send for a priest, who pours holy water into the child's and the mother's mouth. At the same time he gives the infant the name of one of his predecessors, after which he invokes the assistance of God, who created the heaven and the earth, and entreats him to grant a long life to the child, together with all things necessary for its accommodation. They have no circumcision.

When a virgin becomes marriageable, and has been solicited to enter upon the nuptial state, she makes choice of some person of her own sex, whom she authorizes to appear in her name, and with witnesses, before the judges of the place; when this commission has been discharged, the judges enquire of the witnesses, whether the pretensions of the man are well supported? After which the intended bridegroom appears, and is thrice asked by the judge, whether he be inclinable to espouse that woman? To which the man having replied in the affirmative, he is ordered to pay forty *tomans* in silver, and five in gold, which amount to 1575 livres, in case the woman should require it; and this sum is usually paid in jewels; but if his circumstances should not permit him to advance it, his wife may dispense with the payment.

When



1707

When these preliminaries are settled, the suitor goes with five or six of his oldest relations, to the house of his intended spouse, who is accompanied by several women. The person whom she had authorized to act for her on this occasion, then takes her by the hand, and presents her to her husband, upon which all the relations take each of them a candle, and conduct her to the habitation of her spouse, and into the chamber where the marriage is to be consummated; but persons of quality have no interview with each other before the celebration of their nuptials. When a woman happens to prove barren, the husband may espouse another wife with the consent of the former.

Their last  
rites.

When a person is at the point of death, it is usual for a priest to attend on that occasion, and he then reads what is suitable to the condition of the sick person, and when death has done its work, the body is conveyed to a place appointed for that purpose, and called *Lef-coma*. There they leave it for the space of 4 or 5 hours, while they assemble the relations of the deceased. After the body has been dressed in white linnen, and wrapped up in a sheet, it is placed on an iron bier, in order to be carried to a certain mountain, that contains an apartment, formed into several divisions, in one of which the corps is deposited while some passages are read out of a certain book. When this ceremonial is compleated, the body is left in that sepulchre for the space of a year; at the end of which the bones are collected together, and buried in the earth. These people are of opinion, that the moment the soul quits the body, it passes into another world, where it continues excluded from the sight of God till the day of judgment: At which time it makes its appearance before him, in order to be consigned either to heaven or to hell, as it shall appear to have been innocent or guilty.

Their days  
of prayer.

They never observe any day of rest, but have four days of prayer in

Vol. II.

each month, and assemble themselves in their temples, for the celebration of their ceremonies. They have their stated prayers three times a day, namely, at sun rise, noon, and evening; and they curse *Mohammed*, whom they account a false prophet.

These *Guebres* have been driven from their own country by the fatalities of war, and are now reduced to an inconsiderable number. They are likewise dispersed in several cities of *Persia*, in which places they enjoy more liberty than is allowed them at *Ispahan*, where they who have settled themselves at *Julfa*, are now obliged to embrace the *Mohammedan* doctrines. In the reign of king *Abbas* they enjoyed the same liberty as was granted to the *Armenians* and *Christians*, and they were treated with this indulgent in order to prevent them from settling on the frontiers of *Turkey*. They had likewise lands given them to cultivate, as well there as in other places. With respect to other particulars, these *Guebres*, or *Gaures*, are all reduced to a low degree of poverty. Their women are clothed after the *Arabian* manner, and always go with their faces uncovered, in conformity to the antient custom of that nation: They have a language peculiar to themselves, and the characters of it entirely differ from those of the *Persian*.

They compute the years of the world's duration from *Adam*, whom they call by that name, as we do; but they give other denominations to his descendants. They say, that when he had attained to the 30th year of his age, *Ousbyu* was born, and they consider him as the chief of a family; the next person in their genealogy of this race of mankind, they call *Siem-jet*, and pretend that he was their first king. They add, that he lived 700 years, and was succeeded by *Sookaet*, who lived a thousand years, and left his crown to *Freydoem*, who resigned it to *Pfoom*, at the age of 300 years. As to this last, they neither know in what manner he lived, nor how he

1707

Their calculation of  
the years of  
the world.

King of  
the Guebres



1707. conducted the reins of government. After him they place *Mamoot-sieber*, who reigned 120 years, and then *Noufar*, who reigned twelve, and was deposed by *Aef-raeffia*, a Tartar, who seized the Persian crown, and reigned fifty years. His successors, according to their computation, were *Khekshaet*, who reigned 120 years; *Khekdoes*, 150; *Loraes* and *Goffaet*, 120 together; *Baman* ninety-nine, and *Homa*, the daughter of *Baman*, thirty. This princess was succeeded by *Darop*, the son of *Darius*, who reigned fourteen years and three months, and had for his successor the son of *Baman*, who reigned but twelve. *Sebandaz-roemie*, or *Alexander the Great*, enjoyed the kingdom after him, and reigned fourteen years, as these people think; for they represent them all as kings, after the two first fathers. The successors which they assign to that conqueror, are *Asht*, the son of *Asht-poes*; *Nieroef-stein-Cofforo*, son of *Ardewoen*; and *Babokoen*, who reigned 265 years; *Ardisjier Babokoen* forty one years; *Armoos*, the son of *Siapoer*, five; *Baroen Senogormoes* three years and three months; *Pieroet-ger* ten years; *Baroem*, the son of *Baroem-mien*, four years and five months; *Narfie*, the son of *Baroem*, nine years; *Ormoes*, the son of *Narfie*, likewise nine years; *Sapoer*, the son of *Sapoer*, five years and four days; *Za-ardexjier afzia*, ten years; *Zia-peer*, the son of *Zia-ardexjier*, eleven years; *Jesdegerd* thirty years; *Baroem-mi-*

gier sixty six years; *Jesdegerd*, the son of *Baroem*, eighteen years and four months; *Phirves*, the son of *Jesdegerd*, fourteen years; *Narfia*, the son of *Phieros*, seven years; *Bellaes*, the son of *Phieros*, five years; *Cobaet-Sinneferoes* forty years; *Noufer-woen*, the son of *Cobaet*, a very just and equitable prince, forty seven; *Ormoes*, the son of *Nosjeva*, twelve; *Cosroes*, the son of *Ormoes*, thirty eight; *Cobaet*, son of *Cosroes*, seven months; *Aerde-ijer Sinnecobaet*, eighteen months; *Afermien*, the daughter of *Cosroes*, six months; *Kofwar-bonce*, another daughter of *Cosroes*, one year; *Jesdegerd* twenty years.

These were succeeded by a race of Mohammedan princes. This computation of years since *Adam*, excepting those of the princes who have been mentioned, and whose age is not known, amounts to 3632 years, one month, and five days; to which 1135 years, from the coming of *Mohammed* to the present time, being added, the total amounts to 4767 years, one month, and five days.

This is all the information I could obtain, with respect to the *Guebres*, and the princes of that race, who have governed *Persia*, as these people pretend. I will now subjoin an exact list of the Persian kings, who have reigned since the time of *Alexander the Great*, and shall offer a few concise remarks, that are necessary for the illustration of this subject.



1707.

1707.

## CHAP. LXXX.

*A list of the Persian kings, who have reigned in succession, from the death of Alexander the Great, to the present time; extracted from the antient Greeks, and modern Persians.*

AFTER the death of *Alexander the Great*, who possessed the empire of *Asia* for the space of 7 years, great dissensions arose between the captains of that conqueror, with respect to the sovereign power, to which they all formed pretensions. In order, therefore, to prevent the effects of such a competition, they unanimously agreed to give the crown to *Aridæus*, the brother of *Alexander*, and the son of *Philip* by *Philene*: But as this prince was not master of those qualifications that were requisite for sustaining so great a weight, the regency of the state was assigned to *Perdiccas*; and the government of several kingdoms and provinces, was conferred upon the other princes and lords, who acted at first in the name of the new king, but soon aspired to the sovereign power: As these facts are known by all the world, and have been largely treated of by several historians, I shall think it sufficient to present the reader with an exact list of all the *Persian* kings from that time.

It may be necessary to observe, that the *Greeks* did not long continue masters of the *Persian* empire. Their disunion, and continual wars, contributed not a little to the declension of their power. We find, however, in antient authors, a succession of *Macedonian* princes, who governed this kingdom. *Alexander* conferred the government of it on *Pencestes*, during his life, and he retained it after the death of that prince, till he was dethroned by *Antiochus*, a natural son of *Philip*, and brother of *Alexander*, after the defeat of *Eumenes*.

1. *Antiochus* therefore was the first *Macedonian*, who, after the death of

*Alexander*, assumed the title of king of *Persia*. He had been invested before with the government of *Asia Minor*, and after the defeat of *Eumenes*, he made himself master of *Asia*, together with *Syria*, *Babylon*, *Persia*, and all the provinces that depended upon them. But this prince was vanquished in his turn, by *Seleucus Nicator*, who conquered *Persia*.

2. *Seleucus Nicator*, or *Nicator*, which name signifies a conqueror, governed this fine kingdom for the space of thirty years.

3. *Antiochus Soter*, or the preserver, who succeeded him, reigned twenty one years.

4. *Antiochus Theos* fifteen years.

5. *Seleucus Callinicus*, eighteen years.

Historians differ, with reference to the time when the *Parthians* revolted. Some place this event in the reign of *Antiochus Theos*, and others in that of *Callinicus*. I shall not multiply remarks on this difference, which has but little affinity with our present subject; and shall therefore content myself with observing, after *Scaliger*, and some others, that this revolt was carried on under the conduct of *Arsaces* (who, according to *Strabo*, was a *Scythian* by birth, though others will have him to be a pirate) in the 12th year of the reign of *Antiochus Theos*, and the 3d of the 132d Olympiad; or, according to *Hebraicus*, the 3700th year of the world, and 248 years before the nativity of *Jesus Christ*.

We, however, are not to infer from hence, that *Arsaces* ascended the throne of *Persia*, immediately after this revolt, since there are reasons to believe it was at that time when



1707. *Seleucus Callinicus* was engaged in a war against his brother *Antiochus Hierax*, or the *Rapacious*, and about the 17th year of his reign. But it is generally agreed, that the *Parthians* made themselves masters of *Persia*, in consequence of that revolt, and possessed it for the space of 479, or 476 years.

I shall now present the reader with a list of the *Arfacides*, or kings who assumed the name of *Arfaces*, in honour to the memory of that prince. I have likewise added the number of years they reigned.

*Years of their reign.*

Kings of  
Persia.

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| 1. <i>Arfaces</i> I.  |            |
| 2. <i>Arfaces</i> II.   | reigned 20 |
| 3. <i>Pampatius</i> , <i>Pbraates</i> , or }<br><i>Arfaces</i> III. | 12         |
| 4. <i>Pharnaces</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> IV.                         | 8          |
| 5. <i>Mithridates</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> V.                        | 47         |
| 6. <i>Pbraates</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> VI.                          | 28         |
| 7. <i>Artabanus</i> I. or <i>Arfaces</i> VII.                       | 2          |
| 8. <i>Pacorus</i> I. or <i>Arfaces</i> VIII.                        |            |
| 9. <i>Pbraates</i> II. or <i>Arfaces</i> IX.                        |            |
| 10. <i>Mithridates</i> II. or <i>Arfaces</i> X.                     |            |
| 11. <i>Orodes</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> XI.                           |            |
| 12. <i>Pbraates</i> III. or <i>Arfaces</i> XII.                     |            |
| 13. <i>Tiridates</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> XIII.                      |            |
| 14. <i>Pbraates</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> XIV.                        |            |
| 15. <i>Orodes</i> II. or <i>Arfaces</i> XV.                         |            |
| 16. <i>Boaones</i> , <i>Vinones</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> XVI.        |            |

His son *Meberdates* did not reign after him, another family having ascended the throne.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 17. <i>Artabanus</i> 2. or <i>Arfaces</i> XVII.                  |  |
| 18. <i>Bardanes</i> , <i>Vardanes</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> XVIII. |  |
| 19. <i>Gotarizes</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> XIX.                    |  |
| 20. <i>Vologeses</i> I. or <i>Arfaces</i> XX.                    |  |
| 21. <i>Artabanus</i> III. or <i>Arfaces</i> XXI.                 |  |
| 22. <i>Pacorus</i> II. or <i>Arfaces</i> XXII.                   |  |
| 23. <i>Cosores</i> , or <i>Arfaces</i> XXIII.                    |  |
| 24. <i>Vologeses</i> II. or <i>Arfaces</i> XXIV.                 |  |
| 25. <i>Vologeses</i> III. or <i>Arfaces</i> XXV.                 |  |
| 26. <i>Artabanus</i> IV. or <i>Arfaces</i> XXVI.                 |  |

This *Artabanus* was the last of the kings of *Parthia*, who ruled over all the states of the *Persian* monarchy, and maintained long wars with

the *Romans*. This prince was assassinated by a *Persian*, named *Artaxerxes*, who seized the crown in the 5th year of *Alexander Severus* the emperor, according to *Agathias*, or, as others say, in the 10th: That is, according to *Scaliger* and *Hebeceus*, 228, or 232 years after the birth of *Jesus Christ*; and in the year of the world 4176, or 4179. It is pretended that this *Artaxerxes* was the son of *Pavecus* a tanner; or, that this *Pavecus*, who had no child, and was skilled in astrology, having found by his consultation of the stars, that the offspring of *Sannus* a certain soldier, who lodged in his house, should become illustrious and fortunate, he persuaded his wife to receive him to her bed, in consequence of which she became the mother of this *Artaxerxes*. It is at least certain that this prince understood magick, and that all the kings of *Persia* who have reigned since his time, are descended from him. The princes in the following series are ranged as I find them in *Agathias*, and other authors, who have transcribed the *Persian* records.

- |   | Ye. | Mo. |   |
|---|-----|-----|---|
| 1. <i>Artaxerxes</i> I. who reign'd                   | 14  | 10  | The descendants<br>of <i>Artaxerxes</i> . |
| 2. <i>Sapor</i> I.                                    | 31  |     |   |
| 3. <i>Hormisdas</i> I.                                | 1   |     |   |
| 4. <i>Varanes</i> I.                                  | 3   |     |   |
| 5. <i>Varanes</i> II.                                 | 10  |     |   |
| 6. <i>Varanes</i> III. surnamed }<br><i>Seganefna</i> |     | 4   |   |
| 7. <i>Narjes</i>                                      | 7   | 9   |   |
| 8. <i>Misdates</i>                                    | 7   | 9   |   |
| 9. <i>Sapor</i> II.                                   | 70  |     |   |

He was declared king while he was in the womb of his mother, on whose body the crown was placed.

- |   | Ye. | Mo. |
|---|-----|-----|
| 10. <i>Artaxerxes</i> II. the brother of <i>Sapor</i> , reign'd | 4   |     |
| 11. <i>Sapor</i> III. son of <i>Artaxerxes</i>                  | 5   |     |
| 12. <i>Varanes</i> IV. surnamed }<br><i>Kermensut</i>           | 11  |     |



1707.

Ye. Mo.

13. *Isdigerdes I.* to whom the emperor *Arcadius* consigned the guardianship of his son *Theodosius*, according to *Procopius* } 21
14. *Varanes V.* } 20
15. *Varanes VI.* or *Isdigerdes II.* } 17 4
16. *Perozes* } 20
17. *Valem*, brother of *Perozes*, or, according to others, *Obalas* } 4
18. *Cabades*, son of *Perozes*.

This prince being desirous to introduce a law, which should authorize every man to enjoy as many women as he pleased, whether virgins, or married women, was deposed, in the eleventh year of his reign, and imprisoned in a castle. His brother *Zambases*, or *Zamasper*, succeeded him, and reigned but four years, others say two. *Cabades* having been preserved by the assistance of the queen his wife, who for his sake exposed herself to the fury of his guards, retired among the *Eutbalites*, and espoused the daughter of their king, with whom he returned into *Persia*, and resumed the crown, which he had enjoyed thirty years before, so that *Zembases* and he reigned in all forty one years.

19. *Cosroes the Great*, and the son of *Cabades*, sustained furious wars against the emperors *Justinian* and *Justin*, and reign'd 48 years.

Ye. Mo.

20. *Hormisdas II.* } 8
21. *Cosroes II.* } 39
22. *Siroes* } 1
23. *Ardasber* } 7
24. *Baras*, or *Sarbaras* } 6
25. *Baram*, or *Barnarim* } 1 7
26. *Hormisdas III.* } 2
27. *Jezdegird II.* or *Jazdegird* } 1 8

The *Arabs*, and modern authors among the *Persians*, assign other names to these princes, that correspond with the genius of their re-

Vol. II.

1707.

spective languages; but I shall not multiply remarks upon them, since I am desirous of avoiding all prolixity, and especially as an account of them may be seen in the abridgment of the *Persian* kings, p. 702, &c. written by *D. T. V. T.* one of the gentlemen of the bed-chamber to the most christian king. This work is entitled, *An Account of all the states, empires, kingdoms, and principalities, in the world.*

*Persia* had suffered greatly under the administration of the last six kings, and was at last subjected to a foreign yoke. *Mohammed* the impostor was born in the 802d year of the *Alexandrian Era*, the 22d day of the month *Nisan*, which corresponds with the 22d of *April*, in the 572d year of the *Christian Era*. He published his false prophecies, in the year 611, in the 40th year of his age, and was driven out of *Mecca*, in 622; upon which he retreated to *Medina*. In time, he won, by force of arms, *Cbaibar*, *Mecca*, and the better part of *Arabia*, and died of the falling sickness, accompanied with a fever in the year 634, and the 11th of the *Hegira*, or his escape from *Medina*. After his death, *Abubecr*, or *Abudaker*, the son of *Amer* and *Salma*, and father of *Aijischa*, *Mohammed's* third wife, was proclaimed *Khalifah*, or chief of the *Mohammedans*, in spiritual and temporal affairs, and was succeeded by *Omar*, or *Homar*, the son of *Elkateph*, who drove out *Jezdegird* in the year 640, and made himself master of the city of *Madajina*, where *Cosroes* had held his court, and he afterward conquered the greatest part of *Persia*. This prince kept his court at *Bagdad*, and was assassinated in the 4th year of his reign, by *Abululua*, a *Persian* of mean extraction. The *Khalifah* who succeeded him was *Osman*, or *Osman*, the son of *Affan* and *Bisa*, who challenged and slew *Jezdegird*, who had partly reinstated himself in his dominions. This event happened in the 31st year of the *Hegira*, and the 651st of *Jesus Christ*; after



1707. ter which this prince continued in the peaceable possession of all the states of the Persian monarchy, which the descendants of Artaxerxes had enjoy'd for the space of 461 years, or, as others say, 457. I shall now insert a list of the Khalifas, or Mohammedan kings of Persia, and they are here collected from the Persian authors, namely, Mirkond, Abul Pharajus, &c.

the Hegira, which accords with the 747th, or 749th year of the Christian account. This Khalifah was succeeded by Abul-Abbas-Saffah, an Abbasside, descended in the fourth degree from Abbas, the son of Abdolmotleb, grandfather of Mohammed. His successors reign'd 500 years.

| Kings of Persia, descended from the Khalifas, called Omniades.                                  | Ye. Mo.     |     |
|---|-------------|-----|
|   | Ye.         | Mo. |
| 1. Otoman or Osman III. Khalifah, reckoning from Abubecr, and the first king of Persia, reign'd | 11          | 4   |
| 2. Ali IV. Khalifah   | 4           | 9   |
| 3. Ali Hassen, or Acem  |             | 6   |
| 4. Muavi, or Muavia I.  | 19          | 6   |
| 5. Yezid, or Yezid I.   | 3           | 8   |
| 6. Muavi, or Muavia II.   |             | 4   |
| 7. Abdalla,   | } together, | 1   |
| 8. Marwan I.  |             |     |
| 9. Abdomalik  | 21          | 1   |
| 10. Walid, or Oelid I.  | 9           | 8   |
| 11. Solyman Ben Abdolmalek  | 2           | 6   |
| 12. Omar, or Homar  | 2           | 5   |
| 13. Yezid, or Yezid II.   | 4           | 8   |
| 14. Oebon, or according to others, Hiflam, Haseban, Hefeban, or Ecelid                          | } 19        | 8   |
| 15. Walid, or Oelid II.   |             |     |
| 16. Yezid, or Yezid III.  |             | 6   |
| 17. Ibrahim, or Ebrahim   |             | 3   |
| 18. Marwan II.  | 5           |     |

The 6th of these Khalifas, who was the 4th king of Persia, named Muavi, or Muaviab Ben Abu Soffan, descended from an Arab of quality, named Ommiab, and for that reason this prince and his successors were styled Omniades by the authors of that time, down to the reign of Marwan II. But the descendants of Ali called them, in derision, Faraina Beni Ommiab, the signification of which is Foravos, or tyrants, of the race of Ommiab. Marwan II. and the last king of the Omniades, was defeated in Syria by the Abbassides, after which he was taken and put to death in Egypt, in the 130th, or the 132d year of

|  | Ye. Mo. |     | Khalifah's named Abbassides. |
|--|---------|-----|------------------------------|
|  | Ye.     | Mo. |                              |
| 1. Abul-Abas-Saffah, the son of Mohammed, grandson of Ali, the son of Abdallah, and great-grandson of Abbas, uncle to Mohammed the impostor, reign'd | 4       | 9   |                              |
| 2. Abugiasar, the son of Almanzor, brother of Saffah   | 22      |     |                              |
| 3. Mahadi Billa, the son of Abugiasar  | 3       | 1   |                              |
| 4. Hadi, or Eladi Billa, the son of Mahadi   | 1       | 3   |                              |
| 5. Harum Raschid Billa, the brother of Hadi  | 23      | 2½  |                              |
| 6. Abu Abdalla Amin, the son of Harum  | 9       | 9   |                              |
| 7. Al Mamum, the brother of Amin   | 20      | 8   |                              |
| 8. Abu Ezach Motassem, or Matacon, the son of Harum  | 8       | 8   |                              |
| 9. Harum Waiez, the son of Motassem  | 5       | 9   |                              |
| 10. Al-Mata Wakkel, the son of Motassem  | 14      | 9   |                              |
| 11. Montasser, the son of Moto-Wakkel  |         | 6   |                              |
| 12. Ahmed Abul-Abas Mustain, the son of Motassem   | 3       | 9   |                              |
| 13. Motas, or Almatas Billa, the son of Moto-Wakkel  |         | 3   |                              |
| 14. Motbadi Billa, the son of Watbec   |         | 11  |                              |
| 15. Ahmed Abul Abas Motamed Billa, the son of Moto-Wakkel  | 23      |     |                              |
| 16. Motadbed, or Motazed Billa Ahmed, the son of Muassie, and grandson of Moto-Wakkel  | 9       | 9   |                              |
| 17. Motasif Billa, the son of Motadbed   | 6       | 7½  |                              |
| 18. Gia-   |         |     |                              |



| 1707. |  | Ye. | Mo. |  | Ye.  | Mo. | 1707. |
|-------|--|-----|-----|--|--|-----|-------|
| 18.   | Giafer Abul Fadlus Moftader Billa, the son of Moftadbed                    | 24  | 11  | 35.  | Al Dbaer Billa Odetaddin Abu Naur Moftammed, the son of Al Nafar | 9   | 1     |
| 19.   | Mohammed Al Manjur Al Kabir Billa, the son of Moftadbed                    | 1   | 5   | 36.  | Abujafar Almanzur Al Moftaufar Billa, the son of Al Dbaer        | 18  | 11    |
| 20.   | Ahmed Al Radbi, or Razi Billa, the son of Moftader                         | 6   | 10  | 37.  | Al Moftazem Billa, the son of Moftanjer                          | 11  | 7     |
| 21.   | Ibrahim Abu Ishaq al Moftafi Billa, the son of Moftader                    | 6   | 11  | <p>This prince was defeated and put to death, together with his sons, by Hulacu Chan, emperor of Mogul or Tartary, in the 654th or 656th year of the Hegira, or 1256th or 1258th of the Christian Era, and was the last of the Kalifabs of Bagdad or Bagded, who reigned in Persia to the number of fifty seven, without including Mohammed the false prophet. It is necessary to observe, that the Kbalifabs had already lost one part of their dominions in the reign of Ahmed Al Rhadi, whose successors scarce retained the title of sovereigns; though Tarik Al Abas, Akbar Beni Al Abas, and Abdalla Ben Hufsan, in his book, intituled <i>Affas Fafadhl beni Abas</i>, always gives them the style of kings of Persia. In the mean time the Tartars of Mogul, who had made great devastations in Persia, Armenia, and the Lesser Asia, in the reign of the Kbalifab Al Nafar, were driven out of Persia, under that of the Kbalifab Al Moftaufar Billa, in the 623d year of the Hegira, and in the 1226th of our Saviour. But Hulacu Chan made himself master of all this monarchy in 1258. The following is a list of the Tartarian kings, who reigned in Persia since the beginning of their conquest, according to Abul Pharajus, Marajke, or Marakjebi, Mirkond, Edward Peacock, and some others.</p> <p>1. The first was Gingiz, or Jingiz Chan, whose conquests were interrupted in the year 1226, by the valour of the Kbalifab Abujafar Al Manjur, Al Moftaufar Billa, who divested him of the greatest part of</p> |  |     |       |
| 22.   | Abdalla Abulcaph Moftaf, the son of Moftaf I.                              | 1   | 4   |  |  |     |       |
| 23.   | Fazele Abulcaph Mothi Billa, the son of Moftader                           | 29  | 6   |  |  |     |       |
| 24.   | Abdel Kerim Abubeer Al Thai, or Thayaba, the son of Mothi                  | 17  | 10  |  |  |     |       |
| 25.   | Ahmed Abulakbar Al Kader Billa, the son of Ishaq, and grandson of Moftader | 41  | 4   |  |  |     |       |
| 26.   | Abdalla Abujafar Al Kayem, Beamrilla, the son of Kader                     | 44  | 6   |  |  |     |       |
| 27.   | Al Moftadi Billa, the son of Mohammed, and grandson of Kayem               | 19  | 5   |  |  |     |       |
| 28.   | Ahmed Al Moftadber or Moftazer Billa, the son of Moftadi                   | 25  | 6   |  |  |     |       |
| 29.   | Al Moftarshed Billa Abu Manjur, the son of Moftadber                       | 17  | 7   |  |  |     |       |
| 30.   | Abu Jaafar Al Manjur, surnamed Al Rashid Billa, the son of Moftarshed      | 2   |     |  |  |     |       |
| 31.   | Mohammed Al Moftafi Beamrilla, the son of Moftadber                        | 24  | 11  |  |  |     |       |
| 32.   | Iffuf Al Moftanjed Billa, the son of Moftafi                               | 11  |     |  |  |     |       |
| 33.   | Abu Mohammed Al Hassan Al Moftadhi Beamrilla, the son of Moftanjed         | 9   | 8   |  |  |     |       |
| 34.   | Aleman, Al Nafar Leadinilla, the son of Moftadhi                           | 40  | 11  |  |  |     |       |

King of Persia of the Tartarian in Mogul race.

Per-

1707. *Persia*. This prince reigned, as well over his proper states as in *Persia*, for the space of twenty five years.

Ye. Mo.

2. *Oktaji*, or *Jogtai Chan*, } 13  
his son
3. *Gajuk Chan*, the son of } 1  
*Oktaji*
4. *Manchuk Chan*, the son } 9  
of *Tuli*, and grandson of  
*Jingiz Chan*,  
But, as others say 13
5. *Hulacu*, or *Holagu Chan*, 6  
Or, according to others 9
6. *Abaca*, or *Haib Kai* } 17  
*Chan*, the son of *Hula-*  
*cu Chan*
7. *Ahmed*, or *Hamed Chan* 2 2
8. *Argun Chan* 7
9. *Caicbtu Chan* (to whom } 4 7  
*Texeira* and some others  
give the name of *Gani-*  
*atu*) the son of *Abaca*,  
reigned about
10. *Baidu Chan*, the son of } 1  
*Targibi*, or *Targai*,  
and grandson of *Hulacu*  
*Chan*
11. *Kazan Chan*, or *Gazan* } 8 10  
the son of *Argun*  
*Chan*
12. *Giyath'o'ddin Choda-* } 12 9  
*bende Mobammed Chan*,  
whom other call simply  
*Mohammed*, or *Alyaptu*  
*Chan*, the son of *Argun*
13. *Abu Said Babadur* } 19  
*Chan*, the son of *Mo-*  
*hammed Chodabende*  
Others say that he reigned } 9  
no more than

This prince was the last of the race of *Gingiz Chan*, though *Marajchi*, in his history of *Mogul*, adds another, whom he calls *Arba Chan*, the son of *Sengbi Chan*, and grandson of *Malec Timur*, who was the son of *Artak Boga*, grandson of *Tuli*, and great grandson of *Gingiz Chan*, and to whom this author assigns a reign of about five months. Thus this race of the kings of *Persia* was extinct about the 736th year of the *Hegira*, that

is to say, 1335 years after the nativity of *Jesus Christ*. For after the death of *Babadur*, or *Arba Chan*, the governors of the provinces arrogated the sovereignty to themselves. This lasted till the time of *Timur*, surnamed *Lenc*, or *the Lame*, and who is known by the name of *Tamerlan* among the Europeans. This prince ascended the throne of *Tartary* in the year 771 of the *Hegira*, which corresponds with the year 1369 of the *Christian Era*, and seventeen or eighteen years afterward, he made himself master of *Persia*, and was succeeded by the following princes.

1707.

Ye. Mo.

1. *Timur Lenc Sultan*, } 30  
reigned over *Tartary*  
and *Persia*
2. *Shah Ruch Babadur Sul-* } 43  
*tan*, the son of *Timur*  
*Lenc*
3. *Al Malec*, al *Said*, *Mo-* } 2 9  
*hammed Ulug Beg*, the  
son of *Shah Ruch*
4. *Abd'ellatif Mirza*, the } 6  
son of *Ulug Beg*
5. *Mirza Abdollab*, the son } 1  
of *Ibrahim*, and grand-  
son of *Shah Ruch*
6. *Mirza Sultan Abusayd*, } 18  
the son of *Mohammed*,  
grandson of *Miran*  
*Shah Gurga*, and great-  
grandson of *Timur*
7. *Mirza Sultan Mobam-* } 28  
*med*, the son of *Abu-*  
*sayd*, or, as others say,  
of *Baisanker*, the son of  
*Shah Ruch*
8. *Mirza Baber Sultan*, }  
the son of *Omar Sche-*  
*ikh*, and grandson of  
*Abu Said*
9. *Mirza Al Malec*, or, } 20  
as he is called by others,  
*Mohammed Sultan*, the  
son of *Abu Said*, and  
great-grandson of *Ti-*  
*mur Lenc*

Kings of  
of Persia  
of the race  
of Tamer-  
lan.



1707.

Ye. Mo.

1707.

10. *Sultan Hosain Mirza*,  
the son of *Manzur*,  
and grandson of *Baikra*,  
the son of *Omar Sebe-*  
*ichh*, son of *Timur*,  
reigned about } 28  
11. *Mirza Badi'zzaman*  
or *Badi Abzaman*, the  
son of *Hosain*, reign'd  
with his brother, *Mir-*  
*za Madhaffer* }  
12. *Abul Mahan Mirza*,  
and *Gil Mirza*. }

5. *Jean Gir*, the son of *Ali Beg*,  
and grandson of *Othman*, reigned  
twenty four years.

6. *Hasan' Al Tawil*, or the *Long*,  
whom *Texeira* calls *Ozun Azenbek*;  
and *Leancelajus*, in his *Turkish Hi-*  
*story*, *Uzun Chaman* (*Uzun* signifies  
*Long* in the *Turkish* language) was  
also the son of *Ali Beg*, and brother  
of *Jean Gir*. It is said that he e-  
spoused *Despina*, the daughter of the  
*Greek* emperor, *Cale-Jean*, who  
reigned at *Trebisond*, and in *Pontus*.  
This *Hasan* dy'd the 883d year of  
the *Hegira*, and the 1478th year of  
the *Christian Era*, after he had  
reigned about eleven years.

7. *Chalil Beg*, whom *Texeira* calls  
*Sultan Kalil*, the son of *Hasan*,  
reigned but six months and a half.

8. *Yacub Beg*, the son of *Hasan*,  
and brother of *Chalil*, was a learned  
prince, and a fine poet; he reigned  
twelve years and two months.

9. *Mosib Beg IV.* the son of *Ha-*  
*san*, did not long enjoy the crown,  
because of the divisions which pre-  
vailed among the nobility, one party  
of whom placed *Ali Beg*, the son of  
*Chalil* upon the throne; and the  
other, *Bai Sankar Mirza*, the son  
of *Yacub Beg*, and who was but  
twelve years of age, and was kil-  
led in a battle, after a reign of one  
year and eight months.

10. *Rustan Mirza*, or *Rostmök*,  
the son of *Mahjud*, and grandson of  
*Hasan*, reigned five years and six  
months.

11. *Sultan Ahmed*, or *Hagmed*  
*Beg*, the son of *Ogurlu Mohammed*,  
and grandson of *Hasan*, reigned a-  
bout a year.

12. *Alwan Mirza*, whom *Texei-*  
*ra* calls *Alwan Bek*, the son of *Yu-*  
*seph*, or *Ijssuf Bek*, and grandson of  
*Hasan*, reigned likewise a year.

13. *Mazad*, the son of *Yacub Beg*,  
reigned about seven years.

This *Mazad* was the last king of  
that race, and was divested of  
his dominions by *Shah Ismael*, in  
the 194th year of the *Hegira*, and  
the 1507th of the *Christian Era*;  
since which event *Persia* was go-

R r

verned

These two princes are the last of  
the race of *Tamerlan*, who reigned  
in *Persia*. This race did not possess  
all the *Persian* monarchy; but en-  
joyed only a part of it, like those  
who succeeded them; for it appears,  
there were in the fifteenth century  
two other races, descendants of the  
*Turcomans*, who have likewise reign'd  
over one part of *Persia*, and for that  
reason are ranked in the number of  
its kings. The first race was called  
*Kara Koyunli*, or the *Black Sheep*,  
whence all the following kings are  
deduced.

Kings of  
Persia, of  
the first  
race of the  
Turco-  
mans.

1. *Kara Ijssuf*, or *Joseph* the black.  
2. *Amir Scandar*, the son of  
*Ijssuf*.  
3. *Joon-xa*, or *Jean Shab*, the  
son of *Scandar*.  
4. *Acen Ali*, the son of *Joon-xa*.

These two last princes, the father  
and son, were destroyed by *Hasan Al*  
*Tawil*, of the race of the *Turcomans*,  
whom the authors of that time call  
*Al Koyunli*, or the *White Sheep*.  
The kings of that race are,

Kings of  
Persia, of  
the second  
race of the  
Turco-  
mans.

1. *Tur Ali Beg*.  
2. *Phacro'adin Keshi Beg*, the son  
of *Tur Ali*.  
3. *Karab Ilug Othman*: He was  
killed in the war he undertook against  
*Amir Scandar*, at the age of ninety  
years, and about the 809th year of  
the *Hegira*.

4. *Hamzeh Beg*, son of *Ilug Oth-*  
*man*, reigned about thirty nine years.

Vol. II.



1707. vernal by another race of princes, for the space of 200 years since, as appears by the following list.

*Scheich Haidar*, the son of *Jonaid*, who is said to have descended from *Ali*, the son-in-law of *Mohammed*, was the first of this race. His father *Jonaid*, or *Gionaid*, is ranked among the saints, as is his great-great-grandfather *Scheich Sefi*, or *Saffi'adin*, the son of *Gabriel*, and a descendant from *Hossein*, the son of *Ali*. This *Jonaid* had acquired so extraordinary a reputation, and was followed by such a number of sectaries to *Ardevil*, in the province of *Adherbeijan*, that the king *Joan-xa*, of the race of *Kara Keyumli*, or the *Black Sheep*, grew jealous of him, and opposed the adherents to *Jonaid*; who was so exasperated by this proceeding, that he retired, with his followers, to *Diarbekir*, in the country adjacent to *Bagdad* and *Mosul*, where he obtained a favourable reception from the king of the country, whose name was *Hasan Al Tawil*, *Azenbek*, or *Uzun Chasan*, who gave him either his daughter or sister in marriage; for authors vary in this particular. The name of that princess was *Kadija Katum*; she had one son by this marriage, named *Scheich Haidar*, who is considered as the chief of that race. This *Jonaid*, and his followers, passed afterward into *Gurgistan*, where he obliged all those who were unable to oppose him, to join with his party, under a pretence of zeal and sanctity. They likewise made themselves masters of *Trebisond*, whose king they slew, and then placed *Haidar*, the son of *Jonaid*, on the throne. His father or brother-in-law, *Hasan* or *Azenbek*, made himself at the same time, master of the greatest part of *Persia*, after having defeated and slain *Joan-xa* the king, and his son *Acen Ali*; and *Jonaid*, animated by the success he had obtained in *Gurgistan*, advanced with his followers, into the province of *Schirwan*, situated on the *Caspian-Sea*, where he was destroyed by the inhabitants, who hated him. It is

1707. said, that his son *Haidar*, after having espoused another daughter of *Hazan*, named *Alemeba*, ravaged all *Gurgistan*, with an army he received from his father-in-law, or which he himself levied in haste, and that having afterward attacked *Persub-zad*, king of *Schirwan*, in order to revenge the death of his father, he himself perished in the battle with all his sons, except *Ismael* and *Tar Ali*, whom others call *Ali Parcha*, and who were imprisoned by their uncle *Yacub Beg*, after the death of their father. They, however, recovered their liberty in the reign of *Rustan Mirza*, the successor of that prince, on this condition, that they should continue at their father's tomb, habited like poor people. This condition they complied with till the death of *Rustan*, of which they no sooner were informed, than they fled from that retreat, being apprehensive of *Abmed Sultan* his successor. At length *Ismael* having found means to raise an army of the followers of *Ali*, in the reign of *Abwan Mirza*, defeated this prince and his son *Morad*, together with the kings of *Schirwan*, *Diarbek*, *Bagdad*, and some others, and made himself master of all *Persia*, which his posterity possess to this day: He assumed the name of *Sophi*, an *Arabic* word, which signifies a person dressed in wool, and a zealous *Mussulman*; perhaps likewise to denote the state to which he had been reduced. He was but fourteen years of age when he ascended the throne, and he reigned as many. The kings descended from this prince are,

1. *Shah Ismael Sophi*, who reigned twenty four years.

2. *Shah Tahmasp*, or *Xa Tabmar*, who was poisoned by the queen his wife, by whom he had a son named *Haidar*. This happened in the year of our lord 1576, in the sixty eighth year of that prince's age, and after a reign of fifty four years.

3. *Shah Ismael II* the son of *Tabmasp*, reigned but one year and ten months, and died in 1578.



1707.

4. *Shah Mohammed Chodabende*, the son of *Tahmasp*, and brother of *Ismael*, died in 1585, after he had reigned seven years, or, as others say, six.

5. *Shah Abbas*, the son of *Chodabende*, a prince of great abilities, died in 1629, at the age of sixty three years, and after a reign of forty five.

6. *Sam Myrza*, the son of *Sefi Myrza*, (who was put to death by his father *Abas*, because he was the darling of the people) ascended the throne, and assumed the name of *Shah Sefi*, as the king his grandfather had desired. He died in the

year 1642, having reigned twelve years.

7. *Shah Abbas II.* the son of *Sefi*, died in 1666, after a reign of twenty four years.

8. *Shah Selim*, the son of *Abas II.* died in 1694, and reigned twenty eight years.

9. *Shah Selim II.* or *Soliman Husein*, his son, succeeded him on the throne, and is the prince who now reigns.

I shall now return to the continuation of my travels, till my return to *Holland*.



## C H A P. LXXXI.

*The author's departure from Isfahan. His arrival at Cachan, Com, and Sauwa. Meets the French ambassador. A description of Casbin and Sultania. His arrival at Zim-gan, and Ardevil.*

ABOUT this time the river of *Zendora*, near the bridge of *Alla Werdie Chan*, was begun to be dug by five or six hundred men: The intention, however, was to employ 70000 men in that work, of which number the *Armenians* of *Julfa* were to furnish 6000 at their own expence. The work was undertaken in order to facilitate the course of that river, which frequently overflows, and lays all the plain under water. The banks were accordingly raised, to prevent that inconvenience for the future; but as nothing more than earth and slime were employed on this occasion, all the labour that had been bestowed, was soon rendered ineffectual by the violence of the waters, and the country was again floated over as usual, as soon as the rain and melted snow had swelled the river.

On the 25th of *February* we received intelligence from *Tauris*, that *Mr. Michel*, the French ambassador, whom I have formerly mentioned, was arrived thither from *Constanti-*

*nople*, together with the mistress of *Mr. Fabre*: This minister had received orders from the court to seize this woman at *Erivan*, from whence she was to be conveyed to *Aleppo*, and from thence to be transported into *France*: But as soon as she heard he was coming to that city, she retired to *Tauris*, and placed herself under the protection of the governor, who allowed her thirty *Mameedies*, or two ducats, per day, to enable her to pursue her journey. It was likewise reported, that she was accompanied by a *French-man*, and had a train of thirty of the governor's domesticks. This affair made a great noise, and the event was expected with impatience. I intend to relate it at large in the sequel of this work.

In the mean time, as the day of my departure drew near, I went to take leave of all my friends in the city, and at *Julfa*, after having first wrote to *Batavia* and *Gamron*. I went then and waited on our director, who engaged me to sup with

*The author's departure.*



1707. with him. The next day, his deputy accompanied me, with seven couriers, as far as the *Caravanferai* of *Keehgouna*, opposite the king's garden. We supped there by the light of torches, and after my friends were returned to the city, I likewise went to repose myself a little, being exceedingly disordered with a cold. I was joined the next day by two *Armenians*, one of whom, who spoke *Dutch*, intended to accompany me in my travels.

We set out the 2d. of *March*, at nine in the morning, and found the plain all under water: We, however, advanced forward by the aid of several small bridges, and arrived in about three hours, at the *Caravanferai* of *Riek*, after a journey of five leagues. The wind blew very cold, and the mountains were, for the most part, cover'd with snow. Our caravan consisted of nine persons on horseback, and eight beasts of burthen, beside servants. I had three horses, and the others belonged to two *Armenians*, who had three couriers to accompany the baggage. We had likewise two *Armenians*, who had a considerable charge of merchandise; the rest of our company consisted of some *Georgians*, and the conductor of the caravan. As we had agreed to travel by day, and repose ourselves during the night, by reason of the cold, and to avoid many other inconveniences, we proceeded in our journey at seven in the morning, and found two *Caravanferais* at the end of the plain. From thence we entered the mountains, and arrived about night at *Sardaban*, after having travelled eight leagues. We there paid eight pence for every beast of burthen, as is customary in that place. The next day we came to a garden belonging to the king, and called *Garstajahet*, whence there is a prospect of many other gardens and villages, and a great plain bordered with mountains, which we left on the right hand. We found the water frozen over in most places, and arrived about two at the

*Caravanferai* of *Gaef*, five leagues from that, where we had passed the night. We renewed our journey at four in the morning over a large and beautiful plain, and advanced as far as the *Caravanferai* of *Batjabat*, which is five leagues from the last. As yet we had not seen many pleasure-houses, but the ways were exceedingly fine. The next day we met two *Georgian Mohammedans*, accompany'd with a retinue of thirteen or fourteen persons, well provided with fire-arms, lances, bucklers, bows, and arrows. They were travelling in order to join the king, and diverted themselves with drawing the bow, and running races on horseback. We made a short halt to observe them, and likewise to wait for our beasts of burthen, and we arrived about two at *Carban*, after a journey of six leagues. I walked into the *Bazars*, where I purchased several pieces of silk, which are exquisitely fine, as has been remarked before, and especially with respect to the colours.

The great fast of the *Armenians* began on the 7th of this month, and continues forty nine days, during which they are not permitted to eat either flesh, fish, butter, eggs, or milk, not even on a journey. As this is expressly the injunction of their patriarch, they never violate it, but limit their diet to bread, rice, oil, herbs and fruits, which are very unsuitable food for a traveller; but they have a full allowance to drink wine.

We continued our journey the next day, over the same plain, where we saw several country-houses, and met a second time the *Georgians* I mentioned before, over against the town of *Sigfa*, where we breakfasted, having the mountains in our rear, and we arrived about four at the *Caravanferai* of *Abbi-slierien*, after having travelled six leagues. The next day we met several caravans, and advanced to *Gassum-aba*, five leagues from the place where we lodged the preceding night. The day following we found the field full

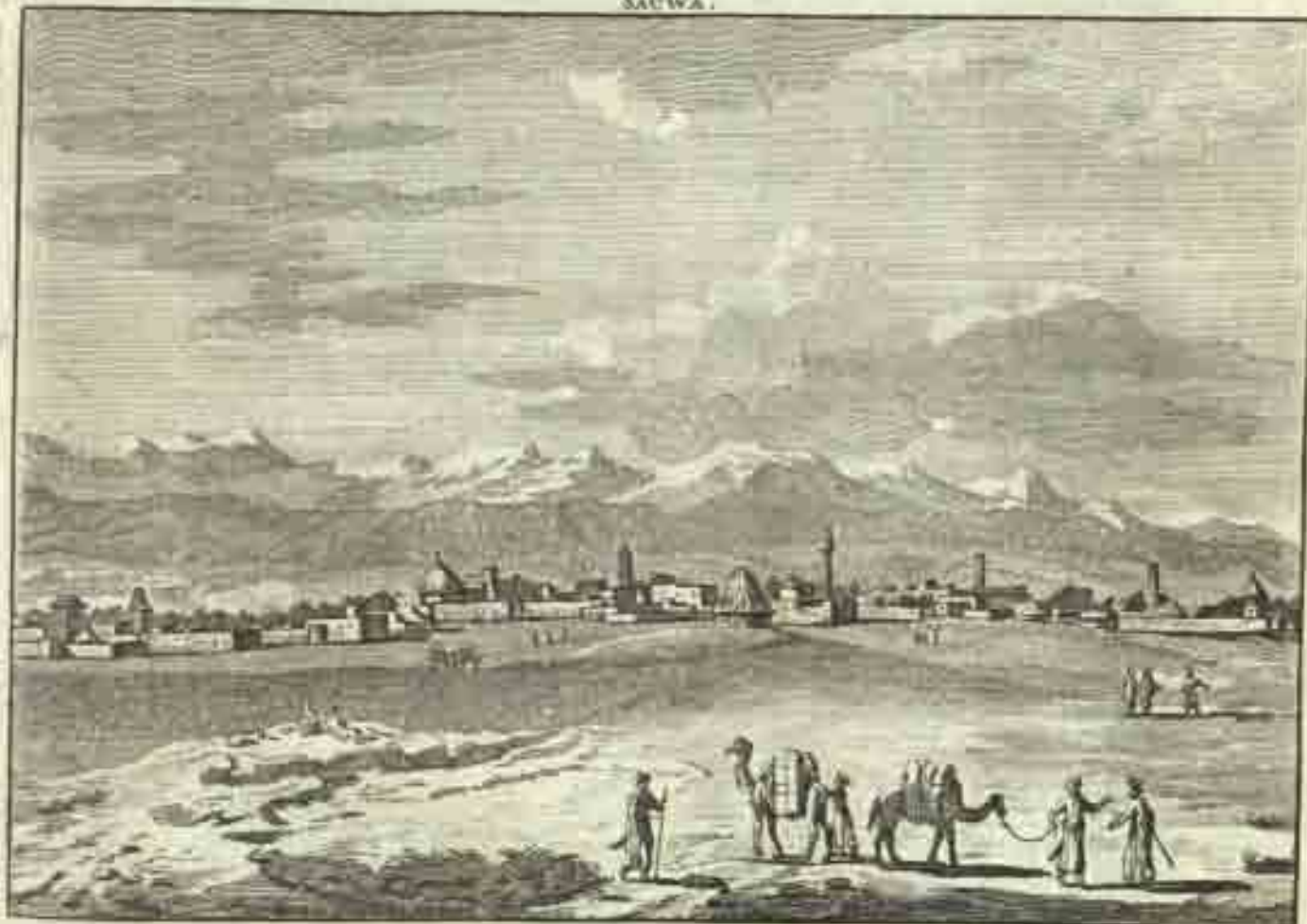
1707.



1707. husbandmen, whose ploughs were drawn by two oxen; and we arrived at *Com* about noon. We continued there no longer than the break of day, and then renewed our journey over the plain, which is intersected by several streams, into one of which two of our saddle horses fell, thro' the carelessness of the guides; but we had the good fortune to disengage them from the danger, and did the same good office by an *Armenian* servant who fell from his horse. We returned thanks to God, for preserving us in that manner, but were frequently exposed to the same hazard, our horses being very restive, and I was frequently obliged to lead the horse that carry'd my baggage, to prevent it from being wet, though I

1707. had taken care to cover my chests with waxed cloth at *Ispahan*. At length, after having crossed many other canals, we arrived at a place where we found several black tents, and in about three hours we came to the town of *Sauwa*, which is very large, and resembles a city, being encompassed with a wall of earth. We there saw a number of fine towers, and a large mosque cover'd with a blue dome, and a spacious church-yard without the gates. At a distance this place resembles a forest, on account of the trees with which it abounds, and whose effect on the eye is extremely agreeable in the summer. The representation of it is exhibited in the following plate.

SAUWA.



It was formerly a fine city, but is entirely ruinous at present, like many other cities in *Persia*: Yet we found several *Caravan-serais* that were commodious enough, and we there paid  
Vol. II.

twelve pence for every beast of burthen.

We were informed by an officer of the custom-house, who came from court, that the mistress of Mr. *Fabre* was arrived there, and had  
S f em-

1707. embraced the Mohammedan religion.

A Georgian told.

It was likewise reported, that the French king had made the king of Persia a present of this woman.

We were also informed in that place, that the roads swarmed with robbers, and we had in our *Caravanferai* a Georgian Christian, who had been robbed of all he had: We supplied him with what was sufficient to carry him back again to *Casbin*; and the governor of the place gave us two horsemen for a guard, there being no soldiers there: He likewise favoured us with a letter to the magistrate of the first village we were to pass through, with an order for him to furnish five or six armed persons for our safe conduct. We remained here till the fourteenth, to rest our horses, and then renewed our journey, crossing over a range of mountains, after which we arrived at *Gangh*, where there is nothing but gardens and *Caravanferais*: We were furnished here with five men armed with fusces and sabres, with which convoy we continued our journey to *Gasharee*, having travelled eight leagues. The next day we entered the mountain, that were full of water, and at noon passed by the place which the robbers usually make their retreat, after which we dismissed our convoy, and proceeded by the *Caravanferai* of *Hefkarret*, where robbers frequently stalk. I entered it alone, and found it empty, and observed several apartments that were altogether in ruins. We travelled on from thence in order to pass our night at *Alla-Sang*, a village full of gardens. The next day we proceeded over a plain bordered with villages and gardens, and crossed several small rivers, having mountains covered with snow frequently in our view to *Abbeshabath*. When we passed on from this place we found the country full of ice, and a valley abounding with villages and gardens, whose prospect must certainly be delightful in summer, though the mountains are always covered with

snow. About eleven we crossed a river, together with several bridges, and proceeded through a large paved way. We afterward met a caravan of camels, and passed another river, where one of our servants fell into the water, but was immediately drawn out. We found another spacious road paved like the former, with two canals on the right and left hand, but all the way was over-flow'd as far as *Cashin*, where the ground rises higher. We arrived there very late, having travelled eight leagues.

The day following, the interpreter of Mr. Michel, the French ambassador, whom I have so often mentioned, came to me by the order of his master, who understood that an European was arrived in that city, where he had been detained for the space of several weeks. I went to wait on him after dinner, and he received me in the most obliging manner. He was still in the youthful part of his life, but had been employed in several courts, and had likewise served in *Palais*. I continued with him a considerable time, and he informed me of the uneasiness he had sustained in Persia, where he was received in a very disagreeable manner, under a pretext that he was not invested with the character of the king his master. He, however, assured me, that he was the first minister who had been sent thither by the court of France; and the truth of what he declared was rendered evident not only by his credentials, but also by the rich presents he had in charge, and of which he favoured me with a sight. He likewise shewed me a letter written from Paris, by Mr. Fabre's mistress, wherein she intreats his permission to accompany him in his journey, though it were only to wash his linnen, and take care of his other apparel. He added, that she was received at the court of Persia, though she had conducted herself in a very exceptionable manner in her journey thither, and that the court had refused to de-

1707.

The ambassador's arrival at Casbin.



1707. liver her up to him, in order to his being sent into France, especially in the command he had received from the king his master, and that he himself was not permitted to make his appearance at court. This minister, however, set out from hence with an intention to proceed thither, notwithstanding all the obstacles that were created in his disfavour, and departed by night without the least noise, leaving two or three servants in the tavern where he lodged. A report was current, that twenty persons on horseback were dispatched after him; but this was what he had no occasion to be alarmed at, because he was attended with eighty domestics well armed. We were obliged to continue three days at *Carhis*, our horses not being in a condition to go any further. We sold one set of them, and bought others in their stead.

The situation of Carhis.

This city is situated in a plain, in the northern part of the province of *Firat*, to the north-west of *Ispahan*, and one league northward of the mountains. The extent of it is very considerable, and it abounds with plantations of *sena* and other trees.

Its principal mosque, which is that of *Jumma Mat-zit*, or the sabbath, has a fine cupola of a blue colour, well glazed, with two walks around it, and a beautiful portal, like those at *Ispahan*. There are likewise two or three others, which are very agreeable, and several that are more common. The royal palace is a very large structure, but the *Chiaer-bag* is small, and bordered with *sena*-trees. The *Meydan*, or great square, has nothing in it considerable: the shops of it are perfectly mean, and most of the houses are in a ruinous condition, as well as the *Caravanferai*. The person at whose house we lodged had four large *sena*-trees in his court-yard, with a canal of running water. The *Armenians* reside in this city, and have a little chapel of a moderate height, and which, at a distance, resembles a dove-house. There are likewise a number of

1707. poor Jews in this place, and a house where the king's music is heard at particular times.

We pursued our journey on the 22d, through a plain filled with villages. Toward noon we entered among the mountains, and travelled but five leagues that day. We found, the day following, abundance of water in the plains, and advanced as far as *Corandara*, which is six leagues from the *Caravanferai* where we had passed the night. We afterward proceeded through arable lands, and met several caravans: About four, we had travelled a league beyond *Sultania*, and we passed the night at the *Caravanferai* of *Kara-bollag*, after a journey of eight leagues. A greyhound of mine caught in that plain, a small animal called *Zitz-jan*, which he brought me alive, and likewise another in a short time after, and I caused the entrails to be taken out of them, in order to preserve them. This creature is a kind of field-rat, about the size of a squirrel: Its tail is short, and it has the hair and colour of a young rabbit, whom it likewise resembles in shape, only it has a larger head, and the two under teeth are half as long again as those in the upper jaw. The two fore-feet of this little animal are shorter than the hinder; they likewise end in four large claws, and one that is smaller. The hinder feet have five, which much resemble those of an ape. This animal is exhibited to view in the following plate.

We arrived next day at *Zingan*, where we found the *Caravanferai* in such a nauseous condition, that we were obliged to take up with a stable, at the other end of the city, and were compelled by the badness of the weather to continue there all the next day. *Zingan* is a mean place, where nothing remarkable is to be found. Upon our setting out from hence, we crossed a plain full of water, having the mountains at some distance on our right and left. We likewise passed a kind of torrent twice, into which one of our horses

The situation of Zingan.





ANIMAL ZEPHAN.

horses fell, and as he was loaded with coffee, we were obliged to dry it. We arrived, about noon, at *Muhul*, where the bad weather obliged us to halt, and the cold was so excessive in the night, that I found it very difficult to preserve myself from it: I was covered all over with furs, and had likewise two good blankets, and a large fire in a close place.

The next day about ten, we arrived at the mountains, and were unable to proceed farther than *Serg-Abeth*, which is four leagues from the place where we lodged the preceding night. We here suffered as severely by the cold as we did the day before, our course being directed to the north, and the wind being equally violent; but we were lodged more commodiously at a private house. The next day proved rainy, and we travelled but four leagues, as far as *Aghaut*, having passed over high mountains, and thro' valleys filled with water. I was indisposed with an ague a little before night, and immediately went

to bed, after having drank a little burnt wine sweetened with sugar, in which some particular herbs were infused. In short, we were obliged to continue in that place till the end of the month, in order to rest our horses. When we set out from this place, we continued to pass over some mountains, and plains that were overflowed, and about noon began to ascend mount *Taurus*, which the inhabitants call *Caslu-san*. I have already given some account of it, as likewise of the river *Kurp*, and the bridge over which one passes at that place. When we had crossed another, named *Kurpu-koebar*, we halted in the mountains, after a journey of five leagues.

We advanced on the first day of *April*, into another mountain, where we saw the tombs of the inhabitants of the adjacent villages, and were obliged to stop for some hours at a track of arable lands, because our horses were quite fatigued with the journey. We there met several travellers, and a large caravan, well provided with arms. In the mean time



1707. time I then advanced, with some others, as far as *Paggejik*; but the rest of the company, and all the beasts of burden, continued in the mountains. Our caravan passed by us the next day, and we were informed that they had lost some horses. We rejoined it about noon at *Riss*, where we continued till the next day; and as we afterward passed by a certain village, we had some dispute with the custom-house officers, whose demands we were obliged to satisfy. Notwithstanding which, we met others of them on horseback, armed with lances, who exacted the same duty from us which we had so lately paid. It was to no purpose for us to tell them, that we had already discharged all dues of that nature, and we were forced to give them some *Mamseeties*, in order to get rid of them. We then passed on by a small lake, whose borders were enamelled with a thousand flowers, and full of small blue hyacinths, which is a very extraordinary circumstance in that quarter, where most of the plants have a withered appearance. We arrived about six at the small *Caravanferai* of *Kereien*, where my ague returned

upon me, and obliged me to continue there till the next day, during which time the *Armenians* set out for *Ardevil*. I followed them the day after, and got thither at three in the afternoon. The *Georgian*, who came with us from *Ispahan*, died there in the night; and it created no little surprize, when he was found to be a *Mohammedan*, and circumcised.

The author's arrival at Ardevil.

Some days after the mourning for *Huffin*, which I have frequently mentioned, was renewed. The weather proved excessive cold, and all the ground was covered with snow. We were obliged to wait in this city for the arrival of a large caravan, which set out from *Ispahan* before us, this quarter being much infested with robbers, and especially the country of *Mogan*: Notwithstanding which several *Armenians* went to *Gilan*, in order to proceed from thence to *Astracan*, by the *Caspian Sea*. I commissioned one of these people to buy me some pieces of silk, which are there made in great perfection. This city is six days journey from *Ardevil*, where also they make fine silk, but not comparable to that which is manufactured at *Gilan*.

## CHAP. LXXXII.

*The author's departure from Ardevil. The injustice of the officers of the customs. A melancholy accident. The rivers Kur and Aras. The author's arrival at Samachi. Violent proceedings of the Persians. A fertile country.*

The author's departure from Ardevil.

WE set out from *Ardevil* the 17th of April, in order to proceed to *Mitrasraef*, and at our arrival there went to lodge at the house belonging to the conductor of the caravan. The next day we advanced as far as *Sabbad-daer*, which is but two leagues from *Ardevil*. We found the ways very bad, and met a large caravan. But nothing is so inconvenient, in that quarter, as

the smoke, which has no outlet but the door. On the 19th we passed over a great stone bridge on the river *Karassoe*, whose stream is exceeding rapid. The custom-house officers came thither, and obliged us to pay a *Mamseetie* for every horse, tho' I had already paid three for mine at the gate of the city, and two for my baggage before I left the *Caravanferai*. We, however, were

T t

obliged



1707. obliged to submit to this imposition, notwithstanding they had no right to demand it. When we had travelled the length of three leagues, we stopped by the side of the village of *Koroet-facy*, where we stayed till the dawn of day, and then proceeded three leagues farther, having no place but the open country for our lodging. The next day we passed over the mountains as far as *Barland*, a country neither under the jurisdiction of *Ardevil*, nor under that of *Mogan*, for which reason we were obliged to pay three *Mamoudies* there for every beast of burthen. We travelled but two leagues the day following, by reason of the bad weather, and halted on the bank of a little stream, where provisions were brought us from *Baesje-Zaboran*, at the entrance into the territory of *Mogan*. As the peasants of this place pass for great thieves, we always were upon our guard; and the next day we passed over the river of *Balbaroe*, whose current is very rapid, and we proceeded along the bank of it for a considerable time, finding tents and cattle where-ever we came. We also met a caravan coming from *Samaché*, and going to *Ispahan*. Nothing can form a more agreeable prospect than the meadows enamell'd with various flowers on each side of this river: We there fed our horses; which is a convenience rarely found in that country. The next day the *Armenians* solemnized their *Easter*, having provided a lamb for that purpose; after which we continued our journey, and were favoured with very fine weather.

The way  
full of rob-  
bers.

A *Persian* merchant of our caravan fell from his horse, and unhappily broke all his ribs, and the violence of the hurt was so great, that it at once deprived him of speech and reason. We used all possible means to save him, and apply'd *Mummy* to him, (of which I alone was provided) but to no purpose; for he died in the night, and was carry'd to *Ardevil* to be interr'd.

We advanced but two leagues on the 27th, and were obliged to lodge

in the open country. As the air was serene, we had the pleasure of viewing the mountains of *Schirman*, and arrived about eight the next day on the banks of the *Kar* and *Aras*, and where these rivers unite their streams. I there found a great alteration in the banks, all the reeds which formerly rendered them inaccessible, having been cut down. That day was employed in conveying our baggage over to the other side, as we had done when we came that way before. On the 29th we made a considerable progress northward along the river, and then to the east, and again passed the night under a fine star-light, but without any water. The last day of the month we found a good spring, which flowed from the rocks within the mountains, and we arrived about night at *Samaché*. I went to pay my compliments to a *Russian* nobleman, whose name was *Baris Fedswitz*, and with whom I became acquainted at *Alracon*, where he had a regiment: He was at present consul in this city, and treated me with great civility, acquainting me at the same time, that he was preparing for his return to *Alracon* by the way of *Nisawary*, and therefore desired we might travel together.

1707.

The ar-  
rival of the  
Russian at  
Samaché.

The *Persians* at that time committed great acts of violence against the *Jesuits*, whose convent they would have demolished; but it happened by good fortune, at that very instant, that one of these fathers, who was a good physician, and well known to the people, had likewise eloquence enough to persuade them to return, without executing their intended design. They, however, came a second time, but without doing any injury. These violent proceedings frequently happen, thro' the indulgence of the governor, who is a man entirely abandoned to his pleasures, and particularly to wine, which he pretends the king has authorized him to drink.

Violence  
committed  
by the Per-  
sians.

Such an example as this, which the inhabitants very readily conform to, occasioned the disorder I have mentioned,



1707. mentioned, and exposes strangers to all sorts of impositions, and to such a degree, that they cannot pass the streets without having stones thrown down on their heads. This obliged me to keep my chamber during my continuance in that city; but my precaution did not entirely secure me from insults, which are there practised with impunity, the laws being altogether disregarded: Whereas the preceding governor was an equitable man, who made himself feared, and faithfully discharged all the duties of his office. Another inconvenience which contributes much to these licentious proceedings, is, that the troops receive no pay, and subsist by rapine alone. The *Muscovites* who live here are exposed to the same injurious treatment, and are yet perpetually representing the easy manner in which the *Czar* might revenge the injustice they sustain, by invading that part of the country; to which the others reply, that such a revolution would not be displeasing to them, since they should be more happy under the government of the *Czar*, than under that of their natural prince. They even make no scruple to declare, that they would attempt nothing in their own defence, but pray to *Mohammed* that this may be the event; and it is certain, that it would be no difficulty for the *Czar* to accomplish it. This, however, is a considerable government, and yields large revenues, on this side the *Aras*, which divides it from the other territories of the *Persian* monarchy. Those likewise which produce the silks of *Gilan*, together

with the cottons and saffron, are well known. The soil also produces excellent wines, red and white, which are strong indeed, but exceedingly agreeable when tempered with water, especially the white. It likewise affords very fine fruits, such as apples, pears, chestnuts, &c. to which I may add, that excellent horses and cattle are bred there. In a word, it is a very fine country, and exceeding fertile on the side of *Georgia*; but there are not a sufficient number of inhabitants to cultivate it in a proper manner. It abounds, however, in game, rice, and grain, and the bread which is made there is excellent.

*Baggu* likewise affords a commodious haven. The governors of this province never fail to enrich themselves in a short time, and it would certainly prove a very commodious acquisition to his *Czarian* majesty, since it lies contiguous to his dominions, and is very advantageous to those of his subjects who traffic there for any considerable time. It might likewise be preserved without any difficulty, after it had once been conquered, by erecting forts there.

Before my departure from this city, I wrote to my friends at *Ispahan*, and gave my letters to the jesuit I have mentioned before, and from whom I received all possible civilities; nor could I help deploring his hard fate, and that of his brethren, who are obliged to live in a place where they are exposed to the outrages of a populace, who are always insolent and implacable to the *Christians*.

*The author's departure from Samachi, and arrival at Niesawacy, from whence he proceeds to Astracan.*

*The author's departure from Samachi.*

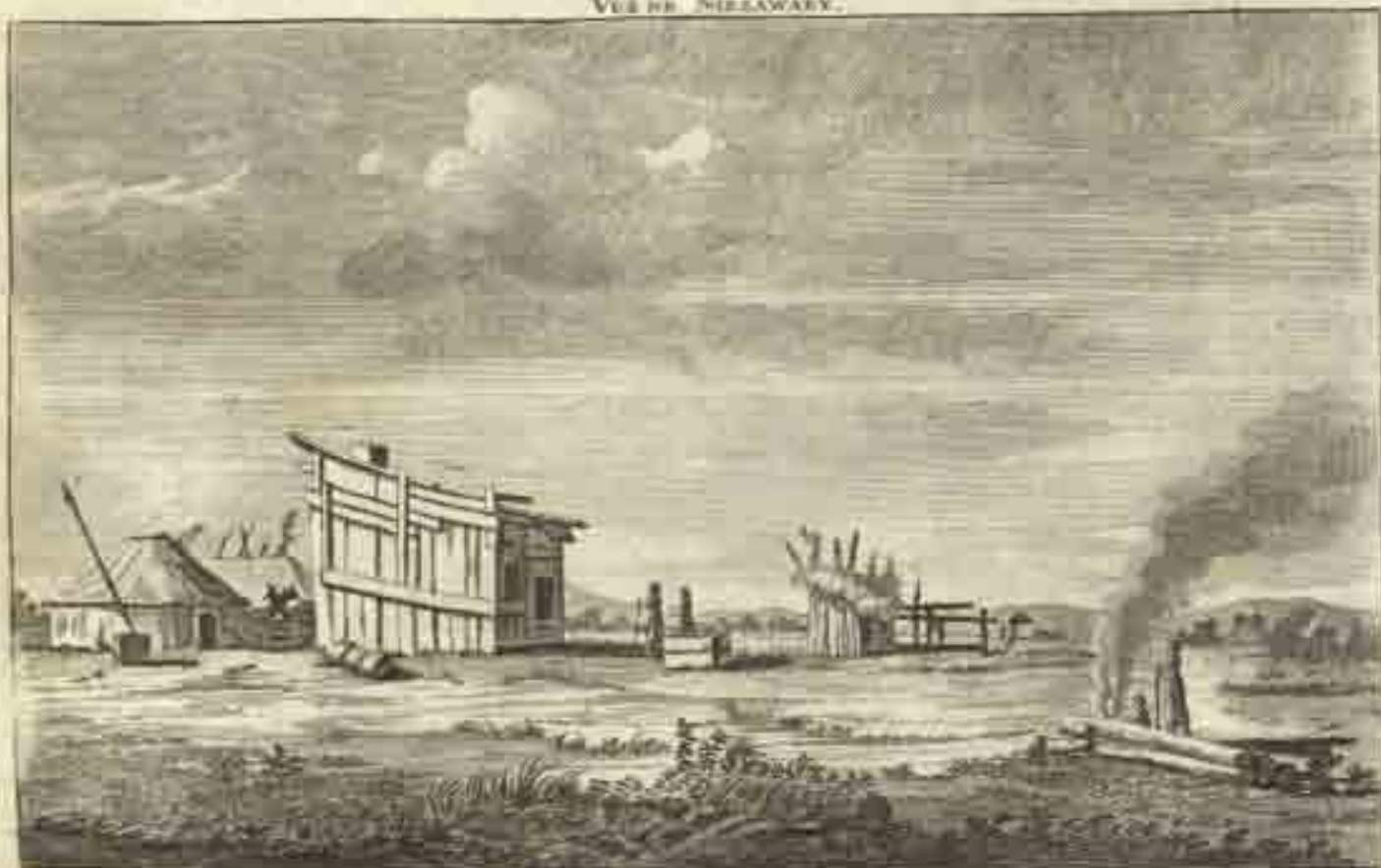
ON the 24th of May, I left Samachi in the evening, the Russian consul, and those of his retinue, having set out before us, but I overtook them in the mountains about a league from the city, in company with several Armenians, and some Indians. We began our journey at break of day, and passed by a demolished building, that resembled an antient monument, being full of tombs. We then crossed a river, together with some lesser streams, and continued our journey over mountains that were covered with small wild trees, and a variety of green plants; and at eight in the evening we halted on the brink of a canal. The next day we followed the course of the river, which conducted us to the mountains, and there we crossed it a second time, and passed the night on its bank, after travelling eight leagues. From hence we proceeded into a plain, that fronts the Caspian

Sea, and where we had a distant prospect of several villages, and arable lands, and likewise of other parts of the country that were overflowed: About seven we discovered the downs, and the sea itself, along the side of which we continued our journey toward night, and passed over a small gulf which it forms up the country, and where I found several touchstones. At ten we arrived at Niesawacy, where we rejoined the Russians, who had taken another way.

*His arrival at Niesawacy.*

We there found six Russian barks, together with a great number of tents along the shore, and under which several mercantile commodities were deposited. The Russians, who were to pass the winter in that place, had made themselves barracks of trees, and the others sheltered themselves under tents. I drew the prospect of this place, which is represented in the following plate.

VUE DE NIESAWACY.





NIRAWAY.

242.



NIRAWAY.

243.







1707.

Three days after we advanced to the shore, which was but a quarter of a league from us, and they then began to embark their goods, which consisted of silks and rice; but we were obliged to continue some days there, on account of the violent dust which an east wind had raised, and to which this coast is extremely subject, as I have formerly observed. I there drew a sketch of the shore, which is exhibited, together with the tents and barks, &c. in plate 240.

On the 8th of June every thing was embarked, and one of the smallest vessels set sail for *Afracan*, from whence two were just then arrived, and one other from *Tarku* or *Tirk*. I went in the evening on board the lesser of these vessels, with the consul, and some *Russians*, together with three or four *Armenians*. I drew, the next day, another prospect of *Niesawary*, from our bark, in the manner it appears in plate 241. not omitting the high mountains, which are always covered with snow. We set sail at two, with eighty persons on board, including the sailors, and in the evening advanced as far as *Derbent*, five leagues from *Niesawary*, but without discovering the city. In the night, we sail'd to the northward, and lost sight of land by break of day, but the wind changing, at sun-set, we came to anchor near the coast of *Tirk*, in a depth of thirty fathom.

On the 14th we continued our course with an easterly wind, which lasted only till evening, when we were obliged to cast anchor a second time. The 18th, the wind tacked about to east-north-east, when we hoisted sail again, and found in the evening from ten to nine and eight fathom water, and from seven to six toward morning, and four about noon, when the water was whiter and fresher than before. We likewise met a bark bound from *Afracan* to *Niesawary*, and the consul ordered a gun to be fired as a signal for the commander to lie by. At four we found the water fresh enough

Vol. II.

to be drinkable, and then came into three fathom and a half. The wind, which was frequently changing, obliged us to anchor once more in ten foot water, and as our vessel drew eight, we often struck against the ground. In that condition we remained till the 21st, when the wind shifted to east north-east; but varied again in the evening; soon after which we were becalmed: It then changed to the north, and continued three days at that point; upon which the consul sent orders to the other ship, which had not left us, to repair immediately to *Afracan*, in order to send out the other vessels, in case the weather should not alter: But the wind veer'd to the west, and was accompanied with thunder and rain; and the sea was not above eight foot deep in that place. The 27th in the afternoon we discovered three vessels, which we took for pirates, and therefore stood upon our guard, having two brass cannons and other fire-arms. As they only rowed, they quickly came up with us, upon which we fired off a gun, and they retired; but when they afterward advanced toward us again, we found them to be the same that we had ordered from *Afracan*, which rejoiced us not a little, because they brought us a supply of provisions, which we greatly needed: And yet our first apprehensions were not altogether without reason, it being very usual to meet pirates in that sea, who never spare those who are so unfortunate as to fall into their hands. They come from the mountains, and are commonly *Sanguet*, intermixed with *Russian* rebels.

On the 30th we weighed anchor, the wind being south-west, and steered to the south, in eight foot water; but the uncertainty of the wind obliged us to anchor again; and we were incommoded to such a degree, with flies in the night, that I was forced to make use of my net.

On the 2d of July I embarked in a small vessel, to be more at my ease, and because my provisions grew short,

1707.

Pirates.

Trouble-  
some flies



1707. short, and I had no inclination to rely any longer on the wind. We employ'd oars and sails, directing our course to the north, in seven, six, and five foot water, and toward noon discovered land, at north-north-west, with the four red mountains, which I have formerly mentioned, and whose distance from each other is almost equal. The coast is not so high on this side, as it is toward *Persia*.

As we approached the gulf, we found several vessels that are authorized to search the cargoes of ships, the banks likewise of that gulf are entirely covered with reeds. We continued there at anchor part of the night, because of the calm.

On the 3d we came to a dock, or place made for fishing, where ships are searched a second time, and at noon came to another, where there is so little ground, that it proves very difficult to land there. There ate a plate of good fish. We came about four to the third dock, where we lay at anchor all night, the wind being contrary, and the sea running very high. On the 4th we set sail again, the bank being all covered with water, and arrived at *Astracan* about ten.

Arrival at Astracan.

I went to pay my respects to the governor, *Peter Ivanovitch Gortanike*, who was the *Knees*, or prince, and a man of generosity and merit, who had been governor of this place above twenty years. When he had read the letters I delivered to him, he treated me with abundance of civility, and offered to serve me to the utmost of his power, during my continuance in that city; but I returned him my thanks, and only requested him to favour me with a lodging in a private house, where I could live more commodiously than in a *Caravanferai*, and he immediately obliged me in this particular.

Our ships arrived at the city on the 11th, and the governor ordered my baggage to be sent to me, without so much as searching it; but I had the misfortune to hear that all my friends, together with the gover-

nor *Timafe Ivanovitch Ursofskie*, and colonel *de Wigne*, had been massacred in the rebellion of the *Strelzes*, in 1705, and that no more than three or four persons were saved, who set out three days before for *Moscow*, namely, the governor's son and his wife, together with the consul I lately mentioned, and likewise captain *Wagenner*, and a certain chirurgion; and that all the strangers with their wives and children, lost their lives in this fatal massacre; since which his *Cæsarian* majesty sent some regular troops thither, and caused most of the *Strelzes* to be executed, as well as those who had joined with them in this inhuman slaughter. For my part, I returned thanks to God that I quitted *Persia* before this fatal accident. The governor's wife, who escaped the fury of the *Barbarians*, had the misfortune to lose all she had in her voyage to *Moscow*, the ship wherein she was to sail having taken fire: her grief at this misfortune cost her her life soon after her arrival at *Moscow*.

1707.

At my return to *Astracan*, I was informed that fourteen vessels had foundered through the negligence of captain *Meyer*, whom I have often mentioned, and who likewise perished in this disaster. But five others arrived three months after, under the conduct of *Laurence Van der Burgh*, a man of merit and capacity, who had entered into the service of his *Cæsarian* majesty, and was then employed in weighing up the ships that were sunk, and refitting them, so as to be serviceable on the *Caspian Sea*.

Several *Hollanders*, who had served in those parts, daily arrived at this place, and I had the affliction to hear, that Mr. *Meynard*, an English gentleman, with whom I had been acquainted at *Zij-ratz*, had lost his sight, and the use of some of his limbs, and had set out in that condition for his own country.

One evening, when I had company in my apartment, the mistress of the house where I lodged was brought to bed of a son, without my knowing

As a certain misfortune.



1707. knowing any thing of the affair, tho' her chamber was over mine. We indeed had taken notice, that several women came there; but as such visits are very frequent, I thought there could be nothing particular at present, and was therefore the more surprized, when my friends were gone, to hear what had happened. When the husband, who was one of the commissioners of the chancery, came home, I made him a present of some pistacho nuts, dates, and almonds, to treat his guests. Toward evening they all began to sing in a tone that seemed to resemble their church service; and, as I had never heard any thing of that nature before, I asked my footman, who understood the language of the country, what could be the meaning of this behaviour? To which he replied, that they were all intoxicated with liquor, as was customary on those occasions: But I was ex-

1707. tremely surprized the next day, to find the woman who had been brought to bed, sitting at the street door, with the child in her arms. In the evening she treated the women who had assisted her at her labour, with *Aqua vite*, and drank very freely of it herself, as is usual in this country.

As I was walking one day through the market, I bought a bird, which the *Russians* call *Bahbe*, or the *Water-carrier*, of which I had frequently heard people speak, but could never procure one till now, though I had often inquired for it both in this country, and at *Ispahan*. I offered it fish, which it would not eat, nor any thing else, and I could not make the creature extend its neck, which it kept in a deflected position, and seemed to be half asleep. The reader will find the representation of it in the following plate. The bird was young, though four



1707. times as large as a goose, which it partly resembled in shape and plumage; the bill was fifteen inches long, and two in breadth, and ended in a yellow hook, like that of a parrot. The bag in which it carries its water contains above four pints, and the legs of the creature are short. I cut off the head and part of the neck, on which I left the bag, as it appears in the plate.

Fires frequently broke out in this city, during my continuance there, but especially in the suburbs of the *Tartars*, who were very industrious to extinguish the flames. As I have already sufficiently spoken of these people, I shall only add a particular concerning them, which did not come to my knowledge before.

In the year 1246 they chose for the chief of *Tartary*, a certain *Kuine*, to whom they gave the surname of *Gog Cham*, which signifies king, or emperor, and the people call themselves *Moales*, or *Mongales*. This emperor and his successors styled themselves in their writings, *The power of God, and emperors of the universe*; and caused the following words to be engraven around their seals, *A GOD IN HEAVEN; A KUINE CHAM ON EARTH; The power of God, and the emperor of all mankind*. These princes always maintain five standing armies, to keep their subjects in awe. The first of these emperors was victorious on the frontiers of *Perfia*, over prince Ba-

1707. *jethmy*, who had made himself master of all the *Christian* and *Saracen* territories, as far as the *Mediterranean*, and to an extent of two days journey beyond *Antioch*; and deprived him of fourteen kingdoms, which comprehended all the tract from thence to *Perfia*. The proper name of this prince was *Bajeth*; *Noy* being a word expressive of his dignity.

The *Tartars* were never governed by a greater prince than *Bathui*, Assumed emperor of Tartary. whose army consisted of six hundred thousand men; namely, a hundred and sixty thousand *Tartars*, and four hundred and forty thousand *Christians*, exclusive of all the infidels who ranged themselves under his banners. This army was divided into five bodies.

This country, which lies to the east, is called *Mongal*, and has four different nations for its inhabitants; namely, the grand *Mongales*, or *Moals*; the *Samingals*, or maritime *Mongales*, who are likewise called *Tartars*, from the river *Tartar*, which flows through their country; the *Merkates*, and the *Metrites*. These four nations greatly resemble each other, living almost in the same manner, and speaking the same language. They, however, are separated from one another, and have different chiefs. Mention is also made of certain *Gingis*, who inhabit the country of *Jeka* in *Mangul*.



1707.

1707.

## C H A P. LXXXIV.

*The author's departure from Astracan. Is shipwrecked on the Volga. Tartarian pirates. His arrival at Zenogar, Zaritza, and Saratof.*

AS I was soon to set out for Moscow, with a Georgian lord, who was going in the quality of ambassador to Poland, we desired the governor to appoint us a vessel, to convey us to Saratof, and likewise to furnish us with passports and such orders as would be necessary for our being accommodated with chariots and horses, in order to continue our journey from that place. I accordingly had three granted for my use, and the Georgian lord as many as he wanted. We received our dispatches on the nineteenth of August, and found the vessel ready equipped for sailing. The next day we embarked, after taking leave of the governor, and began our voyage with the towing-line, till the wind, which then shifted to the east, permitted us to use our sails. But as the gale was very strong, and our ship rolled from one side to the other, we began to be apprehensive of some disaster. Some were for sending for another vessel, others for throwing in more ballast, but none of them came to any fixed resolution. For my part, when I observed that our greatest danger proceeded from the ill structure of the ship, I insisted on their making the best of their way toward land, since I had reason to fear our vessel would founder. The number of persons on board amounted to above thirty; the Georgian had likewise two horses, and the ship was one of the smallest. It was therefore soon filled with water, near the powder-mills, which are seven or eight *Werstes* from Astracan, at a place where an ancient city formerly stood; and we had the utmost difficulty to save our selves and our baggage, with the assistance of some sailors, who threw themselves into the

water. My greatest care was for my papers, and what I had that was most curious, and I committed all the rest, together with my provisions, to the mercy of the waves. The ship being thrown on one of her sides, the horses naturally took to the water, and swam to shore. The moment we ourselves arrived there, we rendered thanks to God for our deliverance; for if the ship had turned on her side in the middle of the river, we all must inevitably have perished, the river being very broad, and the stream exceeding rapid. The Georgian minister immediately sent his interpreter to Astracan, in a sloop, to inform the governor of what had happened to us, and to desire a new ship, but the wind continuing very boisterous, he could not set out till the next day. I sent my footman with him to buy me a fresh supply of provisions, and to deliver a letter I had written to the commander Van der Burgh, wherein I desired him to procure us another vessel as soon as possible, and in case he should not be able to find one ready for sailing, that he would send me a skiff, to convey me back to Astracan, till we could have a more favourable opportunity for continuing our voyage. During the time I waited for his answer, I drew a sketch of the place where we had suffered shipwreck; the two banks of the river are likewise comprehended in the prospect, and the whole is exhibited in the following plate.

The commander Van der Burgh, came to me in the evening in his own sloop, and assured me that the governor had testified an extreme concern at the accident that had befallen us, and would not fail to send us a better ship as soon as possible;

The author's departure from Astracan.





that he, however, wished we would endeavour to set our own a floating, in order to its being sent back to *Astracan*. This we accomplished toward morning, but it immediately sunk to the bottom a second time, in a very deep part of the river, and we could save nothing but the tackling. We were visited again the next day by the commander, who assured us, that the vessel we expected had already set sail, and that it was much better and larger than the other we had lost. He likewise informed us, that the vessel which the governor had dispatched the day before our departure, and which was laden with fruits, and other refreshments, for his *Cæsarian* majesty, had likewise been lost in a storm; but that her crew been saved, and were now on their return to *Astracan*, after having been robbed by the *Tartars*. Our new ship arrived the next day, and we found it much better and more commodious than

the former. Our people were then employed in carrying all things on board, that we might set sail the next day.

The powder-mills, which I mentioned before, are but seldom used, and we saw no more than seven or eight workmen there.

The *Georgian* ambassador happening to advance a little beyond the rest of the company, about eight or nine in the evening, saw eight or ten persons, whom he took for robbers, advancing toward him; but they immediately had recourse to flight, when they heard him call his people to his assistance; and they were not to be overtaken. The governor of *Astracan* sent us fifteen Soldiers in the new ship, with orders for them to tend the tackle, and two of them were to be upon duty in the night. In this manner we continued our voyage, being towed along by ten of our soldiers. The river was half a league broad in that place,



1707. place, and little more than a quarter at the distance of two leagues from thence, and where we heard that another ship had been wrecked in the late storm. She was ornamented with flags and streamers, and belonged to a citizen of *Astracan*. Our Vessel was decorated in the same manner, and had two pieces of cannon, with several fire-arms, and a number of bows and arrows; and we likewise found her very commodious. As I have already given a sufficient description of this river, it will be needless for me to add any other particulars. I shall only observe that it is frequently necessary for ships to be towed up the stream, unless the wind should happen to prove very favourable. They are likewise obliged to lie at anchor, when the wind is either tempestuous, or contrary; the *Calmucks* likewise appear from time to time on the banks.

We passed on the 28th, by a *Corps de Garde*, situated on a point of the river, to the right, where the *Volga* pours itself through a canal, into the *Caspian Sea*. Another guard is likewise stationed on board a vessel in the middle of this river, and especially in the night, in order to visit all ships that pass. We saw a considerable number of *Calmucks*, who were fishing with lines along the bank, and we threw them out some bread, which they swam for, and then carried it to shore. We likewise saw several camels with two bunches rising on their backs, and this place is full of those birds that are called *Water-Carriers*, one of which has been already described. As we were always obliged to be towed along, the men who were employed in that service, went sometimes on one side of the river, and sometimes on the other, to avoid the *Tartars* who frequent that quarter. Two days after we crossed another gulph which is formed by the *Volga*, and as we happened then to go on shore, we found several *Calmucks*, as well men as women, who surveyed without ceasing my manner of dress, which appear-

ed very extraordinary to them, as they had never seen any thing like it before. As they go bare-legg'd, and have very small feet, they muffled them with mine, and likewise their legs, which are very short. Their wives are also very little, and plump, like the men. I was obliged to uncover my bosom to them, in order to satisfy their curiosity; and having then given them to understand that I was desirous to see theirs, they immediately laughed, and gave me that satisfaction without any difficulty. All the habit worn by these people, is a kind of petticoat made of sheep-skins, which they change according to the season, and wear no cloathing on any other part of their body in summer. Most of the young men among them go entirely naked, and have their hair plaited like that of the women. Others of them wear a kind of bonnet, together with a waistcoat and a pair of drawers, but no shirt. They have all broad and flat faces, swollen cheeks, and long eyes. They asked me for some tobacco, which the women as well as the men thrust up their nostrils, and likewise chew.

We continued our voyage on the east side of the river, in order to avoid the *Tartars* on the other side, who are great thieves: We frequently met several vessels, and were from time to time obliged to cross small gulphs, where we found companies of fishermen, and very good fish.

On the 2d of *September* we anchored near the place where the chief, or governor of the *Calmucks*, resides. This officer had lately caused a party consisting of eighty men, to cross the river, in order to pursue a body of *Tartars*, who had newly carried off a great number of his horses, and several of his subjects, but they had not the good fortune to come up with the *Tartars*. We were likewise informed that this quarter was infested by *Cossacks*, who are also great robbers, and this intelligence made us think it necessary to be upon our guard.



1707.

The au-  
thor's ar-  
rival at  
Tumen-  
gor.

We approached *Tumenogor* on the 7th, and cast anchor on the higher side of this place, the wind being contrary and very tempestuous, but we sent for a supply of provisions. A great storm arose in the night, and our cable dragged to such a degree, that we were driven back to a considerable distance by the course of the river, before we could fasten our vessel to the shore with strong ropes. Every one then betook himself to rest, but I was unable to close my eyes, having the idea of our late wreck very strong in my remembrance.

It had always been my custom to give a glass of brandy to each of our sailors once a-day, but I displeased the ambassador by this proceeding, and he gave me to understand by his interpreter, that they were a set of wretches altogether undeserving of any such civility. My answer was, that I had made a sufficient provision for that purpose, and that we might happen to have occasion for their best services; to which I added, that I was sensible by frequent experience, that nothing gained upon those people so much as civility, and that we ought therefore to make a virtue of necessity. When we approached the city we discharged a salvo of our firearms, and saw a great number of ships there.

We continued our voyage two days after, but the weather proved so excessive cold, that we were obliged to cover ourselves with furs, which was a very extraordinary circumstance in that season of the year. As the *Russians* are very bad sailors, our ship frequently ran a-ground, and we lost our anchor by their neglect. No manner of order is observed among them, and the meanest soldier had as much to say as the pilot, which gave me great uneasiness. We were likewise obliged to call the sailors ten or twelve times before they would rise; and I generally found the centinels asleep, not was it without great difficulty that we prevailed upon the men to work the ship when the weather proved tempestuous. I never failed therefore to return thanks

every day to Almighty God, for preserving us in the night, and especially from the *Corfairs*. 1707

We arrived, on the 16th, at the city of *Zaritza*, where the church, which is all of white stone, had been newly built, as well as the city, which was reduced to ashes the preceding year, and all the buildings were not then finished. We continued here two days in order to change our sailors. In the evening, a vessel arrived here from *Saratof*, but she had been robbed in her passage, by the *Russian Cossacks*, and her crew informed us that the river swarmed with these pirates, who sailed out by hundreds in small vessels. I hereupon desired the *Georgian* ambassador to apply to the governor for a guard, which would not be refused provided the request was accompanied with a present; for nothing is to be obtained in this country without money. The minister, however, was deaf to all I could say on this head, though I offered to pay my part of the expence. At last the owners of two other vessels, which were to sail for *Saratof*, as well as ourselves, came to acquaint us, that they would accompany us in the voyage for our mutual security, having obtained the governor's permission for so doing. There was likewise a third ship, which set out before us, and her we found afterward a-ground: due care was however taken to set her a-float again; and after her merchandize had been dried, she joined us, as the rest had done.

We passed, on the 19th, by two sluices, in a part where the river was very narrow, and where we were told the greatest danger was to be apprehended with respect to pirates. This obliged us to be upon our guard in the night, for the soldiers who had towed us along in the day-time, wanted rest. Toward morning we met a vessel which had been plundered by four pirates, and saw three others, which alarmed us at first, but when they were near enough to be distinguished, we found they belonged to *Sa-*

His arrival  
at Zaritza.



1707. *Saratof* and *Casan*, and were carrying foldiers to *Astracan*. We afterward crossed a small gulph, which affords a retreat to pirates, and we therefore thought it necessary to be upon our guard at night; after which we continued our voyage, being towed as long as before, and soon ran aground: But we were set afloat again by a gale which sprung up in the east; and it likewise waited us to the other side of the river, where we cast anchor, and continued till eight in the morning, when we spread our sails to a favourable wind, and were accompanied only by one vessel, the others having set sail before us.

Toward noon we found another gulph to the west of the river, and saw several merchandizes on shore, which the pirates, who had taken them out of the ship already mentioned, had not been able to carry off. We afterward saw two barks which were worked with oars; these we at first took for pirates, but they were only fishermen.

Toward evening another vessel, which came from *Saratof*, sailed by us: she set out before us from *Astracan*, and was now returning thither. We afterward met *Peter Matsewitz Apraxin*, governor of *Astracan*, and he was accompanied by thirty sail, seven of which were large ships.

His own was covered with red cloth, and ornamented with streamers, together with two white flags on the stern, and top-mast head. There were likewise several others, some blue, others red and white, like ours, and some with two eagles, which are the arms of his *Czarian* majesty. We kept near the land while this little fleet passed by us, making a very beautiful effect, and there were likewise several women on board. The ambassador sent some water-melons to the governor, who returned his thanks for that present by some persons of his retinue who came on board our ship, in a sloop, built after the *Dutch* manner. This fleet is exhibited in plate 242, without sails, because the wind was contrary when the ships passed by us.

We in this place had a view of a mountain which ends in a flat summit, and is called the mountain of robbers; because they formerly made it their retreat. The wind having favoured us at last for some time, we arrived, on the 28th, at *Saratof*, where we landed with great pleasure, being extremely fatigued with our voyage, and we took up our lodgings in the quarters which were assigned us by the governors of the place.

THE HISTORY OF THE RUSSIAN EMPIRE, FROM THE YEAR 1700 TO 1725.

## CHAP. LXXXV.

*The civility of the governor of Saratof. The manner in which the Calmucks live. The author sets out from Saratof, and arrives at Petroskie, Pinsa, Inera, Troitskie, Dimik, Kasjemo, Wolodimer, and Moscow.*

I WENT, the day after my arrival, to pay my duty to the governor, and presented him with some water-melons that I had brought from *Astracan*; I likewise delivered to him the letters I had for him, and desired him at the same time, to order

Vo. II.

me those things that would be necessary for me in my journey by land to *Moscow*. This request he granted, in the most obliging manner imaginable, and accompanied this instance of his goodness with a number of other civilities. The next day

Y y

he



1707. sent me an invitation to visit him, by his interpreter, and I then intreated his permission to pass over to the other side of the river of the *Cal-mucks*, to which he immediately consented, and ordered me a vessel for that purpose. I found the bank covered with these people, as well men as women, while that on the city side was bordered in the same manner by *Russians*, who were furnished with all sorts of provisions, such as rice, bread, &c. They had likewise large quantities of cloth, little chests and boxes, and a variety of other things, with which they traffick with the *Cal-mucks*, for horses, cattle, beer, and other productions of their country. I made a draught of this view, which the reader will find in plate 243, where the *Cal-mucks* are represented on the bank, and the city on the other side of the river. I advanced half a league into the country, in order to see their tents, which I found in a wretched condition, and saw nothing remarkable among them; their most considerable people had indeed quitted this part of the country three days before. They were encamped in troops, like the *Tartars*, in the parts adjacent to *Asiracan*, but in a much poorer condition. When I returned to the city, I received an invitation from the governor to take part of a collation with him at his house; where I found the *Georgian* minister, and we were regaled in a very elegant manner. We continued longer in this city than we at first intended, the governor having sent out most of his people to pursue as well the robbers who infested that quarter, as several persons who had escaped out of prison; we were therefore obliged to wait till the 6th of *October*. We, however, caused the chariots we wanted, to be prepared, and covered like our calashes, to secure us from cold and snow, as well as rain and winds, for they are all open at the top. These coverings must be made so as to be easily removed and placed on other chariots, because they are all changed with the horses.

We caused four to be covered in this manner, out of twenty three that were ordered for our use, and of which the *Georgian* minister had nineteen. We then began our journey, after we had taken leave of the governor, and returned him our thanks for all his civilities.

We found the ways perfectly good in this part of the country, but the weather was exceedingly cold and windy, and we arrived about noon at a \* *Cabac*, built of wood, where they made us a good fire, which we greatly needed. We, however, did not continue long in this place; and after we had passed over a mountain and some hills, we came to another *Cabac*, having then travelled thirty *werstes*, and through such steep ways, that three of our chariots were overturned. We renewed our journey before day, and found the earth covered with snow, and were likewise obliged to dine in the open country. We indeed found plenty of wood, of which we made a good fire, and arrived about five at *Petroskie*, where the governor ordered quarters to be assigned us. This city has a considerable extent, and is surrounded with a wall of wood, of which all the houses are likewise built, agreeably to the manner of the country, and there are several churches of the same kind of structure. The city gates are at some distance from it; the streets are likewise spacious, and covered with a very hard clay. We here changed our chariots and horses, and set out the next day at three in the afternoon. A little river flows by the city, and we crossed it by means of a large wooden bridge, which is a league in distance from the city; we likewise passed the night in the open air, after a journey of ten *werstes*. We sheltered ourselves as well as we could with our chariots, kindled a good fire, and continued our journey at two in the morning, in very frosty weather, cross a great marsh; but had afterwards fine roads as far as *Konde*, which is a large town, and we arrived there about

1707.

\* A house where liquors are sold.

The governor's arrival at Petroskie.





SARATOGA.







1707. <sup>1707.</sup> about noon, but staid no longer than two hours, after which we passed through some villages, and particularly that of *Apancha*, at the side of which flows the river of *Kaminka*, at the distance of seven or eight *werstes* from *Pinfa*. We found good stoves in this village, where it is customary to enter into the houses without speaking a word. We arrived on the tenth, at *Pinfa*, which is a large city, and where we crossed the little river of that name, over a wooden bridge. The river of *Kaminka* discharges itself into this, after which their united streams flow cross the country to the south-west. This city is situated on the south-west side of the river, under a mountain, as is likewise the castle, which is very large, and surrounded with a wooden wall. The streets are broad, and there are several churches built of wood. This city is likewise rendered very agreeable by the large growths of trees which surround it; there is also a large suburb on the other side of the river, and the distance of it from *Petrofskie* is computed at sixty *werstes*. Our chariots were to be changed at this place; and as they are sent for from the villages that lie round the city, passengers are frequently obliged to wait for them a considerable time. Several *Swedish* officers were prisoners at this time in the city; from whence we set out the next day, and passed through several villages, and tracts of arable land, and arrived on the 30th at *Infera*, where our carriages were to be changed again. We here found provisions very cheap, as they had been in every other place, since we paid but a penny for a large pullet, and no more for twenty eggs, of which even forty or fifty may be purchased at some particular seasons, for the same price. I there bought a good *Turkey* for three pence, and paid no more for a pig; I likewise gave but twenty pence for a large hog. A sheep may be had for ten pence, a lamb for five, a goose for two, and bread in proportion.

The city itself makes but a very ordinary appearance, and the castle has only one wooden wall, flanked with several towers. As the governor was not in the city at that time, we could not be supplied with horses till the 15th. The *Georgian* minister was in some measure the occasion of this delay, because he would not pay what was demanded of him, under a pretext that it ought to be there defrayed; but he at last consented to pay half the sum required.

We then continued our journey as far as *Jemikoi*, which is a very large town, and has a church built of wood. It lies at the distance of eight *werstes* from *Infera*, where we passed over a wooden bridge. On the seventeenth by break of day, we passed the *Moksa*, which discharges itself into the *Occa*; and then continued our journey through a wood, and several villages, after which we crossed the river a second time, and arrived about noon at *Troyetfskie*, from whence we went to pass the night at *Belt-seja-tsjar*, having travelled thirty *werstes*. The next day we proceeded as far as *Miegalsfskie*, and on the eighteenth continued our journey through several woods, that were watered by the *Moksa*, which is there very broad, and has a passage over it on a wooden bridge, at the end of which is a *Corps de Garde*. We arrived about nine at *Demnik*, which is a poor village, entirely open, and without any castle. The ambassador had a new dispute on the 20th with the inhabitants of the place, who refused to furnish him with horses, without money, and this caused us to lose abundance of time, which highly provoked me, I not daring to proceed in my journey without him: But they at last came to an agreement, and we continued our journey along the river; after which we entered the woods through which it flows, and met several *Russian* travellers. From hence we had very bad ways as far as the village of *Vedenapina*, where we passed the



1707. the night. At break of day we struck into the woods a second time, and crossed the river again, over a wooden bridge; after which we came into very bad roads among the trees, and several axle-trees of our chariots were frequently broken, so that it required time to mend them with the branches of trees. The night then approaching, we were obliged to halt near a small chapel, where several ecclesiastics had their residence. We there made a good fire, and kept a strict guard till the dawn of day, when we continued our journey by the side of the river, which we afterward crossed, by means of a little bridge of boats, on which no more than two chariots could proceed at one time, and the river was two hundred paces in breadth. We found on the other side a little plain, before a wood, and travelled as far as *Kaelekove*, a village situated on a rising ground, from whence we descended into a hollow way, filled with water, which was then frozen. On

the 23d, and by break of day, we again crossed the same river on a bridge of wood, and afterward found the ways extremely bad, and filled with little bridges, under which the waters flow. We then proceeded through the town of *Alossa*, and passed the night at *Zowata*, where two of our domestics, who had intoxicated themselves with brandy, continued with their chariots, and were treated very ill by the *Russians*, who had taken away their cloaths and bonnets. When they afterward rejoined us in that condition, we had a long consultation whether we should return, but the negative prevailed, and we proceeded on our journey. We afterward crossed the *Occa*, on little bridges of boats, like those I have already mentioned. I there drew the course of the river to the south, where it forms a very spacious gulph, which extends from east to west, as far as I could judge by my eye, having lost the needle of my compass. The representation of it is exhibited in the following plate.



VIEW OF THE OCCA.

Our time was taken up in passing this river, till two in the afternoon, after which we travelled along the side of it to *Monfo*, a vil-

lage situated on an eminence, and at the distance of fifteen *werstes* from the place where we had crossed the river. The next day we pro-



1707. proceeded to *Kasimo*, where we changed our horses, in order to go to *Zerbalova*, which lay about fifteen *wersles* from it, and where the ways proved so bad, that most of our chariots were overturned, which lost us abundance of time. The Georgian minister continued his journey with some persons of his train, but I had no inclination to follow him, during the darkness of the night: I therefore waited for the rising of the sun, and arrived about nine, at *Nova dereefna*, on the other side of the wood, and twenty five miles from *Zerbalova*; and from hence I proceeded as far as *Jikofway*, where I passed the night. The two next days we made but little progress, the ways proving very bad, and my chariot happening to break. On the 30th we found the roads full of water, and about noon had a view of the city of *Wolodimer*, which is situated on a mountain, where it makes a very fine appearance, on account of its numerous churches, which are white. We afterward crossed the *Clesma*, which flows by it to the south, and discharges itself into the *Volga*. The city, which is the capital of the dutchy of that name, is very large, and situated on several hills, separated from each other, along the river. Seven or eight of its churches are built of stone, but there are several others of wood; and the distance of this city from *Moscow* is but 150 *wersles*. We continued there no longer than the first of *November*, and then passed thro' several villages, and crossed the river *Wartsa*, where we found the governor of *Pinsa*, who did us the honour to dine with us, and then set out for *Moscow* before us, being not incumbered with baggage like our-

The city of  
Kasimo.

Wolodi-  
mer.

In situa-  
tion.

selves. We followed him about four, and were accompanied by several persons armed with clubs, whose extremities were pointed with iron. We advanced on the third as far as *Sallopokro*, a large town, in which is a fine church built of stone. We there found great plenty of provisions, together with good beer, and white bread, but every thing was much dearer than in other places through which we had passed; a pullet being sold for four pence, and all the rest in proportion. As we proceeded on our journey, we passed through several villages; crossed some rivers on little bridges, and went to lodge that night at *Sjeleva*. The next day we crossed the *Clesma* again, on a float of timber, on which I received a fall that crushed my leg to a violent degree; but when we came to *Rageza*, I rubbed it with mummy, which I had brought from *Persia*, and then continued my journey, tho' I was unable to move my leg. The next day we arrived at *Moscow*, into which the Georgian minister would not make his entrance that day. For my part, I returned to my old quarters in the *Slabode*, where I made use of my mummy a second time, and then finding my leg much easier, and being capable of walking a little with my cane, I caused myself to be conveyed in a sledge to the house of Monsieur *Hulst*, the Dutch resident: But my leg was inflamed to such a degree the next day, that I was obliged to keep my chamber above fifteen days, the motion which I had undergone in so unseasonable a manner, having prevented the mummy from producing its effect: I therefore found it necessary to send for a Chirurgeon, and I could not walk as formerly, in less than the space of six weeks.

1707.

The m.  
that arrived at  
Moscow.



## C H A P. LXXXVI.

*A punishment inflicted on rebels. The arrival of the Czar at Moscow. New buildings. Fire-works. The departure of his Czarian majesty.*

*The author  
visits prince  
Bories,*

I WENT on the 29th, with our resident, to the country house of the *Knees*, or prince *Bories*, (whom I have frequently mentioned) in order to thank him for his favourable recommendations to the governors of *Casán* and *Astracan*. This lord received us in a most obliging manner, and would not suffer us to return till we had dined with him. The next day I paid a visit to Mr. *Witworth*, the minister of Great-Britain, who treated me with the utmost civility, and likewise obliged me to dine with him. He even did me the honour to come to my lodgings, to see the curiosities I had brought from *Persia* and the *Indies*.

*And the  
English  
envoy.*

*An execution.*

On the first of *December* thirty persons were beheaded, for being concerned in the massacre at *Astracan*. This execution, which was performed about noon, lasted but little more than half an hour, and was accomplished without any disorder, the malefactors laying their heads very quietly on the block, without being bound with cords.

Three days after prince *Mensikoff* gave a splendid entertainment at the house of the deceased general *le Fort*. The company present on this occasion were the princess, his majesty's sister; the *Czarina*, and the princesses her daughters; together with the *Czar* of *Georgia*, who was deposed by his brother, and had taken refuge at the court of *Moscow*, where he is entertained with his son the prince, who entered into the service of his *Czarian* majesty, and was taken prisoner by the *Swedes*, at the siege of *Narva*. Several lords and ladies of the court were likewise present at this feast, as were likewise the *English* envoy and consul, together with most of the

merchants of that nation, and a great number of *German* and *Hollanders*. The men and women placed themselves separately in two different apartments, and several healths were drank to a discharge of cannon and some bombs. This entertainment was succeeded by a ball, and several curious fire-works were played off in the evening.

On the 6th the *Czar* arrived at *Moscow* about noon, under a discharge of all the cannon on the ramparts, and was received with universal joy, after an absence of two years. Two days after I went to pay my duty to that prince at his palace of *Represenske*, where I found him going out in a sledge. He received me very graciously, and assured me he was greatly pleased to see me again in his dominions. He was then going to visit the princess, his sister, and I had the honour to follow him. This princess presented with her own hand, to every one of his majesty's retinue, a little vermilion glass of brandy, and then placed herself by the *Czar*, who made a sign to me to approach him, and commanded me to give him a succinct relation of my travels, particularly of the court of *Persia*, and the ladies of the seraglio. He likewise expressed the same curiosity with respect to the court of *Bantam*, and explained to the princess, and the ladies of her train, all the particulars I had the honour to relate to him in *Dutch*. After which her highness presented another glass of brandy to all the company around, and I entreated the *Czar* to grant me a passport, that I might quit his dominions without any molestation, to which he immediately consented. He returned to his palace about four,

*The arrival of the  
Czar at  
Moscow.*

and



1707. and I to my *Slabode*, with a heart full of gratitude for the goodness I had experienced from that prince.

On the 23d a *Polish* bishop was exchanged for the *Kneis Fenders-witz*, who had been taken prisoner at *Narva*. Intelligence was likewise brought of the death of the *Great Mogul*, who had lived above a hundred years.

The death  
of the  
Great Mo-  
gul.

New  
buildings.

It will not be improper for me, before my departure from *Moscow*, to mention some buildings that were erected there, since my journey to *Persia*. The most considerable of these is a large structure of stone, which was begun seven years ago, and was intended for the officers of the mint; but within the last year and a half it has been converted into a dispensatory for medicines. It is a very fine and lofty building, with a beautiful tower in the front. Its situation is to the east of the castle, and on the spot where formerly was a market for fowls. The passage to it lies through a large base court, at the end of which is a great staircase, that conducts to the first apartment, which is vaulted, and very lofty, and contains fifteen feet in depth, and twenty in breadth. People were employed in painting it in distemper at that time. The side walls are embellished with fine cross work, and the others are to be decorated with *China* syrup-pots, and other vases, on the top of which the arms of his *Cæsarian* majesty are enamelled. There are two doors to this apartment, one of which affords a passage into the magazine of medicinal herbs; the other opens into the chancery, or office of accounts belonging to the house. There are also very beautiful halls finely vaulted, particularly two, which entirely correspond in structure, one of which serves for a laboratory, and the other for a library, wherein extraordinary plants and animals are likewise preserved. Beside these apartments, there are several others, particularly that of the president or doctor, and another which belongs to the apothecary and

his domestics. The doctor has also the direction of the chancery, and has under him a vice-chancellor, and several commissioners, and he has even power to punish with death those who are under his direction, whenever they merit such a treatment. All the physicians, chirurgeons, and druggists, receive their salaries in this office of chancery. Eight apothecaries are employed in this dispensatory, and they have under them five boys, and above forty workmen; and from hence his majesty's troops and navies are supplied with all the drugs and medicines they want.

1707.

The director of this house is doctor *Arckine*, a *Scotchman*, and first physician to his *Cæsarian* majesty, who allows him a yearly pension of 1500 ducats. He has been four years in the service of this prince, who has a great esteem for him, on account of his capacity and personal merit, and he has gained the affection of all the court by his polite and obliging conduct. His majesty made him a present of two thousand crowns when he engaged in this great and arduous work. He seemed to be persuaded, when I left *Moscow*, that every thing would be completed in the space of a year; and he was then employed in collecting from all quarters, and disposing with the utmost elegance on paper, all the principal herbs and flowers, which are useful in medicine, and of which he had already filled a book. He likewise shewed me a large piece of petrified brown bread, and assured me that he intended to send into *Siberia* for a collection of simples, flowers, and plants. This dispensatory has two gardens.

I likewise found, at my return from *Persia*, that an hospital had been built at *Moscow* for sick persons. This structure is built of wood, on the bank of the river *Yonfa*, and in the *German Slabode*. The hospital is divided into two parts, in each of which are seven beds on one side, and ten on the other; each bed be-  
ing



1707. ing intended for two persons, and there are nine in the middle range, for single persons. There are three stoves in each of these divisions, and the chamber appropriated to anatomy is between them. The second story contains several little apartments, where the physician, apothecary, and chirurgeon of the hospital lodge. The dispensatory consists of three chambers; two for the medicines, and a third for the herbs of which they are composed.

On the side of this hospital is a manufactory of cloth, under the direction of a draper, who was sent for from *Holland*; and on the other side of the river *Moscow*, is a glass-house, where looking-glasses are made, among which I saw some that were above three ells in length. Workmen were likewise employ'd in repairing the castle, together with the red wall of the city, and especially to the east and north; nor must I omit, that the three Jesuits who reside in this city, two of whom are *Germans*, and the other an *Englishman*, have built a little church in the *Slabode*, and painted the inside of it in distemper.

1708. The first day of the year 1708, was celebrated with rejoicings, and a fine fire-work, in the great square, where his *Cæsarian* majesty gave an entertainment in the lodge that has been formerly mentioned. Some

days after, this monarch gave another 1708. in the house of Monsieur *le Fort*, which at present belongs to the prince of *Mensikov*, who has greatly enlarged and embellished it. His majesty, when the repast was over, paid his usual visits to the foreign merchants, and began with our resident, in the manner that has been formerly described. He continued with that minister for the space of two hours, after which he made several other visits, being on the point of setting out for the army. Monsieur *Grundt*, the *Danish* minister, arrived at that time; and most of the merchants of *Archangel*, at the latter end of the month, as is usual.

On the sixth of *February*, seventy more of the principal rebels of *Altracan* were beheaded; five were broken on the wheel, and forty-five were afterward hanged. Rebels executed.

When I had obtained my second passport, I took leave of our resident, and all my friends, in order to set out on the tenth, having already secured all the carriages I had occasion for, as far as *Koningsberg*. I then waited on the envoy of *Great Britain*, in whose apartment I found all the merchants of that nation. We passed the evening in a very agreeable manner, after which I went to prepare for my setting out that night in a sledge.

## CHAP.



1708.

1708.

## C H A P. LXXXVII.

*The author's departure from Moscow, and arrival at Waefma, Dorgoboes, Smolensko, and Borisof. Villages burnt by the Muscovites. The author's return to Moscow.*

*The author sets out from Moscow.*

WE set out at one in the morning, and arrived about eight at *Wesimke*, which is thirty five *werstes* from *Moscow*. We were seven in company; namely, four *Englishmen*, two *Germans*, and myself, and each of us had a sledge to ourselves, and two for our servants, beside post-horses, in case any accident should hapen to us on the way, as is very customary. We had likewise taken care to send others to *Smolensko*, eight days before we began our journey, that they might rest there till our arrival. After we had travelled forty nine *werstes*, to *Modenovo*, we passed through several villages, and over a plain, where we met a great number of sledges, at midnight, and arrived about noon at *Ostrosjok*, a village situated in a wood, at the distance of forty *werstes* from the last place; and there are thirty seven from thence to *Waefma*, where we arrived on the thirteenth. It is a large city, and has a castle built of wood, and several stone towers. We set out from thence about noon, and came to *Dorgoboes*, on the fourteenth, having travelled sixty nine *werstes*. This is a poor village, around which hemp grows in great perfection. We there passed the *Nieper*, as we did a second time at *Phoca*, which is forty four *werstes* from thence, and we arrived at *Smolensko*, on the 15th, after a journey of thirty six *werstes*. We were there obliged to shew our passports to the governor, who received us in a very obliging manner, and not only dispatched others to the frontiers, but appointed us a guard for our security. In return for these favours, we presented him with a small cask of wine. This city, which is very large,

Vol. II.

is a bishop's see; it has likewise several churches built of stone, and many others of wood.

We set out about five with post-horses we had sent thither, and found the ways full of water. In a short time after we came to an enclosure, with a gate, where a guard was stationed; and from thence we proceeded as far as *Krans-felo*, where we passed the night, after having travelled forty four *werstes*. We continued our journey at seven in the morning, the weather being very frosty, and met the baggage of the prince of *Mensikof*, and some coaches, in one of which was the princess, his consort, who was going to *Smolensko*. About noon we arrived at the frontiers of *Poland*, and two hours after at *Dobroosna*, after a journey of twenty three *werstes*. We continued there till nine in the evening, and came about three in the morning to the city of *Copiez*, which is within six leagues of *Germany*, each league containing five *werstes*, as I formerly observed; for the way from *Smolensko* is computed by leagues.

*The author's arrival on the frontiers of Poland.*

*A Copiez*

We shewed our passports in the morning to general *Allert*, a *Scotchman*, who received us in the most engaging manner imaginable, and gave us to understand, that it would be difficult for us to proceed by *Koningsberg*, on account of the *Swedish* troops, who were on their march from thence; upon which we resolved to take the road of *Wilde*. As all the houses were filled with soldiers, we took up our lodging with doctor *Areskim*, who was then in the city, and we passed a very agreeable evening with him and general *Allert*. The *Russians* had thrown up lines round the city, and the *Nieper*,

A a a

which

*His arrival at Waefma.*

*A Dorgoboes.*

*A Smolensko.*



1708, which flows by the side of it, in order to oppose the *Swedes* who were expected in that quarter.

At Bori-  
sof.

We continued our journey on the 18th, through woods that were full of fir-trees, with which that part of the country abounds, and arrived, about ten, at *Kraepka*, where a body of five hundred men were posted. From thence we proceeded to *Borisofof*, which is a poor village, the houses of which are scattered up and down without the least regularity. It however has a wooden castle, which is surrounded with a wall of earth. Monsieur *Keiserling*, the *Prussian* minister, was there at that time. We shewed him our passports, and set out from thence at two in the afternoon, but lost our way for some time in the woods, which are very thick: However, we arrived, in the evening, at *Julejewa*, and continued our journey from thence at one in the morning, with a guide, who conducted us to *Belaroet*, where there is a large house, which belongs to a *Polish* lord. We afterward passed through another village seated in a plain, where we saw a regiment of soldiers, and arrived at *Krajnasel*, after travelling twelve leagues.

The calamitous  
state of the  
peasants.

We continued our journey on the 21st, and came about three in the afternoon to the village of *Mollodesna*, from whence prince *Alexander* had set out in the morning. The *Russians* had lately made great devastations there, and in other places, by fire, to prevent the *Swedes* from finding any subsistence in those parts. These ravages presented a horrid spectacle to our view: All the woods around were filled with the poor peasants, who fled thither to secure themselves from the rage of the exasperated soldiers, and to conceal the little they had been able to save. We saw several of those unhappy people, who were viewing this dismal scene with eyes drowned in tears, and hearts racked with anguish. Others were trembling in expectation of the enemy, from whom they apprehended nothing less than destruction. Our conductors were

shocked to such a degree, at what they saw, that they intreated us with tears in their eyes, to permit them to return. Our compassion for them obliged us to consent to their request, and we determined to continue our journey without them, surrounded as we were with flames. We, however, bought two of their horses, to carry us to *Wilda*, which was sixteen leagues from thence; but the moment our guides were gone, we found ourselves in a perplexity that seemed to be inextricable, when we began to consider, that if we proceeded forward, we should be in danger of falling into the hands of the *Walachians*, who were in the service of *Sweden*; and that if we should endeavour to return from whence we came, we should inevitably meet the marauders of the same nation, who were intermixed with the *Muscovites*, and are a people who treat friends and enemies alike, and never spare even their nearest relations. They are a set of savages, who receive no pay, and subsist by nothing but rapine and depredations. There were likewise in this part of the country a great number of *Tartars*, and *Calmucks*, who are altogether as bad as the others. We therefore continued where we then were, till noon, not knowing what course to take, since the flames encircled us from all quarters; but we at last resolved to commit ourselves to the providence of God, and continue our journey without guides. We had no sooner quitted the village, than we met a party of horse, composed of *Cossacks* and *Walachians*, in the *Muscovite* service, with an officer at their head. They immediately stopped us, upon which we shewed them our passports, which they entirely disregarded, saying we were traitors, who intended to go over to the enemy. We were in this condition, when a young *German*, who was among them, advanced forward, and represented to them with great freedom, that they acted a wrong part, and treated us in a very injurious manner; upon which one of them gave

1708.

A perplex-  
ing con-  
juncture.



1708. him a severe stroke with a whip, and the other returned it with usury. He then desired us to fear nothing, since a general was advancing to us with great expedition, at the head of a great body of horse. His companions, who were sensible this intelligence was true, retired as fast as possible, and left us to ourselves. We were not surprised at this proceeding, being very sensible that these people, who appear very resolute when they have an opportunity to rob, are meer dastards where they meet with the least resistance, and betake themselves to their heels the moment they see one of their companions drop. The body of horse, which the young German mentioned, came up to us in less than a quarter of an hour, and was commanded by two lieutenant-generals, one of whom was an *Englishman*, and the other a *German*. The *English* officer, who knew us, had the goodness to treat us with the greatest civility, after which we acquainted him with our late adventure, and desired him to inform us, whether he thought it possible for us to continue our journey in safety? He assured us, that it was altogether impracticable, because the *Russian Cossacks* were still employed in burning all the remaining villages, and in breaking down the bridges, and that it would likewise be impossible for us to escape those who were in the service of *Sweden*, and plundered where-ever they came, not so much as sparing the lives of those who had the misfortune to fall into their hands; for which reasons he advised us to return with him, and we found it necessary to take that resolution. This gentleman likewise dispatched a trooper after our guides, who rejoined us with their horses; so that as we had two horses to each sledge, we soon overtook the party who had treated us with such ill language; and the *English* officer gave the commander of it several lashes with his whip, in order to instruct him in his duty.

We were likewise informed, that 1708. the *Swedish Cossacks* were within four or five leagues of us, and we arrived soon after at the house of a *Polish* lord, which was set on fire at nine in the evening. Three leagues from thence we found another, which resembled a fortress, and there was likewise a body of troops, commanded by colonel *Geheim*, who advised us to pass on without halting, because the *Swedes* were expected there. We then proceeded through several places, where troops were stationed, and arrived about three at the palace of *Lesnow*, where prince *Alexander of Mensikof* then was. We were in hopes of waiting on him immediately, and with that view had separated ourselves, with a guard of four troopers, from the great body of horse. This prince received us in a very gracious manner, and we intreated him to inform us, whether there was no other road, through which we might continue our journey in safety; or whether he would be so good as to dispatch a trumpet to the *Swedish* army, in order to procure us a safe passage? His answer was, that, with respect to the first particular, it would be impossible to proceed on our journey, the *Swedish* troops having spread themselves over all the country; and that it would be of no effect to send a trumpet to their army, because they would not admit any such person to an audience, having already massacred two or three, and several drummers; for which reasons the prince advised us to return to *Moscow*, and recommended it to me in particular, since he knew that I had several curiosities which I had brought from *Persia* and the *Indies*. I returned him my humble acknowledgments for his goodness, after which I gave him a succinct account of my journey, and he then directed us to follow him, for the space of three days, that we might not be exposed to the fury of the *Polish* peasants, who were throwded in the woods through which we were to pass, and spared none that came in their



1708. their way. Such was the civility of the prince, which I can never sufficiently praise. He likewise informed us, that the advance guard of the *Swedish* troops arrived within three hours after our departure, at the last castle by which we had passed, and that they had massacred above a hundred *Russians*, whom they found there. As soon as we had quitted that where we now were, it was set on fire, and as it was full of Hay, the flames reached us in a moment, and obliged us to double our pace. We pursued our journey the whole night, but halted at particular intervals to wait for the baggage. This circumstance, in conjunction with the thickness of the woods, made us lose much time, and exposed us to the danger of being surprised by the enemy. However, we arrived about noon, at *Nilnikof*, after we had travelled four leagues through rain and snow.

We endeavoured to alleviate the fatigue of our journey with good cheer, without perceiving that we were almost unprovided with bread, which it would be impossible for us to procure in that road. Our only remedy was to address ourselves to the prince, and I was deputed to that office, since I had the honour to be known to him. He was at table when I acquitted myself of my commission, which caused all the company to smile; but he had the goodness to desire me to be seated by him, which gave me a sensible pleasure, but was very mortifying to my companions, who waited my return with impatience. When we rose from table, he ordered me to be supplied with all the accommodations we wanted; and this he did with such an air of goodness, as is not to be expressed.

We renewed our journey toward evening, and passed through several woods that were filled with peasants. About three we halted in a village which was not far from the city of *Sr-china*, where the prince had invited us to dine with him that day; but his dinner was over before our arrival.

We, however, were well entertained by his officers.

1708.

We took our leave of him on the 24th, and he had still the goodness to send a detachment of three hundred horse before us, to secure our passage; he likewise ordered us a guard of six dragoons, commanded by a *Polish* officer, and they were to accompany us as far as *Smolensko*. We arrived about six, at the little city of *Borissowa*, having travelled four leagues, and about ten in the morning we came to *Kroepka*, which is eight leagues from thence. We then passed through several villages, in one of which there was not a mortal to be found, and came about noon to *Tollotbin*, after a journey of seven leagues. We set out again on the 27th, and arrived in the evening at the city of *Copics*. Colonel *Al-ler*, together with the *Prussian* minister, and doctor *Areshkin*, who had resided there for some time, were just set out from thence, in order to join the *Czar* at *Solenjo*, which was eight leagues from that place; and we arrived at *Dobroefna*, on the last day of the month, and after a journey of seven leagues. Here the *Polish* gentleman and his dragoons, who had conducted us out of our way, quitted us in the night without speaking a word, which reduced us to a great perplexity. We, however, proceeded on our journey without a guard, and happily arrived about seven at *Bagova*, which is the last village in this part of the *Polish* territories. We took up our lodgings among the *Jews*, and came the next day to *Smolensko*, where we went to pay our respects to the governor, and to acquaint him with the particulars of our journey. After which we desired him to allow us fresh horses, but he assured us he had not any; notwithstanding which, we found eight that came the evening before from *Moscow*, with a set of travellers who proceeded farther. This was a very reasonable circumstance, and we harnessed four of the horses to our sledges, adding three of our own, but these were so fatigued, that they



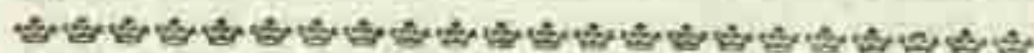
1708. they could hardly move forward, and we had lost several by the way. In this manner we continued our journey, and arrived about eight in the morning at *Glowa*, after travelling thirty three *werstes*. From thence we proceeded to *Dargobush*, *Wesena*, and *Moschatofkie*, and at last arrived at *Moscow*, where I returned to my old quarters in the *Slabode*, and surprised all who were there, with my return.

The author's arrival at Moscow.

On the 10th of *March*, the Dutch merchants, who set out after us, returned thither in the same manner, and shortly after all the rest of the travellers, whom I formerly men-

tioned, did the same. They had stopped for some time at the camp of his *Czarian* majesty, in hopes of an opportunity for proceeding on their journey. Monsieur *Keiserling*, the *Prussian* minister, came hither likewise, and as the commotions of war prevented the receipt of letters from *Holland*, from whence five or six posts were then due, our merchants came to a resolution to send an express at all adventures; and I determined to return by water, by the way of *Archangel*, with Monsieur *Kinsius*, brother to the gentleman with whom I came to *Moscow*.

1708.



## C H A P. LXXXVIII.

*The author's last departure from Moscow; and his arrival at Preslaw, Rostof, Jereflaw, and Wologda. The manner of travelling by water.*

The author's departure from Moscow.

SET out from *Moscow* in a sledge, on the twenty third of *March*, with several other travellers, and proceeded that day as far as *Bratossina*, a town thirty *werstes* from *Moscow*. The next day about nine, we arrived at *Treyskie*, which has been already described, as well as the fine monastery of that name. We afterward passed over mountains covered with trees, which undoubtedly create an admirable effect in summer. We there met a party of six or seven thousand soldiers newly raised, and without arms; their officers were in sledges. On the 25th, we arrived at *Preslaw*, where we made no stay, but proceeded to *Waska*. The next day we passed by *Rostof*, on the north-west of the lake which bears that name, and is surrounded with villages. The inhabitants of this quarter cultivate onions and garlic; and the city has a metropolitan who resides there. Half a league from thence is the monastery of *Peuter Zarewits*, which is encircled with houses.

His arrival at Preslaw.

At Rostof.

From thence we proceeded to *Nikola*, which is forty five *werstes* in distance from it, and where in the summer season the river *Ostie-reka* may be passed on a float of timber. We arrived on the 26th at *Jereflaw*, and lodged in the suburb of *Troepene*, from whence I caused my self to be conveyed in a sledge to the river *Wologda*, in order to draw a view of the city, as well as the time would allow, we being to continue there but three hours. This prospect is exhibited in plate 244. It begins with the letter A to the south, where flows the *Kotis*, which discharges its waters into the *Wologda*. There were five vessels, with three masts each, in the river at that time, and they came from *Casan* with the utmost difficulty, being towed up the *Volga* by main force, in order to arrive at *Petersburg*. Several other vessels were likewise frozen in the river. At a little distance from the city is a village with a church built of stone, and the suburbs are on each side. The city is seated



1708. seated on an eminence, and partly enclosed with a stone wall, which has not been finished, because the earth was not sufficiently compact; for which reason it is in a very bad condition. This city is very large, and almost square, and the great number of stone churches which are there, give it a fine appearance without. There are likewise several houses built of stone, but most of them are of wood, as are also four bridges which slant from the houses to the river. The northern quarter is distinguished by the letter B, beyond which is a prospect of several houses, and a church of stone. The city makes a greater appearance on this side than it does on the other, and indeed it may be justly reputed one of the finest cities in all *Russia*. A great number of merchants live there, and a considerable trade is carried on in leather, tallow, brushes, and linen cloth: but nothing is so much admired here as the beauty of the women, who in that particular surpass all the rest of their sex in this country.

We set out from hence at two in the afternoon, proceeding always to the north, through woods; after which we pursued our journey through several villages, and passed the night at *Wakere*, after travelling forty *werstes*. We arrived on the 27th at *Ogaskie-jam*, which is thirty *werstes* from the place where we lodged. From thence we had bad ways as far as *Wologda*, where I was resolved to continue till the rivers were navigable, that I might proceed to *Archangel* by water, and carefully examine the course of the rivers between these two cities, since travellers have said but little of them. Beside the beauty of the rivers, this part of the country affords a variety of delightful prospects. About this time seven thousand families arrived at this city from *Derpat*, the capital of *Livonia*, with an intention to settle there, and they had quarters assigned to them among the *Russians*. This people made their appearance the next day on the river, in order

to be registered, and intelligence came 1708. in a short time after, that the city of *Derpat* had been destroyed after their departure. The most considerable persons among them repaired to *Petersburg*, by the order of his *Cæsarian* majesty, and were to be followed by some foreign merchants. Soon after this event seventeen hundred of the inhabitants of *Narva* arrived there, and were likewise to continue in that city till new orders; several other persons likewise came thither, and their number in the whole amounted to two thousand seven hundred.

The weather began to thaw toward the close of *April*, and the wind blew a very strong gale, on the first day of *May*, which cleared the river of all the ice. On the 15th in the evening there was a great tempest, accompanied with thunder and lightening, which beat down several roofs, doors, and chimneys, and damaged most of the houses in the city.

The *English* merchants who had accompanied me in *Poland*, arrived at this city on the 30th, and set out the same night for *Archangel*. They had suffered greatly in the storm, which overthrew several of their carriages.

I drew, from my chamber window, the course of the river *Wologda* to the west, and it is represented in plate 245, as is a branch of cedar in plate 246. It is a very common tree in this country. I drew the leaves and fruit from nature. I have seen one of a prodigious size, that was produced from a seed brought from *Siberia*, a country abounding in trees of this species, and where some are as large as those on mount *Libanus*. There are likewise very considerable growths of them in the country adjacent to *Moscow*.

With respect to the river *Wologda*, which was formerly called *Nasson*, its source is one hundred *werstes* above the city of that name, in a large marsh, between the lake of *Keben*, and the *White Lake*, and it discharges itself into the *Suchana*, after having





1711/12





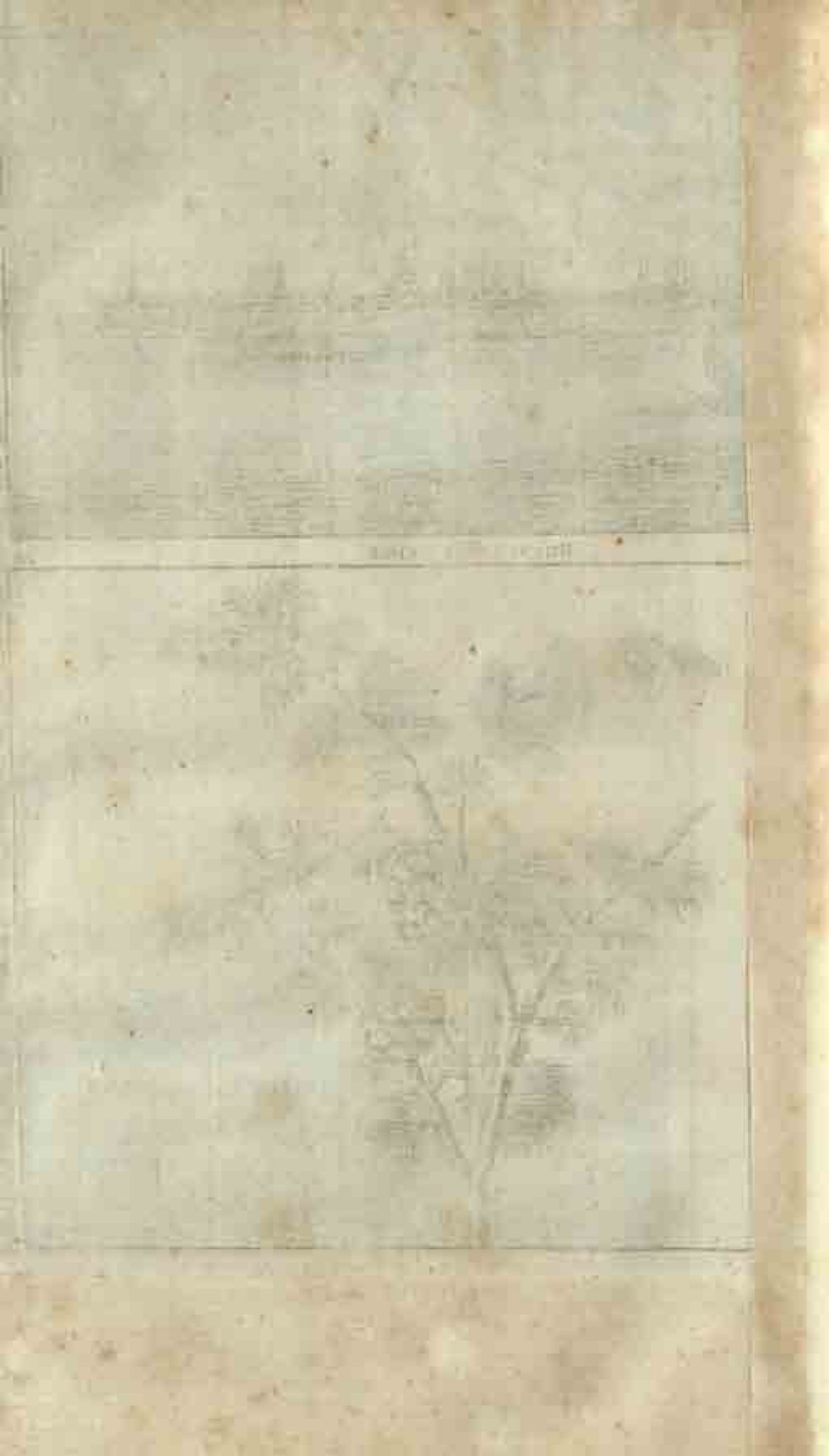
WOLOGDA



BRANCHE DE CEDRE.







1708, having received into its channel, the waters of several small rivers, above *Wologda*. And yet those of this river are exhausted to such a degree in the summer, that people sometimes pass it without wetting their feet, and only by leaping from one part of the land to another. It is about fifty paces broad in this place, where several other streams are likewise to be seen. The distance of the *White Lake* from hence does not exceed ninety *werstes*, and it abounds with excellent fish, such as *Sondakes*, *Steriettes*, perch, and smelts, whose exceeding whiteness has given this lake its name. On the contrary, there is another lake, at the distance of fifty *werstes* from the city to the northwest, and which extends as far as *Kargapol*, and then discharges itself into the *Dawga*, which falls into the *White Sea*: This lake produces fish of all kinds, but they are entirely black. The *White Lake* flows into the *Volga*, through the *Saxna*, at the distance of some leagues from *Perejawa Resanske*.

Before I quit the subject of this city, it may be proper to observe, that those who intend to set out from hence by water to *Archangel*, must have little vessels made purposely on that Occasion, and capable of containing five or six passengers; but those who have occasion for them, must send directions for their being built, before they set out from *Mos-*

*cow*, that they may be ready, when the passengers arrive at this place. They are as commodious as possible, and are furnished with wooden beds, tables, seats, and all other necessities. They are called *Kajooks*, and seldom cost more than twenty five rubels, which are equal to one hundred and twenty five florins; and they have twelve or fourteen rowers, each of whom may be hired for six or seven florins. There are other vessels smaller than these, and they are called *Karhaffes*; but they contain no more than one or two passengers, and six rowers. These little barks cost five rubels and a half; each of the rowers will require four florins, and eleven or twelve must be paid to the pilot; so that the whole expence will amount to no more than thirteen rubels. No more than two rowers work at a time, and they relieve themselves every ten, fifteen, or twenty *werstes*, as they can agree among themselves. The distances at which they relieve each other, and which are called *Peremines*, are marked out, either by a church, a village, a river, a tree, or a cross. *Archangel* is computed to be a thousand *werstes* from *Wologda* by water, and six hundred and thirty by land; and this inequality is occasioned by the various windings of the river.

1708,

## C H A P.



## C H A P. LXXXIX.

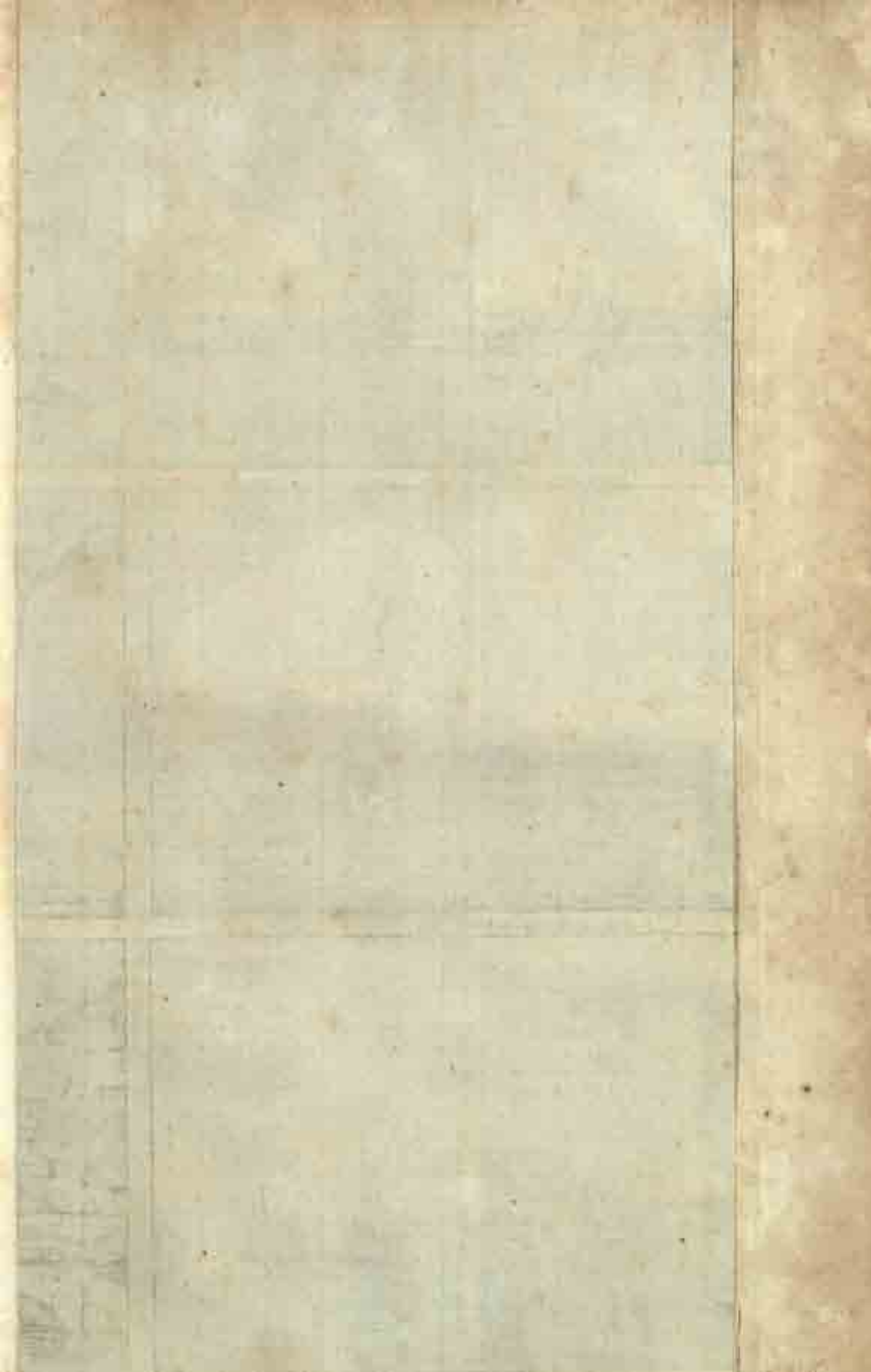
*The author's departure from Wologda, and arrival at Todma. A description of Oest-joege, or Oustiough. The junction of the river of that name with the Suchana, and the Dwina. Salt-works. Mountains of Alabaster. The mountain of Orices. The author arrives at Archangel.*

*The author's departure from Wologda.*

I SET out from *Wologda* on the 17th of June, after I had provided myself with a bark, and all other things that were necessary. We proceeded at first to the south, and then to the east, through a channel bordered with little woods on each side, and after we had advanced twenty *werstes*, we came to the river *Soegna*, or *Suchana*, into which the *Wologda*, which is not so large a river, discharges its streams. On the 18th we set up a sail made of mats, and steered to the east, and afterward to the south, passing by a timber-yard, where the ships that transport mercantile goods from *Wologda* to *Archangel*, are built, and the bank was covered with fir-trees. On the 19th we kept on to the east, and I landed on a spot of ground that was filled with a growth of wild strawberries, and raspberries, flowers, and rose-trees. This situation is in the northern latitude of 59 degrees, and 50 minutes; where the bank of the river rises to a considerable height, and is shaded over with fir, birch, and alder-trees; and we there saw tracts of arable land, together with some meadows; and observed that the river flowed to the north, and then to the east. We saw several fishermen in this place, and afterward passed by the island of *Jedo*, in which is a small church, and we arrived in the evening at the city of *Todma*, at the conflux of the rivers *Suchana* and *Todma*. I drew the prospect of this city to the south-west, as it appears in plate 247. It is situated on an eminence near the river, and in the northern

*His arrival at Todma.*

latitude of 60 degrees and 14 minutes. It is small, and must be ranked among those of the meaner class; and all the buildings are of wood. The distance from hence to *Oustiough*, is computed at two hundred and fifty *werstes*. Near this city is a large mill, built in the Dutch manner, except only that it has but two sails, which were partly broken. At the distance of eight *werstes* above the city, we saw several large stones in the river, and they rose above the surface of the water, but most of them are visible only in the month of July, when the stream is low; but it was then two good fathoms in depth to our right. Several green tracts of land appeared in the middle of the river, but the southern side is always navigable, and the channel is a hundred and fifty paces broad in several places. On the twentieth we came about noon to *Stare Todma*, which signifies *Old Todma*; and this is the spot where it was begun to be rebuilt thirty years ago, but the work was not continued, and it was built in the place where it now stands. I could easily read here at midnight, without a candle; whereas when I left *Wologda*, there was no travelling later than ten at night. We passed on the 21st by *Apocke*, which is a large town, situated on each side of the river, and there is a fine church in it, with a steeple and domes covered with tin. The soil of the country around it is fertile, and produces corn: It likewise presents the eye with very delightful views. People were







OUEST-TODMA.



VUE SUR LA RIVIERE-DWITNA.



GROTE DE LA MONTAGNE D'ALBAYRE.



LE MONTAGNE ORLES.









1708. were here employed in conveying wood to the bank, where several lime-kilns are erected. This part of the country is full of villages; the land likewise is very low, and abounds with corn. The river produces plenty of fish, and is a good *werste* in breadth. About eight in the evening we passed by the monastery of *Dereefne*, which is built of wood, and inclosed with a wall of the same substance. From hence we could see the city of *Oest-joega*, or *Oustjough*, which makes a very considerable appearance in that quarter, and we arrived thither in the space of an hour. This city is five hundred *werstes* from *Archangel*, and has ten or twelve churches, all built of white stone, except the domes, two of which are cover'd with tin, as are likewise the little steeples. All the other churches, together with the houses, are built of wood, and the archiepiscopal palace, where the archbishop resides, is a large structure: The greatest part of the city is seated on the left side of the river, and there is a stone church, and two of wood, in that part of it which is on the other side. That on the left extends along the river in the form of a half moon: It is a good league in length, and a quarter of a league in breadth, in some places, and the breadth of the river is equal to a *werste*. After one has passed by the city, the river turns to the south-east, and the land lies low. The monastery of *Troyts* is not above half a league south-east from this flexure of the stream. The river *Jog*, or *Jugh*, flows southward into the *Niejna-segna*, or *Sachana*; and their united streams are then called the *Dwina*, which signifies junction. The city therefore is seated at the extremity of the *Sachana*, the outlet of the *Jog*, and the mouth of the *Dwina*; and in the northern latitude of 63 degrees, and 15 minutes. The *Jog* flows from the city of *Glicenoy*, which is forty *werstes* from this place.

The merchants in this city are very numerous, and great quantities

Vol. II.

of grain are transported from hence to all parts. I drew at midnight, and on the side of the monastery of *Troyts*, a prospect of the city, which is exhibited in plate 248. The letter A shews the first opening of the *Dwina*; B the outlet of the *Jog*; C the course of the *Sachana*; D, the monastery of *Troyts*; E, the city, before which is an island, and the continent is seen to the right and left. The *Dwina* is a league in breadth, at the city, and to the distance of a league beyond it, after which it contracts itself into the breadth of a hundred paces, but gradually enlarges its channel half a league lower.

On the 22d we continued our voyage to the north-east, and passed by a village called *Czar Constantine*, and likewise by several others, and also some islands, and the monastery of St. *Nicholas*. The land is low, and extremely agreeable. When we had advanced thirty *werstes* from the city, we went to see the salt-works of the *Geest*, or officer of the customs, whose name was *Waheli Greetin*. They are not far from the river, and consist of four pits, in each of which are placed several trunks of trees hollowed through their whole length, and strongly compacted together with cords. They rise twelve feet above the surface of the earth, and are likewise sunk to the depth of twenty seven fathoms below it. The water ascends through them to the surface, from whence it is conveyed by pipes, to places appointed for its reception, and each pit is enclosed with a wooden building. I caused one of them to be opened, in order to taste the water, which was extremely salt; and these four pits afford as much water as would fill twenty salt-pans, though there were but six in this place, and only one was used at that time. These salt-pans are likewise in separate lodges, in the middle of which is a large stove, and a great fire is kindled in it, when the salt is worked. The pans are square, and made of iron; they have likewise a circumference of sixty feet, and are a foot and a half

C c c

in



1708. in depth. The water is constantly boiling, for the space of sixty hours, in order to extract the salt, and when the water evaporates too fast in boiling, the pans are from time to time replenished with more. Each of them produce four *poet* of salt, which are equal to 1333 pounds. The salt-pan is raised over the stove, by means of large poles, and iron hooks, fastened to the beams of the lodge. The usual price for a *poet* of salt is two pence, but they sometimes pay three at *Archangel*. The *Czar* has for some time entirely appropriated all the salt works to himself.

As we continued our voyage, we passed by several villages, as likewise a large bank of sand, and an island two *werstes* in length, and full of trees. From thence we advanced to the north, and came to the river *Wietjeda*, which is said to have its source in *Siberia*, and it discharges itself into the *Dwina*, at a place where they are equal in breadth, the distance from shore to shore, both of the one and the other being a good half league. These united rivers form, at the distance of half a league from their conflux, a kind of basin, in the land to the south, and it there receives the name of *Oser*, or the *Lake*. It extends from the north to the west, and to the northwest. There is likewise a little island in this part of the river, which is there two fathoms and a half in depth. The stream is rapid, and the banks are bordered with villages.

We proceeded, on the 23d, as far as the town of *Peremogora*, which has two small churches, and is seated on an eminence along the river. The little river *Levse* flows by it, and extends itself ten *werstes* up the country. The eye has here an unbounded view of the *Dwina*, which deflects into a number of windings in this place, and forms several gulphs like half-moons, and a *werste* in breadth. This prospect is represented in plate 249, and several banks of sand are to be seen in that part of its channel. As we proceeded to the

1708. north-west, we every moment saw villages, situated in a beautiful country full of trees. The river is here very broad; it likewise forms some islands, and is two fathoms and a half in depth. On the 24th we saw a fine church, with a dome covered with tin, in a little village, about half the way from *Oustjoug* to *Archangel*, and in the northern latitude of 63 degrees, and 10 minutes. We here saw a ship which had run a-ground, and several islands full of trees. We likewise had a view to the left of the little river *Pende*, which is very deep, and flows above forty *werstes* up the country.

On the 27th we found the shore very high and stony, and approached the mountains of *Alabaster*, which are to the left of those who advance northward, and we landed, in order to see them. The inhabitants of the country call them *Pisfoertje*, which signifies ovens, and the cavities from whence they derive that name, are so many subterranean grots formed by nature in a surprising manner. The principal entrance into them is by columns shaped out of the rock in the form of pilasters, and there are several windings which lead into little grots. I advanced with a candle above a hundred paces, in one of the largest of them, and the natives pretend that it extends above thirty *werstes* in length, though some among them are of a different opinion. I was very desirous of proceeding farther, but the ground was too muddy. The openings into these subterranean passages resemble gates; and I drew a part of them, together with a distant view of the river, in the manner they are exhibited in plates 250 and 251, where I have represented two vaulted openings, that one would imagine were supported by pilasters, between which a vessel is seen on the river, and the bank on the other side. There are other passages to the right and left, and several small grottos, of no considerable length. The stones which compose them are as white as *Alabaster*, but



1708. but not so hard, and they are employed in very agreeable works. I preserved a piece of one, as well as of the rock above it. This place is about 150 *werstes* from *Archangel*, and the mountains, which comprehend a league in extent, may be seen for the space of two hours, along the river, but there are no grottos beyond this place. The upper part of them is shaded with a growth of trees, and a large tract of arable land lies all around them.

After we passed by these mountains, a great storm drove us to land; but we afterward advanced to the north-west, and the river through our whole course was a *werste* in breadth. We proceeded on the 26th to the north-east, with a contrary wind, and were towed along very slowly. Toward the evening we passed by *Stroepina*, which is a large town full of houses; it has likewise a church with a steeple, and all the adjacent land is admirable. We came soon after to the mountain of *Orleet*, which rose to our left; and several hundred persons were employed in hewing out stones, and preparing them for the castle of *New Dwinko*, which is near *Archangel*; and to which they were to be conveyed in five vessels which were made for that purpose. At a small distance from this mountain is a little village, and some houses on the other side of the river, where lime is made. When we had advanced so far, we proceeded to the north, but the mountain which is very lofty, and juts out into a point, turns the course of the river to the east, and from thence to the north-west. The channel is not above fifty paces broad in this part.

The mountain I have now mentioned is represented in plate 252. The stones which are ranged on the side of it resemble a building; its top is covered with trees, and around it lies a tract of arable land. The river enlarges its channel, as one advances forward, and several other mountains of stone are there to be seen.

We came, about eight, to a *Cabak* \*, 1708. which had been lately robbed by a ship's crew, whose vessel lay by it, and they had been very inhuman to the people of the house, one of whom, who was a man, we saw breathing his last. The bad weather obliged us to anchor there all night.

We continued our voyage on the 27th, to the north-east, and passed by a great bank of sand, and a timber-yard which belonged to two *Russian* merchants, who build a great number of vessels there, and have a fine country house, ornamented with five little towers beautifully painted. We there saw a large number of villages on our right and left, and some islands that are inhabited. The nearer we came to *Archangel*, the longer the *werstes* proved.

We saw the city of *Kalmogora*, about eleven, at the distance of a league and a half from us, and beyond the islands. Some time after we had a view of the monastery of *Nowoy-Preloetkey*, which is built of stone, and on one side of it there are houses on a mountain. The land rises high, and the river of *Kalmogora*, which flows behind the island, discharges its streams into the *Dwina*. On the 28th we saw some small rivers, and several villages, at the distance of ten *werstes* from *Archangel*, and had afterward a prospect of the monastery of *St. Michael*, whose church is built of stone. From thence we continued our course till we arrived at the city.

It is situated in the northern latitude of 64 degrees, and 22 minutes; and there were at that time twenty-two vessels in the road; namely thirteen *Dutch*, three *English*, five *Danish*, and one from *Hambourg*; but the next day two other *English* ships arrived there.

On the 9th of *July*, the festival which bears the name of his *Czarian* majesty, was celebrated, and prince *Gallitzin*, who was then governor of the city, entertained all the foreign merchants, with a number of other persons,

The mountain of Orleet.

The arrival of the vessels at Archangel.



1708. persons, at the castle of *New Dwinsk*. Several vessels arrived here in a few days.

I was informed at *Archangel*, that the *Blew-Sea-Horse*, a Dutch ship, which had set out from thence on the 8th of *October*, 1707, with a convoy, having sprung a leak, the master was obliged to go in his sloop on board the *Campen* man of war, which was commanded by captain *Van Buren*, in order to desire assistance, and that while he was making this application, a strong gale happening to rise, the master could not return to his own ship. His men therefore despairing to see him any more, had taken a resolution to sail in quest of some port along the coast; and after they had wandered in this condition, till the 3d of *November*, they approached the isles of *Sweetenoes*, where they cast anchor the next day, having toiled beyond expression, to keep the ship above water, by working continually at the pump, but they at last dragged the vessel to land, where they passed the winter season; and their provisions having failed them at the end of five weeks, during which time they had not seen any living creature, they had subsisted for three months on nothing but millet and tallow: While they were reduced to this extremity, they saw some *Laplanders* arrive in sledges, but could not unfold their condition to them, since they were unacquainted with their language; and not finding any wood, they were obliged to use the planks of their ships for fuel, and drank nothing in all that time, but snow water; they, however, had saved what they could of their cargo, which chiefly consisted of leather; but after they had continued in this condition till the twelfth of *May*, ten of them resolved to risque a voyage to *Archangel* in a skiff; but having advanced as far as the river of *Pennoy*, they were stopped eight days

by the ice, and did not arrive at *Archangel* till the third of *June*, having lost three of their companions in their voyage: It was added, that these unhappy persons, had, however, been so fortunate as to receive from time to time, fresh fish from the *Laplanders*, and made their millet serve for bread, till at last seven Dutch ships having arrived on the bank of the isles of *Sweetenoes*, the pilot of the vessel which had been wrecked, sent part of the cargo he had saved, and seven sailors to *Archangel*, while he himself remained in the island, with two of the ship's crew, to wait for new orders, till at last the men he had sent away, having returned with twenty *Russians*, the rest of the cargo was dried, and all of them then came to *Archangel*. I had all these particulars from the pilot himself, whom I invited to my lodgings, in order to be informed of the truth.

In this city was a *Russian*, sixty-six years of age, and he passed for a saint among his countrymen. He had been married, but quitted his wife, in order to run naked up and down the country, between this city and *Wologda*, and he frequently came to the market, and even entered the churches. He seemed very ignorant, and even destitute of tolerable sense; notwithstanding which, I am persuaded that his whole intention was to procure himself a livelihood by acting the saint, and indeed he did not succeed amiss. He sometimes wore a small cincture of net-work round his loins, but frequently went without any covering at all, and in this manner wandered about the country in winter, as well as summer. One of my friends brought him to my lodging, and I painted him just as he then appeared. He promised to come to me a second time, but was not punctual to his word, and all my endeavours to procure another visit from him were ineffectual; at which I was not a little surprised, since I had been very liberal

Archangel  
by ship  
wreck.

1708.

Alkussian  
saint.





ANIMAL BOEN-DOESKIE.







1708. heral to him. His hair and beard were matted into long twists, for he never made use of a comb. The reader will find him represented in plate 253.

A Russian animal.

I had several little animals, called *Boon-dassie*, brought to me, and I bought them, with an intention to bring them to *Holland*, but could preserve none but the oldest among them. These creatures resemble Squirrels; but they are smaller, and have a grey skin marked with brown spots. They are extremely fond of raspberries, and will likewise eat bread, and crack nuts in a very agreeable manner, having long pointed teeth.

On the 25th a *Dutch* ship arrived, with a *French* Passport, and I was resolved to finish my voyage on board that vessel.

I went on the 13th of *August*, to congratulate the governor on the good news he had then received of the defeat of some rebels, who intended to surprise the fortress of *Asoph*; but the governor of that city having routed and dispersed them,

they seized *Bolowien*, their own chief, who slew himself, upon which they surrendered at discretion, and brought his head to the governor.

Some days after, I made my application to prince *Gallitzin*, for leave to ship my baggage without having it searched, and he was pleased to grant my request in a very obliging manner; giving me at the same time a writing under his own hand, to prevent my being exposed to that inconvenience at *New Dwinka*.

This prince is a gentleman of politeness and merit, and much esteemed by strangers. He was formerly ambassador at the *Imperial* court, and readily came into all the manners of it. He likewise understands *Latin* and *High-Dutch* extremely well.

Before I set out from this place, news came of the victory obtained by the allies over the *French* at *Oudenard*, and it was confirmed by some transport ships, which occasioned an universal joy.

## CHAP. XC.

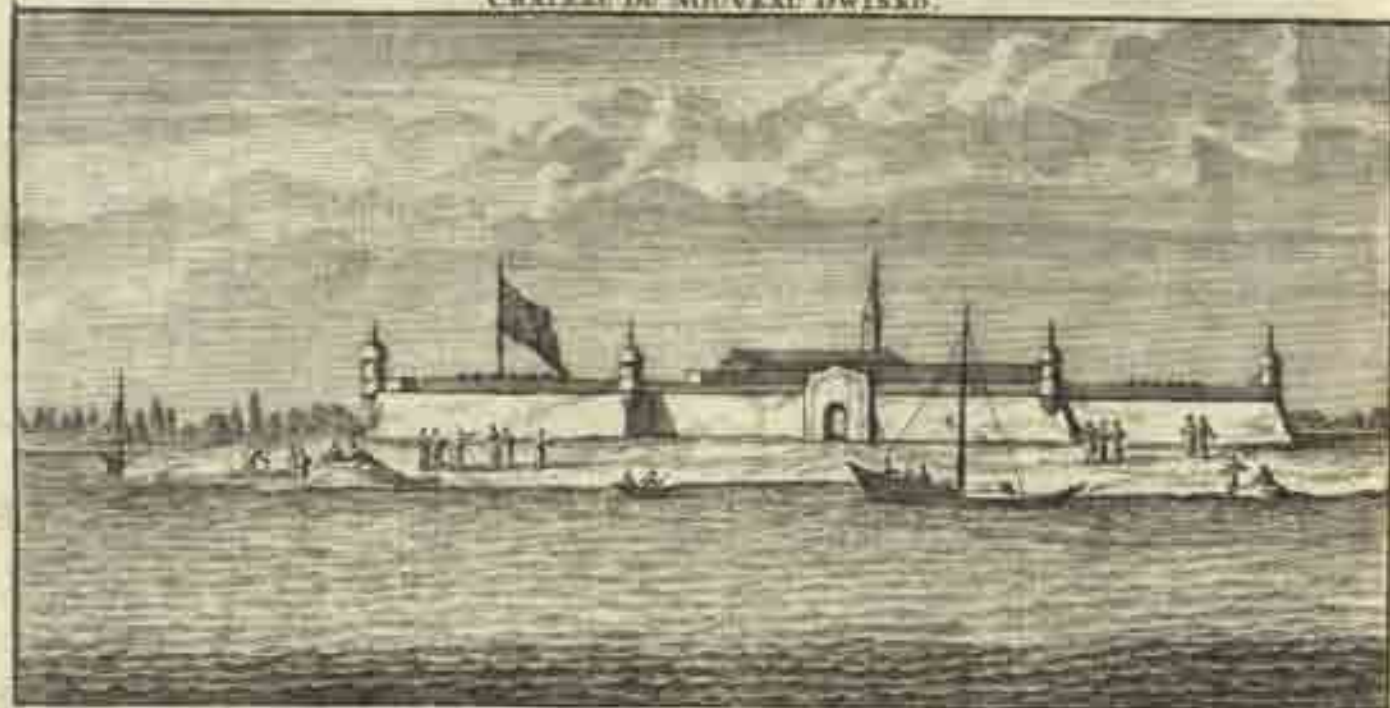
*The author's departure from Archangel. The castle of New-Dwinko. The mountain of Poots-fioert. The northern cape. The islands of Inga and Surooy. The author arrives at Amsterdam and the Hague. The Conclusion.*

The author sets out from Archangel.

ON the twenty third of *August*, I went on board the vessel in which I was to sail to *Holland*, and we came in a short time to the castle of *New Dwinko*, where we cast anchor, while our passports were examined, and till we had obtained a licence to proceed on our voyage. About three the flag was hoisted on the castle, which is the usual signal for vessels to depart. There is a wooden bridge over the river, and

likewise a draw-bridge, under which two ships may pass at a time. I drew the castle as it appears in the following plate.

We were detained here by contrary winds, till the twenty sixth, and then cast anchor on the side of three *Russian* men of war, of twelve and eighteen guns. On the 27th three others came up with us; and the next day we saw a fleet of about 150 merchant-men, with a convoy of



nine men of war, five of which were *English*, three *Dutch*, and one *Hamburger*. The fleet consisted of sixty-eight *English* ships, fifty *Dutch*, eighteen *Hamburgers*, three *Danish*, and one *Muscovite*, which last came from the *Isle of Bears*, laden with whale blubber. She had met with good success in her voyage, and both the master and pilot were *Dutchmen*. This fleet employed the whole day in passing by us in a line, which formed a very agreeable view, and such perhaps as had never been seen before in this part of the world. What appeared most surprising to us was, that this fleet entered the river without taking one pilot to assist them.

Among this fleet was a *Danish* ship of twenty guns, and a flag on her main mast; and it had on board Monsieur *Isneybof*, who had formerly been at the court of *Denmark*, in the quality of ambassador from *Muscovy*. This minister immediately landed with all his train; and Madam *de Duigerocke*, whose husband had lately succeeded Monsieur *Isneybof* at the *Danish* court, embarked in the same vessel, in order to proceed to *Copenhagen*, where

her spouse then was. This ship then lay at anchor in the outlet of the river, that she might not be obliged to strike her colours, which could not have been avoided if she had advanced farther. There were some ships indeed which attempted to pass without performing this ceremonial; but the *Czar's* ships fired upon them twenty cannon loaded with ball, which obliged them to comply, and they were likewise compelled to pay above fifty florins for each shot; after which they all anchored before *New Dwinko*.

We advanced on the 30th into the *White Sea*, with a south-west wind, and continued our course to the north-west. About noon we doubled the grey cape, but such a thick fog arose, that we lost sight of the ships that accompanied us: But as it happened to grow clear toward the evening, we saw the *Lapontian* shore, which we coasted all night, and the next day, which was the first of *September*. The weather was then extremely fine, but we could not see any trees, houses, or human creatures, on that coast. Our depth of water was then from twenty two to twenty six fathom, and we again

The  
White  
Sea.







CAP DU NORD.



L'ISLE BURGOT.



LES ISLES D'OGG.



LES ISLES NORD ET SUD. ECHOUÉ.







1708. saw nine of our ships behind us. We proceeded in our course the next day, to the north-west, the wind being very strong, and the waves forming a great swell; and we once more lost sight of land, and likewise of the ships which accompanied us. We advanced, about noon, to the northern latitude of 60 degrees, and 50 minutes, near the island of *Kilduin*, which lay to the north-west of us, and is about seventy leagues from *Archangel*. On the fourth we had another view of the land, which had disappeared. It belongs to the crown of *Denmark*, and is inhabited by the *Fin-markers*, who keep on the mountains of *Poots-fiort*, which were covered with snow. They are represented in plate 255, in a distant view of five leagues, and they have a gulph, behind which three or four divisions of those mountains are seen. This gulph was to the south-west of us, and we continued our course to the north-west. In the morning we likewise saw the gulph of *Tanchay*, which advances far up the country, at a point formed by the mountains, and in the manner it appears in plate 256. In a short time after we perceived other land beyond it, in the latitude of 70 degrees and 8 minutes. The wind proving contrary all that day, we stood for the *Ofsing*, and veered about; and the next day had another view of the gulph to south-west and by south. I believe it is at least two leagues in breadth. About evening we came into the latitude of 70 degrees and 30 minutes; and as the wind proved more favourable on the 7th, we had a view of the northern cape. I drew it as it appeared to the south-west and by south of our ship. The largest and most projecting rock of this cape, is called *the Mother*; and the lesser, which rise to the right and left of it, have the name of *the Daughters*. The cape land is seen behind these rocks, together with an opening between them; and the whole is represented in plate 257.

About six in the evening we saw the islands of *Inga* on one side of us, and to the right a small rock called *Schips-bolm*, with the land beyond it, as the prospect appears in plate 258. We then advanced to the south-west, the wind being south-east, and came about seven in the morning within four leagues of the island of *Surovy*, which lay to our left, in the form represented in plate 259.

Amidst a range of mountains is a large gulph or bay, over which vessels may sail, and find an outlet to the left, between the mountains, which are separated from one another. The gulph is distinguished by the letter A, and another is represented at B. The western point of these mountains is marked out by C, and ships may likewise pass between the islands. All the inhabitants of this coast are fishers, and go to *Bergen*, and *Drunthem*, in order to sell their fish. This country likewise belongs to the crown of *Denmark*.

We advanced next to the rocks or islands which are called *the North and South Foels*, or the unknown rocks, and which are not inserted in our maps. They are washed by the sea on all sides, and some of them are entirely covered with snow.

On the 9th we saw a vessel waiting at some distance, to speak with us, but as we had a speaking trumpet, we spoke first, without advancing any nearer. She had hoisted her colours, and we saw she was an *English* frigate from *London*, and she was going with orders to the *English* ships which were then at *Archangel*.

We came, on the 11th, into the northern latitude of 68 degrees and 8 min. and advanced south-west and by west, with a good northerly wind, being then not far from *Loeffort*, which is about 250 leagues from *Archangel*, and at the same distance from *Amsterdam*. The wind having changed in the night, we stood to the *Ofsing*, and came by day-light into the latitude of 69 degrees 9 minutes; and the

1708.

The islands of Inga and Schips-bolm.

A large gulph.

Unknown islands of the North and South Foels.

Loeffort

next



1708. next day into 67 degrees 8 minutes.

*An eclipse  
of the sun.*

On the 14th, at half an hour after seven in the morning, there was a great eclipse of the sun, which was almost entirely darkened for the space of half an hour, and at last was covered by a cloud. We were then in the latitude of 66 degrees 44 minutes, and had a favourable wind. The next day we found ourselves in 65 degrees 55 minutes, with a gentle breeze from the north, and we then steered to south-south-west. During the night an extraordinary phenomenon appeared in the air, and shot out long beams of light to such a degree that all the element seemed to be in flames, and one might easily read without a candle; but this appearance did not continue above the space of two or three minutes.

*An extra-  
ordinary  
phenomen-  
on.*

The next day we had a contrary wind to south-south-west; and it continued with so much violence all the following day, which was the 17th, that we were obliged to fasten our rudder, and commit the ship to the mercy of God, having only our main-sail and mizzen up, during all that and the next day, but the wind slackened in the night, and veered about to the north; upon which we directed our course to the south, and came on the 19th in the latitude of 65 degrees, having been driven back four or five leagues to the north; but after this we had a contrary wind. On the 21st we found ourselves in 64 degrees 14 minutes, and the wind blowing a very strong gale in the evening, we had a violent storm in the night: And as the darkness was very great, the extraordinary agitation of the waves made the sea seem all on fire. This weather still continuing on the 22d, we were once more obliged to fasten the rudder, and were driven back almost ten leagues. On the 26th, we came into 62 degrees 30 minutes, with rainy weather, and the night was as dark as possible. On the 28th we came into 62 degrees 10 minutes, and the next day into 61 degrees 40 minutes.

*An eclipse  
of the  
moon.*

That night there was an eclipse of the moon, which began at half an

hour after eight. The greatest part of its disk was darkened an hour after, and the eclipse ended about eleven. On the last day of the month, the wind shifted to the west, and we steered south-south-west, after having had a contrary wind for fifteen days.

1708.

On the first of October we came into the latitude of 61 degrees 24 minutes, and saw the *Hiland* to south-south-east, and at the distance of seven or eight leagues from our ship, which was then steering south-east and by south. The next day we continued our course to the south, with a westerly wind, having always in view the same land to the south-west, in the latitude of 61 degrees 9 minutes, and we were then about six leagues from the cape. On the 3d we came into 60 degrees 10 minutes, and the next day into 59 degrees 16 minutes, having the wind to the north, and directing our course south and west; and we then saw four sail of ships at some distance from us. We that day caught four cods, in one of which we found a small fish, whose length did not exceed two inches: It had two fins on one of its sides, and a third on its back, with very sharp prickles. It was likewise thick spotted with yellow and white, that glittered like gold and silver. I preserved it, because I had never seen any fish like it. We found ourselves at midnight in the latitude of 58 degrees 10 minutes, steering south-south-west; and about noon the next day in 56 degrees and 30 minutes. Our depth of water during the night was from seventeen to fourteen fathom.

*A little fish  
of an ex-  
traordinary  
species.*

On the 7th in the morning we came to the hether side of the dagger-bank, in thirty fathom water, and favoured with fine weather, and a fair wind. We then passed another land called the *Well*, from whence we saw, about four o'clock, ten or twelve sail, which approached us about eight. They consisted of three men of war, accompanied by a victualling pink, and some galliots, from one of which we learnt that they were going to meet the *India* fleet.



1708. fleet, which was then arrived, and that they had met a *French* privateer the day before. As we advanced in company, we saw a hundred sail at a distance, and likewise the privateer, who had hovered about in the night without daring to come up with us.

We began to see land about eleven, after which we passed by the buoys, and the remains of a ship which had been wrecked the preceding year, near *Helder*; and the next day we entered the *Texel*, from whence we proceeded to *Amsterdam* in nine hours, to the great satisfaction of us all.

I was informed, at my arrival there, that the curiosities I had sent from *Batavia*, came safe thither the preceding year, and that the burgo-master *Witsen*, to whom I have more obligations than I am able to express, had ordered them to be kept in the *India-House*. I likewise found letters here from the governor of the *Indies*, and my other friends; and was informed that the figure I had sent from *Persepolis* was safely arrived. I went from hence to the *Hague*, the place of my nativity, and arrived there the 24th. I was received with great joy by my relations and friends,

who imagined I had been dead, as they had heard from all quarters.

Nothing remains for me now, but *to return thanks to Almighty God, for preserving me by his good providence through the whole course of my travels; in the first of which I employed nineteen years, and seven and a quarter in the second: And for having averted from me the dangers to which travellers are exposed in foreign countries, so very distant, and so little frequented. I ought to testify my gratitude in a peculiar manner on this occasion; since I have experienced all possible civilities, in my various journeys, and have likewise preserved all the curiosities I had collected with so much care, and with no little labour and expence; together with all the plans and designs I have drawn, notwithstanding the oppositions that were thrown in my way. I wish the public may receive this relation of my travels, with as much satisfaction as I experienced in preparing it for the press; since I hope it will be found to contain some particulars worthy of attention; and I may add too, that I have spared no expence, in order to render it agreeable and instructive.*





## R E M A R K S

O F

## CORNELIUS LE BRUYN,

On the PLATES of the Antient

## PALACE of P E R S E P O L I S.

Published by Sir JOHN CHARDIN and Mr. KEMPFER.

SOME Persons of distinction and great learning, having intimated to me, that it would be proper to offer some light to the public, with respect to the difference between the plates which exhibit the stately ruins of the antient palace of *Persepolis*, in the travels of Sir *John Chardin*, and those which I have published on the same subject; I thought it incumbent on me to satisfy the curiosity that has been created on this occasion, and likewise to justify my own proceeding. In order to accomplish this design, I have examined with the utmost exactness whatever has been written and published for a certain time on this subject; as well with relation to those antiquities in general, as to each branch of them in particular; that I might make myself fully acquainted with all that has been advanced, either with inconsideration or solidity, and without reflecting in the least on the reputation of those illustrious travellers whose plates and sentiments differ from mine; or pretending to derogate from their merit and learning in any other particular.

It is not easy to form an accurate judgment of the architecture of these ruins in general; since all the upper

part of the edifice is entirely destroyed, and what remains of that below, are only separate members, which have no communication or connection with each other. A better conception may indeed be formed, with reference to the nature of the capitals, and their ornaments, by those fragments of the columns which are still visible, and I have drawn them in four different points of sight, in order to form a complete capital. As to the pedestals, they are of three sorts; but the difference between them consists chiefly in their foliage, since they are all round, and shaped in the same manner, as is evident by the plates I have here subjoined; in one of which an entire cornice is represented in the same manner as several others are still to be seen, on some of the portals and windows of these celebrated ruins.

I was not inclinable to enlarge on these particulars in the account of my travels, because I always hoped to find some person better skilled in the antient architecture than myself, and intended to take that opportunity of instructing myself, so as to be able to treat of this subject agreeably to the rules of art; but as yet I have not had the good fortune to succeed in my design. However, as I find it

has



has been attempted by others, who have acquitted themselves of that province in a very imperfect manner, by representing things otherwise than they really are, either through their unacquaintedness with such antiquities as these, and their unskilfulness in designing, or else for want of employing a sufficient time on a subject of this nature, or contenting themselves with making inaccurate sketches, which they afterward were unable to correct; or lastly, because they employed some mercenary draughtsmen, as was the case of Sir *John Chardin*, who could not draw himself, as he acknowledges in his writings, and has likewise assured me in conversation. I therefore thought it incumbent on me to point out the mistakes they have committed, and likewise to justify what I have advanced in my preface, with relation to those designers, who not being wrought upon by that solicitude for reputation, which is necessary for the discovery of truth, have committed egregious errors; and likewise with respect to those who pretend they have drawn every thing with their own hand.

In the year 1712, a description of the *Holy Land* was printed at *Amsterdam*, with the name of *John Baptist Metfcher* prefixed to it: But this author had so little regard for truth, that he has inserted the plates of some cities of *Hungary* into his description of *Judea and Palestine*. The plates I mean, are those of *Tokkai* for *Tiberias*, and *Peter Waradin* for *Nazareth*, with several others that I could mention; and he has even presumed to dedicate a work of this nature to no less a master of polite literature than the elector *Palatine*.

I shall now return to my subject, and begin with Sir *John Chardin*, who represents the first prospect of *Persepolis* in plate 52, almost like a platform, which may be taken in at one glance, and is nothing but mere imagination, since the lower part of those ruins are visible only

in the manner I have drawn them. The stair-case of the facade ought not to have been elevated higher than the side-walls, unless it be to the right, where there is an ascent to the columns; and the wall of the facade ought to have but half the height he has assigned it, in proportion to its extent. To this I may add, that most of the columns are out of their place, and he has exhibited five of them with only half their shafts, tho' in reality there is but one that appears in this manner. He has likewise misrepresented one half of the pedestals, as well as the animals which are carved upon the columns; and as the whole seems to appear in a level, the two royal tombs in the rock must consequently be lower than mine, though they are certainly much higher than he has represented them. The mountain likewise slopes abundantly too much in that plate, and those stone coffins which are exhibited on the left, ought to have been disposed at the end of the facade. These I have represented, together with the whole edifice, even to the smallest stone, in plate 117, and exactly in that point of sight in which they appear on the spot.

The fifty third plate in Sir *John Chardin's* work, is defective in the fore-view, where most of the considerable edifices, together with three buildings, and four other structures opposite to those, should have been exhibited. All that appears on the two sides is likewise contrary to truth, and the stones are drawn without any imitation of real antiquity. I must add to, that instead of the four pilasters which are represented near those edifices, there ought to have been but three; and they are not even disposed in their proper situation. One is also wanting at a little distance, and those beyond it have no resemblance to the originals. The same may be said of the last edifice in the back-view; and the inaccuracy is still greater with respect to the structure between that edifice and the columns, not the least remains of any wall



wall being now to be seen. The number of columns likewise in this plate is less by one than it is in the preceding; but he did not forget the five last columns, tho' the first of them to the right is undoubtedly the highest of all; but it is there exhibited with all the faults I have pointed out in plate 119.

The wall of the facade of the edifice, which is represented between the two flights of stairs, in the fifty-fifth plate of Sir *John Chardin's* travels, has more stones by one half in its height, than it ought to have, and they all appear equal, directly contrary to the original, and even to his own description of that structure. Those of the paltiers or perrons, which he has represented like those of the wall, and to the number of 16, ought to have been very different from all the others, this perron being paved with large stones, in the manner I have expressed them in plates 120 and 124, where this stair-case, with its broken steps, and unconnected fragments, are exhibited in their proper appearance, without any addition or diminution.

Sir *John Chardin's* fifty-sixth plate represents two columns in their full dimensions, and they appear with their capitals, as if they had been newly erected, tho' without supporting any architrave; whereas mine are delineated in a very ruinous condition, as may be seen in plate 121, and a large fragment of shapeless stone rests on the tallest of them, entirely agreeable to the original. Those figures likewise of animals which that gentleman has exhibited in the front of the pilasters that rise on the side of these columns, have no resemblance to the originals, with respect either to the bodies and feet, or those ornaments of the head which he has assigned them; the faces being all impaired to such a degree, that they are hardly to be distinguished; as he himself acknowledges in the fifty-fourth page of Vol. IX. The pilasters are likewise represented in their complete dimensions, tho' they all ought

to appear in the manner I have expressed them in the 122d plate of my travels.

The same figures are seen in the 57th plate, with the head and feet projecting from the front of each pilaster, and the rest of the body extending from the side, which is an absolute impossibility, and the effect of mere invention; as are likewise the ornamented heads of men, which are there added. For my own particular, I have been careful to represent them agreeably to the manner in which I found them, and with the wing which is still entire, and surprisingly beautiful; I have likewise added all the ornaments, together with all that is broken and defaced in those animals, and without omitting the three compartments of characters, as they appear in my 123d plate. It is certain that human heads seem to have been fixed on these winged animals, but I thought it sufficient to represent them in the manner they then appeared.

With respect to the figures in Sir *John Chardin's* 58th plate, I shall observe in general, that they are too distant from each other, and that the first of them which appears in the first range, ought to have had neither a collar nor chaplet, with which he has ornamented the breast and shoulders, nor indeed any thing of that nature: The left arm likewise of the second figure ought not to hang down parallel with the body. The fifth figure is represented with a leg in each hand, and the sixth is furnished with two buckets, which are meer invention, and not conformable in the least to the original, where the five figures which follow the first have an entire similitude with each other, and their arms are represented as supporting some particular habit. The dress and bonnets likewise which he has bestowed upon them, are altogether as imaginary as the rest, and all the heads ought to have been represented in a disfigured appearance. The ornament, in the form of a vase, is expressed with the same inaccuracy, as is evident by my



126th plate. The first figure in the second division, distinguished by the letter Q, holds an unknown machine in its hand, instead of a staff; the lower end of which ought to rest on the earth, behind the legs of that figure. The four which follow this are equally defective, and there ought to have been five, all habited in the same manner; for they are very visible, tho' the heads and faces of them are impaired. The fifth should have had a large staff in its hand, instead of that which it is represented as grasping; and the animal that follows it ought to have had a bridle round its muzzle, and not round the horns, as Sir *John Chardin* has been pleased to represent it. The staff likewise which the figure on the side of that animal places on its back, ought to have been much larger than it is: In a word, there are but six human figures in this range, whereas there ought to have been seven.

This gentleman has likewise exhibited seven figures in the third compartment; and the third of those figures is represented with buckers, the fourth with a kind of bottles, and the fifth with the legs of a man; all which are mere fancy: And there ought to have been four figures in habits, which, tho' greatly defaced, are still distinguishable. There likewise ought to have been eight other figures in this division, five of which have large cinctures folded round the body; and the two last, which are on the side of the two goats, and are represented by Sir *John Chardin* with large staves, ought to have clasped their arms about those animals, which have only one horn rising on the forehead, and are very different from those described by him. I may add too, that these figures should have been exhibited in a bending position, and not so high as the others.

Sir *John Chardin* is altogether as inaccurate with respect to the figures of the fourth compartment, where the first of them is represented with an unknown instrument in its hand; instead of which it ought to have

had a large staff. The second likewise should have raised its buckler to the head of the horse that follows it, and whose feet ought to have rested on the earth. I may add too, that the side figure should extend the right foot before the left leg of the horse, whose tail ought to have been represented in an erect position. The three following figures are as ill expressed, and there ought to have been four; the first of which should have held a ring in each hand, and a flow of drapery ought to have been represented on the arms of the other three. The last figure in this division, as exhibited by Sir *John Chardin*, has the legs of a man in its hand; the reason of which is incomprehensible to me, since nothing of that nature was ever seen in the original sculpture. The cinctures likewise, which are folded round the bodies of these figures, are too low, and the ends of them ought to appear.

The same gentleman has represented eight figures in the fifth range, tho' there are but seven in reality, and the third is not to be now distinguished. The drapery likewise is defective, and none but the three last figures ought to have had lances; of which the first, who has likewise a buckler, holds one, and each of the other two grasps three with both hands. The halter of the ox, which is there led in procession, should have been fixed round the muzzle, instead of being fastened to the horns, and the tail ought to have flowed down to the earth, close by one of the legs, and the right leg of the two hinder ones should not appear. In a word, the figure of this animal has no resemblance with the original.

In the sixth or last division, Sir *John Chardin* has represented six figures, the first of which have each of them a quiver slung on the back, and an unknown machine in the hand; all which is mere invention: And indeed there ought to have been seven figures; the first of which,



that leads the next in the train, should have been represented with a staff in its hand, and in a habit very different from that which appears in his plate. It should likewise have been drawn with a cincture, the two ends of which appear in the fore part of the body. The five figures which succeed this ought to have been represented with bucklers, and very short mantles; together with drawers descending to the feet. The fourth and fifth figures should have been expressed with rings in their hands, and the sixth ought to have grasped a trident. After this last, a horse should have followed, led by the bridle by a seventh figure, habited like the rest. The feet likewise of this horse should have rested on the earth, and its mouth ought to have been behind the buckler of the sixth figure.

In the first division of the last range, Sir John Chardin has represented a figure which holds the second by the hand; the third and fourth have little buckets in their hands; the fifth carries some other thing, and there are two others on the side of a horse harnessed to a chariot. This division is to be found exactly under the first compartment of the first range, and at the foot of the staircase, where six figures appear habited alike, in long plaited robes, and each of them grasps a lance with both hands. All of them likewise, except the last, have quivers hanging on their backs. There are some other figures before these, but they are broken and defaced to such a degree, that their number is not to be distinguished: We will therefore proceed to the five compartments that follow, and the reader may compare that which I have just mentioned (and where the horse appears harnessed to a chariot) with the second division of my twelfth range.

In the second division, as exhibited by Sir John Chardin, are six figures, and a horse with one of his feet aloft in the air, which is very different from my representation of

that compartment; the first figure in which ought to have had long and wide sleeves. The hand likewise of that which leads the horse should have rested on the body, and all the feet of the horse ought to have been represented on the earth. I may add too, that the drapery of these figures has no similitude to the original sculpture. The three last figures likewise ought to have had their hands raised higher, and their heads defaced.

Sir John's third division represents nine figures, eight of which are in shaggy habits, which are very extraordinary, and no way agreeable to those that are to be seen at *Persepolis*. The middle figure has something of a peculiar form in its hand, instead of the two buckets with which I have represented it.

His fourth division contains no more than six figures, all habited in the same manner; whereas the first ought to have been different from the others, and should be represented with large sleeves, and a particular kind of bonnet. The others ought to have plaited drawers, falling down to the middle of the leg: The bunches likewise which rise on the back of the camel that follows, are out of their proper place, and too distant from each other: To which I may add, that the muzzle of this animal ought to rest on the head of the last figure.

This gentleman has seven figures in his fifth compartment; but the first of them ought to have been represented with large sleeves, and the second and third with other habits. The scales borne by the third are too flat, and they ought to have hung by no more than two thick cords; instead of which he has allowed them three slender strings. The fourth, which bears a vase in each hand, ought likewise to have been represented with rings. The sixth should grasp its lance with both hands, and the mule ought not to have been led by the bridle. The cinctures likewise of these figures should have been raised higher.

The



The lion and the bull, which are to be seen in the same plate, have no correspondence with the original figures. The bull is there represented with its mouth open, and turned toward the lion. Three of its feet likewise rest on the earth, the other is reared aloft, and the tail seems to lash the hinder legs of the lion. It has likewise two horns on the head; whereas there ought to have been no more than one, and that in the middle of the forehead. The mouth of this animal should have rested on its own body: It ought likewise to have been represented with a large ear, a bridled head, the two hinder legs fixed strongly on the earth, the right behind the left; the left of the forelegs bent in the air, as preparatory to a leap; and it should also have been exhibited as employing its horn in its defence. The fourth leg ought not to appear, the tail likewise should have been disposed between the hinder legs, and the ornaments on its body ought not to have been forgotten. The right leg of the lion should be placed before the left; the tail likewise ought to descend to the ground, with the tip of it turned up; all which particulars are very different from Sir John Chardin's representation of those figures; and he has succeeded as little, with respect to the talons, and the fore leg of the lion. This animal likewise ought to be exhibited, as fixing his fangs on the hinder part of the bull, and not in the middle; the head too, ought to have been represented in a different manner, and he has omitted all the ornaments. The height of the rock which appears behind these animals ought to be less by one half, and as wide again, with a work of foliage on the upper part. Beside all these defects, he has not represented the broken figures which are still visible on the rock of the stair-case, in the manner they are expressed in my plate.

I am apt to imagine, that the figures which appear on the stair-case, at the end of that gentleman's

58th plate, are intended to represent those I mentioned in my observations on the six figures comprehended in his first compartment of the last range; but as I am not able to conceive how he came to be furnished with the twenty nine figures which are there represented, I shall not bestow any observations upon them, but proceed to those of his 59th plate. He has there exhibited forty two figures, among which 28 are represented with lances, and entire in all parts but the head, whereas it is very certain that the originals are greatly impaired, and there is not one entire figure (even among the twenty eight that have lances) whose drapery is distinguishable as high as the neck, nor have they any little bonnets, like those with which he has represented them. But there is not one whose cincture is not visible on the back part of the body, as is evident by those very figures which I have exhibited, with all their defects in plate 127. The fourth figure of those that follow the lance bearers, has neither hands nor buckler. The drapery of the sixth ought to flow down to the feet, and the eleventh should rest its right hand on the buckler of the figure that follows. The fourteenth, and last, of those which Sir John Chardin has exhibited, is habited in a different manner from all those that are to be found at *Persepolis*, whereas its dress ought to correspond with that of the twelfth figure. I have likewise represented fifty figures in that range, though at the same time I have omitted ten, because they were too much disfigured.

Sir John Chardin has represented on one of the columns of his 60th plate, the heads and upper-part of the bodies of two kneeling horses; which is a meer work of imagination. There is indeed a shapeless mass of stone, which seems to represent in part, the four feet and body of a camel, but very obscurely, as I have drawn it on the same column in plate 152. It is likewise evident, by some pieces which



which are fallen down, that this animal had ornaments on the breast. As to the other column, which supports a fragment of stone, I have not seen any with a capital of that nature, nor any which resembles that in the 61st plate of Sir *John Chardin's* work, and which may be seen in the plate I have here annexed.

With respect to the three figures he has given us in plate sixty two, it will be found, by comparing them with mine, in plate one hundred forty three, that the two figures which follow the first, ought not to have the head and shoulders touching each other: They are likewise greatly defaced, and the first figure ought not to have been represented with a staff, though it might possibly have had one in former times; since other figures which resemble this, are still to be found with such at *Persepolis*. The beard of this figure should descend no lower than the breast, which ought to be visible between it, and the sleeves of the figure, and the feet of these figures should rest on the earth.

The 63d plate of Sir *John Chardin's* work, represents a pilaster, which seems to be newly made, and the upper part of it is filled with ornaments, and figures of men and animals. The same pilaster is represented in my 152d plate, exactly as it appears on the spot, and greatly impaired. The figure which appears before that which is represented as sitting, seems to be speaking to it, with a bending position of body, and that which follows it seems to be a man, and not a woman. The seated figures likewise ought to rest against the back of the chair.

His 64th plate represents another pilaster, as perfect as the former, tho' in reality it is greatly impaired, in the manner it appears in my 153d plate, and yet his draughtsman has placed on the side of it, several fragments that have fallen from it. The seated figure ought likewise to rest against the back of the chair;

and the draperies of the other figures are not conformable to the original. A judgment may be formed of the rest, by comparing these two plates together. As I thought this part of the ruins extremely beautiful, I drew one of the largest and most perfect of its pillars, as it appears in my 163d plate. Sir *John Chardin* has omitted the ornament on the upper part of this pillar, and supplied the want of it with a work of foliage, that never appeared on the original.

This gentleman has likewise represented, in his 65th plate, three gladiators encountering as many different animals, and all in the same position; but they have no resemblance to the originals, as any one may judge, who compares them with mine, in plates 130 and 146. Several of these gladiators are to be seen at *Persepolis*; one of them encounters a bull with a single horn, and slabs him with the right hand on one side of the pilaster, and to the left of another. There is likewise another of these gladiators engaging a winged or horned lion, which he seizes by the mane. The last are visible half way down the legs; but the others are buried in the earth up to the knees, in the manner I have described them, together with the animals, and the particular situations of the combatants, from page 14 to page 21. All which I have performed with the greatest exactness.

Sir *John Chardin* has another seated figure in plate 66, which I have likewise represented in its proper attitude, together with the true form of a chair, and footstool, in my 156th plate. Those figures also which this gentleman has added, are exhibited in my 145th plate, exactly conformable to the originals.

We will now proceed to the royal monuments which he has represented in his 67th plate. The lower part of these tombs, as far as the cornice, is too lofty by more than one half; and the upper part, which rests against the natural rock, is as much too low. The figure and the altar



altar which appear on these monuments, are too near the corners, where the heads are disposed, and the lions he has placed below, are less than the real number. A proper judgment may be formed of the whole, by comparing those plates with my 158th, where I have expressed every particular with all possible exactness, even to the minutest stones, which are much impaired, and the small elevation of the rock above the tomb. I have likewise represented in plate 162, the fine head, together with the ornament in form of a column, which appear on the side of this monument; and the supporters of the upper part of the edifice, are exhibited in plate 164. As the second tomb, to the south, is exactly like this, except its being more ruinous, I thought it unnecessary to represent it.

Sir *John Chardin's* 69th plate presents to view the characters impressed on a window, and which are to be seen in my 134th plate; but the first line only of those characters corresponds in part with mine; and indeed they may possibly have been taken from some other window. I am likewise as incapable of refusing those that appear in the middle of that plate, because I am sensible that such characters have been carved in later times, as well as those which I have represented in plates 135, 136.

We will now proceed to the dimensions of the edifice in general, and the particular members of it that are most worthily to be considered. Sir *John Chardin* declares, in the 30th page of his ninth volume, that this august structure presents to view an admirable facade of 1200 feet in length, and 1690 in depth, and that the circumference comprehends 1660 paces, to each of which he allows two feet and a half, or thirty inches. He then adds, that the wall rises to the height of twenty four feet, but that the altitude is not equal in every part. He likewise affirms, that some of the stones are fifty two feet in length, as well

around the stair-case as the wall, and that those of the commonest size, are from thirty to fifty feet in length, and from five to six in height. He assigns to this stair-case an altitude of twenty two feet and some inches, and to each step a breadth of twenty two feet, and a height of something more than two inches; together with a depth of fifteen. He then adds, that this stair-case consists of 103 steps, the lower flight of which contains forty six steps, and the upper fifty seven.

I have assigned to the facade which I have described in page 10, an extent of 600 paces from north to south, and a height of forty four feet, each containing eleven inches; but it is lower in some places. The southern front contains 390 paces, and the wall on that side rises to the height of eighteen feet and seven inches; but is less by some feet in several places. The northern length contains 410 feet, with a height of twenty one, but this is not equal in all parts. Beside these 410 paces, there are thirty more toward the slope of the mountain, and from thence another part of the wall is continued to the mountain itself. If we add to this the extent to the east, along the mountain, which comprehends as many paces as the facade, namely, 600, this edifice will have a circumference of 2030 paces, equal to 5050 feet. And I found, on the upper part of the edifice, that the distance from the middle of the facade to the mountain, was exactly 400 paces.

On the parapet, which extends along the three sides of this structure, is a pavement composed of two stones eight feet in extent: But some of them are from eight to nine, and ten feet in length. Others are six in breadth, and some less. The principal stair-case is not placed in the middle of the facade, but toward the northern end, which is 165 paces from thence, and the southern extremity is at the distance of 435 paces from this stair-case. The tract of ground, between the two flights



of the stair-case, is but forty two feet in extent, and contains a depth of twenty five feet and seven inches to the wall, the stair-case possessing all the rest. The inequality in the length of these steps does not exceed five inches, which are inserted into the exterior stones, which extend to the side facade, and are of an equal length. These steps are but four inches high, and fourteen in depth. The northern flight contains fifty five steps; but that which winds off to the south has fifty three, which are more ruinous than the rest. We may reasonably suppose that a length of time has buried several of these steps, with part of the wall, under the earth.

When the first flight of the stair-case has been ascended, one sees a perron, fifty one feet and four inches in breadth, and paved with very large stones; there are likewise two other flights, each containing forty eight steps; so that there are 103 steps to the north, and 101 to the south. Here is likewise a second perron, which contains twenty five feet in breadth, and is also covered with large stones, some of which are from thirteen to fourteen feet in length, and from seven to eight in breadth. Some are likewise square, others long and narrow, and some very small. This pavement extends thirty two feet along the facade, and the stones which compose it are joined together with exquisite art. The rest of the ground in this part of the structure is very compact, and the facade rises to the height of thirty six feet between the flights.

Sir *Jelm Chardin* declares, in the 73d page of the 9th volume, that the columns which are nearest to each other, are separated by a distance of 25 feet; and that a space of fifty feet lies between those which are most remote from one another; each foot consisting of twelve inches. He likewise counts twelve ranges of ten columns, and adds, that *Figueras* imagined there were but six ranges, with no more than eight columns in each range; from whence he concludes that there must be a

mistake in the figures, since he himself counted three ranks, with ten columns in each.

These columns begin at the distance of twenty two feet and two inches from the stair-case where the figures appear, and they consist of two ranges, each containing six columns; of which there is but one remaining. Eight pedestals, however, are yet to be seen, together with the cavities of earth in which three others were inserted. They were disposed along the wall of the stair-case, and at the same distance from one another, as the first is from that stair-case. There are likewise six other ranges of six columns each, at the distance of seventy two feet and eight inches from the former, and their space of intercolumniation is equal to twenty two feet and two inches. There are but seven of them standing, but all the bases, tho' ruinous, are still in their places. One of these seven columns is in the first, and another in the second range; the third has two; and there is one in each of the others. Eastward from hence, and at the distance of seventy one feet, were two other ranks of six columns each, toward the mountains; but four are all that are standing at present; there are likewise five ruinous bases, and the cavities of the rest are still visible. It seemed evident to me, that these, which I frequently measured, were opposite to the twelve which were disposed along the facade, as I have described them in page 13. I was likewise careful to examine every place where it was visible that columns had formerly stood, and I found that their number amounted in the whole to 205. I was altogether as industrious, with regard to the figures, whose height I also measured. The largest of these appears only in part above the earth. The head is two feet and seven inches in height, and the hand, which holds the lance, is ten inches in breadth. There are other figures ten feet high, and some but seven feet five inches. Others correspond with nature in their dimensions.

Some

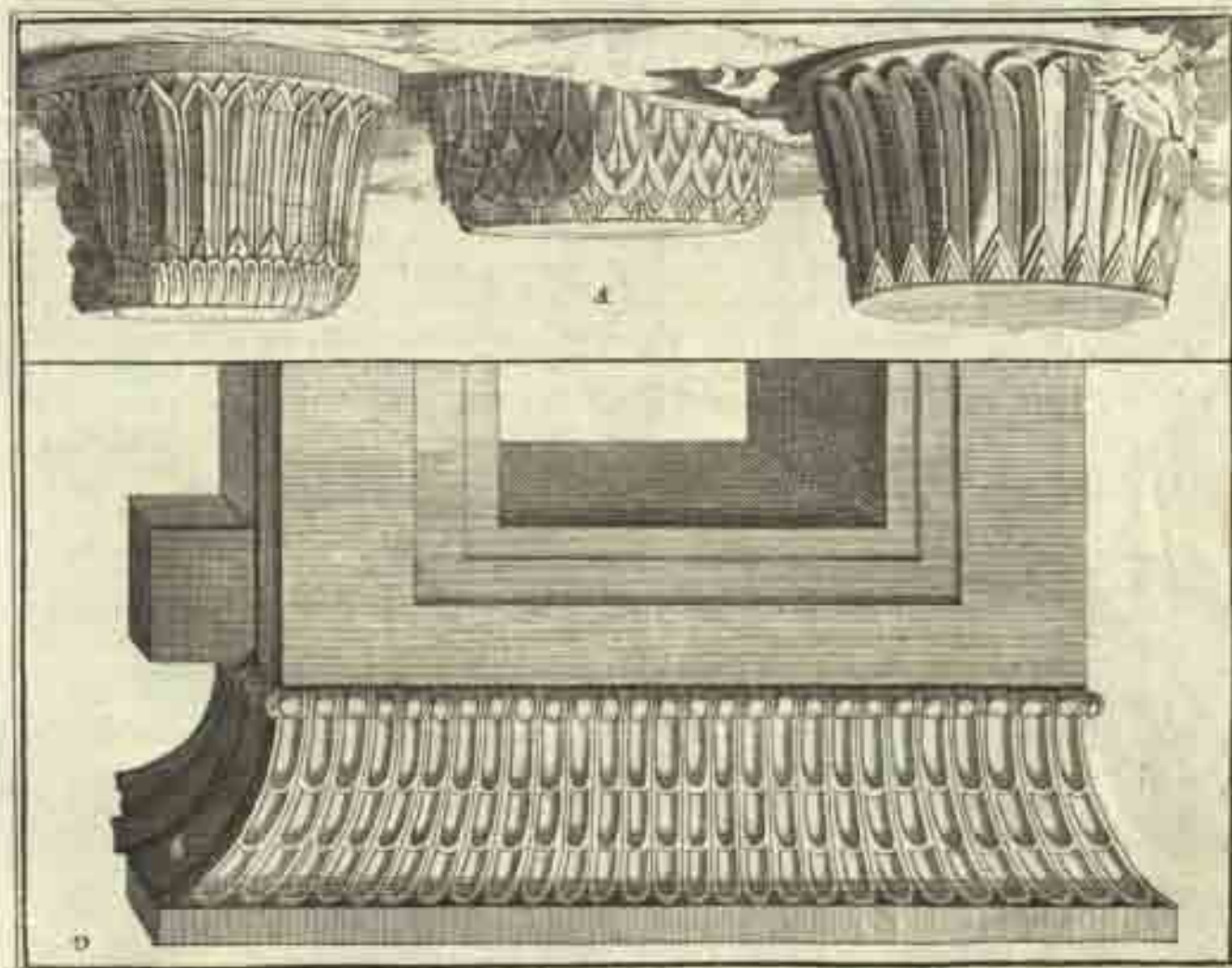


Some are higher by two feet, and others are not so tall as a human body. The figures on the side of the stair-case are but two feet and nine inches high; and those on the stair-case itself have much the same dimensions. That which I brought away with me is but one foot nine inches and a half in height. There are some which are but two feet high, and others no more than one foot and a half. The number of those figures, including human and animal forms, amounts to 1300, as I have already observed page 29.

All these columns are fluted in the same manner; the shafts of some consist of three pieces, and others have four, exclusive of the capital, which is composed of five different pieces, and of an unknown order, which differs in every particular from the other five. The greatest dissimilitude between the columns is, that

some have capitals, and others are without them. Their height is almost equal, their elevation varying only from seventy to seventy two feet, including the capital, which constitutes about a third part; and they are seventeen feet and seven inches in circumference. Those, however, must be excepted which are on the side of the portals, and are but fifty four feet in height, with a circumference of fourteen feet and two inches. All the pedestals are round, and comprehend twenty four feet and five inches in their circumference; but the lower moulding exceeds it by a foot and five inches. They are four feet and three inches in height, and have three sorts of ornaments.

The four ruinous capitals, which have already been mentioned, are represented, with their ornaments, in the following plate; and they are





marked with the letters A, B, C, D. The last is that of the column which is most entire, and is on the side of the two portals. On three of these capitals are large shapeless stones, which originally represented animals, but no certain judgment can be formed of them at present. The letter E represents a complete capital, composed of the other four. The three pedestals which appear at the letter F, are drawn with the greatest exactness from the originals. G represents the cornice of one of the portals.

I likewise found a fragment of a column that was not fluted, and it differed from all the others. It was twenty feet in circumference, and twelve feet four inches high; and we may conclude from hence, that there formerly were other columns like this.

It remains that I speak of the tombs of *Naxi Rustan*, which Sir *John Chardin* has represented in his 74th plate: And I must observe, in the first place, that the disposition of the whole is very defective, and cannot be all seen at the same time in that manner, especially the two equestrian figures, with the ring, and that which projects from the middle of the rock. He has likewise placed them to the east, instead of the west, and at the distance of 330 paces from the tombs; but they are not to be seen so far off. I may add too, that the figures, among which is that which projects from the rock, ought to be much lower than those which hold the ring; and instead of eight of those figures there should have been but seven. Three of them are on the right, and two on the left of the figure which rises from the rock; but those five, which are behind the wall, as I observed in page 33, ought to be visible no farther than the breast. The seventh of these figures, which has the hands crossed upon the body, is on this side of the wall, to the right.

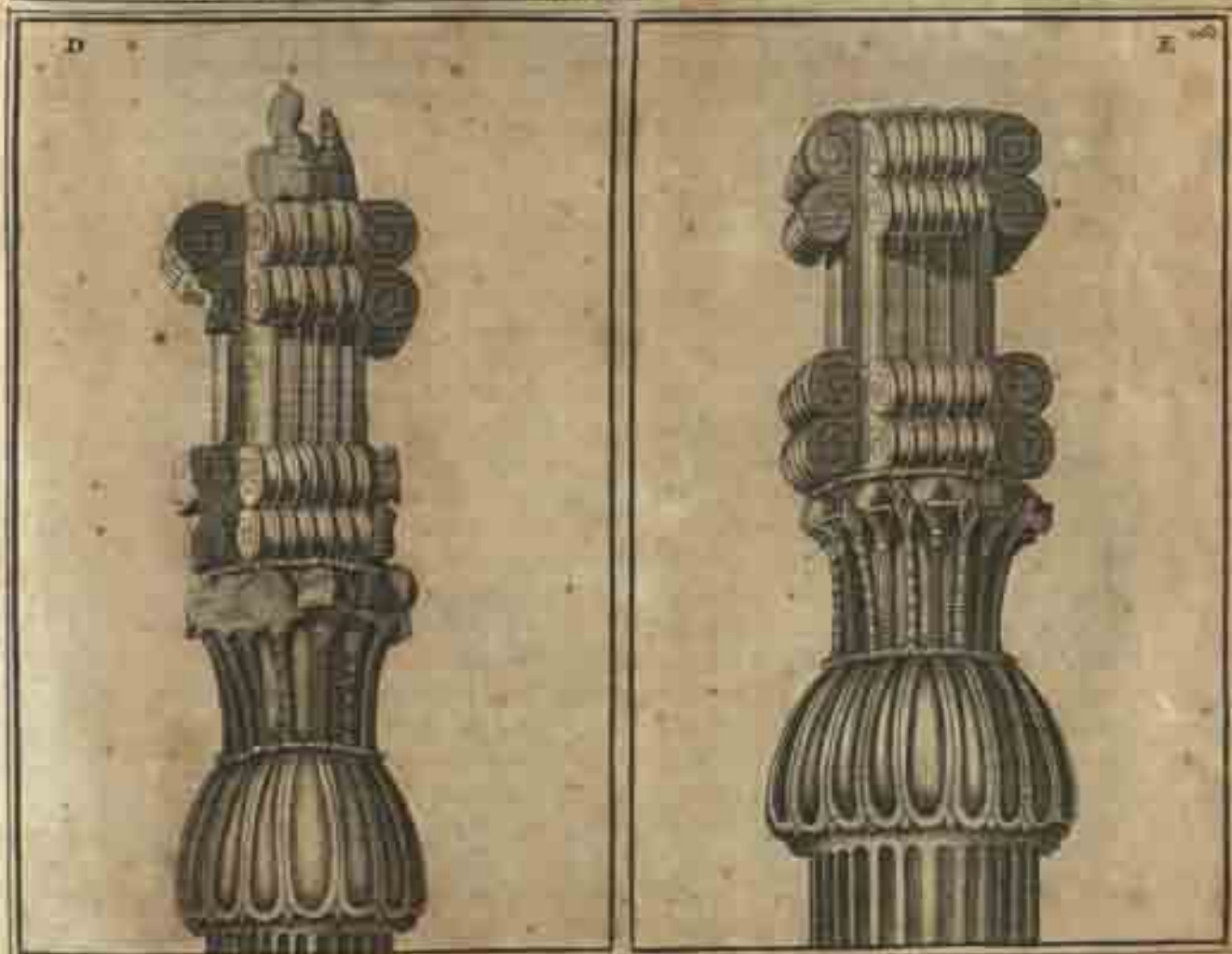
The square edifice, which Sir *John Chardin* places beyond the last

tomb, ought to front the first, and should likewise have been exhibited with all the numerous and different apertures, with which I have represented it in plate 166. I have expressed the true structure of one of these monuments, in plate 167. As to those four representations which Sir *John Chardin* has placed below the tombs, they are meer invention; and a judgment may be formed of them, by comparing them with mine, in plates 168, 169, and with my representation of the two equestrian figures with the ring in plate 170.

In the year 1712 another book of travels was published in *Latin* by Monsieur *Engelbert Kempfer*, and this work contains some plates of *Naxi Rustan*, and *Persepolis*, which I have carefully examined, in order to discover their defects, with the same liberty as I have taken, and the same exactness I have observed, with respect to those of Sir *John Chardin*. The author of these travels declares, indeed, in his preface, that beside the various difficulties he had to surmount, previous to the publication of his book, nothing created him greater uneasiness than the ignorance of the engravers, who succeeded very ill in copying in little, those original designs, which he drew on the spot with all possible exactness; and he adds, that if those plates were not absolutely necessary for the illustration of several things, he would not have inserted them in his work; to which he declares they are a disgrace.

The first of those plates, in page 107, represents the royal tombs, but is extremely confused, and differs from the original in many particulars.

The second, in page 109, represents two equestrian figures, holding a ring, and under the horses feet are the heads of two giants; which the author pretends were two conquered princes, and that their bodies are covered with earth. I, for my part, did not discover any thing of this nature; nor can I comprehend, why the bodies should be covered







covered with earth, when the horses which appear in the same place are altogether entire. Monsieur *Kempfer* has likewise given these figures a drapery, and head-dress, which have no conformity with the originals; and the horses, whose feet are not seen, are very different from mine in plate 170. To this I may add, that only one of his figures holds the ring; for the others do but touch it.

His third plate, page 311, exhibits eleven figures to view, whereas there ought to have been but seven, namely, three on the right, and two on the left of that figure which projects from the rock: the five which are behind the wall ought to appear no farther than the breast; and the 7th figure should have been without the wall, to the right; and it ought not to have had two faces, like a *Janus*. The author imagines, that this 7th figure has been added in later times, by way of derision, because, says he, the nose is of a monstrous length, and there is no true proportion in any part of the figure. For my part, I could never observe any such difference between that and the other figures.

His fourth plate, page 313, represents one of the tombs of *Naxi Ruffan*, ornamented on the two sides with figures from the top to the bottom; but which certainly ought not to be there, as is evident by my 167th plate. The tombs of *Persepolis* are decorated in this manner, but they are not hewn out so high in the rock, as appears by my representation of the whole in plate 158. The rock likewise ought to be plain, and not wrought into ornaments like a work of tapestry.

The fifth, sixth, and seventh plates are wanting in Mr. *Kempfer's* book; but his 8th, page 318, represents two figures with lances, altogether undecayed, together with little ornaments in form of a cross, on their bonnets. For my part, I found them in a very ruinous condition, and I have accordingly described them in this manner. I, however,

thought I could distinguish them to be figures fighting on horseback.

I believe that what this author has represented in his 319th page, may be intended for that which is exhibited in my 168th plate: But his draught is too defective to deserve a particular enumeration of its errors. His tenth plate is also unintelligible; and the eleventh, in which three figures are represented, is not worth refuting. The reader may consult my 169th plate, where the crowned heads, which he has represented on the earth, are not to be found; but the real form of those figures, together with their habits, and what they wear on their heads, are exhibited with great exactness.

Mr. *Kempfer* represents in his 14th plate, page 323, the square edifice, which is to be seen, with all its apertures, in my 166th plate. But instead of refuting all the defects he has introduced, I shall only say in general, that he has exhibited several Things which are not to be found upon the spot, and has omitted others which are really there.

Having thus taken a survey of the tombs of *Naxi Ruffan*, with this author, we will now accompany him to *Persepolis*. He represents in page 324, the first point of view of this palace, which is exhibited in my 117th plate, where all the columns are rightly placed, and those that are most distant are not so high as the nearest. The broken column appears distinctly there, as well as the storks nests, which are to be seen on some of the columns: The true height and form of the portals are expressed, as are likewise those which are near the two columns. The two monuments which he has represented are at too great a distance from one another, and raised too high in the rock. Their elevation should not exceed that of the columns, and the rock itself ought not to be so high as he has shewn it. The earth which separates the two flights of the stair-case, and the descent from the wall, are visible in my plate.



The second point of sight is likewise represented in the 334th page of Mr. *Kempfer's* work, but the first part of the edifices ought to have been larger: The portals are too near one another; and the ruins to the left have no resemblance to those on the spot. The highest edifice has too many large portals like one another, and he has omitted the raised stone of one of the pilasters, together with several other ruins. The greatest part of the wall to the right is destroyed, and the tract of ground which leads to that edifice ought to appear. His stair-case agrees as little with the original, and it ought to appear as I have represented it in plate 150; but the whole plan of our author is too small, and likewise too deep in perspective. The curtain which appears between the facade and the columns, is too square, and he has introduced too many entire portals. The columns are at too great a distance from one another, and likewise too regular, and the number of pedestals is too great. The stone cistern is much larger than it ought to appear, and it should not be on the side of the wall next the columns, but nearer to the portals, the two columns of which are represented higher than their real elevation: For the first portal ought to be thirty nine feet in height, and the columns are but fifty four. The storks nest, which he has placed on one of the columns, is abundantly too large. The plain ought not to appear in the middle, contracting itself to the west, nor should the mountains be so far to the east; but they ought to appear as they are exhibited in my 119th plate, where I have omitted nothing, even to the smallest tree.

His plate of characters, page 333, has no correspondence with mine in plate 126, and yet they are intended for the same, but they are all confused, and he has inserted some which ought not to have been there. He has represented twenty four perfect lines, whereas several characters are wanting in mine, and

the three first lines are entirely defaced. But I have represented all that are visible in the other lines, even to the minutest point.

He observes, in page 336, that there are fifteen paces from the stair-case to the first portals, and thirty from these to the others. If we allow two feet and a half to each pace, the first portals will be thirty seven feet and a half from the stair-case, whereas the space between them comprehends forty two feet. The columns are at the distance of twenty six feet from the first portal, and fifty-six from the second, both which numbers amount to eighty two feet; but he has computed no more than seventy five. He adds, that each pilaster is composed of two stones, jointed together with so much art as to be scarce visible: And yet the first portal consists of eight stones, and the other of seven, as I have observed in page 11, where the whole is described with all possible exactness, and as it appears in my 121st, 122d, and 123d plates, together with the animals and columns. He says, with respect to the animals, that as the heads are entirely defaced, it is impossible to judge what species they were intended to represent; and adds, that the last, which are winged, may possibly have been griffons; and that there really is one, whose head resembles that of a bearded man, though it be much impaired, which indeed is true. He takes the ornaments of these animals for roses or coral. I have exhibited two of them in plate 156.

He assigns to the columns a circumference of two fathoms, and twice the height of the portals; but this representation has been already considered. He likewise places three or four storks nests on one of those columns only, whereas they are to be found upon several. He has also exhibited figures on the stair-case, in page 341, and begins with the upper part, where he has placed, at the head of other figures, a man on horseback, followed by a chariot drawn



drawn by two men, who are succeeded by a winged lion encountering a bull, to which he has added a table of twenty four lines. He then represents in his stair-case, several figures habited in different manners, and carrying various sorts of things. These he has alternately intermixed with mules, oxen, sheep, camels, and cypress-trees planted in fine vases, above the two contending animals. With respect to the other side, which is to the east, he contents himself with saying, that it is full of figures armed with lances. The author indeed acknowledges, in page 340, that he has sketched out this procession something slightly, and without entering into a strict examination of the particulars, and then adds, that his engraver has committed many errors in this part of the work, as well with respect to the figures, as the order in which they are disposed, and that these defects were occasioned by his misapprehension of the author's design, and the remarks he has made. Upon which he promises to give the publick a set of more correct plates, in some future impression of his work; and it is certain that he may easily succeed in that particular, like several other persons, after having seen my plates. In a word, this whole representation is very far from corresponding with the celebrated ruins of *Persepolis*, and a judgment may be formed of it, by what I have exhibited in plate 126. It seems very improbable, therefore, that all these faults should be chargeable on the meer negligence, or unskilfulness of the engravers, who ought naturally to conform to the orders, and trace out the sketches they receive. But indeed his verbal description is altogether as imperfect as the plates; and he himself says, that the first figure which appears on the upper-part of the stair-case, is a man on horseback. Whereas it is very certain, that no equestrian figure is to be seen either there, or in any other part of the ruins of *Chelminar*, nor is there the least appearance that

any thing of that nature was ever there. The same may be said of the chariot drawn by two men, as also of those extraordinary animals which he has represented as encountering one another, and also of the cypress planted in the fine vases he has assigned them. I may therefore affirm, that these human and animal figures, together with all the rest, are so remote from truth, that I shall not charge my self with the unnecessary trouble of pointing out their defects.

He represents, in page 344, a portal, which is the work of meer imagination, since instead of placing the figures within the entrance, he has disposed some on each side without, and others within, descending from a rock with strange animals in their hands; and above the entrance, he has placed a small figure, which indeed is to be seen on the top of the pilasters, but not within the portal. Our author adds, that figures are to be seen there habited in long robes; the first of which he imagines is a bishop at the head of his clergy; and he likewise affirms, that in each of the portals, a giant is to be seen, together with a griffon, or a lion, into whose belly the giant plunges a dagger; and he places on the top, an hieroglyphic figure, equally compounded of a man and an eagle, with a variety of ornaments like those at *Naxi Rustan*.

His 347th page represents a window, with small ornaments on the outside, and characters all around it, descending to a considerable depth. These characters are indeed placed there instead of foliage, but they are not continued so far down as he has represented. The reader may see in what manner they are exhibited in my 128th plate.

Our author likewise declares in page 340, that he found seventeen of the seventy columns, the traces of which are still visible, and he believes they were distributed into four divisions, separated from each other by a thick wall of black marble, the ruins of which still rise to the height



height of a fathom; are six paces in length, and one in thickness. He pretends, that these columns were placed at the distance of nine paces from each other, and that they were raised on three sorts of pedestals; some square and rude, like a work in the gothic style; others round, and partly ornamented with the leaves of lilies: To which he adds, that in the spaces between these columns, there are some which are fluted, and others entirely plain: In a word, that they have a circumference of three fathoms, and are about fifteen in height. As I have already sufficiently specified their dimensions, it is altogether unnecessary to repeat them here; and therefore I shall only say, that neither plain columns, nor square pedestals are to be found there.

In the 330th page, our author assigns to this edifice a length of 570 paces, from east to west, tho' their number scarce amounts to 400, as I have already observed, and in the middle, where the greatest extent is from north to south, he allows it no more than 400 paces, tho' the real number is 600; he adds, that the height of the wall is not equal in every part, but that it may be allowed six fathoms for the altitude in general. The reader may consult the particulars of my description. He afterward affirms, that the stones of this wall are large, exactly square, and polished on the outside. The two former particulars of this description have already been shewn to be false, nor are all the stones polished, as he declares. Some indeed are so, and they appear as smooth as mirrors in the portals and windows; but none of this polish is to be seen on their outside, and I leave the reader to judge what time it would have required to polish every stone both within and without. I have indeed declared in my first volume, that the inside of the *Egyptian* pyramids is polished, and that the stones are joined together in a most exquisite manner, but there is no polish to be seen on their outside.

Our author represents the first flights of the stair-case in the facade, as consisting of fifty five steps to the right, and fifty eight to the left, and as many in the second flights; the total of which will amount to 110 on one side, and 116 on the other; whereas there are but 103 to the north, and 101 to the south. He likewise allows each step a length of eight paces, a breadth of two and a half, and a span for the height. All which he has conceived at random, without measuring what he has taken upon him to describe.

As for the stones of the rock, which these two writers, as well as several others, take for black, white, and red marble; it is certain, as I have observed, page 29, that all the edifice is cut out of the natural rock, so that it is altogether ridiculous to suppose the materials were brought from any other quarter. It is even obvious to any eye, that the greatest part of the edifice is formed of such materials as were produced by the mountain against which it is situated. This is apparent beyond contradiction, with respect to the two royal monuments, the stair-case of the facade, the two sides of the structure, the large stones of the wall, and several other members of the building, particularly to the north. The polished stones, indeed, and especially those within the portals, and the windows, together with the large angular stones, which still appear in the earth, have a great resemblance to marble, because they are streaked with white, grey, red, and yellowish veins intermixed with a deep blew, and lines of a black dye: But I look upon this variety of colours to be the effect of time, since nothing of that nature is to be seen in the rock itself. The greatest part of the edifice is tinged with a light blue, as is evident from several pieces of the rock, and by the figure I brought away from those ruins.

I shall here mention two antiquities which are taken notice of by our author, who says, page 354, that on



on the top of a certain hill, there are several square and ruinous fragments of a wall of marble, together with portals which opened into an apartment fifteen paces square; whose situation is from the north-west to the south-east, and the facade of which fronted the plain. He then adds, that there are several figures with lances still visible on some pieces of marble, and likewise three gates of a reddish marble, which are about three fathoms high; two of which front each other, and the third is situated toward the mountain. He likewise says, that the outside is smooth and finely polished, and not at all defaced by time, and that no sort of sculpture is to be found on the outward surface; but on the sides within there are some figures a little larger than the life, separate from each other, and habited in very wide and long robes, which flow down to the feet, and that the sleeves of these vestments are plaited like those of the sacerdotal garments: That some of these figures seem to shoot out, and others to shrink back, and that they are all clothed in the same manner: That the particular figure, which is under the gate, to the north-west, holds an urn in the left hand, and in the right, which is more elevated, a censer, something like a small lantern: That there is such another figure as this under the opposite gate, and which holds the same thing; and that the others have neither heads nor hands; that the figure to the east is likewise defaced, and holds a little packet in its left hand, and a flower, or something like it, in the right.

This is the same edifice which I call, in page 50, *Mazyt Madre, Sulemoeen*, or the mosque of the mother of *Sulemoeen*; and I found that this edifice was between eighteen and twenty paces square. One may there see three portals like those of *Persepolis*, represented in plate 161, and whose inward height is equal to eleven feet, and on each of the sides is the figure of a woman as large as the life, and holding something in its hand like those at *Persepolis*. On the

two sides of the rock, out of which the portal to the south-west is formed, are nine small figures much impaired by time, and their bodies are half buried in the earth; and to the north-west is a kind of stone cistern, which is mentioned by our author: All the rest is surrounded with stones separated from one another, and which owe that kind of situation to a length of time. Most of the pilasters of these portals are out of their places, and these removals can only be imputed to an earthquake. The greatest part of the cornice, belonging to the middle portal, is still visible, and the true form of these portals may be seen in my 178th plate, where only half the figure of the woman that is placed below, appears to view, by reason of the stones which surround it. At the distance of a good league from hence, one may find several figures carved on the rock; and our author says, page 363, that the two first represent *Rustan* and his wife in conversation together; that the head of this hero is covered with a casque; that his beard and hair are short, and that his neck is ornamented with a collar of jewels. To this he adds, that the breast and body of this figure are damaged, and that a plaited vestment hangs down from the waist. He then tells us, that the figure which represents the wife of *Rustan*, is beautiful, and as large as the life, and that she has jewels on her forehead, and round her neck; as likewise an upper robe, which is very short, and plaited below. He farther acquaints us, that the Figure of *Rustan* has his left hand on his stomach, and with his right presents a flower to the queen, which she receives with her left, and presents to him with her right hand a fruit which resembles an apple, or a pear. To which he adds, that the two other Figures represent heroes or kings, but that *Rustan* is still the largest of all.

For my part, I found in that place, as I intimated in page 51. three tables, and some other pieces of sculpture carved in a very rude manner on



the rock; and that on the first of these tables were two figures, one of which holds his hand on the guard of a large sword: That the second table exhibits the figure of a man with a round machine on his head, and on the third, which is equal to the first, and lower than that in the middle, is a figure with a kind of mitre on his head, and his left hand resting on the guard of his sword, like the former; but that the whole is so impaired by time, as to be hardly distinguishable, as I have represented the same in my 179th plate. Only the large sword of that figure which our author calls king *Rustan*, is still very visible; but as to the collar, the casque, and likewise the flower, which he says this prince holds in his hand, and which the queen receives with her left, I can affirm, that nothing of this nature is there to be found. I am likewise very uncertain whether this latter figure be that of a woman; for it is exceedingly defaced; and yet our author affirms, that it represents a very amiable woman, with jewels on her forehead, and round her neck. The middle figure seemed to have something in its Hand, much resembling a bowl. In a word, I found that these figures, together with what they have on their heads, and in all other particulars relating to them, are not very different from those tables which appear below the tombs of *Nasi Rustan*, and that the former may probably have been the same with those that are there represented as holding a ring, in plate 169.

It may naturally be concluded from all I have said, that I have proceeded very differently from other travellers, in the examination of what I saw, and that the only view I proposed in my travels, was to unfold those antiquities, which have not been placed in their true light by any person before me; and that my design was to offer to the public a more perfect

work, in this respect, than any which have been published by others. I undertook it altogether with this design, and was desirous to satisfy my natural curiosity for things of this nature; without any thoughts of making my fortune in foreign countries, or engaging myself in the service of any one. I can likewise affirm, that I drew with my own hand, and have painted in distemper, on paper, and from the original objects themselves, those representations of them, which are to be found in my travels, and that I have completed the whole in so orderly and exact a manner, that I could have made use of them in the relation of my travels, without giving myself the trouble to have them engraved.

I brought away an entire figure from the rocks of *Persepolis*, into my own country, together with several other curious pieces; a large collection of characters, and other ornaments, which sufficiently prove what pains I took, during the three months I continued at *Persepolis*: all which time I devoted my strictest attention to those illustrious ruins. I may therefore take the liberty to represent myself as the first person who has placed them in the full light, and rendered justice to them, after an interval of 2000 years; and without deviating from the rules of art, either in the relation I have given of them, or with respect to the plates which were engraved, under my inspection, with all possible justice and accuracy. I therefore flatter myself that I have merited the approbation of all those who are lovers of art and undisguised truth. I have likewise taken the pains to paint several extraordinary pieces of drapery, both of men and women, which the curious may see at my house, together with a variety of *Indian* fish, fruits, and birds.

A  
L E T T E R

Written to the

A U T H O R

O N T H E

Subject of his REMARKS,

By a Lover of ANTIQUITY.

SIR,

I HAVE read with pleasure, your remarks on the errors committed by Sir *John Chardin* and Mr. *Kempfer*, in the accounts they have given us of the celebrated ruins of the ancient palace of *Persopolis*, but cannot take upon me to decide any thing concerning them, since I never had an opportunity of viewing them on the spot. I think, however, that the fine plates you have caused to be engraven, and the circumstantial description you have given of those Antiquities, in the course of your travels, as well with respect to the edifice in general, as to each piece in particular, merit the attention and suffrages of learned men, and lovers of antiquity, more than any other relation which I have yet seen. When one considers the extent of that superb structure, together with the number of figures, and other curiosities which are there to be found, as is allowed by all who have been upon the spot, it must be confessed that a person ought to have excellent eyes, a masterly hand, and a large share of judgment, to acquit himself well on that

subject; and that he must have joined to these, an application and patience that are not to be expressed. And yet Mr. *Kempfer* freely confesses, \* that he was hardly three days upon the spot: And tho' he endeavours to persuade his readers, in several parts of his work, particularly, *Relat.* v. §. 3. p. 331. that he drew with great exactness the principal fragments of those noble ruins; but that his engraver copied his drawings in a very inaccurate manner; the contrary is yet too visible in the disposition of the whole, as you have very justly observed; and all the parts of it are exhibited in so unmasterly and injudicious a manner, that it is impossible to discover any great strokes of art, or the least air of antiquity, or any thing indeed that corresponds with the relations that have been written on this subject by the ancient *Greeks*. To which I may add, that tho' a person be really master of all the qualities that are requisite for the proper accomplishment of such an undertaking as this, it will yet be impossible for him to form so long and circumstan-

\* Falscul. II. *Amant.* *Exotic. Relat.* iv. Sect. 2. p. 305.



Tom. 3.  
L. 10. 12.  
l'Ed. in 4.

But a relation as Mr. *Kempfer* has given us, in such a short time as that in which he was conversant with these ruins. Sir *John Chardin* likewise did not allow himself a sufficient time to examine them very strictly, and to give a clear representation of what he there saw, since he acknowledges, in the 9th Volume, and 175th page of his travels, that he employ'd no more than five days in his survey of *Chelminar*, and in completing his draughts and description of that structure; and adds, that he was obliged to hire a painter for that purpose. It must therefore be allowed, Sir, that tho' some figures in his plates may be said to resemble yours in a few particulars, and it be likewise evident that they were drawn on the spot, it is yet very apparent, that they were worked off in haste, and some things were touched so very slightly, that it became necessary to finish them afterward by mere guess. This you have very judiciously observed in your remarks, wherein you have refused all the errors he has committed, and have proceeded with all the exactness of a man who has seen things with his own eyes, and examined them in the strictest manner. I am therefore persuaded that every judicious reader will declare in your favour without the least hesitation; and it must be naturally allowed, that the representation of those ruins, made by so curious a connoisseur as yourself, are preferable to those of a hired painter, who continued no more than five days upon the spot, and took but a transient view of things; whereas you was constant in your application there, and proceeded with all imaginable exactness for the full space of three months. This is my opinion with respect to the work in general, and I think it is not ill founded. But, at the same time, I am far from pretending to derogate either from the merit of those gentlemen, or the applause they deserve in every other particular.

But as you are desirous, Sir, of knowing my sentiments of those historical remarks which those gentlemen have interspersed in the relation of their travels, with reference to the figures that are to be seen at *Chelminar*, I shall do myself the honour to acquaint you, that Mr. *Kempfer* seems to me, to have been extremely concise in those particulars, and Sir *John Chardin* altogether as superficial; whilst you have omitted nothing that has been written by the ancients with relation to *Persepolis*, and the ancient *Persians*. This might suffice in general; but in order to afford you all the satisfaction in my power, I shall now examine what these gentlemen have advanced on this subject, in which I intend to be as brief as possible, and as clear as is consistent with that little knowledge Heaven has been pleased to afford me.

Sir *John Chardin*, speaking of these famous ruins in general, which the modern *Persians* call *Chelminar*, declares, that they are not the remains, either of the palace of the ancient kings of *Persia*, or of that of *Darius* in particular; but that they are the ruins of a temple in the ancient city of *Persepolis*. See Vol. ix. page 156. He then alledges several reasons in proof of what he advances, the most plausible of which is, that in ancient times palaces in that country were not built on mountains, but on the banks of rivers, for the benefit of a refreshing air. He then endeavours to justify his opinion by the order of the figures on the state-case, which he would have his readers believe are the procession of a sacrifice, because each figure carries something that was used in solemnities of that nature among the Pagans, as he pretends; and he even finds fault with *D. Garcia de Silva de Figueroa*, for calling this procession a triumph, in the 150th page of his embassy. He likewise adds, in page 63, that this procession is divided into several bands, some containing six, and others

Tom. 3.  
p. 102. de  
l'Ed. in 4.



Tom. 3. others nine figures; and that they  
p. 104. de are separated by a tree which re-  
Ed. in 4. sembles a cypress. He then tells us,  
that the general band is led by a  
man, who holds another by the hand,  
as if he conducted him in the qua-  
lity of a victim: and that this repre-  
sentation is exhibited in every parti-  
cular band, except one. To this he  
adds, that five sorts of victims seem  
to be in this procession; namely, a  
dromedary, a bull, a couple of he-  
goats, an horse, and a mule. And  
he observes, that tho' one sees but  
one dromedary, two he-goats, and  
one mule, yet there are several hor-  
ses, which induced him to think  
that this was intended to represent  
a sacrifice to the sun. He then cites  
*Herodotus* and *Strabo*, to prove that  
the ancient *Persians* offered horses  
to the sun, as well as other animals,  
but has not pointed out the place where  
this passage is to be found in those fa-  
mous historians. And tho' he acknow-  
ledges that he cannot find any express  
declaration, either in sacred or pro-  
phane history, that the *Persians* sacri-  
ficed human creatures, like some of  
their neighbours, and that the *Guebres*  
absolutely deny that any such immo-  
lations were ever made by their an-  
cestors, he yet affirms, that the man  
who is led by the hand, is a victim,  
as well as the horse and the drome-  
dary: For he cannot conceive what  
else that figure can be intended for,  
in this procession, all the other hu-  
man figures of which carry some-  
thing that relates to a sacrifice. He  
likewise maintains in page 77, that  
the tract of ground where the co-  
lumn appear in their greatest num-  
ber, is the choir of this imaginary  
temple, and the place where the  
victims were sacrificed; to which he  
adds in the 93d and following pages,  
that he is persuaded that the great  
number of edifices and apartments,  
which appear to the east, and north,  
and which are fewer toward the  
north, and toward the south, were

the several apartments of the sacri-  
ficers, and other priests of the tem-  
ple, since such structures were cu-  
stomary among the pagans, and  
were even some of the appendages  
to the temple of *Solomon*.

In order to answer this kind of  
reasoning in a few words, I must  
acquaint you, Sir, that several pa-  
laces are to be found at this day in  
plains, throughout the east, but we  
are not to conclude from thence,  
that this was the practice at all times,  
and in all places. I may alledge, as  
a proof of what I advance, that the  
ancient city of *Jerusalem* was not  
situated on the delightful banks of  
*Jordan*, but on the mountains of  
*Moriab* and *Sion*, as the sacred scrip-  
tures declare. The temple of *Solo-  
mon* was built on mount *Moriab*, by  
the order of king *David*, the father  
of that prince\*. The palace of *Da-  
vid* was also on mount *Sion*, as was  
likewise the fortress of that name,  
and which was a place of such  
strength, that the *Jebusites* did not  
believe that prince could make him-  
self master of it, even after he had  
taken *Jerusalem*, as may be seen in  
the second book of *Samuel*, chap. v.  
ver. 6, &c.† The palaces, or for-  
tresses of the ancient kings of *Egypt*,  
at *Memphis*, which was once the ca-  
pital of that kingdom, were like-  
wise situated on an eminence, or  
the declivity of a mountain, which  
sloped toward the city, that lay at  
the bottom, as *Strabo* observes\* in  
his account of the antiquities of that  
city, which still subsisted in his time.  
In a word, the palace of the *Khali-  
fahs* of *Egypt*, at *Al Kabira*, or  
*Cairo*, is also situated on a rock or  
mountain, as you observe in your  
first account of your travels, chapter  
39. And as the climate of *Egypt*  
and *Judaea* is altogether as hot at  
least as any part of *Persia*, Sir *John*  
*Chardin's* argument seems therefore  
to have no weight. I may add too,  
that the delicious plain in which these

\* Vide *Joseph.* rer. *Judaic.* l. 1. c. 14.

† Vide etiam *Joseph.* rer. *Judaic.* lib. 7. c. 2. & *Bano* in not. ad *Cluver.* *Introduit. Geogr.*  
lib. 5. c. 20. & *Christoph. Heidegger.* *Palestin.* c. 2. n. 10.

\* Lib. 17. rer. *Geogr.* in fin. & seq. p.



famous remains of the grandeur of the ancient monarchy of *Persia* are situated, is watered by a variety of rivers and lesser streams, which frequently overflow their banks, and temper the glow of the sun-beams in the summer season. We may likewise take it for granted, that there were several springs and subterranean cavities, together with a great number of wells in the palace itself, and which have been since filled up with the fallen fragments of those superb ruins, and destroyed by those barbarians, who laid that fine country under water; which is a fate that *Memphis* and *Jerusalem* have likewise sustained. But what is still more to our purpose, Sir *John Chardin* frankly acknowledges, in the 173d page of the same volume, that the inhabitants call *Chelminar* The Temple of the Winds, because a breeze of air perpetually blows in that place. Why, therefore, may we not suppose a palace to have been built there, as well as a temple? To this we will add the testimony of *Ateneus*,\* who declares, that *Cyrus*, and the kings of *Persia* who succeeded him, resided at *Ecbatane*, the capital of *Media*, during the excessive heats of the summer; and passed the autumn at *Persepolis*; the winter at *Susa*, and the spring at *Babylon*. Add to this, that the manner in which *Diodorus Siculus* describes the palace of *Persepolis*, gives us sufficient reason to believe that *Chelminar* is that very palace: For though that author mentions a triple wall, which encompassed that palace, and though these three inclosures are no longer to be seen there, that will not be thought a circumstance of any consequence, since the *Greek* authors from whom he transcribed that description, some ages after the destruction of that palace, may have taken some particular angles, or sections, of that edifice, or some corners or sides of the rock on which it

is situated, for walls; or those walls, if any such there were, may have been entirely destroy'd in a course of so many ages. But what seems most material to me is, that *Diodorus* adds in the same place, That to the east, and behind the palace, there was a mountain which was called the Royal Mount, where the tombs of the Persian kings were built. As those circumstances, therefore, together with several others which I may have occasion to mention, as I proceed, are still to be found at *Chelminar*, the learned *Don Figueroa*, who was a perfect master of antiquity, concludes very justly, in my opinion, that this place ought to be considered as the genuine ruins of the ancient palace of *Persepolis*, which was destroyed by *Alexander the Great*. See his embassy, pages 160, 161, 162, &c. and page 41. of your own travels into *Persia*. We will now proceed to Sir *John Chardin's* second argument.

He says, that the ornaments on the stair-case of these stately ruins, represent a procession, and probably one of those which were made at solemn sacrifices, and particularly those to the sun. But the testimonies which he cites from *Herodotus* and *Strabo*, to justify his conjecture, are altogether inconclusive. *Herodotus* indeed declares\* that the ancient *Persians* made oblations to the sun; but he does not seem to say, that those offerings consisted either of horses, or of any other animals; for he only declares, that the *Massagetae* offered up to him, as the most active of all gods, the swiftest of their quadrupeds, namely horses. *Strabo* says the same\* when he mentions the *Massagetae*; but, with respect to the *Persians*, he says nothing more, than that they honoured the sun. There is more reason, in my opinion, to affirm, that the *Persians* offered horses to the god *Mars*, from the authority of *Strabo*,\* who declares, that they

Tom. 3.  
p. 140.  
Ed. in 4.

\* Lib. 12. p. m. 313.

\* Lib. 1. c. 11.

\* Lib. 12. c. 134.

\* Lib. 11. p. m. 752.

\* Gr. lib. p. m. 725.



honoured the god of war above all other deities, and that the people of *Caramania*, a province subject to the *Persians*, offered mules to him, because they used those animals in their wars, instead of horses. However, as *Xenophon* affirms, \* that *Cyrus* offered horses to the sun; and † *Pausanias*, that the *Persians* sacrificed horses and other beasts to that luminary, we will not contest their authority; but we, however, are not to conclude from thence, that the figures on the stair-case of *Chelminar* represent the procession of a sacrifice, nor that the structure itself was a temple of *Persepolis*, because it was customary for the *Persians*, on the birth-day of their kings, which was anciently called *Tytha*, to slaughter a great number of goats, mules, oxen, deer, and sheep, and the subjects afterward served them up at the royal table, as *Athenæus* informs us ‡ from ancient *Persian* authors, whose works have long ceased to be extant. It is much more probable, therefore, that these figures represent one of those festivals, rather than a sacrifice: And what is still more to our purpose, *Herodotus*, who lived in the time of *Xerxes the Great*, when the monarchy of the ancient *Persians* was in its utmost glory, declares, that they had no images of gods, nor temples, nor altars, and that they even derided those nations who had them; and were contented with offering their sacrifices on lofty places free from all impurity §; which likewise is confirmed by *Strabo* ¶. I think this is sufficient to prove, that the ruins of *Chelminar* are not those of a temple, since the ancient *Persians* had not any, and consequently these must be the remains of a palace, to which the figures and ornaments correspond much better. For though *Sir John Chardin* endeavours in a very inge-

nious manner to support his opinion, by comparing the representations on the stair-case with some particular customs which prevail among the modern *Persians* and *Indians*, yet I cannot see that he can derive much advantage from that proceeding, since persons of judgment are sensible, that modern customs differ there, as well as in other countries, from those of the ancients, and especially with regard to an antiquity that has subsisted above two thousand years. For which reason I am well persuaded, that if one of those *Batavians* who lived a thousand years ago, was to appear upon earth again, he would be altogether unacquainted with the manners, language, and habits of his modern countrymen. The present customs and manners of the *Guebres*, and those of the pagans of *India*, which *Sir John Chardin* so frequently alleges in his justification, are no more in his favour than the other particulars he has mentioned; for the modern *Guebres* differ from the ancient *Magi*, as much at least as the modern *Jews* deviate from their orthodox ancestors, and as much as the generality of modern Christians vary from the primitive church, both in their manners and doctrines. The *Guebres* of this age are a set of poor ignorant creatures, who in consequence of a length of time, and the great changes which have happened in *Persia*, have lost the true knowledge of their ancestors manner of worship, of which they retain nothing but the letter, in the same manner as the *Samaritans* have preserved that of the pentateuch. It may even be presumed, that the *Greeks*, who adored false deities, introduced many novelties in their time, into the *Persian* religion, and which were very incongruous with the ancient manners of

\* Lib. 8. *Cyrop.* c. 24.

† In *Lacon.* sect. lib. 3. c. 22.

‡ Lib. 4. p. m. 145. *De.*

§ Vid. cit. lib. 1. p. 131. & 132.

¶ Lib. 15. p. m. 732.



the people. The *Parthians* indeed, and another race of *Persian* kings, reigned in that country for some ages after the *Greeks*; but it is very probable, that the *Saracens*, who afterward made themselves masters of it under the first *Khalifas*; and then the *Tartars*, under *Tamerlane*, and after them, the *Turks*, did not fail to introduce several great changes there, either by tyranny, or a series of artful conduct; and we may naturally conclude, that these alterations contributed not a little to obscure and perplex the affairs of the ancient *Persians*. The *Indians* likewise have been no less obnoxious to changes and revolutions of this nature, but as they have no relation to our present subject, I shall not enlarge upon them.

I freely acknowledge, for my part, that I think the relations which the ancient *Greek* historians have given us of the manners and customs of the first *Persians*, in peace and war, and in every other particular, except what relates to their religious worship, deserve much more credit than all the fabulous histories of the modern *Persians*. It is certain, that the *Guebres* of our time are very commendable for entirely rejecting all false gods and idols, and for acknowledging one God alone; in which particulars they render justice to their ancestors; and likewise declare, that they pay an external honour only to the planets, as *Dr. Hyde* has observed in his history of the religion of the ancient *Persians*; and he declares, that he collected that account from their own writings. To which I may add, that you yourself received the same account from their own lips, as you observe in the 79th chapter of your travels. I think therefore we need nothing more to refute, or at least to weaken *Sir John Chardin's* second argument; since, if the ancient *Persians* were not idolaters, it is cer-

tain that the figures of the stair-case cannot be supposed to be carrying in procession to this pretended temple, those things which real pagans used in their sacrifices. And indeed they prove the very contrary, by the manner in which you have represented them, agreeably to history and reason. I shall not take any notice of the errors he has committed, with respect to those figures, since you have sufficiently pointed them out, and no one can be a better judge of them than yourself. The historians likewise declare in your favour, since they all deny that the ancient *Persians* ever sacrificed human creatures, as the *Massagetae* did, according to *Herodotus*\* and † *Strabo*: And these authors would certainly have said the same of the *Persians*, if they had acted like the *Massagetae*.

As to the figures which *Sir John Chardin* represents as bearing human limbs, I think you have sufficiently proved, that it is all mere imagination; and it is impossible it should be otherwise, if the whole be rightly considered. It is still less conceivable, that the second figures which are led by the first in each band, should be intended for victims, since some of them have a machine on their left side, which he calls the case of a bow, in his 69th page; but there is much more reason to believe it to be a *Gerra*, or buckler made of cords and leather, which the *Persians* carried on the left side, as they did a poinard on the right hip, as *Herodotus* observes\* in his account of the arms of the ancient *Persians*. This is confirm'd by the 58th and 59th plates in *Sir John Chardin's* travels, since this buckler is seen in the first of those plates, where the left side of the figures appears, and particularly that which is distinguished by the letter O. The poinard likewise is visible on the figures in the second plate, where

Tom. 3.  
p. 302 de  
Ed. in 4.

\* Lib. 1. c. 216.

† Lib. 11. pag. m. 313. A.

\* Lib. 7. c. 61.



they are turned to the right, and are habited like the preceding figures, whose poniards are not seen; but the two ends of the scabbard appear on some others. Now it seems very unnatural to me, to have victims conducted to the altar, with bucklers and poniards on their sides.

In the same 58th plate, Sir *John Chardin* has represented a person of rank, distinguished by the letter A, who conducts another with a *Tiara* on his head, and his habit resembles that of a *Magus*, or some priest: And yet, this figure, according to Sir *John Chardin*, must needs be a victim; which is very extraordinary. That which is marked with R in the same plate, together with the four following figures, have an instrument in their hands, which he calls a *scam*, in his 69th page. This was an ancient instrument, and he says it is still used in several parts of the east, instead of a lance, which was not known in that country, till the *Europeans* maintained a commerce with it. But this manner of reasoning proves nothing in my opinion; for beside that you represent this band of figures very differently from that gentleman, and without any *scams*; I am not able to comprehend wherein they could be useful, unless it was to bleed the victims, which would have been something very singular. I will not take upon me to decide what the other figures carry; for I would avoid all prolixity; and indeed you have said all that can be offered on that subject, in your fifty third chapter: For which reason, I shall only declare in general, that after a due consideration of the whole, I think this procession resembles a triumph more than any thing else, as *Figueras* judged, or a birth-day sacrifice. The several encounters of animals, likewise, who are engaged in combat either with one an-

other, or with men, correspond much better with a palace and a festival, than with a sacrifice and a temple; and especially as the ancient *Persians* had not any of these latter. Sir *John Chardin* has represented one of these combats, in his 70th page, between a lion and a common bull with two horns, and he declares that combats of this nature are still exhibited for the entertainment of the people, at the festivals and public shews of the *Persians*; and that they are managed in such a manner, that the lion is always victorious, because that animal is an emblem of the *Persian* monarchy. *Figueras* only says, page 150, that a lion rending a bull is to be seen, and that the sculptor had represented the combat so well, that nothing can be excepted against it; but he has not said that this animal has horns. Monsieur *Thevenot* expresses himself to the same effect in his travels\*. But as I find that you have represented all, and even the least ornaments, with much more exactness than others, I imagine that these gentlemen, who sketched them out in a slight manner for want of time, have not taken notice that this bull has but one horn, and especially Sir *John Chardin*, who represents this animal without the least air of agreeableness, and in a position which is altogether unnatural, and directly contrary to that of *Figueras*. If this animal therefore be such as you have represented it, I should not believe it to be a bull, and it seems to me to have more the air of a horse or a mule; and it is likewise bridled and harnessed like a horse. Perhaps it may be one of those *Indian* mules which are mentioned by *Ctesias*,<sup>b</sup> who says that they resemble horses, and some of them exceed those animals in size. He adds, that they have a mane of a violet colour, a white body, black eyes, uncloven hoofs, and on their

\* L. 2. c. 7.

<sup>b</sup> In *Indic*. juxta excerpt. Phot. c. 35.

Vol. II.



forehead a black horn, which is white near the head, and red at the point. He then informs us that this horn is shaped into drinking cups, and that this animal is so exceeding vigorous and swift, that he cannot be taken without great difficulty. *Eliau* has given us much the same account<sup>a</sup>; and *Aristotle* likewise says, that there are mules in *India* which have one horn, but that their number is very inconsiderable<sup>b</sup>. *Pliny* relates the same thing<sup>c</sup>. And you may likewise consult *Bartholinus* on this subject<sup>d</sup>. But however the fact may be, I think you have represented it much in this manner on the stair-case; and as to those animals which are exhibited in *Sir John Chardin's* 65th plate, there may possibly have been such, notwithstanding they are unknown to us. You likewise represent, in your 130th plate, a hero encountering a lion with one horn; and it is certain that nature sometimes produces such monstrous births. I must indeed confess, that the combat between the lion and the mule with one horn, does not seem more extraordinary to me, than those between the mules and bears, which you mention in the 39th chapter of your travels.

Tom. 3.  
p. 102. de  
l'Ed. in 4. I can easily agree with *Sir John Chardin*, who says, page 70, that he believes the inscription in characters, which appears at the end of the long basso-relievo of the stair-case, contains an explication of the sculpture there; and yet I am fully persuaded by the reasons I have alledged, that these famous ruins are those of a palace, and cannot possibly be the remains of a temple.

It is also probable that the tract of ground where most of the columns stand, was originally a court before the palace, like that which was before the king's house at *Susa*, mentioned in the book of *Esther*, c. v. and through which a flow of fresh

air was admitted into the apartments. One may even presume, that these columns did not support any architrave, as *Sir John Chardin* has observed page 76; but we may venture to suppose that a covering of tapestry or linnen was drawn over them, to intercept the perpendicular projection of the sun-beams. The great number of apartments, whose symetry is no longer distinguishable, were undoubtedly appropriated to the prince, and the officers of his court.

*Sir John Chardin* expresses himself as positively, with relation to the drapery of the figures, as he did with respect to the imaginary temple, and the sacrifices he supposed were offered there; because he discovers some similitude between these habits and those that were worn by the ancient worshippers of fire, or of the *Guebres*, who are still to be found in the *Indies*. He adds, page 59, that the under vestment of these figures is intended to represent a cotton or silken garment, which is wrapped three or four times round the reins, and the end of which is inserted into the cincture; after which he informs us, that the habits which are cut and sewed, were introduced by the *Mohammedans*. He likewise declares, page 61, that the variety which is to be seen in the head-dress and drapery of those figures, proceeds only from the diversity of countries and climes in the vast empire of *Persia*. He represents some of them, in his 58th plate, in shagged habits, while others are naked; and he gives tiaras to some, and to others handkerchiefs wound about the head, instead of bonnets, in his 60th page; all which is the work of his own fancy, and contrary to the testimonials of ancient authors. For my part, I am persuaded, there is no more similitude between the habits of the pagan *Indians* of these days, and those of the ancient *Persians*, than there is between our manner of dress and

Tom. 3.  
p. 108. de  
l'Ed. in 4.

Tom. 3.  
p. 114. de  
l'Ed. in 4.

Tom. 3.  
p. 104. de  
l'Ed. in 4.

Tom. 3.  
p. 163.  
l'Ed. in 4.

<sup>a</sup> L. 4. de Nat. Animal. c. 32.

<sup>b</sup> L. 1. Hist. Animal. cap. 50.

<sup>c</sup> L. 11. Hist. Nat. cap. 57. & 46.

<sup>d</sup> De Unicorna cap. 11.



that of our ancestors; and indeed I do not find any figures in your plates that are either naked, or covered with furs. Nor has *Herodotus* mentioned any thing of this nature in his account of the arms and habit of the troops of *Xerxes the Great*. And we find that the drapery of those figures which are still remaining at *Chelminar*, corresponds with the habits of those different nations. I likewise think it very extraordinary, that the ancient *Persians* should have learned the use of cut and sewed garments from the *Mohammedans*, since *Atbenæus* declares, that those ancient *Persians* were the first of all nations who addicted themselves to luxury and pleasure\*. If they wore plaited robes of cloth with large sleeves, and folded them twice or thrice over their reins, as they are represented by *Sir John Chardin*, there is but little probability that the famous *Pausanias* of *Sparta* would have clothed himself in that manner: And yet *Thucydides* and *Cornelius Nepos* declare, that he wore a royal habit in the mode of the *Achæans*, that is to say, a long plaited robe. It is likewise certain, that if this habit had been made of cloth neither cut nor sewed, and that it was wrapped over the reins, the ancient *Greeks* would undoubtedly have ridiculed him; our modern *Dutchmen* would have taken him for a *Bohemian* fortune-teller, and the people of *Courland* would have said positively that he was a peasant of *Semigall* or *Livonia*.

But I think it time to draw to a close, Sir, and shall therefore do myself the honour to assure you, without stopping any longer at trifles, that your plates in the 53d and 54th

chapters, agree perfectly with the descriptions in ancient authors; and I am persuaded that every reader of taste and judgment will prefer the account of your travels, in that particular, to that of *Sir John Chardin*. Your remarks likewise on the tombs of *Naxi Rustan*, are very accurate and judicious. Permit me, Sir, to add to what you have observed, that *Abul-Pbaragius* declares there was a hero named *Rustan*, in the time of *Jesdegerd*, before whose reign *Chelminar* was undoubtedly built, as the modern *Persian* historians allow. But all the stories related of this *Rustan* are not to be credited; and I even believe that the tomb which is said to be his, is really that of *Darius*, who is mentioned by *Ctesias*. The rest of *Sir John Chardin's* remarks are not material enough to require an answer.

As to the explications which are offered by *Mr. Kempfer*, they seem to correspond very well with yours, if we except his plates and remarks: For which reason you will permit me to pass over inconsiderable circumstances, which can be agreeable to none but credulous minds.

Thus, Sir, have I endeavoured to comply with your desires; and if there be any other particular wherein you judge me capable of serving you, I hope you will do me the justice to believe, that I will undertake it with pleasure, as being

SIR,

Your most humble Servant,

H P.

\* Lib. 12.





# I N D E X.

## A.

**ABDALLA**, his tomb described, vol. 1. Page 182.  
**Accident**, a melancholly one, vol. 1. 53, 63. Another, vol. 1. 170.  
**Accidents** caused by the violence of the winds on the lake of *Baikal*, vol. 1. 117. A terrible accident, vol. 2. 81.  
**Achim**, the situation of that city, vol. 2. 115. The generosity of the queen of *Achim*, *ibid.*  
**Adam's-Peak** described, vol. 2. 80.  
**Adventure**, an extraordinary one, with relation to a woman in child-bed, vol. 2. 166, 167.  
**Ab-Chiuran**, river of, vol. 1. 202.  
**Alabaster**, mountains of, described, vol. 1. 190.  
**Aluetma**, the situation and description of that city, vol. 1. 76.  
**Alexander the Great** burns *Persepolis*, vol. 2. 34. Repents of that action, 44.  
**Alinda Loto**, island of, vol. 1. 84.  
**Alley**, a fine one described, vol. 2. 49.  
**Almond-tree**, wild, vol. 2. 6.  
**Alphabets**, *Javanese*, the characters of it, vol. 2. 109.  
**Ambassador**, *Georgian*, accompanies the author in his travels in *Mojony*, vol. 2. 169, 171.  
**Ambassador**, of *France*, his singular conduct and death, vol. 2. 142.  
**Anchelina**, point of, vol. 1. 76.  
**Angel**, a bird so called, description of it, vol. 1. 174.  
**Anthony**, St. Miracles related of him, vol. 1. 71.  
**Animal**, yielding Musk, described, vol. 1. 146. The manner of taking it, and obtaining the musk, *ibid.* Three sorts of musk, *ibid.*  
**Antipathy**, between mules and bears, vol. 1. 186.  
**Apollay**, several *Dutchmen* guilty of it in *Persepolis*, vol. 1. 233, 234.  
**Aqueduct**, an account of one, vol. 1. 168.  
**Arabs**, their manner of life, vol. 2. 4.  
**Arax**, river of, its confluence with the *Kar*, and course, vol. 1. 162.  
**Archangel**, city of, described, vol. 1. 14. The palace, court of justice, citadel, streets, and other buildings, 15. A prospect of that city delineated, 16. The revenues owing to the crown from that city, 17.  
**Ardevil**, the situation and description of it, vol. 1. p. 168. Its principal mosque, or mosque, *ibid.*  
**Arick**, a fruit, its description and use, vol. 2. 101.

**Asaphine**, doctor, the *Czar's* physician, vol. 2. 179. His pension and merits, *ibid.*  
**Argun**, castle of, its situation, vol. 1. 136.  
**Armenian**, the sudden death of one, and the ceremonials of his interment, vol. 1. 82. The fortitude and cruel death of another *Armenian*, vol. 1. 235.  
**Armenians**, four *Armenians* murdered, vol. 1. 158, 159. The habit of the *Armenians*, 227. Customs observed at their birth, *ibid.* Their ceremonials of marriage, 228. And at their funerals, 229. The incivility of the women, 230. Their employments, and ignorance, *ibid.* Their misapprehensions with respect to religious worship, 231. Implacable hatred of two brothers, *ibid.* Several of them renounce christianity, *ibid.* Their festival of the cross, 234. Their grand fast, vol. 2. 136.  
**Astracan**, the author's first arrival at that city, vol. 1. 86. Its situation and description, *ibid.* The author's second arrival there in his return from the *Jules*, vol. 2. 166. His departure from thence, vol. 2. 169.  
**Atchasi**, river of, or the *Parnal River*, vol. 1. 146.  
**Author**, his departure from the *Hague*, vol. 1. p. 2. His arrival at *Archangel*, vol. 1. 5. Departure from thence, vol. 1. 18. His arrival at *Moscow*, vol. 1. 21. His discourse with *Czar*, *ibid.* Is sent for by that prince, who shows him a surprising Spectacle, vol. 1. 28. Waits on the Empress, 29. Presents a book of his travels to the *Czar*, 31. Paints the young princess, *ibid.* and 37. Pays his compliments of congratulation to the *Czar*, on his return to *Moscow*, 49. And on the success of his arms, 51. Congratulates the Empress upon her coming into a new palace, *ibid.* His present to that princess, 52. Receives orders to attend the *Czar* to *Verma*, 53. Sets out for that place, 57. Attends the *Czar* on board a ship, 62. His journey to *Tamir*, and arrival there, 62, 63. Takes leave of the *Czar*, who treats him in a very obliging manner, 63, 64. The author's departure from *Moscow*, 72. His arrival at *Astracan*, 86. At *Somachi*, 147. At *Ardevil*, 165. At *Sanguel*, 172. At *Gim*, 176. At *Cachan*, 178. At *Persepolis*, vol. 2. 8. At *Zie-on*, or *Chim*, 45. At *Spahan*, 53. At *Zie-on*, 63. At *Jarah*, 66. At *Lar*, 68. At *Ganzen*, 71. Sets out for the *Jules*, 75. Arrives at *Cachin*, 78. At *Gule*, 80. At *Bataria*, 89. At *Bustam*, 102. Is admitted to an audience of the king of *Bustam*, 104. Is favoured



# I N D E X.

with a second audience, 106. *Visit*: lady of a very extraordinary age, 112. His return to *Batavia*, 113. Arrival at *Gam-ran*, 131. At *Jaren*, 135. At *Zie-ran*, 138. At *Iphahan*, 140. At *Cochin*, 156. At *Com*, 157. At *Cashin*, 158. At *Ar-devil*, 161. At *Samuti*, 162. At *Nie-janary*, 164. At *Afracan*, 166. At *Tz-magor*, 172. At *Zeritje*, *ibid.* At *Sura-tuf*, 173. At *Petrefits*, 174. At *Pinfu*, 175. At *Inferu*, *ibid.* At *Demeit*, *ibid.* At *Wladimir*, 177. At *Moscow*, *ibid.* At *Wosnia*, 181. At *Smolensk*, *ibid.* At *Berijof*, 182. Return to *Sauicgda*, 184. To *Moscow*, 185. Arrives at *Prejsau*, *Ros-ses*, *Jerusalem*, and *Wladys*, 185, 186. At *Tolma*, 188. At *Outjaga*, 189. At *Archangel*, 191. At the *Text* and *Angler-dam*, 197.

## B.

**BAIKAL**, lake of, described, vol. 1. 118.

Accidents occasioned by the violence of the wind, *ibid.* The manner of crossing it with camels and oxen, *ibid.* Strange superstition with relation to this lake, 119.

**Baku**, a fine port, vol. 1. 150.

**Balharu**, river of, vol. 2. 162.

**Baliari**, natives of *Java*; their arms, bravery, and fidelity to their masters, vol. 2. 94.

**Banan**, merchants, at *Iphahan*; an account of them, vol. 2. 244. their dress, 245.

**Bantam**, gulf of, vol. 2. 89.

**Bantam**, king of, re-established on the throne, by the forces of the *Dutch India* company, vol. 2. 102. The author admitted to the king's presence, 104. The king's habit, *ibid.* His affability and conversation with the author, 105. Situation of his pleasure-house, 106. His guard, *ibid.* The author is admitted into his presence the second time, *ibid.* Description of the queen, 107. Of the king's children, *ibid.* The king's person described, 109. His ensigns, *ibid.* Origin of the kings of *Bantam*, 110. A series of them, *ibid.* The manner in which the king of *Bantam's* letter was received by the *Dutch India* company, 114. Tombs erected for the family of the kings of *Bantam*, 112.

**Bantam**, city of, described, vol. 2. 102. The profile of it, 111. The castle, *ibid.* Situation and farther description of the city, 112. Trade, *ibid.* Extent of the haven, *ibid.*

**Bantam**, kingdom of, its Situation, vol. 2. 112.

**Baptism**, of the cross, vol. 1. 185.

**Barabiky**, a race of *Calman*, tributaries to the *Czar*, vol. 1. 133. Their habitations and food, *ibid.* Their arms, furs, and *Satan*, or idol, *ibid.* Their presents to that idol, upon their obtaining any good fortune, *ibid.*

**Bark**, of leather, vol. 1. 139.

**Batavia**, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 2. 89. Rejoicings on the anniversary of the taking of *Batavia* by the *Dutch*, 96. Description and situation of *Batavia*, 117.

Its arms and religion, *ibid.* The beauty of the city, *ibid.* Its citadel, *ibid.* The governor's palace, 118. Catalogue of the governor's, *ibid.* The hall where the council assemble, 119. The governor's stables, *ibid.* The agreeable appearance of the canals, 120. An account of the streets, churches, &c. *ibid.* The jubile of *Batavia*, 121.

**Baths**, hot, vol. 1. 169.

**Bed-musains**, a remarkable flower, vol. 1. 187.

**Beer**, the adventure of one, vol. 1. 104. Antipathy between bears and males, 189.

**Beavers**, incredible things related of them, vol. 1. 106. The caution of the *Russians* in hunting them, *ibid.*

**Beggars**, *Russian*, good regulations concerning them made by the *Czar*, vol. 1. 47. Story of a young beggar, *ibid.* An account of some *Tartarian* beggars, 76.

**Bell**, of a prodigious weight, in *Moscow*, vol. 1. 40.

**Bird**, an extraordinary one described, vol. 1. 91. Description of a large bird of prey, 146. Remarkable birds, 173, 174, 182, and vol. 2. 62, 113. A very singular bird described, vol. 2. 167.

**Bire Mountain**, described, vol. 2. 89.

**Bori**, wild, great ravages committed by them in *Persia*, vol. 2. 62.

**Babu**, colonel, beheaded by the *Czar's* order, vol. 1. 68.

**Begassau**, a fine monastery, vol. 1. 74.

**Begit**, *Indian* soldiers, their ridiculous manner of exercising, vol. 2. 101.

**Bay**, the boldness of one in climbing to the top of a high column, vol. 1. 182.

**Bridge**, a remarkable one described, vol. 1. 172. Description of the noble bridge of *Alto-ward-Khen*, 198. Of the bridge of *Storas*, 199. A fine bridge described, vol. 2. 45.

**Buffons**, at *Iphahan*, an account of them, vol. 1. 195.

**Building**, a magnificent one at *Iphahan*, vol. 1. 196. Buildings of a peculiar structure, 136.

**Barates**, their manner of life, vol. 1. 115. Accidents they sustain in hunting, *ibid.* Their stature and habit, 116. How they bury their women, *ibid.* Put their priests to death whenever they please, and for what reason, *ibid.* The place where they take an oath, *ibid.*

**Barathai**, a fortress upon the river *Angara*, vol. 1. 115.

## C.

**CABACS**, houses on the *Mojoris* roads, where iniquities sold to travellers, vol. 2. 174.

**Cachan**, city of, described, vol. 1. 178. The rank of its governor, *ibid.* A royal garden there, *ibid.* Description of the *Bazar*, *Caravanserais*, public squares, and mosques, *ibid.* The number of mills there, *ibid.*

**Calman**, their depredations on the frontiers of the *Czar's* dominions, vol. 1. 102. Their manner of traffic, vol. 2. 174.

*Cal-*



# I N D E X.

- Cabins*, *Tartari*, their ravages, vol. 1. 81.  
*Caulis*, very fine ones in the city of Batavia, vol. 2. 120.  
*Cape*, the frozen one, described, vol. 1. 137.  
 The excessive coldness of its climate, *ibid.* and 130.  
*Cape of Mesquiden*, and *St. James*, vol. 2. 75. 131. Of *Gama*, 76. Of *Komerya*, 80. Of *Rahilpato*, 130. The grey cape, 194. The northern cape, 195.  
*Caravanferai*, a fine one described, vol. 2. 1. *Caravanferai of Tekagari*, 3.  
*Caravanferai of Majaer* delineated 141.  
*Casim*, its situation, vol. 1. 79.  
*Casim*, the author's arrival there, vol. 2. 158. Its situation and description, 159.  
*Cassian-Seu*, its situation and description, vol. 1. 143.  
*Catamantais*, or wild cat, described, vol. 2. 65.  
*Cataract*, a famous one described, vol. 1. 112.  
*Cavern*, description of a burning one, vol. 1. 117.  
*Cedar*, a branch of it delineated, together with its fruit, vol. 2. 186.  
*Ceiles*, island of, the revenue received from thence by the *Dutch India* company, vol. 2. 83. An account of the money of that island, 85. The schools for the *Singales*, *ibid.* the habit of that people, *ibid.* This island abounds with elephants, *ibid.* An account of the cinnamon-tree, which grows there, and of its oil, 86. The situation of *Ceiles*, *ibid.*  
*Chamma*, an agreeable fruit, described, vol. 1. 164.  
*Chardin*, *Sir John*, refuted by the author, vol. 2. 198. *Sir*. Acknowledges himself to be no draughts-man, 199. His misrepresentation of *Persepolis* clearly refuted, *ib.* 20.  
*Chase*, of rein-deer, a successful one described, vol. 1. 126.  
*Chesterick*, a singular plant, described, vol. 2. 62.  
*Chimmar*. Vide *Persepolis*.  
*Chitr-hag*, or the fine walk of *Ispahan*, described, vol. 1. 197. The delineation of it, 199.  
*Chinese*, an account of their comedies, vol. 2. 92. A remarkable instance of their regard to those who have signalised themselves in the service of their country, 99. Great numbers of them in the city of *Batavia*, 120. Their habits, *ibid.* Their tombs, 125. Their sentiments, with relation to their tombs, *ibid.* An account of one of their funeral processions, 126. And of their funeral repast, *ibid.*  
*Chirai*, or *Shirai*. See *Tis-rar*.  
*Christ's Garment*, a *Russian* story concerning it, vol. 1. 69.  
*Circassians*, an account of their Manners, customs, and habits, vol. 1. 64.  
*Citron*, *Chinese*, described, vol. 2. 100.  
*Clergy*, *Persian*, their habit and dissimulation, vol. 1. 208, 209.  
*Cloina*, river of, vol. 2. 177.  
*Cloth*, description of a remarkable sort, vol. 1. 72.  
*Cobin*, city of, the situation and description of it, vol. 2. 79. Great plenty of provision there, *ibid.*  
*Coco*, an account of that fruit, vol. 2. 100.  
*Coffin*, cultivated at *Batavia*, vol. 2. 185.  
*Colla*, excessive in *Mysore*, vol. 1. 130.  
*Com*, description of that town, vol. 1. 176, 177. Delineated in profile, 178.  
*Comedians of Dantais*, imitated by the *Raffiani*, vol. 1. 40.  
*Comedies*, *Chinese*, an account of them, vol. 2. 92.  
*Company*, *Dutch India*, its revenue from the *lieu of Colla*, vol. 2. 83.  
*Compta*, river of, the damage it occasioned by its inundation, vol. 1. 177.  
*Cord*, *See*, an account of it, vol. 2. 99.  
*Corn*, a singular manner of cutting and threshing it, vol. 2. 63.  
*Cossacks*, *Russian*, their incursions and cruelty, vol. 1. 121.  
*Cotton*, an account of it, vol. 1. 174.  
*Cotton Trees*, described, vol. 2. 133.  
*Country*, account of a desert one, vol. 1. 135.  
*Couriers*, *Persian*, an account of them, vol. 2. 2.  
*Cremator*, an account of the taking of one that had devoured thirty two persons, vol. 2. 81. Description of those animals, and the manner of taking them, 82. Their strength, *ibid.*  
*Cross*, baptism of it, vol. 1. 185.  
*Crozier*, *See* of, described, vol. 1. 4.  
*Custom*, *Russian*, at birth and funerals, vol. 1. 55. — Customs among the foreigners in *Russia*, with regard to births and marriages, *ibid.* An abominable custom among the *Tungus*, 123.  
*Czar*, the signification of that word, vol. 1. 41.  
*Czar*, of *Mysore*, the customary visits made by that prince, vol. 1. 27. the author converses with him, *ibid.* Lights the first fire-work, at a rejoicing for a victory, 24. Assists at a wedding of one of his favourites, 26. His majestic air on horseback, *ibid.* Shews the author a surprising spectacle, 28. Carries him to the palace of the empress, 29. Assumes no higher title in his army, than that of a captain, 30. Magnificent entertainments given by him in the country, *ibid.* The author presents his travels to the *Czar*, 31. The vigilance of that prince when a fire hippeta, *ibid.* Recreates himself upon the river *Mells*, 32. His officers of state 43. Creates the order of *St. Andrew*, *ibid.* The *Czar* an absolute monarch, *ibid.* His counsellors of state, and forces, 45. His triumphant entry into *Mysore*, 49. The author congratulates the *Czar* upon his conquests, 51. That prince visits *Mr. Brats*, 52, 68. His departure for *Permia*, 57. The author takes leave of the *Czar* at *Permia*, 63. The *Czar* arrives at *Mysore*, vol. 2. 174. Receives the author very graciously upon his return from the *Indies*, *ibid.* Gives a grand entertainment on the first day of the year, 180.  
*Czars of Mysore*, a series of them, vol. 1. 44.

## D

- D**AGESTAN, a small province of *Georgia*, vol. 1. 143.  
*Dangier*, captain, arrives at *Batavia*, vol. 2. 115. His adventures, 116.  
*Daneri*,



# I N D E X

*Dancers*, at the king of Bantem's court, vol. 2. 107. Description of the principal dancer, 108. And of several others, *ibid.*  
*Danissaffkey*, a fine large burgh, vol. 1. 20.  
*Dauria*, description of that country, vol. 1. 136.  
*Days and nights*, their length in *Russia*, vol. 1. 45. an account of those days which are thought unlucky by the *Persians*, vol. 2. 57.  
*Debtors*, their punishment in *Moscow*, vol. 1. 43.  
*Deliverance*, a miraculous one, vol. 1. 52.  
*Derbent*, town of, its situation, vol. 1. 142. Citadel, 143. *Tomb*, *ibid.* The hill of *Derbent*, *ibid.* An odd custom practised by the seamen upon their arrival at *Derbent*, *ibid.*  
*Dief-selan*, or the plants mountain, described, vol. 2. 55.  
*Difference*, between two *Tartar* priests, on the account of a woman, vol. 1. 72.  
*Director of the Dutch company*, his arrival at *Ipahan*, and the order of his march, vol. 2. 57, 58.  
*Dixward*, a description of one belonging to the *Czar*, vol. 1. 14.  
*Duzinde*, river of, vol. 1. 83.  
*Dogs*, wild, their extraordinary howling, vol. 1. 89.  
*Don*, river, a grand canal drawn from it, vol. 1. 58. The course of that river, 63.  
*Down*, by the *Caspian Sea*, vol. 2. 164.  
*Dutchmen*, an account of the spoilage of some of them in *Persia*, vol. 1. 233, 234.  
*Dwarf*, belonging to the king of *Bantem*, vol. 2. 108.  
*Dwina*, river, formed by the united streams of two rivers, vol. 1. 96. The signification of its name, *ibid.* Its source, and progress, 18. A prospect of it, vol. 1. 190.  
*Dwinto*, New, castle of delinquent, vol. 2. 194.

## E

**EARTHQUAKE**, an account of one, vol. 1. 120.  
*Edam*, isle of, its situation, vol. 2. 97.  
*Egyptians*, their accuracy in stone-work, vol. 1. 151.  
*Elephants*, in the isle of *Cebu*, the manner of taking and transporting them, vol. 2. 84.  
*Elks*, manner of hunting them, vol. 1. 128.  
*Engam*, isle of, vol. 2. 87.  
*Ermins*, an account of very fine ones, vol. 1. 105.  
*Execution*, a severe one at *Moscow*, vol. 1. 25. Execution of malefactors at *Moscow*, vol. 2. 178.

## F

**FALCON**, large one taken, vol. 1. 3. *Fall of the Persians*, an account of it, vol. 1. 184, 185.  
*Fasts*, in memory of the virgin *Mary*, vol. 1.

33. A magnificent one given by the king of *Persia*, 187, 188.  
*Festival of the consecration of water at Moscow*, vol. 1. 22. Festival of *Easter* in *Russia*, 31. Festival in memory of the virgin *Mary*, 33. Festival of water in *Persia*, 185. Festival of *Gadernahir*, 187. Festival of the solar year, *ibid.* Festival of *Abraham's* sacrifice, 189. Festival of *Abdullah*, 190. Festival of *Baba-joo-jo-mer*, 263. Festival of *Phosphorus* among the *Chinese*, vol. 2. 99.  
*Fiamler*, a very extraordinary animal, vol. 2. 101.  
*Fish*, prodigious annual Shoals of a species called *Gnall*, in the river *Uda*, vol. 1. 130. The manner of taking them, *ibid.* Description of the milk fish, 181. An extraordinary fish, vol. 2. 65. A curious Description of several other species of fish, 77, 78. An account of a fish that devours men, 82. Several other remarkable fish described, 97, 98, 99.  
*Fits*, an account of very troublesome ones, vol. 1. 140.  
*Flood*, an account of one, vol. 1. 31. A great one at *Archangel*, 33.  
*Fountain*, a remarkable one, vol. 1. 179.  
*Fox*, the subtlety of a *Russian* one, vol. 1. 108.  
*Frontiers*, of *Siberia* and *China*, vol. 1. 137.  
*Fruits*, namely, kassers and lanie, vol. 2. 88. froete kaffri, 91. Mangustangus, go-javes, klapper roval, froete rotman, pap-jenje, jimbos, thefruit, annona, *ibid.* Pumpmoosies, 92. Piesang, *ibid.* Jaka, 100. Namnam, *ibid.* Bimbling, 101. Pick, 114. Froete mini, froete rackos, kandeke, bopie kammie, *ibid.*  
*Furs*, admirable one in *Moscow*, vol. 1. 101, and 120.

## G

**GALLE**, a description of that city, vol. 2. 84. Its fortification, 86. Prisoners, current money, and schools, *ibid.*  
*Galitain*, prince, his character, vol. 2. 193.  
*Ganren*, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 2. 71. Description of *Ganren*, 73. A view of it delinquent, 74. The burying place of the *Europeans* there, *ibid.* A great mortality there in the summer season, *ibid.* An extraordinary tree there, 132. Description of the cotton plants, and a white flower there, called *Jawa*, 133. The arrival of the governor, *ibid.*  
*Gawle*, city of, described, vol. 1. 150.  
*Giant mountain*, described, vol. 2. 55.  
*Gersongshir*, mountain of, described, vol. 1. 83.  
*Governor general of the Indies*, *Dutch*, his train, vol. 2. 122. The manner in which his troops are exercised, *ibid.* His tobacco station, *ibid.* His pleasure-house, 124. An entertainment given by him, and his civility to the author, 127. A list of the *Dutch* governors of the *East-Indies*, 118.  
*Grotto*, antient one, vol. 2. 65, 190. Description of a grotto near *Zur-rac*, 136.  
*Gubres*, the author's conversation with a Priest of the *Gubres*, vol. 2. 143. Their opinion



# I N D E X

opinion of the creation of the world, and God's omnipotence, 143. Their tradition concerning rebellious angels, *ibid.* Their notions with respect to the creation and fall of man, *ibid.* The food they are prohibited from eating, 144. Their customs with regard to the birth of infants, *ibid.* Their marriages, *ibid.* Burials, 145. Their days of prayer, *ibid.* Their calculations of the years of the world, *ibid.* Kings of the *Guebres*, *ibid.* and 146.

*Gunpowder*, a misfortune occasioned by it, vol. 1. 6.

## H

*H&L*, the anniversary of that pretended prophet's death, vol. 1. 187.

*Herb*, an account of an exceeding venomous one, vol. 1. 164.

*Huffian*, a celebrated *Perfian* Aint; the history of him, and manner of mourning for him, vol. 1. 115. The procession of *Huffia*, vol. 2. 54.

*Hyle*, Dr. his misapprehension of a figure on a tomb near *Perzpolis*, vol. 2. 41.

## I

*JAKOETS*, a *Tartarian* people; an account of them, vol. 1. 13.

*Jakuts*, their peculiar dress, vol. 2. 139. Their belief, and funeral, *ibid.* Their language and temper, *ibid.*

*Jakutsk*, a town on the great river *Leua*, vol. 1. 139.

*Jaroua*, fortress of, vol. 1. 120. An account of the people of the country, *ibid.*

*Jars*, the authors arrival there, vol. 2. 66. The situation of that city, and the prospect of it delineated, *ibid.*

*Java*, emperor of, his present to the *Dutch India* company, who replaced him on the throne, vol. 2. 114.

*Javanites*, the characters of their alphabet, vol. 2. 109. Their religion, *ibid.*

*Jorahm*, Tomb of, described, vol. 1. 156.

*Jediskohert*, or the seven towers, an account of the tombs there, vol. 1. 152. Tomb of a saint there, *ibid.* Other tombs, 153. A fine tower, *ibid.*

*Jekutsk*, a town on the river *Angara*, vol. 1. 117. Description of it, *ibid.*

*Jemba*, river, rises to the southward of *Tartary*, vol. 1. 140. The banks of it occupied by the *Rassians*, *ibid.*

*Jemtschkei*, a description of that city, vol. 1. 111.

*Jerevan*, the author's arrival in that city, vol. 1. 20. vol. 2. 185. Description of it, *ibid.*

*Jeslaguet*, *Caravanferai* of, described, vol. 2. 3. Description of the village of *Jeslaguet*, *ibid.* A *Perfian* proverb relating to it, *ibid.* and 4.

*Jehar*, their severe treatment by the *Perfians*, vol. 2. 162.

*Engla*, a city on the river *Rei*, vol. 1. 112. Vol. II.

*Ilness*, account of a hidden one, vol. 1. 82.

*Imperial Island*, vol. 2. 87.

*Inage*, a description of that plant, 2. vol. 200.

*Ingalda*, river of, vol. 1. 121.

*Jag*, river, its course described, vol. 2. 180.

*Infer*, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 2.

175. Provisions exceeding cheap there, *ibid.* Description of that city, *ibid.*

*Instruments* of music, an account of those used in *Perfia*, vol. 1. 197.

*Iris*, river, a description of it, vol. 1. 103.

An account of the people who inhabit its banks, 104.

*Librant Idar*, reasons for inserting in this work his travels through *Muscovy* to *China*, vol. 1. 96. His departure from *Moscow*, *ibid.*

Source of the *Duana*, *ibid.* The city of the great *Ustiga*, *ibid.* Country of the *Syrces*, 97. Fortrels of *Kaigerat*, *ibid.* Pil-  
laged by pirates, *ibid.* Description of *Se-  
dumpla* and its saltworks, 98. Description  
of the country of the *Tartars* of *Siberia*,  
99. Description of the river *Iris*, 103.

Adventure of a bear, 104. Sledges drawn  
by dogs, *ibid.* Description of those dogs,  
105. Adventure and cunning of a fox,  
*ibid.* Description of otters, *ibid.* Incredi-  
ble things related of those creatures, 106.

Description of the *Qliacs*, 106—109.

Teeth and bones of the mammut, 110.

Different opinions concerning that creature,  
111. Prodigious teeth of the mammut,  
*ibid.* Description of the city of *Jemtschkei*,  
*ibid.* Description of the magicians torrent

112. Description of the *Tungus* and  
their *Shamans*, 113. Description of the  
*Berates*, 115. Creatures that yield musk,  
116. Description of *Jekutsk*, 117. A  
burning cave, *ibid.* Lake of *Beikal* de-  
scribed, 118. The manner of crossing it  
with camels and oxen, *ibid.* Accidents  
caused by the violence of the winds, *ibid.*

Strange superstition about the lake of *Beikal*, 119. Castle of *Katania*, *ib.* Water dis-  
tilled from mares milk, 123. An abo-  
minable custom among the *Tungus*, *ibid.*

Great desert of *Tartary*, 124. A dread-  
ful fire, 125. Great trouble of a caravan,  
*ibid.* A fortunate chain, 126. An in-  
tolerable famine, 127. A lucky fishing,  
*ibid.* The abode of a *Shaman*, or magi-  
cian, *ibid.* Recapitulation of Mr. *Herant's*  
journey, 128. General description of *Si-  
beria*, 129. Several furs of *Senuda*, *ibid.*

Delineation of one of their sledges drawn  
by rein-deer, 130. *Wengur's* fairs, 131.

Description of the people called *Pegai*, 132.

River of *Kangur*, *ibid.* *Tartars* of *Ufi* and  
*Bakir*, 133. Other *Tartars*, *ibid.* Their  
dress, *ibid.* They are good Soldiers, *ibid.*

A lake full of salt, *ibid.* Description of  
*Tora*, and the adjacent country, *ibid.*

The food and arms of the inhabitants, 134.

Their idol, and present to their *Saitan*, *ibid.*

Trade of *Timbal* with *China*, *ibid.* A de-  
sert country, 135. Country of the *Kirgi-  
ses*, *ibid.* Their arms and language, *ibid.*

*Tungus* and *Berates*, *ibid.* Clutch of the  
*Mongols*, *ibid.* Strength and habit of the  
*Tunguses*, 136. Their chase, religion,  
and diversions, *ibid.* Description of *Du-  
ria*,



# I N D E X.

*ria*, 136. Description of the *Koriji*, 137. Islanders of those parts, and other nations, *ibid*. Description of the frozen cape, *ibid*. Mountains of ice, 139. The river *Lena*, and town of *Jakutsk*, *ibid*. Leatheren barks, *ibid*. Funerals, *ibid*. The language and temples of the natives, *ibid*. Customs of the *Jakutsk* with regard to their dead, *ibid*. The rivers *Lena*, and *Senja*, 138. *Ishukishpa*, a fine church in the city of *Astorian*, vol. 1. 87. *Island*, of *Lappe*, vol. 1. 3. Of *Croiser*, 4. A new one discovered to the left of *China*, 14. *Islands* of *Alinda Lock*, vol. 1. 84. Of *Serpent*, *ibid*. *Engau*, vol. 2. 87. *Imperial Island*, *ibid*. *Prince's Island*, *ibid*. *Islands* of *Almar*, *Eukhuise*, *Leiden*, *Hoon*, and *Smith*, 99. Of *Amsterdam*, *Middleburg*, *Combuis*, and *Peledoa*, 102. *Reyless Island*, 114. *Islands* of *Ormus*, *Larick*, and *Kismut*, 131. *Ismailoff*, palace of, an account of its construction, vol. 1. 51. *Ispahan*, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 1. 180. and vol. 2. 140. Prospect of that city from without, vol. 1. 191. Its gates, 192. Wards of the city, 193. Subdivisions of it, *ibid*. Its original name, *ibid*. Description of the king's palace, 194, and 196. The citadel, 194. The *Meydan*, or great square, (one of the chief ornaments of the city) described, 194 and 196. Description of the royal moich in the *Meydan*, 195. Tournaments held in the *Meydan*, *ibid*. Description of the *Chiaer-burg*, or the fine walk of trees in *Ispahan*, 197. Five different prospects of it delineated, 199. Another fine prospect of it, 202. Description of the new bridge of *Alamirah Khan*, 198. Description of the bridge of *Sibirat*, 199, &c. *Iwan*, lake of, vol. 1. 58. *Java*, a plant, described, vol. 2. 133. *Jakutsk*, a heathen people, vol. 1. 139. Their custom with regard to their dead, *ibid*. *Jalsa*, the suburb of *Ispahan*, described, vol. 1. 225. New and old *Jalsa*, *ibid*. The principal buildings of *Jalsa*, 226. Neatness of the Houses, *ibid*. *Justice*, held in great veneration by the ancient *Persians*, vol. 2. 39.

## K.

**KACKERLACKES**, mountaineers of the isles southeast of *Ternate*, vol. 2. 107. Have a much longer night than day, and cannot bear the light of the sun, *ibid*. *Kaffers*, an agreeable fruit, vol. 1. p. 88. *Kagrad*, a fortress on the river *Kama*, vol. 1. 97. Invaded by pirates, *ibid*. *Kalabaur*, an extraordinary plant, vol. 2. 115. *Kala-kulshaker*, mountain of, described, vol. 1. 151. *Kama*, river of described, vol. 1. 79. *Kamshibuka*, river of, described, vol. 1. 83.

*Karakalun*, point of, vol. 2. 84. *Kasimof*, town of, described, vol. 1. 75. *Kastur*, town of, described, vol. 1. p. 81. *Kastlein*, Mr. director of the *Dutch India* company at *Ispahan*, vol. 1. 180. Created director of the company's affairs at *Gomran*, vol. 2. 72. Description of his country-house, 94. *Kasur*, a *Persian* letter, vol. 2. 58. *Katanis*, castle of, vol. 1. 119. *Kats*, director, inscription on his tomb, vol. 1. 68. *Kempfer*, his account of the ruins of *Persopolis* refuted, vol. 2. 215, &c. *Kings* of *Bantam*, their origin, vol. 1. 110. A series of them, *ibid*. A series of the kings of the *Guebres*, 125. A list of the *Persian* kings who have reigned in succession from the death of *Alexander the Great* to the present time, 127, &c. *Kings* of *Persia*, their education and manner of life, vol. 1. 202, 203. The astute station and conduct of their first minister, 204. Their officers, 205, &c. The funeral solemnities of a king of *Persia* described, 210. Coronation and qualities of his successor, 210, 211. The contempt entertained of him by his Subjects, 212. *Koriji*, an account of their country, vol. 1. 135. Their arms and language, *ibid*. *Kishkan*, river of, described, vol. 1. 172. *Kismut*, isle of, vol. 2. 131. *Kogbaga*, town of, vol. 1. 79. *Kolmogara*, city of, described, vol. 1. 18. The civility of its archbishop to the author, *ibid*. *Kolomonster*, city of, described, vol. 1. 73. *Kolonna*, situation of that city, vol. 2. 58. Described and delineated, 73. *Komai Yungusi*, heathens under the dominion of the *Czar*, vol. 1. 122. An account of of their chief, *ibid*. Their habitations and worship, 123. Dress and arms of the women, *ibid*. Distil water from mares milk, and why they use that milk, *ibid*. Their time of hunting; their bread and fishing, *ibid*. An abominable custom practised among them, *ibid*. *Koriji*, an account of that people, vol. 1. 137. *Korug*, a cry in *Persia*, to warn the people, that the king is coming with his concubines, vol. 1. 234. *Kovori*, isle of, vol. 2. 76. *Kruffe*, ensign, hanged by the *Czar's* order, vol. 1. 68. *Kungur*, river of, described, vol. 1. 132. *Kusmademianki*, town of, described, vol. 1. 78. *Kur*, river of, its confluence with the *Aras*, and course, vol. 1. 162. A great alteration in the banks of these united rivers, vol. 2. 162.

## L.

**LADY**, the author's visit to one of a very extraordinary Age at *Bantam*, vol. 2. 112. *Lao*, the metropolis of that ancient kingdom con-



# I N D E X.

- conquer'd by the *Perfians*, vol. 1. 69. Its situation, and beautiful stone Bazar, *ibid.*  
The castle, *ibid.* A prospect of the city delineated, *ibid.*  
*Lake*, full of salt, vol. 1. 133.  
*Laplant, Russian*, the coast of it described, vol. 1. 4. vol. 2. 194.  
*Larsitz*, ile of, described, vol. 2. 75.  
*Lena*, river of, vol. 1. 139. Teeth and other bones of the mammut found on its banks, *ibid.*  
*Lizard*, sea, a creature taken in the *Perfian* gulph, vol. 1. 181. Its form and medicinal qualities, *ibid.*  
*Leffert*, ile of, vol. 2. 195.  
*Lepe*, ile of, vol. 1. 3.  
*Lute*, St. an account of a picture said to be painted by him, vol. 1. 70.

## M.

- M****ACEDONIANS**, the pillage of the famous city of *Persepolis* given up to them by *Alexander the Great*, vol. 2. 42.  
*Machine*, an account of a strange one, vol. 1. 107.  
*Madrin*, a *Perfian* plant, described, vol. 2. 61. A liquor distilled from it as strong as ginger, *ibid.* The quality of its seed, *ibid.*  
*Magician, Russian*, an account of one, vol. 1. 127.  
*Makski*, description of the country about it, vol. 1. 110.  
*Malahar*, coast of, vol. 2. 76.  
*Mammut*, a curious account of that surprising animal, vol. 1. 110, 111.  
*Mangélor*, a place belonging to the *Dutch India* company, vol. 2. 77.  
*Marriage*, an account of a strange one, vol. 1. 264.  
*Mausoleum*, a sumptuous one of *Seï*, king of *Perfia*, vol. 1. 166.  
*Meda*, ruins of it described, vol. 1. 151.  
*Merchants*, a caravan of them robbed, vol. 2. 138.  
*Meydan*, or the great square in *Ispahan*, a fine description of it, vol. 1. 194, 196.  
*Mill*, an extraordinary one described, vol. 1. 62. A *Perfian* corn-mill, 168. An *Indian* sugar-mill, vol. 2. 99.  
*Mohammedans*, their authority in *Perfia*, vol. 1. 231.  
*Monastery*, of *Smolenski*, described, vol. 1. 73. Description of a fine monastery, 74.  
*Mon*, an account of an eclipse of it, vol. 1. 234.  
*Moruma*, town of, described, vol. 1. 76.  
*Moscow*, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 1. 21. Authors misinformed with respect to its extent, 38. Description of *Moscow*, *ib.* Its gates, *ibid.* The city wall, 40. The palace, *ibid.* The church of *Sakow*, *ibid.* A new arsenal, *ibid.* The second part of the town, *ibid.* & 41. The red wall, great church, market, and warehouses of merchants, 41. The third and fourth divisions of the town, *ibid.* Great number of churches and monasteries, with their structure, *ibid.* 42. A particular descrip-

- tion of the church of *St. Sakow*, 69, 70. Church of the patriarchs, 70. Churches of *St. Michael*, and of the annunciation, 71. The author's second arrival at *Moscow*, in his return from the *Indes*, vol. 2. 177. A description of the new buildings which had been erected there, since his first departure from thence, vol. 2. 179. A manufactory of cloth and glass works erected at *Moscow*, vol. 2. 180.  
*Mountaint*, on the coast of *Norway*, delineated, vol. 1. 3. Mountain of the giants, described, vol. 2. 55. Blew mountain, 89. Mountain of *Ordes*, 191.  
*Mountains*, red, vol. 1. 141. Mountains called the *Brubers*, 169. Mountains of alabaster, vol. 2. 190.  
*Mosib*, or mosque, of *Sakow's* mother, vol. 2. 138.  
*Mules*, the antipathy between them and bears, vol. 1. 86.  
*Mummy*, a famous drug in *Perfia*, described, vol. 1. 228. How first discovered, *ibid.* Its salutary virtue, *ibid.* 229.  
*Mungajsa*, town of, vol. 1. 138.  
*Muscovites*, exposed to the depredations of the *Perfians*, vol. 2. 162, 163.  
*Muscovy*, its situation, vol. 1. 44.

## N.

- N****AXI** *Russian*, its situation, vol. 2. 37. A curious account of its tombs and other antiquities, *ibid.* &c.  
*Negina*, a small river, running through part of *Moscow*, vol. 1. 41.  
*Nerakul*, its situation, vol. 1. 122. An account of the productions of the adjacent country, *ibid.* Two sorts of heathen inhabitants, *ibid.*  
*Nikol Sarafke*, town of, vol. 1. 67.  
*Niswacy*, the inconvenient situation of its coast, vol. 1. 144. The author's arrival at that place, in his return to *Holland*, vol. 2. 164. The prospect of it delineated, *ibid.*  
*Nijen*, or *Niesha*, the capital of a small Dutchy of that name, vol. 1. 76. Its situation and description, vol. 1. 76, 77. The adjacent country very agreeable, 77.  
*North and South Fels*, or unbroken rocks, vol. 2. 195.  
*Norway*, mountains on its northern coast, vol. 2. 195.  
*Nottsburg*, taken by the Czar's forces, vol. 2. 48.  
*Nut-oil*, the best in the world, produced in the western part of *Perfia*, vol. 1. 150.

## O.

- O****B****T**, river, abounds in fish, vol. 1. 107. the banks of it lie uncultivated, from the sea to the river of *Tae*, and for what reason, 109. Their natural productions, *ibid.*  
*Oca*, river of, described, vol. 1. 74. The course of it delineated, vol. 2. 176.  
*Offe*,



# I N D E X

- Ogiss*, river of, described vol. 1. 80.  
*Oghisga*, city of, situation and description, vol. 2. 189.  
*Orenburg*, described, vol. 1. 59.  
*Oriss*, mountain of, described, vol. 2. 191.  
*Orenu*, life of, its situation, &c. vol. 2. 74.  
*Orsis*, or the dry river, vol. 1. 146.  
*Ossian*, a people inhabiting the banks of the *Oty*, vol. 2. 106. An account of their religion, *ibid.* 107. Their marriages, funerals, and dress, 107. They sometimes perish wilfully in the snow, *ibid.* Their manner of treating a bear they have hunted down, 108. An account of one of his petty princes, *ibid.* Description of his cabin, and his women, *ibid.* Their manner of smoking, 109. Their ignorance, *ibid.* Their habitations in the winter, *ibid.*  
*Ossian*, Russian, an account of them, vol. 2. 105.  
*Oven*, Mr. agent of the English factory at *Ishon*, an account of his death, and the ceremonials at his funeral, vol. 1. 263, 264.

## P.

- PAES-JELEK**, a remarkable bird, vol. 1. 182.  
*Palace*, of the king of *Perfa* described, vol. 1. 194, 195.  
*Palm-tree*, vast plantations of them in the city of *Jeren*, vol. 2. 66. Their usefulness, *ibid.*  
*Parade*, antiently in use among the *Perfians*, vol. 2. 39. The time when first invented, *ibid.*  
*Parusian*, an account of that people, vol. 1. 84.  
*Pashas* for camels, an account of an excellent one, vol. 1. 163.  
*Patriarch*, of *Russia*, a series of them, vol. 1. 44.  
*Peak*, of *Adam*, described, vol. 1. 80.  
*Pearl-fishery* in the island of *Oriss*, an account of it, vol. 2. 84.  
*People*, *Savage*, a description of their manners, habitations, and way of living, vol. 1. 6, 14.  
*Perfian Solghis*, the situation of that city, vol. 1. 20.  
*Persepolis*, roads to it, vol. 2. 7. Situation of its noble ruins, 9. 33. Called *Chelmar*, and for what reason, 9. 10. An accurate description of them, 10. 61. The interior part of those antiquities described, 11. Figures of animals, *ibid.* Two noble columns described, 12. The loftiest part of those ruins described, 14. Antient figures 15. Subterranean passages, 16. A fracture to the south, *ibid.* A more particular description of these ruins, in four different views, 19, 20. A particular description of the several pieces, 20, 61. The obscurity of the antient characters, 23. The architecture of those ruins, 25. The cause of the miserable state in which they are now reduced, 26. The royal tombs, *ibid.* The uncertainty with respect to the tomb

- of *Darius*, 27. A second survey of those antiquities, 28, 61. The negligence of travellers in their account of *Persepolis*, 29. The drapery of the figures, *ibid.* Some irregularities observable in them, *ibid.* The proportions well kept, *ibid.* The city of *Persepolis* entirely destroyed, 30. Birds continually harrowing in those ruins, 31. Different names of *Persepolis*, 34. The sentiments of the *Perfian* authors with relation to the founder of *Persepolis*, 35. The accounts of modern writers uncertain, *ibid.* The author's opinion, *ibid.* The observations of *Dioborus Siculus*, 36. The ruins of *Chelmar* are those of the antient palace of *Persepolis*, which was destroyed by *Alexander the Great*, *ibid.* Proofs drawn from the figures and ornaments, 37. The military habit of the *Perfians* and *Medes*, *ibid.* An evident proof taken from the stair-case, 38. Justice represented by a balance, 39. Why sphinxes were represented with wings, *ibid.* *Parasols* used by the antient *Perfians*, *ibid.* The platted robes of the *Medes*, *ibid.* The tomb near *Persepolis*, 40. The sun an antient divinity of the *Perfians*, 41. Observations concerning the founder of the royal palace of *Persepolis*, 42. The palace of *Persepolis* built, or adorned, with the spoils of *Egypt*, 43.  
*Perfa*, one of the most despotic monarchies in the world, vol. 1. 202. The three orders of men in that kingdom, 210. The coin of *Perfa*, 222. A list of the kings who have reigned in *Perfa*, from the death of *Alexander the Great* to the present time, vol. 2. 147, 61.  
*Perfa*, king of, presents made to him, vol. 1. 187. The manner of his education, 202. An account of the death and funeral of a king of *Perfa*, 210. Coronation of the new king, *ibid.* The author draws his picture, 211. That prince a great lover of building, *ibid.* Is despised by his subjects, 212.  
*Perfians*, magnificence of the *Perfian* lords, vol. 1. 188. The *Perfian* governors insatiably desirous of riches, 203. An account of the first minister, 204. The insincerity of the *Perfians*, *ibid.* An account of the great officers of *Perfa*, 205—208. Ecclesiastical officers, 208. Hypocrisy of the clergy, *ibid.* Their habit and dissimulation, 209. Men of letters, and their dissimulation, *ibid.* Eunuchs in favour, 211. The contempt the *Perfians* had of the king who reigned in the author's time, 212. The habit of the *Perfians*, *ibid.* Dress of the porters of the court, 214. A male, and a female slave, in portraiture, *ibid.* The manner in which the *Perfians* mourn for *Hussain*, 215. A great procession on that occasion, with the explication of it, 216, 217. Parade of the two divisions of the city, 217, 218. Description of another procession, 218. Precautions taken to prevent disorders on that occasion, *ibid.* A superstitious notion entertained by the *Perfians*, *ibid.* An account of the *Perfian* painters, 220. Fine colours in *Perfa*, *ibid.*  
The



# I N D E X.

The manner in which some of the *Persian* books are ornamented, 220. The extravagance of the *Persians*, *ibid.* Customs at births, 221. Of their circumcision, marriages, concubines, and dower of maidens, *ibid.* Description of several *Persian* birds, trees, fruits, plants, and flowers, 224, 227. Plenty and cheapness of provisions, 227, 228. Description of a famous *Persian* drug, 228. *Phenomenon*, an extraordinary one described, vol. 1. 106. *Phlo*, a *Chinese*, makes a discovery of salt, vol. 2. 99. *Pishab*, mountain of, described, vol. 1. 154. Several tombs, on the top of it, *ibid.* A superstitious belief, with respect to one of those tombs, 155. *Pish*, a large city of *Muscat*, its situation and buildings, vol. 2. 175. *Pirate*, *Siberia* reduced to the obedience of the *Czar* by one, vol. 1. 102. The death of that pirate, 103. *Pistachio-trees*, described, together with their leaves and nuts, vol. 1. 225. *Plantations*, a description of some famous ones, vol. 1. 241. *Plants*, a singular one described, vol. 2. 62. medicinal plants in the island of *Crisan*, vol. 2. 83. *Plant*, pepper, vol. 2. 95. *Plants*, *Persian*, a description of several, vol. 1. 224, &c. *Paladar*, island of, vol. 2. 102. *Pajar*, description of a rock so called, vol. 1. 132. *Pajke*, office of, consumed by fire, vol. 1. 48. *Pas-fort*, mountain of, vol. 2. 195. *Principals*, frightful ones, vol. 1. 171. *Present*, the author's to the *Czarina* dowager of *Russia*, vol. 1. 32. Other presents made to that princess, 53. Presents made to the king of *Persia*, 167. *Primer*-island, vol. 2. 87. *Propse*, a fine one delineated, vol. 1. 172. *Punishments*, inflicted in *Adultery*, vol. 1. 43. The punishment of debtors, *ibid.* *Pyramid*, description of one, vol. 1. 177. *Pyramus*, village of, vol. 1. 156. Two famous tombs there, *ibid.*

## Q

**QUARREL**, an account of one between some *English* and *Persians*, vol. 1. 235. *Queen of Akim*, a noble instance of her generosity, vol. 2. 115. *Queen of Bantam*, description of her person, habit, and behaviour, vol. 2. 107.

## R

**REIN-DEER**, horses fly from them, vol. 1. 10. Their extraordinary swiftness, *ibid.* The manner of taking them, *ib.* Food of rein-deer, 11. Description of that animal, *ibid.* *Reliqui*, of saints, vol. 1. 71. *Remedy*, an admirable one, for curing a suppression of urine, vol. 1. 115. *Rohurb*, description of it, vol. 1. 188, 189. *Rivers*, an account of some that are but little known, vol. 1. 151. River of *Atafiani*. Vol. II.

or the paternal river, 146. Dry river, *ibid.* River of *Sabangha*, 147. *Roh*, sent to the governor of *Samachi*, vol. 1. 147. *Rack*, of a surprising form, vol. 1. 176. *Ramen*, their delicacies in stone-work, vol. 1. 151. *Rollef*, city of, description of it, vol. 1. 30. *Ruin*, of *Kalley Funder*, delineated, vol. 2. 48. *Raffer*, manner of travelling in that country, vol. 1. 18. Its productions, gardens, and fish-ponds, 35. its principal revenues, 45. The length of days and nights there, *ibid.* Changes introduced into that empire by the *Czar*, 46. Regulations concerning beggars, 47. Story of a young beggar, *ibid.* Alterations in the offices, 48. Fortified places, *ibid.* Treasury of the state, *ibid.* The expence of ship-building raised upon the public, *ibid.* Fine qualities of the hereditary prince, *ibid.* salt-works, vol. 2. 189. *Russians*, their manners and genius, vol. 1. 36. 40. Their manner of writing and sewing, 36, 37. *Russian* hermits, 37. The *Russian* habits reformed, 46. The manner in which they are obliged to shave, *ibid.* Their customs, with respect to births and funerals, 55. Customs among strangers who reside in *Russia*, *ibid.* The *Russians* excessive drinkers, 77, 78.

## S

**SABAKZAR**, town of, described, vol. 1. 79. *Sage*, its use, vol. 1. 115. *Sabangha*, river of, vol. 1. 147. *Saint*, an account of a *Russian* one, vol. 2. 192. *Salt*, the discovery of it by *Phlo*, a *Chinese*, vol. 2. 99. *Salt-works*, in *Russia*, an account of them, vol. 2. 189. *Samachi*, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 1. 147. vol. 2. 162. Dearth of provisions there, vol. 1. 147. Its situation, 148. The Khan's house, market, shops, and bazars, 149. Extent of the Khan's government, *ibid.* Description of his person, 150. Soil of *Samachi*, *ibid.* The *Muslims* who live there exposed to injurious treatment, vol. 2. 163. the adjacent country beautiful, *ibid.* *Samara*, town of, described, vol. 1. 81. *Sangai*, description of that city, vol. 1. 172. The prospect of it delineated, 173. The *Sangai* commit piracy, vol. 2. 165. *Sangai*, mountain of, vol. 1. 141. The coast of *Sangai* very dangerous, 142. *Samed*, a wild people in *Russia*, vol. 1. 6. Description of their persons, habit, food, and manner of life, 7. Their tents, 8. Stench of that people insupportable, *ibid.* Representation of a *Samed* man and woman, *ib.* Their manner of taking rein-deer, 10. Their water-chase, and the danger which attends it, 11. The author's treatment of a *Samed* woman, and his conversation with her, *ibid.* Manners and customs of the *Sameds*, 12. Their marriages, *ibid.* Their belief, *ibid.* Priest and magician of the *Sameds*, 13. Several sorts of *Sameds*, 129. Delineation of a sledge drawn by rein-deer, 3P and



# I N D E X.

and used by the *Samsals*, 730.  
*Saratof*, town of, described, vol. 1. 82.  
*Saragom*, town of, described, vol. 1. 83.  
*Savages*, account of some that were brought to *Botavia*, vol. 2. 90, 91.  
*Sawaleh*, mountains of, described, vol. 1. 172.  
*Selamangha*, or the tomb of the magician described, vol. 1. 112. The manner of navigating it, *ibid*. Many vessels lost by the unskilfulness of pilots, 113.  
*Sibakzelle*, city of, vol. 1. 10.  
*Sibilla*, river of, vol. 1. 121.  
*Schoppe*, town of, described, vol. 1. 66.  
*Sed-ags*, or *seals*, an account of them, vol. 1. 145.  
*Seda*, tree, vol. 1. 175. Description of it, vol. 1. 224, 225.  
*Springing*, a plant, from whence a country in *India* is denominated, vol. 1. 95. Abundance of *Apes* in that country, *ibid*.  
*Serpentilla*, file of, vol. 1. 84.  
*Shaman*, or magician, an account of one, vol. 1. 117. Account of a *Tangoye Shaman*, or magician, 119.  
*Ship*, 50000 of them killed and eaten at *Upehan*, on one festival day, vol. 1. 190.  
*Shipwreck*, of the author on the river *Falga*, vol. 1. 160. A curious account of a very unhappy shipwreck, 192.  
*Siberia*, reduced to the obedience of the *Czar*, by a pirate, vol. 1. 102. The death of that pirate, 103. A general description of that country, 129.  
*Sievan*, town of, described, vol. 1. 81.  
*Sila*, the manner of winding it, in *Perfia*, vol. 1. 162.  
*Simbierka*, antiently a large city, vol. 1. 79. Description of it, *ibid*.  
*Singals*, their habits described, vol. 1. 85. Are the offspring of *European* and *Maurish* parents, *ibid*.  
*Sivakala*, a singular kind, vol. 1. 62.  
*Sledges*, drawn by dogs, and how, vol. 1. 104. Delineation of a *Samsal's* sledge drawn by rein-deer, 130.  
*Smolenski*, military of, described, vol. 1. 73.  
*Smolenski*, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 1. 181. Terrible ravages committed by the *Russians*, in the adjacent country, to prevent the *Suzals* from assisting them, 186. The calamitous state of the peasants finely described, *ibid*. The dangers to which the author was exposed in travelling through that part of the country, *ib*. His return to *Smolenski*, 184.  
*Sodak*, a fish, vol. 1. 89.  
*Soldier*, *Indian*, the manner of their exercising at *Botavia*, vol. 1. 112.  
*Saltamilla*, the description of that city, and its salt-works, vol. 1. 98.  
*Srihit*, a fish much esteemed, vol. 1. 89.  
*Sri-elles*, punished by the *Czar* of *Moscow*, for their rebellion, vol. 1. 166.  
*Stroki*, a sort of flat-bottom vessels used by the *Alchibekes*, vol. 1. 73. Their former manner of sailing, *ibid*.  
*Suzama*, river, its course, vol. 1. 96.  
*Suzer*, works, in *Moscow*, vol. 1. 81.  
*Suzama*, town of, described, vol. 1. 173.  
*Son*, worshipped by the antient *Perfians*, vol. 1. 41.  
*Sunda*, freight of, vol. 1. 88.

*Suspektem*, a strange one, with relation to the lake of *Baidal*, vol. 1. 119.  
*Suzer*, description of an extraordinary one, vol. 1. 52.  
*Suzagi*, river of, vol. 1. 79.  
*Suzer*, a people in *Moscow*, vol. 1. 97. Their language, religion, and customs, *ibid*. The extent of their country, *ibid*.

## T.

**TAGTE** *Rushan*, a famous mountain in *Perfia*, vol. 1. 166. Ruins of a building on the top of that mountain, and a grotto at its foot, *ibid*.  
*Tage Salomon*, a royal-jardin pleasure in *Perfia*, vol. 1. 191.  
*Takma*, a fortress in *Russia*, vol. 1. 120.  
*Tatasha*, town of, its situation and description, vol. 1. 79.  
*Talika*, or a lord of the *Mongals*, vol. 1. 117. His sister a nun of the *Mongal* profession, *ib*. Her belief, *ibid*. Attended by a *Lama*, or *Mongal* Priest, *ibid*.  
*Tamby*, sulphur of, delineated, vol. 1. 195.  
*Tangoyel*, town of, vol. 1. 138.  
*Tunguska*, castle of, vol. 1. 119.  
*Tape*, an extraordinary one described, vol. 1. 184.  
*Tarta*, town of, its situation, vol. 1. 143.  
*Tartar*, king, story of one, vol. 1. 80. *Tartar* market, 87.  
*Tartars*, *Common* customs committed by them, vol. 1. 82. The *Tartar* manner of living, 91. Dress of the *Tartar* women, 93. In what strange manner the *Tartars*, called *Indians*, shave their heads, and ceremonials on that occasion, 94. *Tartar* horses, *ibid*. *Tartars* of *Siberia* described, 99. Their religion and manner of life, *ibid*. They pray but once a year, and acknowledge no devil, *ibid*. Their funerals, *ibid*. Those of their dogs, *ibid*. They allow polygamy, *ibid*. Marriages and livings in, *ibid*. Their dress, *ibid*. Their habitations, 100. In what manner they subsist by hunting, *ibid*. Live under the protection of the *Czar*, *ibid*. Their divine service, 103. Their music, *ib*. *Tartars* of *Uss* and *Baskir*, 133. Other *Tartars*, *ibid*. Their dress, *ibid*. Are good soldiers, *ibid*. Their religion, *ibid*. At what time the *Tartars* chose their chief, or emperor, vol. 1. 168. The style and conquests of that prince, *ibid*.  
*Tartary*, Great, desert of it, vol. 1. 124.  
*Tavernier*, misled with misrepresenting the ruins of *Persepolis*, vol. 1. 30. Another mistake of that author, 132. 160.  
*Tauris*, mount, described, vol. 1. 171.  
*Teth*, elephants, found near the river *Deu*, vol. 1. 63.  
*Tobolska*, city of, described, vol. 1. 101, 102.  
*Tolma*, city of, delineated and described, vol. 1. 188.  
*Tomb* of a saint, vol. 1. 152. Other tombs, 153. Description of the tomb of *Tiribbata*, 157. Several *Rus* tombs described, 166. &c. A royal tomb, 170. Tomb of *Sultan* *Abdummed Khalid*, 173. Tombs in a month at *Cam*, 176. Description of the tomb of *Abdulla*, and its moving columns,

# I N D E X

lurns, 182. The boldness of a child in climbing up one of those columns *ibid.* Tomb of a saint, vol. 2. 2. Another tomb, 5. Fine description of the ancient royal tombs at *Persepolis*, vol. 2. 26. The uncertainty with respect to the tomb of *Darius*, 27. Fine description of the tombs of *Naci Ruzlan*, 39, 45. A tomb near *Persepolis* described, 40. Tombs of saints, 47. The tomb of a fine *Persean* poet, 48. A royal tomb, 62. The tomb of a saint, *ibid.* Description of *Chinese* tombs, 125.

*Tamshi*, city of, its situation, and trade with *China*, vol. 1. 134.

*Tam*, town of, described, vol. 1. 133.

*Teght*, its fine monastery, described, vol. 1. 10.

*Tournament*, at *Ispahan*, described, vol. 1. 105.

*Tower*, description of a fine one, vol. 1. 153.

*Tree*, an extraordinary one, vol. 2. 133.

*Tamers*, town of, alarmed by the *Calms Tartars*, vol. 1. 101.

*Tenghis*, and their famous Shaman, or magician, vol. 1. 113. Description of his person, and the manner in which he exercises his art, *ibid.* His riches, *ibid.* Description of the *Tenghis*, *ibid.* Their summer dress and ornaments, *ibid.* Their dress in winter, 114. Their diversions, *ibid.* Their idols, *ibid.* Description of their cabbins, harks, and employments, *ibid.* 115. Remarkable description of a *Tenghis* prince, and his sin, 121. Their strength, habit, chase, and religion, 136. Their women and maids, *ibid.* Their hands, *ibid.*

*Turks*, their habit more modest and masculine than that of the *Perseans*, vol. 1. 212.

*Turkeys*, extraordinary ones, vol. 1. 8.

*Turpentine-tree*, the use of its gum and fruit, vol. 2. 61.

*Tuzmagar*, town of, described, vol. 1. 85.

## U.

*Ud*, river of, description of its fish, vol. 1. 120.

*Udinghai*, town of, its situation, 1. 119. Description of its soil, *ibid.* An earthquake there, *ibid.*

*Urasin*, the situation of that city, vol. 1. 60. Its citadel, *ibid.* Docks for shipping, 61. Number of inhabitants in the town, and about it, *ibid.* The prospect of the city delineated, *ibid.* A hill near the town, covered with skulls and bones, and pieces of coffins, 62. Ships, *ibid.*

*Urga*, river, its course, vol. 1. 73. An account of the author's shipwreck on that river, vol. 2. 169. His voyage on that river from *Afghanistan* to *Saratof*, *ibid.* 57.

*Uliga*, city of, vol. 1. 96.

## W.

*Waresma*, city of, described, vol. 2. 181.

*Wassile*, river of, described, vol. 1. 81.

*Wassigord*, town of, vol. 1. 76.

*Water-chest*, of scals, described, vol. 1. 11. The finger which attends it, *ibid.*

*Water*, fuller near the line than in other parts of the sea, vol. 2. 129.

*Water*, festival of, its continuation in *Moscow*, described, vol. 1. 22. Another festival of water in *Perseia*, 185.

*Water-Melon*, fine ones in the garden at *Afghanistan*, vol. 1. 90. Water-melons of a singular species, 164.

*Wedding*, a magnificent one of a favourite of the *Czar* of *Moscow*, vol. 1. 25. An account of a pendency which happened on that occasion, 27. A melancholy accident at one, 53. An account of an extraordinary wedding in *Russia*, *ibid.*

*Wells*, dangerous ones, vol. 1. 152. Deep ones described, vol. 2. 53.

*Wegat*, freights of described, vol. 1. 131.

*Wheat*, a strange one, vol. 1. 3.

*Wheat*, wild *Spanish*, in *Perseia*, a description of it, vol. 2. 61.

*White-Sea*, vol. 2. 194.

*Wild-Dogs*, their extraordinary howling, vol. 1. 89.

*Winds*, accidents caused by their violence, vol. 1. 118. Hot winds, vol. 2. 68.

*Wijn*, his account of *Wegat's* freights the best, vol. 1. 121.

*Widamer*, city of, its situation, and description, vol. 2. 177.

*Wilega*, city of, vol. 1. 19. Its great church a fine building, *ibid.* Its markets, *ibid.* A variety of fine prospects in the adjacent country, vol. 2. 180.

*Wilega*, river of, its course described, vol. 2. 196.

*Wirodjau*, a royal palace in *Moscow*, described, vol. 1. 38.

## Z.

*ZARITZA*, town of, described, vol. 1. 84.

*Zic-car*, or *Chivai*, city of, described, vol. 2. 45. A fine bridge, *ibid.* The pass of *Teng-alla-gher* described, *ibid.* The disposition of *Chivai*, 46. Ment of its buildings in ruins, 47. Tombs of saints, *ibid.* A beautiful structure, *ibid.* The prospect of the city delineated, 49. A fine alley, *ibid.* The king's garden, *ibid.* The extent of the city, 50. The ruins of a *Mosch*, *ibid.* The delightful alley of *Teng-alla-gher* delineated, 51. Ancient figures, *ibid.*

# F I N I S.



1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

1812

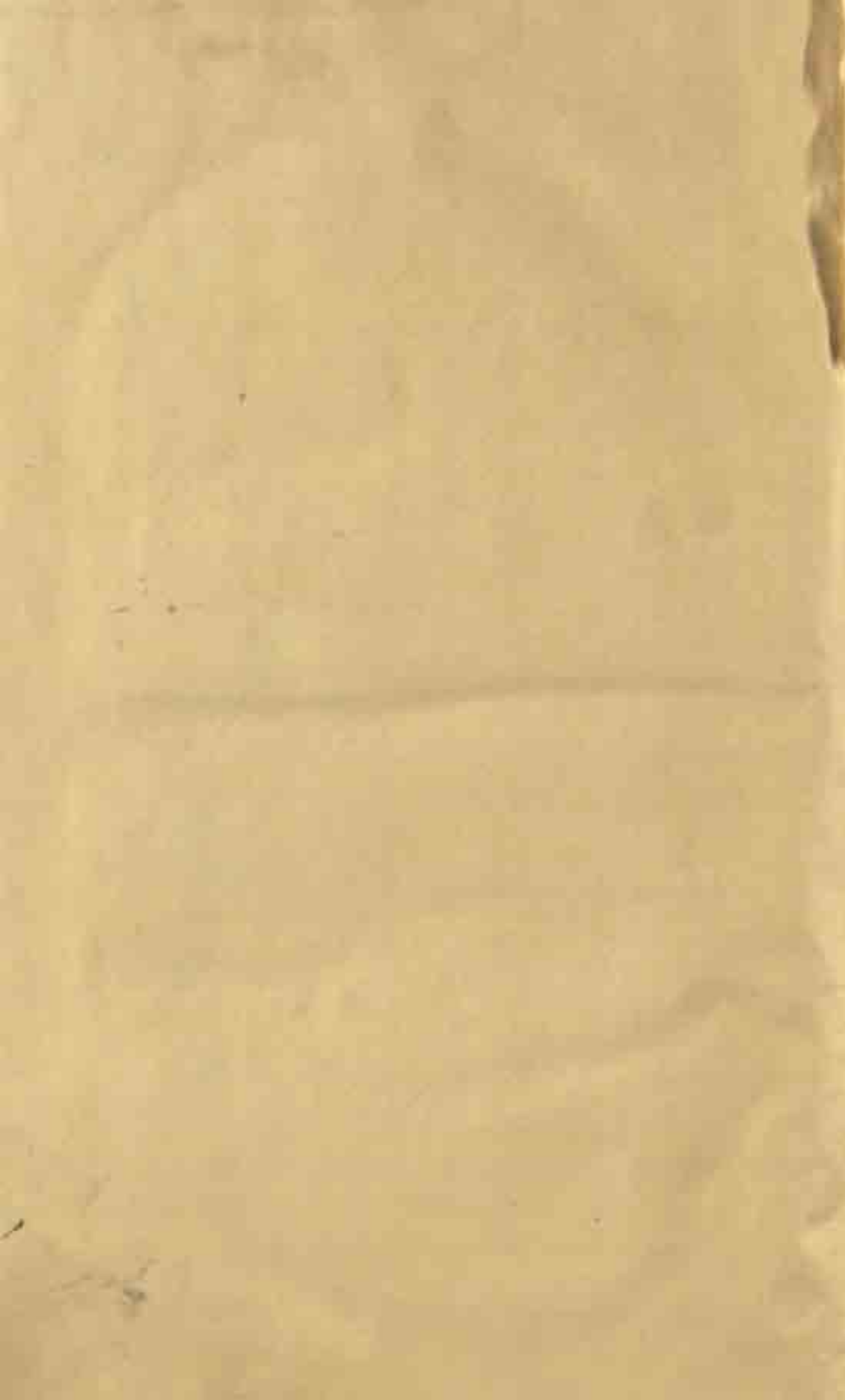
1812

1812

1812











MC

5/1/76

Central Archaeological Library,

NEW DELHI-24157

Call No. 915/LeB

Author—Le Bruyn, C.

Title—Travels with Muscary  
Persia and vol. 2

"A book that is shut is but a block"

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY  
GOVT OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.